

Control	3510-04-019, ETC.
Project	STP 2022(936)MM, ETC.
Highway	SH 99
County	FORT BEND, ETC.

## ADDENDUM ACKNOWLEDGMENT

**Each bidder is required to acknowledge receipt of an addendum issued for a specific project. This page is provided for the purpose of acknowledging an addendum.**

FAILURE TO ACKNOWLEDGE RECEIPT OF AN ADDENDUM WILL RESULT IN THE BID NOT BEING READ.

In order to properly acknowledge an addendum place a mark in the box next to the respective addendum.

- ADDENDUM NO. 1
- ADDENDUM NO. 2
- ADDENDUM NO. 3
- ADDENDUM NO. 4
- ADDENDUM NO. 5

In addition, the bidder by affixing their signature to the signature page of the proposal is acknowledging that they have taken the addendum(s) into consideration when preparing their bid and that the information contained in the addendum will be included in the contract, if awarded by the Commission or other designees.

This page intentionally left blank.

Control	3510-04-019, ETC.
Project	STP 2022(936)MM, ETC.
Highway	SH 99
County	FORT BEND, ETC.

# PROPOSAL TO THE TEXAS TRANSPORTATION COMMISSION

## 2014 SPECIFICATIONS

### WORK CONSISTING OF ADVANCED TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT SYSTEM FORT BEND COUNTY, TEXAS, Etc.

The quantities in the proposal are approximate. The quantities of work and materials may be increased or decreased as considered necessary to complete the work as planned and contemplated.

This project is to be completed in 592 working days and will be accepted when fully completed and finished to the satisfaction of the Executive Director or designee.

Provide a proposal guaranty in the form of a Cashier's Check, Teller's Check (including an Official Check) or Bank Money Order on a State or National Bank or Savings and Loan Association, or State or Federally chartered Credit Union made payable to the Texas Transportation Commission in the following amount:

ONE HUNDRED THOUSAND (Dollars) ( \$100,000 )

A bid bond may be used as the required proposal guaranty. The bond form may be detached from the proposal for completion. The proposal may not be disassembled to remove the bond form. The bond must be in accordance with Item 2 of the specifications.

Any addenda issued amending this proposal and/or the plans that have been acknowledged by the bidder, become part of this proposal.

By signing the proposal the bidder certifies:

1. the only persons or parties interested in this proposal are those named and the bidder has not directly or indirectly participated in collusion, entered into an agreement or otherwise taken any action in restraint of free competitive bidding in connection with the above captioned project.
2. in the event of the award of a contract, the organization represented will secure bonds for the full amount of the contract.
3. the signatory represents and warrants that they are an authorized signatory for the organization for which the bid is submitted and they have full and complete authority to submit this bid on behalf of their firm.
4. that the certifications and representations contained in the proposal are true and accurate and the bidder intends the proposal to be taken as a genuine government record.

• **Signed: \*\***

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (3) \_\_\_\_\_

**Print Name:**

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (3) \_\_\_\_\_

**Title:**

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (3) \_\_\_\_\_

**Company:**

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (3) \_\_\_\_\_

- Signatures to comply with Item 2 of the specifications.

\*\*Note: Complete (1) for single venture, through (2) for joint venture and through (3) for triple venture.

\* **When the working days field contains an asterisk (\*) refer to the Special Provisions and General Notes.**

## **NOTICE TO CONTRACTORS**

**ANY CONTRACTORS INTENDING TO BID ON ANY WORK TO BE AWARDED BY THIS DEPARTMENT MUST SUBMIT A SATISFACTORY “AUDITED FINANCIAL STATEMENT” AND “EXPERIENCE QUESTIONNAIRE” AT LEAST TEN DAYS PRIOR TO THE LETTING DATE.**

**UNIT PRICES MUST BE SUBMITTED IN ACCORDANCE WITH ITEM 2 OF THE STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS OR SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 2 FOR EACH ITEM LISTED IN THIS PROPOSAL.**

# TEXAS DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

## BID BOND

KNOW ALL PERSONS BY THESE PRESENTS,

That we, (Contractor Name) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Hereinafter called the Principal, and (Surety Name) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

a corporation or firm duly authorized to transact surety business in the State of Texas, hereinafter called the Surety, are held and firmly bound unto the Texas Department of Transportation, hereinafter called the Oblige, in the sum of not less than two percent (2%) of the department's engineer's estimate, rounded to the nearest one thousand dollars, not to exceed one hundred thousand dollars (\$100,000) as a proposal guaranty (amount displayed on the cover of the proposal), the payment of which sum will and truly be made, the said Principal and the said Surety, bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

WHEREAS, the principal has submitted a bid for the following project identified as:

<b>Control</b>	<b>3510-04-019, ETC.</b>
<b>Project</b>	<b>STP 2022(936)MM, ETC.</b>
<b>Highway</b>	<b>SH 99</b>
<b>County</b>	<b>FORT BEND, ETC.</b>

NOW, THEREFORE, if the Oblige shall award the Contract to the Principal and the Principal shall enter into the Contract in writing with the Oblige in accordance with the terms of such bid, then this bond shall be null and void. If in the event of failure of the Principal to execute such Contract in accordance with the terms of such bid, this bond shall become the property of the Oblige, without recourse of the Principal and/or Surety, not as a penalty but as liquidated damages.

Signed this \_\_\_\_\_ Day of \_\_\_\_\_ 20\_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
(Contractor/Principal Name)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature and Title of Authorized Signatory for Contractor/Principal)

\*By: \_\_\_\_\_  
(Surety Name)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature of Attorney-in-Fact)

Impressed  
Surety Seal  
Only

\*Attach Power of attorney (Surety) for Attorney-in-Fact

**This form may be removed from the proposal.**

This page intentionally left blank.

# BIDDER'S CHECK RETURN

## IMPORTANT

The space provided for the return address must be completed to facilitate the return of your bidder's check. Care must be taken to provide a legible, accurate, and complete return address, including zip code. A copy of this sheet should be used for each different return address.

## NOTE

Successful bidders will receive their guaranty checks with the executed contract.

RETURN BIDDERS CHECK TO (PLEASE PRINT):


<b>Control</b>	<b>3510-04-019, ETC.</b>
<b>Project</b>	<b>STP 2022(936)MM, ETC.</b>
<b>Highway</b>	<b>SH 99</b>
<b>County</b>	<b>FORT BEND, ETC.</b>

## IMPORTANT

### PLEASE RETURN THIS SHEET IN ITS ENTIRETY

Please acknowledge receipt of this check(s) at your earliest convenience by signing below in longhand, in ink, and returning this acknowledgement in the enclosed self addressed envelope.

Check Received By: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

For (Contractor's Name): \_\_\_\_\_

Project \_\_\_\_\_ County \_\_\_\_\_

This page intentionally left blank.



## NOTICE TO THE BIDDER

In the space provided below, please enter your total bid amount for this project. Only this figure will be read publicly by the Department at the public bid opening.

It is understood and agreed by the bidder in signing this proposal that the total bid amount entered below is not binding on either the bidder or the Department. It is further agreed that **the official total bid amount for this proposal will be determined by multiplying the unit bid prices for each pay item by the respective estimated quantities shown in this proposal and then totaling all of the extended amounts.**

\$ \_\_\_\_\_  
**Total Bid Amount**

Control 0001-03-030  
 Project STP 2000(938)HES  
 Highway SH 20  
 County EL PASO

ALT	ITEM	DESC	SP	Bid Item Description	Unit	Quantity	Bid Price	Amount	Seq
	104	509	X	REMOV CONC (SDWLK)	MSY	266.400	\$10.000	\$2,664.00	1
							Total Bid Amount	\$2,664.00	

Signed \_\_\_\_\_  
 Title \_\_\_\_\_  
 Date \_\_\_\_\_

Additional Signature for Joint Venture:

Signed \_\_\_\_\_  
 Title \_\_\_\_\_  
 Date \_\_\_\_\_

**EXAMPLE OF BID PRICES SUBMITTED BY COMPUTER PRINTOUT**

EXAMPLE

EXAMPLE

EXAMPLE

EXAMPLE

# EXAMPLES

## BID PRICES SUBMITTED BY HAND WRITTEN FORMAT

ALT	ITEM-CODE			UNIT BID PRICE <u>ONLY</u> WRITTEN IN WORDS	UNIT	APPROX QUANTITIES	DEPT USE ONLY
	ITEM NO	DESC NO	S.P. NO.				
	190	026		RED OAK 1 1/2 - 1 3/4 GAL BB	EA	9.000	1
					L	E	

**Unit price for each plant in place**

	249	014		FLEX BASE(DEL)(DENSOT)(TY A GR4 CL2)	TON	56,787.00	14
					L	E	

**Unit price for each ton of Flexible Base**

	430	001	001	CL A CONC FOR EXT STR (CULV)	CY	45.000	27
					L	E	

**Unit price for each cubic yard of Concrete**

	610	007	001	RDWY ILL ASSEM(TY ST 50T-8-8)(.4 KW)S	EA	13.000	7
					L	E	

**Unit price of each Roadway Illumination Assembly**

EXAMPLE

EXAMPLE

EXAMPLE

EXAMPLE

This page intentionally left blank.

ALT	ITEM-CODE			UNIT BID PRICE ONLY. WRITTEN IN WORDS	UNIT	APPROX QUANTITIES	DEPT USE ONLY
	ITEM NO	DESC CODE	S.P. NO.				
	100	6002		PREPARING ROW  DOLLARS and CENTS	STA	355.400	1
	104	6001		REMOVING CONC (PAV)  DOLLARS and CENTS	SY	41,221.000	2
	104	6009		REMOVING CONC (RIPRAP)  DOLLARS and CENTS	SY	2,860.000	3
	104	6011		REMOVING CONC (MEDIANS)  DOLLARS and CENTS	SY	620.000	4
	104	6017		REMOVING CONC (DRIVEWAYS)  DOLLARS and CENTS	SY	119.000	5
	104	6021		REMOVING CONC (CURB)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	13,404.000	6
	104	6029		REMOVING CONC (CURB OR CURB & GUT- TER)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	3,688.000	7
	104	6034		REMOVING CONC (COPING)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	3,359.000	8
	104	6036		REMOVING CONC (SIDEWALK OR RAMP)  DOLLARS and CENTS	SY	283.000	9
	104	6037		REMOVE CONC (RAIL)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	11,218.000	10
	104	6064		REMOVING CONC (MISC)  DOLLARS and CENTS	CY	16.200	11

ALT	ITEM-CODE			UNIT BID PRICE ONLY. WRITTEN IN WORDS	UNIT	APPROX QUANTITIES	DEPT USE ONLY
	ITEM NO	DESC CODE	S.P. NO.				
	105	6161		REMOVING TREATED BASE (8") DOLLARS and CENTS	SY	45,812.000	12
	110	6001		EXCAVATION (ROADWAY) DOLLARS and CENTS	CY	114,620.000	13
	132	6006	002	EMBANKMENT (FINAL)(DENS CONT)(TY C) DOLLARS and CENTS	CY	51,377.000	14
	132	6035	002	EMBANK(FINAL)(DC)(TY E)(CSBE) DOLLARS and CENTS	CY	468.000	15
	132	6036	002	EMB(FNL)(DC)(TYE)(CSBE)(RWALL FND IMPR DOLLARS and CENTS	CY	2,366.000	16
	162	6002		BLOCK SODDING DOLLARS and CENTS	SY	174,967.000	17
	162	6003		STRAW OR HAY MULCH DOLLARS and CENTS	SY	166,219.000	18
	164	6009		BROADCAST SEED (TEMP) (WARM) DOLLARS and CENTS	SY	8,749.000	19
	164	6051		DRILL SEED (TEMP)(WARM OR COOL) DOLLARS and CENTS	SY	166,219.000	20
	166	6001		FERTILIZER DOLLARS and CENTS	AC	50.310	21
	168	6001		VEGETATIVE WATERING DOLLARS and CENTS	MG	4,840.700	22
	260	6006		LIME TRT (EXST MATL) (6") DOLLARS and CENTS	SY	167,793.000	23

ALT	ITEM-CODE			UNIT BID PRICE ONLY. WRITTEN IN WORDS	UNIT	APPROX QUANTITIES	DEPT USE ONLY
	ITEM NO	DESC CODE	S.P. NO.				
	260	6012		LIME(HYD,COM OR QK)(SLRY)OR QK(DRY) DOLLARS and CENTS	TON	2,288.490	24
	275	6001		CEMENT DOLLARS and CENTS	TON	176.000	25
	275	6002		CEMENT TREAT (EXIST MATL) (6") DOLLARS and CENTS	SY	11,369.000	26
	276	6224		CEM TRT(PLNT MX) (CL N)(TY E)(GR 4)(6") DOLLARS and CENTS	SY	179,162.000	27
	292	6017		ASPHALT STAB BASE (GR 4)(PG 64) DOLLARS and CENTS	TON	8,514.000	28
	360	6004		CONC PVMT (CONT REINF - CRCP) (10") DOLLARS and CENTS	SY	114,548.000	29
	360	6006		CONC PVMT (CONT REINF - CRCP) (12") DOLLARS and CENTS	SY	51,711.000	30
	360	6043		CONC PVMT (CONT REINF)(FAST TRK)(13") DOLLARS and CENTS	SY	14,516.000	31
	400	6001		STRUCT EXCAV DOLLARS and CENTS	CY	2,678.000	32
	400	6005		CEM STABIL BKFL DOLLARS and CENTS	CY	43,626.000	33
	400	6009		CEMENT STAB BACKFILL (INLET OR MH) DOLLARS and CENTS	CY	1,165.000	34
	402	6001		TRENCH EXCAVATION PROTECTION DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	25,777.000	35

ALT	ITEM-CODE			UNIT BID PRICE ONLY. WRITTEN IN WORDS	UNIT	APPROX QUANTITIES	DEPT USE ONLY
	ITEM NO	DESC CODE	S.P. NO.				
	403	6001		TEMPORARY SPL SHORING  DOLLARS and CENTS	SF	81,802.000	36
	405	6003		FOUNDATON LOADTEST(D4945)(DRILLD SHAFT)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	1.000	37
	409	6001		PRESTR CONC PIL (16 IN SQ)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	640.000	38
	409	6003		PRESTR CONC PIL (20 IN SQ)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	3,460.000	39
	416	6001		DRILL SHAFT (18 IN)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	320.000	40
	416	6003		DRILL SHAFT (30 IN)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	3,325.000	41
	416	6004		DRILL SHAFT (36 IN)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	2,459.000	42
	416	6005		DRILL SHAFT (42 IN)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	1,304.000	43
	416	6007		DRILL SHAFT (54 IN)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	900.000	44
	416	6020		DRILL SHAFT (SIGN MTS) (36 IN)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	714.000	45
	416	6021		DRILL SHAFT (SIGN MTS) (42 IN)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	2,102.000	46
	416	6023		DRILL SHAFT (SIGN MTS) (54 IN)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	56.000	47



ALT	ITEM-CODE			UNIT BID PRICE ONLY. WRITTEN IN WORDS	UNIT	APPROX QUANTITIES	DEPT USE ONLY
	ITEM NO	DESC CODE	S.P. NO.				
	416	6029		DRILL SHAFT (RDWY ILL POLE) (30 IN) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	297.000	48
	416	6030		DRILL SHAFT (TRF SIG POLE) (24 IN) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	108.000	49
	416	6096		DRILL SHAFT (90 IN) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	84.000	50
	416	6097		DRILL SHAFT (102 IN) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	325.000	51
	420	6013	001	CL C CONC (ABUT) DOLLARS and CENTS	CY	24.400	52
	420	6019	001	CL C CONC (ABUT)(EXTEND) DOLLARS and CENTS	CY	666.500	53
	420	6029	001	CL C CONC (CAP) DOLLARS and CENTS	CY	236.000	54
	420	6037	001	CL C CONC (COLUMN) DOLLARS and CENTS	CY	429.200	55
	420	6043	001	CL C CONC (FOOTING) DOLLARS and CENTS	CY	118.200	56
	420	6178	001	CL C CONC (CAP)(INVT) DOLLARS and CENTS	CY	256.800	57
	420	6182	001	CL F CONC (CAP)(INVT) DOLLARS and CENTS	CY	230.800	58
	420	6194	001	CL C CONC (CAP)(STRDL) DOLLARS and CENTS	CY	78.700	59

ALT	ITEM-CODE			UNIT BID PRICE ONLY. WRITTEN IN WORDS	UNIT	APPROX QUANTITIES	DEPT USE ONLY
	ITEM NO	DESC CODE	S.P. NO.				
	422	6003		REINF CONC SLAB (EXTEND SLAB) DOLLARS and CENTS	SF	105,938.040	60
	422	6035		APPROACH SLAB (EXTEND) DOLLARS and CENTS	CY	700.250	61
	423	6014	004	RETAINING WALL (MSE)(HORIZONTAL SCHEME) DOLLARS and CENTS	SF	45,894.000	62
	425	6028	001	PRESTR CONC U - BEAM (U54) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	2,140.550	63
	425	6037	001	PRESTR CONC GIRDER (TX40) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	1,842.260	64
	425	6039	001	PRESTR CONC GIRDER (TX54) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	12,944.610	65
	427	6002	003	CONCRETE PAINT FINISH DOLLARS and CENTS	SF	60,546.610	66
	432	6001		RIPRAP (CONC)(4 IN) DOLLARS and CENTS	CY	520.300	67
	432	6008		RIPRAP (CONC)(CL B)(RR8&RR9) DOLLARS and CENTS	CY	148.100	68
	432	6009		RIPRAP (CONC) (CL B) (4") DOLLARS and CENTS	CY	129.140	69
	432	6045		RIPRAP (MOW STRIP)(4 IN) DOLLARS and CENTS	CY	1,580.380	70
	450	6023	001	RAIL (TY SSTR) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	16,930.570	71

ALT	ITEM-CODE			UNIT BID PRICE ONLY. WRITTEN IN WORDS	UNIT	APPROX QUANTITIES	DEPT USE ONLY
	ITEM NO	DESC CODE	S.P. NO.				
	450	6054	001	RAIL (TY SSTR) (W/DRAIN SLOTS) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	3,042.000	72
	450	6063	001	RAIL (TY SSTR)(MOD)(ILLUM) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	20.000	73
	454	6018		SEALED EXPANSION JOINT (4 IN) (SEJ - M) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	996.400	74
	462	6002	002	CONC BOX CULV (3 FT X 3 FT) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	448.000	75
	462	6003	002	CONC BOX CULV (4 FT X 2 FT) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	1,916.000	76
	462	6004	002	CONC BOX CULV (4 FT X 3 FT) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	40.000	77
	462	6007	002	CONC BOX CULV (5 FT X 3 FT) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	334.000	78
	462	6008	002	CONC BOX CULV (5 FT X 4 FT) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	107.000	79
	462	6010	002	CONC BOX CULV (6 FT X 3 FT) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	799.000	80
	462	6011	002	CONC BOX CULV (6 FT X 4 FT) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	3,165.000	81
	462	6014	002	CONC BOX CULV (7 FT X 3 FT) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	1,950.000	82
	462	6015	002	CONC BOX CULV (7 FT X 4 FT) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	12,234.000	83

ALT	ITEM-CODE			UNIT BID PRICE ONLY. WRITTEN IN WORDS	UNIT	APPROX QUANTITIES	DEPT USE ONLY
	ITEM NO	DESC CODE	S.P. NO.				
	462	6020	002	CONC BOX CULV (8 FT X 5 FT) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	261.000	84
	462	6021	002	CONC BOX CULV (8 FT X 6 FT) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	29.000	85
	462	6022	002	CONC BOX CULV (8 FT X 7 FT) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	1,107.000	86
	462	6096	002	CONC BOX CULV (8 FT X 3 FT) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	9.000	87
	462	6099	002	CONC BOX CULV (6 FT X 2 FT) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	6.000	88
	462	6101	002	CONC BOX CULV (10 FT X 4 FT) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	752.000	89
	464	6001	001	RC PIPE (CL III)(12 IN) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	15.000	90
	464	6003	001	RC PIPE (CL III)(18 IN) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	66.000	91
	464	6005	001	RC PIPE (CL III)(24 IN) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	3,997.000	92
	464	6007	001	RC PIPE (CL III)(30 IN) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	466.000	93
	464	6008	001	RC PIPE (CL III)(36 IN) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	5.000	94
	464	6012	001	RC PIPE (CL III)(60 IN) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	60.000	95

ALT	ITEM-CODE			UNIT BID PRICE ONLY. WRITTEN IN WORDS	UNIT	APPROX QUANTITIES	DEPT USE ONLY
	ITEM NO	DESC CODE	S.P. NO.				
	464	6018	001	RC PIPE (CL IV)(24 IN)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	250.000	96
	464	6019	001	RC PIPE (CL IV)(30 IN)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	6.000	97
	464	6051	001	RC PIPE (CL IV) (54 IN)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	5.000	98
	465	6010	001	JCTBOX(COMPL)(PJB)(5FTX6FT)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	1.000	99
	465	6012	001	JCTBOX(COMPL)(PJB)(8FTX8FT)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	1.000	100
	465	6166	001	INLET (COMPL)(TY AAD)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	17.000	101
	465	6167	001	INLET (COMPL)(TY AD)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	4.000	102
	465	6170	001	INLET (COMPL)(TY AZ)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	4.000	103
	465	6171	001	INLET (COMPL)(TY AZR)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	2.000	104
	465	6172	001	INLET (COMPL)(TY AZR2G)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	6.000	105
	465	6173	001	MANH (COMPL)(TY A)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	9.000	106
	465	6175	001	INLET (COMPL)(CURB)(TY C)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	1.000	107

ALT	ITEM-CODE			UNIT BID PRICE ONLY. WRITTEN IN WORDS	UNIT	APPROX QUANTITIES	DEPT USE ONLY
	ITEM NO	DESC CODE	S.P. NO.				
	465	6177	001	INLET (COMPL)(TY AZ2G)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	14.000	108
	465	6210	001	INLET (COMPL)(TY C)(5')  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	6.000	109
	465	6225	001	JCT BOX (COMPL)(SPL)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	29.000	110
	465	6240	001	INLET (COMPL)(TY C1)(STAGE II)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	15.000	111
	465	6259	001	INLET (COMPL)(EXT TY C)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	4.000	112
	465	6274	001	MANH (COMPL)(RISER ONLY)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	13.000	113
	465	6279	001	INLET (COMPL)(TY C)(MOD)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	1.000	114
	465	6316	001	INLET (COMPL)(TRENCH DRAIN)(40')  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	1.000	115
	465	6512	001	JUNCT BOX (COMPL)(JB)(3FT X 3FT)(FTW)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	4.000	116
	465	6517	001	JUNCT BOX (COMPL)(JB)(5FT X 5FT)(FTW)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	4.000	117
	465	6532	001	JUNCT BOX (COMPL)(JB)(8FT X 8FT)(FTW)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	6.000	118
	465	6544	001	INLET (STG II)(TY AAD)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	2.000	119

ALT	ITEM-CODE			UNIT BID PRICE ONLY. WRITTEN IN WORDS	UNIT	APPROX QUANTITIES	DEPT USE ONLY
	ITEM NO	DESC CODE	S.P. NO.				
	465	6545	001	INLET (STG II)(TY AD)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	12.000	120
	476	6014		JACK BOR OR TUN PIPE(24 IN)(RC)(CL IV)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	400.000	121
	476	6068		JACK BOR TUN BOX CULV (4 FT X 3 FT)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	57.000	122
	476	6089		JACK BOR TUN BOX CULV (8 FT X 6 FT)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	49.000	123
	479	6001		ADJUSTING MANHOLES  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	1.000	124
	479	6003		ADJUSTING MANHOLES & INLETS  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	10.000	125
	496	6002		REMOV STR (INLET)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	21.000	126
	496	6003		REMOV STR (MANHOLE)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	6.000	127
	496	6004		REMOV STR (SET)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	1.000	128
	496	6006		REMOV STR (HEADWALL)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	1.000	129
	496	6007		REMOV STR (PIPE)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	1,317.000	130
	496	6040		REMOV STR (RET WALL)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	154.000	131

ALT	ITEM-CODE			UNIT BID PRICE ONLY. WRITTEN IN WORDS	UNIT	APPROX QUANTITIES	DEPT USE ONLY
	ITEM NO	DESC CODE	S.P. NO.				
	500	6001		MOBILIZATION  DOLLARS and CENTS	LS	1.000	132
	502	6001	008	BARRICADES, SIGNS AND TRAFFIC HAN- DLING  DOLLARS and CENTS	MO	30.000	133
	506	6001	005	ROCK FILTER DAMS (INSTALL) (TY 1)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	270.000	134
	506	6011	005	ROCK FILTER DAMS (REMOVE)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	270.000	135
	506	6020	005	CONSTRUCTION EXITS (INSTALL) (TY 1)  DOLLARS and CENTS	SY	2,886.000	136
	506	6024	005	CONSTRUCTION EXITS (REMOVE)  DOLLARS and CENTS	SY	2,886.000	137
	506	6035	005	SANDBAGS FOR EROSION CONTROL  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	479.000	138
	506	6038	005	TEMP SEDMT CONT FENCE (INSTALL)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	11,865.000	139
	506	6039	005	TEMP SEDMT CONT FENCE (REMOVE)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	11,865.000	140
	506	6041	005	BIODEG EROSN CONT LOGS (INSTL) (12")  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	3,626.000	141
	506	6043	005	BIODEG EROSN CONT LOGS (REMOVE)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	1,052.000	142
	508	6001		CONSTRUCTING DETOURS  DOLLARS and CENTS	SY	605.000	143



ALT	ITEM-CODE			UNIT BID PRICE ONLY. WRITTEN IN WORDS	UNIT	APPROX QUANTITIES	DEPT USE ONLY
	ITEM NO	DESC CODE	S.P. NO.				
	512	6013		PORT CTB (DES SOURCE)(SGL SLP)(TY 1) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	54,030.000	144
	512	6021		PORT CTB (DES SOURCE)(LOW PROF)(TY 1) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	6,420.000	145
	512	6022		PORT CTB (DES SOURCE)(LOW PROF)(TY 2) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	120.000	146
	512	6025		PORT CTB (MOVE)(SGL SLP)(TY 1) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	22,290.000	147
	512	6033		PORT CTB (MOVE)(LOW PROF)(TY 1) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	4,740.000	148
	512	6034		PORT CTB (MOVE)(LOW PROF)(TY 2) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	120.000	149
	512	6037		PORT CTB (STKPL)(SGL SLP)(TY 1) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	54,030.000	150
	512	6045		PORT CTB (STKPL)(LOW PROF)(TY 1) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	6,420.000	151
	512	6046		PORT CTB (STKPL)(LOW PROF)(TY 2) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	120.000	152
	514	6001		PERM CTB (SGL SLOPE) (TY 1) (42 ) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	5,550.000	153
	514	6003		PERM CTB (SGL SLOPE) (TY 3) (42 ) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	360.000	154
	514	6013		PERM CTB (F-SHAPE) (TY 1) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	303.920	155

ALT	ITEM-CODE			UNIT BID PRICE ONLY. WRITTEN IN WORDS	UNIT	APPROX QUANTITIES	DEPT USE ONLY
	ITEM NO	DESC CODE	S.P. NO.				
	529	6005		CONC CURB (MONO) (TY II)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	11,954.000	156
	529	6011		CONC CURB (DOWEL)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	10,402.000	157
	530	6004		DRIVEWAYS (CONC)  DOLLARS and CENTS	SY	649.000	158
	531	6002		CONC SIDEWALKS (5")  DOLLARS and CENTS	SY	5,341.000	159
	531	6004		CURB RAMPS (TY 1)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	3.000	160
	531	6016		CURB RAMPS (TY 21)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	8.000	161
	540	6002	001	MTL W-BEAM GD FEN (STEEL POST)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	2,751.000	162
	540	6006	001	MTL BEAM GD FEN TRANS (THRIE-BEAM)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	12.000	163
	540	6016	001	DOWNSTREAM ANCHOR TERMINAL SEC- TION  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	13.000	164
	540	6022	001	MTL THRIE-BEAM GD FEN (STEEL POST)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	1.000	165
	542	6001		REMOVE METAL BEAM GUARD FENCE  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	4,677.000	166
	542	6002		REMOVE TERMINAL ANCHOR SECTION  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	28.000	167

ALT	ITEM-CODE			UNIT BID PRICE ONLY. WRITTEN IN WORDS	UNIT	APPROX QUANTITIES	DEPT USE ONLY
	ITEM NO	DESC CODE	S.P. NO.				
	542	6003		REMOVE DOWNSTREAM ANCHOR TERMINAL  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	26.000	168
	543	6002		CABLE BARRIER SYSTEM (TL-4)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	18,063.000	169
	543	6020		CABLE BARRIER TERMINAL SECTION (TL-4)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	12.000	170
	544	6001		GUARDRAIL END TREATMENT (INSTALL)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	21.000	171
	544	6003		GUARDRAIL END TREATMENT (REMOVE)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	3.000	172
	545	6005		CRASH CUSH ATTEN (REMOVE)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	45.000	173
	545	6007		CRASH CUSH ATTEN (INSTL)(L)(N)(TL3)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	7.000	174
	545	6022		CRASH CUSH ATTEN (INSTL)(S)(W)(TL3)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	45.000	175
	610	6042		IN RD IL AM (TY SP) 38S-8 (250W) S  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	3.000	176
	610	6104		IN RD IL (U/P) (TY 1) (150W EQ) LED  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	35.000	177
	610	6214		IN RD IL (TY SA) 40T-8 (250W EQ) LED  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	40.000	178
	610	6215		IN RD IL (TY SA) 40T-8-8 (250W EQ) LED  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	4.000	179

ALT	ITEM-CODE			UNIT BID PRICE ONLY. WRITTEN IN WORDS	UNIT	APPROX QUANTITIES	DEPT USE ONLY
	ITEM NO	DESC CODE	S.P. NO.				
	618	6023		CONDT (PVC) (SCH 40) (2")  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	11,108.000	180
	618	6029		CONDT (PVC) (SCH 40) (3")  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	4,435.000	181
	618	6046		CONDT (PVC) (SCH 80) (2")  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	460.000	182
	618	6047		CONDT (PVC) (SCH 80) (2") (BORE)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	575.000	183
	618	6053		CONDT (PVC) (SCH 80) (3")  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	770.000	184
	618	6054		CONDT (PVC) (SCH 80) (3") (BORE)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	4,999.000	185
	618	6062		CONDT (RM) (3/4")  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	2,716.000	186
	618	6074		CONDT (RM) (3")  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	1,578.000	187
	620	6002		ELEC CONDR (NO.14) INSULATED  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	33,862.000	188
	620	6007		ELEC CONDR (NO.8) BARE  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	14,534.000	189
	620	6008		ELEC CONDR (NO.8) INSULATED  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	29,068.000	190
	620	6009		ELEC CONDR (NO.6) BARE  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	5,688.000	191

ALT	ITEM-CODE			UNIT BID PRICE ONLY. WRITTEN IN WORDS	UNIT	APPROX QUANTITIES	DEPT USE ONLY
	ITEM NO	DESC CODE	S.P. NO.				
	620	6010		ELEC CONDR (NO.6) INSULATED DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	11,336.000	192
	620	6011		ELEC CONDR (NO.4) BARE DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	1,439.000	193
	620	6012		ELEC CONDR (NO.4) INSULATED DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	2,878.000	194
	624	6002		GROUND BOX TY A (122311)W/APRON DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	31.000	195
	624	6009		GROUND BOX TY D (162922) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	9.000	196
	624	6010		GROUND BOX TY D (162922)W/APRON DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	9.000	197
	628	6001		RELOCATE ELECTRICAL SERVICES DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	1.000	198
	628	6045		ELC SRV TY A 240/480 060(NS)SS(E)SP(O) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	11.000	199
	628	6157		ELC SRV TY D 120/240 060(SS)SS(E)SP(O) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	1.000	200
	628	6250		ELC SRV TY D 120/240 100(NS)SS(N)SP(O) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	16.000	201
	636	6003	001	ALUMINUM SIGNS (TY O) DOLLARS and CENTS	SF	7,039.000	202
	644	6001		IN SM RD SN SUP&AM TY10BWG(1)SA(P) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	27.000	203

ALT	ITEM-CODE			UNIT BID PRICE ONLY. WRITTEN IN WORDS	UNIT	APPROX QUANTITIES	DEPT USE ONLY
	ITEM NO	DESC CODE	S.P. NO.				
	644	6004		IN SM RD SN SUP&AM TY10BWG(1)SA(T) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	13.000	204
	644	6012		IN SM RD SN SUP&AM TY10BWG(1)SB(T) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	8.000	205
	644	6030		IN SM RD SN SUP&AM TYS80(1)SA(T) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	12.000	206
	644	6033		IN SM RD SN SUP&AM TYS80(1)SA(U) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	2.000	207
	644	6036		IN SM RD SN SUP&AM TYS80(1)SA(U-BM) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	2.000	208
	644	6042		IN SM RD SN SUP&AM TYS80(1)SB(T) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	2.000	209
	644	6044		IN SM RD SN SUP&AM TYS80(1)SB(U) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	1.000	210
	644	6066		IN SM RD SN SUP&AM (RAIL MOUNT) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	1.000	211
	644	6068		RELOCATE SM RD SN SUP&AM TY 10BWG DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	2.000	212
	644	6076		REMOVE SM RD SN SUP&AM DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	74.000	213
	647	6002		RELOCATE LRSA DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	3.000	214
	647	6003		REMOVE LRSA DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	2.000	215

ALT	ITEM-CODE			UNIT BID PRICE ONLY. WRITTEN IN WORDS	UNIT	APPROX QUANTITIES	DEPT USE ONLY
	ITEM NO	DESC CODE	S.P. NO.				
	650	6021	001	INS OH SN SUP(25 FT BAL TEE) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	3.000	216
	650	6028	001	INS OH SN SUP(30 FT BAL TEE) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	5.000	217
	650	6032	001	INS OH SN SUP(30 FT CANT) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	1.000	218
	650	6035	001	INS OH SN SUP(35 FT BAL TEE) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	2.000	219
	650	6045	001	INS OH SN SUP(40 FT CANT) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	9.000	220
	650	6089	001	INS OH SN SUP(80 FT BRDG) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	1.000	221
	650	6099	001	INS OH SN SUP(90 FT BRDG) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	2.000	222
	650	6109	001	INS OH SN SUP(100 FT BRDG) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	2.000	223
	650	6119	001	INS OH SN SUP(110 FT BRDG) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	1.000	224
	650	6204	001	REMOVE OVERHD SIGN SUP DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	29.000	225
	654	6004	001	SIGN WALKWAY (36 IN) WITH HNDRL DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	62.000	226
	658	6013		INSTL DEL ASSM (D-SW)SZ (BRF)CTB DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	162.000	227

ALT	ITEM-CODE			UNIT BID PRICE ONLY. WRITTEN IN WORDS	UNIT	APPROX QUANTITIES	DEPT USE ONLY
	ITEM NO	DESC CODE	S.P. NO.				
	658	6015		INSTL DEL ASSM (D-SW)SZ (BRF)GF1 DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	26.000	228
	658	6069		INSTL DEL ASSM (D-SW)SZ (BRF)CTB (BR) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	10.000	229
	662	6060		WK ZN PAV MRK REMOV (W)4"(BRK) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	36,359.000	230
	662	6063		WK ZN PAV MRK REMOV (W)4"(SLD) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	155,002.000	231
	662	6071		WK ZN PAV MRK REMOV (W)8"(SLD) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	384.000	232
	662	6095		WK ZN PAV MRK REMOV (Y)4"(SLD) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	101,059.000	233
	666	6225	007	PAVEMENT SEALER 6" DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	196,253.000	234
	666	6226	007	PAVEMENT SEALER 8" DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	24,005.000	235
	666	6228	007	PAVEMENT SEALER 12" DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	4,611.000	236
	666	6230	007	PAVEMENT SEALER 24" DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	1,131.000	237
	672	6007	001	REFL PAV MRKR TY I-C DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	111.000	238
	672	6010	001	REFL PAV MRKR TY II-C-R DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	141.000	239



ALT	ITEM-CODE			UNIT BID PRICE ONLY. WRITTEN IN WORDS	UNIT	APPROX QUANTITIES	DEPT USE ONLY
	ITEM NO	DESC CODE	S.P. NO.				
	677	6001		ELIM EXT PAV MRK & MRKS (4") DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	290,372.000	240
	677	6003		ELIM EXT PAV MRK & MRKS (8") DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	384.000	241
	678	6002		PAV SURF PREP FOR MRK (6") DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	8,124.000	242
	678	6004		PAV SURF PREP FOR MRK (8") DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	2,576.000	243
	678	6008		PAV SURF PREP FOR MRK (24") DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	103.000	244
	678	6009		PAV SURF PREP FOR MRK (ARROW) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	13.000	245
	678	6016		PAV SURF PREP FOR MRK (WORD) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	13.000	246
	678	6035		PAV SURF PREP FOR MRK (BLAST CLN)(6") DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	196,253.000	247
	678	6036		PAV SURF PREP FOR MRK (BLAST CLN)(8") DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	24,005.000	248
	678	6037		PAV SURF PREP FOR MRK (BLAST CLN)(12") DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	4,611.000	249
	678	6038		PAV SURF PREP FOR MRK (BLAST CLN)(24") DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	1,131.000	250
	678	6039		PV SURF PREP FOR MRK (BLST CLN)(ARRWS) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	76.000	251

ALT	ITEM-CODE			UNIT BID PRICE ONLY. WRITTEN IN WORDS	UNIT	APPROX QUANTITIES	DEPT USE ONLY
	ITEM NO	DESC CODE	S.P. NO.				
	678	6040		PV SURF PREP MRKS (BLST CLN)(DBL ARW) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	5.000	252
	678	6045		PV SURF PRP FOR MRK (BLST CLN)(WORDS) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	40.000	253
	680	6011	006	INSTALL HWY TRF SIG (UPGRADE) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	5.000	254
	685	6004		INSTL RDS D FLSH BCN ASSM (SOLAR PWRD) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	4.000	255
	685	6006		REMOV RDS D FLSH BCN AM (SOLAR PWRD) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	2.000	256
	687	6001		PED POLE ASSEMBLY DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	15.000	257
	688	6001		PED DETECT PUSH BUTTON (APS) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	2.000	258
	688	6003		PED DETECTOR CONTROLLER UNIT DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	2.000	259
	690	6127		REMOVE LUMINAIRE POLE DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	17.000	260
	3021	6001		WIDE FLANGE PAVEMENT TERMINALS DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	227.000	261
	4006	6006		SOUND WALL (12 FT) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	2,042.000	262

ALT	ITEM-CODE			UNIT BID PRICE ONLY. WRITTEN IN WORDS	UNIT	APPROX QUANTITIES	DEPT USE ONLY
	ITEM NO	DESC CODE	S.P. NO.				
	4006	6010		SOUND WALL (16FT)(HORIZ SCHEME) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	573.150	263
	4021	6001		TIP TESTING(DRILL SHAFT) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	8.000	264
	6001	6001		PORTABLE CHANGEABLE MESSAGE SIGN DOLLARS and CENTS	DAY	32.000	265
	6007	6062		FO CBL (72 SMF) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	73,288.000	266
	6008	6039		ITS GRND MNT CAB (TY 6) (CONF 1) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	1.000	267
	6008	6048		COMMUNICATION CABINET FOUNDATION DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	1.000	268
	6010	6002		CCTV FIELD EQUIPMENT (DIGITAL) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	6.000	269
	6010	6004		CCTV MOUNT (POLE) DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	6.000	270
	6010	6013		REMOVE CCTV FIELD EQUIPMENT DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	3.000	271
	6016	6006		ITS MULTI-DUCT CND (PVC-40) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	57,198.000	272
	6016	6011		ITS MULTI-DUCT CND (PVC-80)(BORE) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	9,254.000	273
	6027	6003		CONDUIT (PREPARE) DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	665.000	274

ALT	ITEM-CODE			UNIT BID PRICE ONLY. WRITTEN IN WORDS	UNIT	APPROX QUANTITIES	DEPT USE ONLY
	ITEM NO	DESC CODE	S.P. NO.				
	6027	6008		GROUND BOX (PREPARE)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	28.000	275
	6028	6001		INSTALL DMS (POLE MTD CABINET)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	2.000	276
	6037	6023		REFL PAV MRKR TY II C-R  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	3,398.000	277
	6038	6004		MULTIPOLYMER PAV MRK (W)(6")(SLD)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	62,834.000	278
	6038	6005		MULTIPOLYMER PAV MRK (W)(6")(BRK)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	35,661.000	279
	6038	6007		MULTIPOLYMER PAV MRK (W)(8")(SLD)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	26,491.000	280
	6038	6011		MULTIPOLYMER PAV MRK (W)(12")(SLD)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	5,153.000	281
	6038	6012		MULTIPOLYMER PAV MRK (W)(12")(LNDP)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	90.000	282
	6038	6013		MULTIPOLYMER PAV MRK (W)(24")(SLD)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	1,234.000	283
	6038	6017		MULTIPOLYMER PAV MRK (Y)(6")(SLD)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	71,701.000	284
	6038	6024		MULTIPOLYMER PAV MRK (BLK)(6")(BRK)  DOLLARS and CENTS	LF	34,181.000	285
	6038	6025		MULTIYPOLYMER PAV MRK (W) (ARROW)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	107.000	286

ALT	ITEM-CODE			UNIT BID PRICE ONLY. WRITTEN IN WORDS	UNIT	APPROX QUANTITIES	DEPT USE ONLY
	ITEM NO	DESC CODE	S.P. NO.				
	6038	6026		MULTIPOLYMER PAV MRK (W) (DBL ARROW)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	13.000	287
	6038	6027		MULTIPOLYMER PAV MRK (W) (WORD)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	68.000	288
	6038	6029		MULTIPOLYMER PAV MRK (W)(U-TURN ARROW)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	1.000	289
	6064	6046	001	ITS POLE (55 FT)(90 MPH)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	6.000	290
	6064	6084	001	ITS POLE MNT CAB (TY 2)(CONF 2)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	6.000	291
	6185	6003	002	TMA (MOBILE OPERATION)  DOLLARS and CENTS	HR	10.000	292
	6186	6002		ITS GND BOX(PCAST) TY 1 (243636)W/APRN  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	117.000	293
	6292	6004		RVDS(PRESENCE DET ONLY)(INSTALL ONLY)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	6.000	294
	6292	6005		RVDS(ADVANCE DET ONLY)(INSTALL ONLY)  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	2.000	295
	6304	6001		ITS RVSD (DATA COLLECT ONLY) SYS  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	6.000	296
	6366	6001		INST WRONG WAY DRIVER SYSTEM EQUIP- MENT  DOLLARS and CENTS	EA	9.000	297

# **CERTIFICATION OF INTEREST IN OTHER BID PROPOSALS FOR THIS WORK**

By signing this proposal, the bidding firm and the signer certify that the following information, as indicated by checking "Yes" or "No" below, is true, accurate, and complete.

- A. Quotation(s) have been issued in this firm's name to other firm(s) interested in this work for consideration for performing a portion of this work.

\_\_\_\_\_ YES

\_\_\_\_\_ NO

- B. If this proposal is the low bid, the bidder agrees to provide the following information prior to award of the contract.

1. Identify firms which bid as a prime contractor and from which the bidder received quotations for work on this project.
2. Identify all the firms which bid as a prime contractor to which the bidder gave quotations for work on this project.

# DISCLOSURE OF LOBBYING ACTIVITIES

Complete this form to disclose lobbying activities pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 1352 (See reverse for public burden disclosure.)

<p>1. Type of Federal Action:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. contract</li> <li>b. grant</li> <li>c. cooperative agreement</li> <li>d. loan</li> <li>e. loan guarantee</li> <li>f. loan insurance</li> </ul>	<p>2. Status of Federal Action:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. bid/offer/application</li> <li>b. initial award</li> <li>c. post-award</li> </ul>	<p>3. Report Type:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. initial filing</li> <li>b. grant</li> </ul> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">For material change only:  year _____ quarter _____  date of last report _____</p>
<p>4. Name and Address of Reporting Entity:</p> <p>? Prime                      ? Subawardee</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">Tier _____, if known:</p> <p><b>Congressional District</b>, if known:</p>		<p>5. <b>If Reporting Entity in No. 4 is Subawardee</b>, Enter Name and Address of Prime:</p> <p><b>Congressional District</b>, if known:</p>
<p>6. Federal Department/Agency:</p>	<p>7. Federal Program Name/Description:</p> <p>CFDA Number, if applicable: _____</p>	
<p>8. Federal Action Number, if known:</p>	<p>9. Award Amount, if known:</p> <p>\$ _____</p>	
<p>10. a. Name and Address of Lobbying Entity (if individual, last name, first name, MI):</p>		<p>b. Individuals Performing Services (including address if different from No. 10a) (last name, first name, MI):</p>
<p>(attach Continuation Sheet(s) SF-LLL-A, if necessary)</p>		
<p>11. Amount of Payment (check all that apply):</p> <p>\$ _____ actual                      planned</p>	<p>13. Type of Payment (check all that apply):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. retainer</li> <li>b. one-time fee</li> <li>c. commission</li> <li>d. contingent fee</li> <li>e. deferred</li> <li>f. other; specify: _____</li> </ul>	
<p>12. Form of Payment (check all that apply)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. cash</li> <li>b. in-kind; specify:                      nature _____</li> <li style="margin-left: 40px;">value _____</li> </ul>		
<p>14. Brief Description of Services Performed or to be Performed and Date(s) of Service, including officer(s), employee(s), or Member(s) contacted, for Payment Indicated in Item 11:</p> <p>(attach Continuation Sheet(s) SF-LLL-A, if necessary)</p>		
<p>15. Continuation Sheet(s) SF-LLL-A attached:                      ? Yes                      ? No</p>		
<p>16. Information requested through this form is authorized by title 31 U.S.C. section 1352. This disclosure of lobbying activities is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed by the tier above when this transaction was made or entered into. This disclosure is required pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 1352. This information will be reported to the Congress semi-annually and will be available for public inspection. Any person who fails to file the required disclosure shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than \$10,000 and not more than \$100,000 for each such failure.</p>	<p>Signature: _____</p> <p>Print Name: _____</p> <p>Title: _____</p> <p>Telephone No: _____ Date: _____</p>	
<p>FEDERAL USE ONLY</p>		<p>Authorized for Local Reproduction Standard Form - LLL</p>

## **INSTRUCTIONS FOR COMPLETION OF SF-LLL, DISCLOSURE OF LOBBYING ACTIVITIES**

This disclosure form shall be completed by the reporting entity, whether subawardee or prime Federal recipient, at the initiation or receipt of a covered Federal action, or a material change to a previous filing, pursuant to title 31 U.S.C section 1352. The filing of a form is required for each payment or agreement to make payment to any lobbying entity for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with a covered Federal action. Use the SF-LLL-A Continuation Sheet for additional information if the space on the form is inadequate. Complete all items that apply for both the initial filing and material change report. Refer to the implementing guidance published by the Office of Management and Budget for additional information.

1. Identify the type of covered Federal action for which lobbying activity is and/or has been secured to influence the outcome of a covered Federal action.
2. Identify the status of the covered Federal action.
3. Identify the appropriate classification of this report. If this is a follow-up report caused by a material change to the information previously reported, enter the year and quarter in which the change occurred. Enter the date of the last previously submitted report by this reporting entity or this covered Federal action.
4. Enter the full name, address, city, state and zip code of the reporting entity. Include Congressional District, if known. Check the appropriate classification of the reporting entity that designates if it is, or expects to be, a prime or subaward recipient. Identify the tier of the subawardee, e.g., the first subawardee of the prime is the 1st tier. Subawards include but are not limited to subcontracts, subgrants and contract awards under grants.
5. If the organization filing the report in item 4 checks "Subawardee", then enter the full name, address, city, state and zip code of the prime Federal recipient. Include Congressional District, if known.
6. Enter the name of the Federal agency making the award or loan commitment. Include at least one organizational level below agency name, if known. For example, Department of Transportation, United States Coast Guard.
7. Enter the Federal program name or description for the covered Federal action (item 1). If known, enter the full Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance (CFDA) number for grants, cooperative agreements, loans, and loan commitments.
8. Enter the most appropriate Federal identifying number available for the Federal action identified in item 1 (e.g., Request for Proposal (RFP) number; Invitation for Bid (IFB) number; grant announcement number, the contract, grant, or loan award number; the application/proposal control number assigned by the Federal agency). Include prefixes, e.g., "RFP-DE-90-001."
9. For a covered Federal action where there has been an award or loan commitment by the Federal agency, enter the Federal amount of the award/loan commitment for the prime entity identified in item 4 or 5.
10. (a) Enter the full name, address, city, state and zip code of the lobbying entity engaged by the reporting entity identified in item 4 to influence the covered Federal action.  
(b) Enter the full names of the individual(s) performing services, and include full address if different from 10(a). Enter Last Name, First Name, and Middle Initial (MI).
11. Enter the amount of compensation paid or reasonably expected to be paid by the reporting entity (item 4) to the lobbying entity (item 10). Indicate whether the payment has been made (actual) or will be made (planned). Check all boxes that apply. If this is a material change report, enter the cumulative amount of payment made or planned to be made.
12. Check the appropriate box(es). Check all boxes that apply. If payment is made through an in-kind contribution, specify the nature and value of the in-kind payment.
13. Check the appropriate box(es). Check all boxes that apply. If other, specify nature.
14. Provide a specific and detailed description of the services that the lobbyist has performed, or will be expected to perform, and the date(s) of any services rendered. Include all preparatory and related activity, not just time spent in actual contact with Federal officials. Identify the Federal official(s) or employee(s) contacted or the officer(s), employee(s), or Member(s) of Congress that were contacted.
15. Check whether or not a SF-LLL-A Continuation Sheet(s) is attached.
16. The certifying official shall sign and date the form, print his/her name, title, and telephone number.

Public reporting burden for this collection of information is estimated to average 30 minutes per response, including time for reviewing instructions, searching existing data sources, gathering and maintaining the data needed, and completing and reviewing the collection of information. Send comments regarding the burden estimate or any other aspect of this collection of information, including suggestions for reducing this burden, to the Office of Management and Budget, Paperwork Reduction Project (0348-0046), Washington, D.C. 20503.



**DISCLOSURE OF LOBBYING ACTIVITIES**

Approved by OMB

0348-0046

**CONTINUATION SHEET**

Reporting Entity: \_\_\_\_\_ Page \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_

# CONTRACTOR'S ASSURANCE

(Subcontracts-Federal Aid Projects)

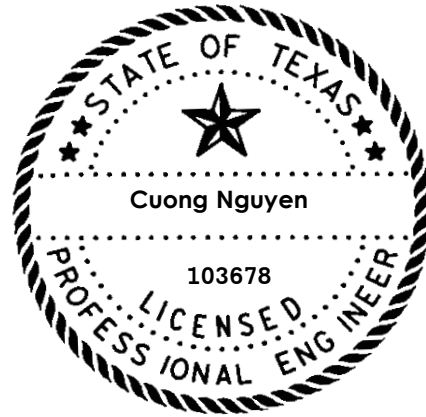
By signing this proposal, the contractor is giving assurances that all subcontract agreements will incorporate the Standard Specification and Special Provisions to Section 9.9., Payment Provisions for Subcontractors, all subcontract agreements exceeding \$2,000 will incorporate the applicable Wage Determination Decision, and all subcontract agreements will incorporate the following:

Special Provision	Certification of Nondiscrimination in Employment
Special Provision	Notice of Requirement for Affirmative Action to Ensure Equal Employment Opportunity (Executive Order 11246)
Special Provision	Standard Federal Equal Employment Opportunity
Construction	Construction Specifications (Executive Order 11246)
Form FHWA 1273	Required Contract Provisions Federal-aid Construction Contracts (Form FHWA 1273 must also be physically attached to subcontracts and all lower-tier subcontracts)
Special Provision	Nondiscrimination (Include provisions of Sections 3.1 – 3.6 in all subcontracts and agreements for materials)
Special Provision	Cargo Preference Act Requirements in Federal-Aid Contracts
Special Provision	Disadvantaged Business Enterprise in Federal-Aid Contracts

# ENGINEER SEAL

Control 3510-04-019, ETC.  
Project STP 2022(936)MM, ETC.  
Highway SH 99  
County FORT BEND, ETC.

The enclosed Texas Department of Transportation Specifications, Special Specifications, Special Provisions, General Notes and Specification Data in this document have been selected by me, or under my responsible supervision as being applicable to this project. Alteration of a sealed document without proper notification to the responsible engineer is an offense under the Texas Engineering Practice Act.



The seal appearing on this document was authorized by  
*Cuong Nguyen, P.E.*  
JUNE 01, 2022

**County:** Fort Bend, etc.

**SHEET**

**Highway:** SH 99

**Control:** 3510-04-019, etc.

**General Notes:**

**General:**

Contractor questions on this project are to be addressed to the following individual(s):

Area Engineer: Carlos M. Zepeda, P.E. (Carlos.Zepeda@txdot.gov)

Assistant Area Engineer: Daniel Dvorak, P.E. (Daniel.Dvorak@txdot.gov)

Contractor questions will be accepted through email, phone, and in person by the above individuals. Contractor questions will be reviewed by the Area Engineer or Assistant Area Engineer. Once a response is developed, it will be posted to TxDOT's Public FTP at the following address:

<https://ftp.dot.state.tx.us/pub/txdot-info/Pre-Letting%20Responses/>

Questions submitted that generate a response will be posted through this site. The site is organized by District, Project Type (Construction or Maintenance), Letting Date, and CCSJ/Project Name.

Unless otherwise shown on the plans, RAP generated by this project will become the property of the Contractor for use in the current construction project or in future projects.

If fixed features require, the governing slopes shown may vary between the limits shown and to the extent determined by the Engineer.

Superelevate the curves to match the existing surface.

Notify the Engineer immediately if discrepancies are discovered in the horizontal control or the benchmark data.

The following standard detail sheets are modified:

**Modified Standards**

CURB INLET TYPE C1 (MOD) (WITH OR WITHOUT EXTENSION)

IGCS (MOD) – CONTINUOUS SLAB DETAILS PRESTRESSED CONCRETE I-GIRDER

IGMS (MOD) – MISCELLANEOUS SLAB DETAILS PRESRESSED CONCRETE I-GIRDER

IGTS (MOD) – THICKENED SLAB END DETAILS PRESTRESSED CONCRETE I-GIRDER

References to manufacturer's trade name or catalog numbers are for the purpose of identification only. Similar materials from other manufacturers are permitted if they are of equal quality, comply with the specifications for this project, and are approved, except for roadway illumination, electrical, and traffic signal items.

The cost for materials, labor, and incidentals to provide for traffic across the roadway and for ingress and egress to private property in accordance with Section 7.2.4 of the standard

specifications is subsidiary to the various bid items. Restore access roadways to their original condition upon completing construction.

Grade street intersections and median openings for surface drainage.

If a foundation is to be placed where a riprap surface or an asphalt concrete surface presently exists, use caution in breaking out the existing surface for placement. Break out no greater area than is required to place the foundation. After placing the foundation, wrap the periphery with 0.5 in. pre-molded mastic expansion joint. Then replace the remaining portion of the broken out surface with Class A or Class C concrete or cold mix asphalt concrete to the exact slope, pattern, and thickness of the existing riprap or asphalt. Payment for breaking out the existing surface, wrapping the foundation, and replacing the surface is subsidiary to the various bid items.

The lengths of the posts for ground mounted signs and the tower legs for the overhead sign supports are approximate. Verify the lengths before ordering these materials to meet the existing field conditions and to conform to the minimum sign mounting heights shown in the plans.

Furnish aluminum Type A signs instead of plywood signs for signs shown on the Summary of Small Signs sheet.

Stencil the National Bridge Inventory (NBI) number on each existing bridge shown on these plans. The NBI number is shown above the title block for each bridge layout.

Clearly mark or highlight on the shop drawings, the items being furnished for this project. Submit required shop drawings in accordance with the shop drawing distribution list shown in the note for Item 5 for review and distribution.

Right of way parcels or utility adjustments shown to be unclear on the plans but not listed on the special provisions will have no effect on construction.

Make requests for additional soil information for this project at the Area Engineer's office.

Any groundwater elevation information provided is representative of conditions existing on the day when and for the specific location where this information was collected. The actual groundwater elevation may fluctuate with time, climatic conditions, and construction activity.

Unless otherwise shown on the plans or otherwise directed, commence work after sunrise and ensure construction equipment is off the road by sunset.

Procure permits and licenses, which are to be issued by the City, County, or Municipal Utility District.

### **General: Roadway Illumination and Electrical**

For roadway illumination and electrical items, use materials from pre-qualified producers as shown on the Construction Division (CST) of the Department's material producers list. Check the latest link on the Department's website for this list. The category/item is "Roadway

**County:** Fort Bend, etc.

**SHEET**

**Highway:** SH 99

**Control:** 3510-04-019, etc.

Illumination and Electrical Supplies.” No substitutions will be allowed for materials found on this list.

Perform electrical work in conformance with the National Electrical Code (NEC) and the Department’s standard sheets.

The Contractor may make the electrical grounding connections and permissible splices using the thermal fusion process, Cadweld, ThermOweld, or approved equal, instead of bolted connections and splices.

The Area Engineer will arrange with the Contractor, an inspection of the completed electrical systems for the highway lighting systems before final acceptance for compliance with plans and specifications. The inspection will be made with personnel from the electrical section of the Department’s District Transportation Operations Office. The city’s electrical division personnel will also inspect lighting systems within the city limits. Portions of the work found to be deficient during this inspection will not be accepted.

#### **General: Traffic Signals**

For traffic signal items, use materials from the Pre-Qualified Producers List (located at <http://www.dot.state.tx.us/GSD/purchasing/supps.htm>) and the materials pre-qualified for illumination and electrical items (located at <http://ftp.dot.state.tx.us/pub/txdot-info/cmd/mpl/riaes.pdf>) as shown on the Department’s Material Producers List and the Roadway Illumination and Electrical Supplies List. Check the latest links on the Department’s website for these lists. No substitutions will be allowed for materials found on these lists.

#### **General: Site Management**

Mow the grass and weeds within the project limits a maximum of 3 times a year as directed. This work is subsidiary to the various bid items.

Mark stations every 100 ft. and maintain the markings for the project duration. Remove the station markings at the completion of the project. This work is subsidiary to the various bid items.

Record the beginning and ending stations of any no passing zones in the field before beginning the overlay. Restripe the no passing zones immediately after the overlay in the same locations, unless otherwise shown in the plans, or otherwise directed. Do not mix or store materials, or store or repair equipment, on top of concrete pavement or bridge decks unless authorized by the Engineer. Permission will be granted to store materials on surfaces if no damage or discoloration will result.

Personal vehicles of employees are not permitted to park within the right of way, including sections closed to public traffic. Employees may park on the right of way at the Contractor’s office, equipment, and materials storage yard sites.

Assume ownership of debris and dispose of at an approved location. Do not dispose of debris on private property unless approved in writing by the District Engineer.

Control the dust caused by construction operations. For sweeping the base material in preparation for laying asphalt and for sweeping the finished concrete pavement, use one of the following types of sweepers or approved equal:

**Tricycle Type**

- Wayne Series 900
- Elgin White Wing
- Elgin Pelican

**Truck Type - 4 Wheel**

- M-B Cruiser II
- Wayne Model 945
- Mobile TE-3
- Mobile TE-4
- Murphy 4042

**General: Traffic Control and Construction**

Schedule construction operations such that preparing individual items of work follows in close sequence to constructing storm drains in order to provide as little inconvenience as practical to the businesses and residents along the project.

Schedule work so that the base placement operations follow the subgrade work as closely as practical to reduce the hazard to the traveling public and to prevent undue delay caused by wet weather.

This project requires extensive grading operations in an environmentally sensitive area.

If relocating mailboxes, place them with the post firmly in the ground at nearby locations. Upon completing the project, the Engineer will locate the final mailbox placement. Perform this work in accordance with the requirements of the Item, "Mailbox Assemblies," except for measurement and payment. This work is subsidiary to the various bid items.

If fences cross construction easements shown on the plans and work is required beyond the fences, remove and replace the fences as directed. This work and the materials are subsidiary to the various bid items.

When design details are not shown on the plans, provide signs and arrows conforming to the latest "Standard Highway Sign Designs for Texas" manual.

**General: Utilities**

Consider the locations of underground utilities depicted in the plans as approximate and employ responsible care to avoid damaging utility facilities. Depending upon scope and magnitude of planned construction activities, advanced field confirmation by the utility owner or operator may be prudent. Where possible, protect and preserve permanent signs, markers, and designations of underground facilities.

**County:** Fort Bend, etc.

**SHEET**

**Highway:** SH 99

**Control:** 3510-04-019, etc.

Level A SUE collected Elevation data from field investigations shown in plans.  
Level C Data was provided from survey and utility as built from utility companies.  
Communication lines buried 36-48" underground; depth provided by utility owners. Contractor is responsible for calling 811 to verify utility line locations prior to any excavation.

If the Contractor damages or causes damage (breaks, leaks, nicks, dents, gouges, etc.) to the utility, contact the utility facility owner or operator immediately.

AT&T estimates to complete their relocations by January 31<sup>st</sup> 2023 at station 1470+25 and 1573+17. Contact Rayford Tate at [RT6787@att.com](mailto:RT6787@att.com) with any questions.

Consolidated estimates to complete their relocations by January 31<sup>st</sup> 2023 at station 1361+40, 1545+42 and 1573+02. Contact Robert Rychlik at 281-396-5074 [Robert.Rychlik@consolidated.com](mailto:Robert.Rychlik@consolidated.com) with any questions.

CenterPoint Gas estimates to complete their relocations by January 31<sup>st</sup> 2023 at station 1470+16 and 1517+90. Please Contact Katie Sorge at 225-274-5773/ [katie.sorge@centerpointenergy.com](mailto:katie.sorge@centerpointenergy.com) with any questions.

Comcast estimates to complete their relocations by January 31<sup>st</sup> 2023 at station 1573+16. Contact Dana Moreno at 281-253-3962/ [Dana\\_Moreno@comcast.com](mailto:Dana_Moreno@comcast.com) with any questions.

PS Light Wave estimates to complete their relocations by January 31<sup>st</sup> 2023 at station 1584+85. Contact Emmanuel Maldonado at 832-917-5566/ [emaldonado@pslightwave.com](mailto:emaldonado@pslightwave.com) with any questions.

Cimmaron MUD estimates to complete their relocations by January 31<sup>st</sup> 2023 at station 1596+38. Contact Eric Comparan at 281-290-6500/ [Ecomparan@mdswater.com](mailto:Ecomparan@mdswater.com) with any questions.

MUD 4 estimates to complete their relocations of their 18" Sanitary Line by January 31<sup>st</sup> 2023 at station 1361+56. Contact Charlie Chapman at 713-724-6989 with any questions.

For construction over Enterprise Crude line at Station 1502+72, Place a One-Call to 811 at least two working days before excavation is scheduled to begin. Wait the required amount of time for the lines to be marked. Respect the line markers.

For construction over Kinder Morgan's Pipelines at station 1502+55 and station 1438+15, the construction contractor must follow the attached KM Guidelines, abide to Industry/Regulatory standards, and notify the appropriate Kinder Morgan operations office and issue a "Texas One Call" phone No. 811 prior to construction to schedule a Kinder Morgan Damage Prevention inspector to be on location when work is being conducted within 25' of the high pressure pipelines. The Kinder Morgan operations contact is Leonard Kluth 1-281-886-1803.

For Construction over Atmos Pipeline at station 1326+00, Please contact Texas 811 for line locates 72 hours prior to excavation. A representative with the Atmos Energy Damage



Prevention team will then contact you to schedule an onsite meeting in advance of excavation activities within the vicinity of Atmos Energy facilities.

For construction over Energy Transfer/Houston Pipeline at station 1437+81, ET shall be notified at least 48 hours in advance of any construction or maintenance activity. You must contact the State approved notification center at 811, in addition to contacting ET's field representative Mr. Kory Parton at (281) 850-1417 before commencing any Crossing at or near ET's Pipeline Facility.

For construction over DOW Pipeline at station 1331+23, facility Owner must notify Company's Field Technician at least 72 hours prior to any work near Company's pipeline(s). Contact for Company is: Dustin Mercado, Field Tech - 979-264-9418

Be aware that an operational Computerized Transportation Management System (CTMS) exists within the limits of this project and that the system must remain operational throughout construction. If the Contractor damages or causes damage to this system, repair such damage within 8 hours of occurrence at no cost to the Department. In the event of system damage, notify the Director of Traffic Management Systems at 713-881-3283 within one hour of occurrence. Failure of the Contractor to repair damage to the main fiber optic cable and CCTV cable trunk lines, which convey all corridor information to TranStar, will result in the Contractor being billed for the full cost of emergency repairs.

At least 72 hours before starting work, make arrangements for locating existing Department-owned above ground and underground fiber optic, communications, power, illumination, and traffic signal cabling and conduit. Do this by calling the Department's Houston District Traffic Signal Operations Office at 713-802-5662, or by e-mailing the Department's Houston District Traffic Signal Operations Office at [HOU-LocateRequest@txdot.gov](mailto:HOU-LocateRequest@txdot.gov), to schedule marking of underground lines on the ground. Use caution if working in these areas to avoid damaging or interfering with existing facilities.

Notify the Engineer at least 48 hours before constructing junction boxes at storm drain and utility intersections.

Install or remove poles and luminaires located near overhead or underground electrical lines using established industry and utility safety practices. Consult the appropriate utility company before beginning such work.

If overhead or underground power lines need to be de-energized, contact the electrical service provider to perform this work. Costs associated with de-energizing the power lines or other protective measures required are at no expense to the Department.

If working near power lines, comply with the appropriate sections of Texas State Law and Federal Regulations relating to the type of work involved.

Perform electrical work in conformance with the National Electrical Code (NEC) and Department's standard sheets.

County: Fort Bend, etc.

SHEET

Highway: SH 99

Control: 3510-04-019, etc.

Before beginning any underground work, notify the City of Houston’s Chief Inspector, Public Works and Engineering, to establish the locations of any existing electrical systems for lighting facilities within the limits of this project.

**Item 5: Control of Work**

Before contract letting, cross-section data for this project will be available to the prospective bidders in PDF format on the Department’s Houston District website located at:

<https://ftp.dot.state.tx.us/pub/txdot-info/Pre-Letting%20Responses/Houston%20District/Construction%20Projects/>

The cross-section data provided above is for non-construction purposes only and it is the responsibility of the prospective bidder to validate the data with the appropriate plans, specifications, and estimates for the projects.

Submit shop drawings electronically for the fabrication of items as documented in Table 2 below. Information and requirements for electronic submittals can be viewed in the “Guide to Electronic Shop Drawing Submittal” which can be accessed through the following web link, [ftp://ftp.dot.state.tx.us/pub/txdot-info/library/pubs/bus/bridge/e\\_submit\\_guide.pdf](ftp://ftp.dot.state.tx.us/pub/txdot-info/library/pubs/bus/bridge/e_submit_guide.pdf). References to 11 in. x 17 in. sheets in individual specifications for structural items imply electronic CAD sheets.

**Table 2**

**2014 Construction Specification Required Shop/Working Drawing Submittals - Consultant Generated Plans**

Spec Item No.'s	Product	Submittal Required	Approval Required (Y/N)	Contractor/Fabricator P.E. Seal Required	Reviewing Party	Shop or Working Drawing (Note 1)
7.16.1&.2	Construction Load Analyses	Y	Y	Y	D	WD
400	Excavation and Backfill for Structures (cofferdams)	Y	N	Y	D	WD
403	Temporary Special Shoring	Y	N	Y	D	WD
420	Formwork/Falsework	Y	N	Y	D	WD
423	Retaining Walls, (calcs req'd.)	Y	Y	Y	D	SD
425	Optional Design Calculations (Prstrs Bms)	Y	Y	Y	D	SD
425	Prestr Concr Sheet Piling	Y	Y	N	D	SD
425	Prestr Concr Beams	Y	Y	N	D	SD
425	Prestr Concr Bent	Y	Y	N	D	SD
426	Post Tension Details	Y	Y	N	D	SD
434	Elastomeric Bearing Pads (All)	Y	Y	N	D	SD
441	Bridge Protective Assembly	Y	Y	N	D	SD
441	Misc Steel (various steel assemblies)	Y	Y	N	D	SD
441	Steel Pedestals (bridge raising)	Y	Y	N	D	SD
441	Steel Bearings	Y	Y	N	D	SD
441	Steel Bent	Y	Y	N	D	SD
441	Steel Diaphragms	Y	Y	N	D	SD
441	Steel Finger Joint	Y	Y	N	D	SD
441	Steel Plate Girder	Y	Y	N	D	SD
441	Steel Tub-Girders	Y	Y	N	D	SD

441	Erection Plans, including Falsework	Y	N	Y	D	WD
449	Sign Structure Anchor Bolts	Y	Y	N	D	SD
450	Railing	Y	Y	N	D	SD
462	Concrete Box Culvert	Y	Y	N	D	SD
462	Concrete Box Culvert (Alternate Designs Only, calcs req'd.)	Y	Y	Y	D	SD
464	Reinforced Concrete Pipe (Jack and Bore only; ONLY when requested)	Y	Y	Y	D	SD
465	Pre-cast Junction Boxes, Grates, and Inlets	Y	Y	N	D	SD
465	Pre-cast Junction Boxes, Grates, and Inlets (Alternate Designs Only, calcs req'd.)	Y	Y	Y	D	SD
466	Pre-cast Headwalls and Wingwalls	Y	Y	N	D	SD
467	Pre-cast Safety End Treatments	Y	Y	N	D	SD
495	Raising Existing Structure (calcs req'd.)	Y	Y	Y	D	SD
610	Roadway Illumination Supports (Non-Standard only, calcs req'd.)	Y	Y	Y	D	SD
613	High Mast Illumination Poles (Non-standard only, calcs req'd.)	Y	Y	Y	D	SD
627	Treated Timber Poles	Y	Y	N	D	SD
644	Special Non-Standard Supports (Bridge Mounts, Barrier Mounts, Etc.)	Y	Y	Y	D	SD
647	Large Roadside Sign Supports	Y	Y	Y	D	SD
650	Cantilever Sign Structure Supports - Alternate Design Calcs.	Y	Y	Y	D	SD
650	Sign Structures	Y	Y	N	D	SD
680	Installation of Highway Traffic Signals	Y	Y	N	D	SD
682	Vehicle and Pedestrian Signal Heads	Y	Y	N	D	SD
684	Traffic Signal Cables	Y	Y	N	D	SD
685	Roadside Flashing Beacon Assemblies	Y	Y	N	D	SD
686	Traffic Signal Pole Assemblies (Steel) (Non-Standard only)	Y	Y	Y	D	SD
687	Pedestal Pole Assemblies	Y	Y	N	D	SD
688	Detectors	Y	Y	N	D	SD
784	Repairing Steel Bridge Members	Y	Y	Y	D	WD
SS	Prestr Concr Crown Span	Y	Y	N	D	SD
SS	Sound Barrier Walls	Y	Y	Y	D	SD
SS	Camera Poles	Y	Y	Y	TMS	SD
SS	Pedestrian Bridge (Calcs req'd.)	Y	Y	Y	D	SD
SS	Screw-In Type Anchor Foundations	Y	Y	N	D	SD
SS	Fiber Optic/Communication Cable	Y	Y	N	TMS	SD
SS	Spread Spectrum Radios for Signals	Y	Y	N	D	SD
SS	VIVDS System for Signals	Y	Y	N	D	SD
SS	CTMS Equipment	Y	Y	N	TMS	SD

Notes:

County: Fort Bend, etc.

SHEET

Highway: SH 99

Control: 3510-04-019, etc.

1. Document flow for Working Drawings differs from Shop Drawings in that Working Drawings must be submitted to the Engineer rather than the Engineer of Record and they are for the information of the Engineer only; an approval stamp and distribution to all project offices is not required.

**Key to Reviewing Party**

D – Consultant: Submit to Engineer of Record at <a href="mailto:lynn.pipkin@rpsgroup.com">lynn.pipkin@rpsgroup.com</a>	
TMS – Traffic Management System	
Computerized Traffic Management Systems (CTMS)	<a href="mailto:HOU-CTMSShpDrwgs@txdot.gov">HOU-CTMSShpDrwgs@txdot.gov</a>

“When a precast or cast-in-place concrete element is included in the plans, a precast concrete alternate may be submitted in accordance with “Standard Operating Procedure for Alternate Precast Proposal Submission” found online at <https://www.txdot.gov/inside-txdot/forms-publications/consultants-contractors/publications/bridge.html#design>. Acceptance or denial of an alternate is at the sole discretion of the Engineer. Impacts to the project schedule and any additional costs resulting from the use of alternates are the sole responsibility of the Contractor.”

**Item 6: Control of Materials**

To comply with the latest provisions of the Build America, Buy America Act (BABA Act) of the Bipartisan Infrastructure Law, the contractor must submit a notarized original of the TxDOT Construction Material Buy America Certification Form for all items classified as construction materials. This form is not required for materials classified as a manufactured product.

Refer to the Buy America Material Classification Sheet for clarification on material categorization.

The Buy America Material Classification Sheet is located at the below link.

<https://www.txdot.gov/business/resources/materials/buy-america-material-classification-sheet.html> for clarification on material categorization.

**Item 7: Legal Relations and Responsibilities**

Do not initiate activities in a Project Specific Location (PSL), associated with a U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) permit area, that have not been previously evaluated by the USACE as part of the permit review of this project. Such activities include those pertaining to, but are not limited to, haul roads, equipment staging areas, borrow and disposal sites. Associated defined here means materials are delivered to or from the PSL. The permit area includes the waters of the U.S. or associated wetlands affected by activities associated with this project. Special restrictions may be required for such work. Assume responsibility for consultations with the USACE regarding activities, including PSLs that have not been previously evaluated by the USACE. Provide the Department with a copy of consultations or approvals from the USACE before initiating activities.

The Contractor may proceed with activities in PSLs that do not affect a USACE permit area if a self-determination has been made that the PSL is non-jurisdictional or if proper USACE

clearances have been obtained in jurisdictional areas or have been previously evaluated by the USACE as part of the permit review of this project. The Contractor is solely responsible for documenting any determinations that their activities do not affect a USACE permit area. Maintain copies of their determinations for review by the Department or any regulatory agency.

Document and coordinate with the USACE, if required, before hauling any excavation from or hauling any embankment to a USACE permit area by either 1 or 2 below:

**1. Restricted Use of Materials for the Previously Evaluated Permit Areas.**

Document both the Project Specific Locations (PSL) and their authorization. Maintain copies for review by the Department or any regulatory agency. When an area within the project limits has been evaluated by the USACE as part of the permit process for this project:

- a. Suitable excavation of required material in the areas shown on the plans and cross sections as specified in the Item, "Excavation" is used for permanent or temporary fill (under the Item, "Embankment") within a USACE permit area.
- b. Suitable embankment (under the Item, "Embankment") from within the USACE permit area is used as fill within a USACE evaluated area.
- c. Unsuitable excavation or excess excavation, "Waste" (under the Item, "Excavation"), that is disposed of at a location approved within a USACE evaluated area.

**2. Contractor Materials from Areas Other than Previously Evaluated Areas.**

Provide the Department with a copy of USACE coordination or approvals before initiating any activities for an area within the project limits that has not been evaluated by the USACE or for any off right of way locations used for the following, but not limited to, haul roads, equipment staging areas, borrow and disposal sites:

- a. The Item, "Embankment" used for temporary or permanent fill within a USACE permit area.
- b. Unsuitable excavation or excess excavation, "Waste" (under the Item, "Excavation"), that is disposed of outside a USACE evaluated area.

The total area disturbed for this project is 68 acres. The disturbed area in this project, the project locations in the Contract, and Contractor project specific locations (PSLs) within 1 mile of the project limits for the Contract, will further establish the authorization requirements for storm water discharges. The Department will obtain an authorization to discharge storm water from the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality (TCEQ) for the construction activities shown on the plans. The Contractor is to obtain required authorization from the TCEQ for Contractor PSLs for construction support activities on or off the ROW. When the total area disturbed in the Contract and PSLs within 1 mile of the project limits exceeds 5 acres, provide a copy of the Contractor NOI for PSLs on the ROW to the Engineer (to the appropriate MS4 operator when on an off-state system route) and to the local government that operates a separate storm drain system.

Before bidding on this project, obtain a copy of the complete U.S. Army Corps of Engineers

**County:** Fort Bend, etc.

**SHEET**

**Highway:** SH 99

**Control:** 3510-04-019, etc.

Nationwide Permit at the Area Engineer's office. Review the permit before bidding on the project and become aware of its conditions.

Place erosion control measures around the perimeter of impacted wetlands as shown in the above mentioned U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Nationwide permits. During staging and construction operations, equipment is not allowed in the Waters of the United States.

Do not place temporary fill in areas determined to be wetlands. This prohibition includes constructing staging areas, temporary fills or other actions that would result in placing fill in wetlands within the right of way, which are not addressed in the plans. The Engineer will coordinate with the Houston District Environmental Section to determine if wetlands are present on this project before placing temporary fill. If wetlands exist, obtain the appropriate permits from the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers.

This project does require a U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) Section 404 Permit, the State is preparing the permit application. Once the permit application is approved, the Department will submit it to the USACE. Assume responsibility for the requested revisions, in coordination with the Department's District Environmental Section. The permit is associated with wetland areas 1 and 2 shown in the plans.

Avoid encroaching into the wetland areas delineated in the plans. Place erosion control measures around the wetlands as shown on the plans. No construction work or construction equipment is permitted within this delineated area until the permit is approved. For bridge construction, construct drilled shafts and riprap in accordance with the approved permit and the construction limits and details in the plans. Secure approval for the locations of field offices, material storage sites, material disposal sites, plants, borrow pits, etc. in writing before use to ensure that the proposed location is not within Jurisdictional Waters of the United States (wetlands).

Do not store any material in Waters of the United States inside the right of way without written approval.

Before construction operations begin, provide a drawing of the location of proposed temporary access roads, haul roads, or temporary fill used during construction operations to ensure that they are not within Jurisdictional Waters of the United States.

If the Contractor elects to use an area not permitted and determined to be within Jurisdictional Waters of the United States during the prosecution of the work, the Contractor will hold the Department harmless for delays caused by procuring the necessary permits from the United States Army Corps of Engineers.

Maintain the roadway slope stability. Maintaining slope stability is subsidiary to the various bid items.

The nesting / breeding season for migratory birds is February 15 through September 30.

Highway: SH 99

Control: 3510-04-019, etc.

Conduct any tree removal outside of the migratory bird nesting season. If this is not possible due to scheduling, then exercise caution to remove only those trees with no active nests. Do not destroy nests on structures or in trees within the project limits during the nesting / breeding season.

Take measures to prevent the building of nests on any structures or trees within the project limits throughout the duration of the construction if work / removal will be performed during the nesting / breeding season. This can be accomplished by application of bird repellent gel, netting by hand every 3 to 4 days, or any other non-threatening method approved by the Houston District Environmental Section. Obtain this approval well in advance of the planned use. Contact the Houston District Environmental Section at 713-802-5244. The cost of this work is subsidiary to the various bid items.

No significant traffic generator events have been identified.

**Item 8: Prosecution and Progress**

The tabulation below shows the road-user cost for incentives/disincentives per day based on project milestones as determined by the traffic control phases. After the project is substantially complete, the liquidated damages become those based on contract administration costs.

Milestone	Begin	End	Working Days Allowed	Incentives Disincentives Per Working Day	Maximum Days for Incentives	Maximum Amount for Incentives
Milestone 1	Phase 1	Completion Of Phase 1	186	\$40,000	110	\$4,400,000.00

Contractor will be allowed 592 working days for the completion of this project.

The Contractor will receive a credit in the amount shown on above tabulation per day for substantially completing the project in less than the number of days stipulated on the proposal cover. The maximum amount of incentive is \$4,400,000.00.

**PROJECT MILESTONES:**

**Milestone 1:**

**Construction of SH 99 Median (Phase 1)**

Milestone 1 requires the completion of all construction as defined in the Traffic Control Phase 1.

**County:** Fort Bend, etc.

**SHEET**

**Highway:** SH 99

**Control:** 3510-04-019, etc.

Milestone 1 will be completed when, in the opinion of the Engineer, all required permanent and/or temporary construction, striping, safety devices, signage, and incidentals are installed and operational in order to accommodate and execute, to the satisfaction of the Engineer, the traffic configuration as required in the Traffic Control Plan, Phase 1.

The total credit for early completion for Imbedded Milestone 1 for this project will not exceed \$4,400,000.00.

The tabulation above specifies the allowable duration for Project Milestones and the incentives/disincentives for early completion.

Create, maintain, and submit for approval, a Critical Path Method (CPM) project schedule using computer software that is fully compatible with the latest version of Primavera Systems, Inc. or Primavera Project Planner (P3 or P6).

The Department will supply bidders, upon written request, one electronic copy of the time determination schedule. The time determination schedule provided is for informational use only and is not intended for bidding or construction purposes.

The Department will not adjust the number of days for the project and milestones, if any, due to differences in opinion regarding any assumptions made in the preparation of the schedule or for errors, omissions, or discrepancies found in the time determination schedule.

Working days will be computed and charged based on a 6-day workweek in accordance with Section 8.3.1.6 "Other" and as specified herein. Working days that do not take place within milestone periods, as defined under Item 8 of the General Notes, will be charged Monday through Saturday, excluding national holidays, regardless of weather conditions or material availability. Working days that take place within milestone periods, as defined under Item 8 of the General Notes, will be charged Monday through Sunday, excluding national holidays, regardless of weather conditions or material availability. Work on Sundays that does not fall within milestone periods and national holidays will not be permitted, without written permission of the Engineer. If work requiring an Inspector to be present is performed on a Sunday that does not fall within a milestone period, national holiday, and weather/other conditions permit the performance of work for 7 hours between 7:00 A.M. and 6:00 P.M., a working day will be charged.

Provide a virus-free computer disk or other acceptable electronic media containing the Primavera construction schedule.

The maximum number of days the time charges on this contract may be suspended due to contractor mobilization, and material fabrication/accumulation or processing delays is 90 days. The Engineer and the Contractor may mutually agree, in writing, to decrease this maximum number of days.

The Lane Closure Assessment Fee is \$ 2,500.00 for mainlanes & ramps and \$200.00 for frontage roads & intersecting streets. This fee applies to the Contractor for closures or obstructions that overlap into restricted hour traffic for each hour or portion thereof, per lane, regardless of the



Highway: SH 99

Control: 3510-04-019, etc.

length of lane closure or obstruction. For Restricted Hours subject to Lane Assessment Fee refer to the Item, "Barricades, Signs, and Traffic Handling." The time increment for the Lane Closure Assessment fee for this project is one hour.

**Item 100: Preparing Right of Way**

Obtain a City of Houston plumbing permit and a demolishing permit or removing permit before demolishing or removing existing houses or commercial buildings.

Clean existing ditches under fill sections of undesirable materials including grass, muck, and trash. Perform this work in accordance with the Construction section of the Item, "Preparing Right of Way." This work is subsidiary to this bid Item.

The Item, "Preparing Right of Way" will be measured for payment only in those designated areas shown on the plans. Preparing right of way necessary to perform construction that is outside designated areas is subsidiary to this bid Item.

Remove abandoned utilities that are in conflict with the new utilities, at no expense to the Department.

Reestablish and maintain right of way stakes after completing the right of way preparation activities and until the new utilities are in place.

Remove and assume ownership of the existing ground mounted signs within the limits of roadway construction unless otherwise noted or directed. This work is subsidiary to the Item, "Preparing Right of Way."

**Item 104: Removing Concrete**

Removing concrete curb is paid as a separate bid item if the existing pavement on which it rests is not removed at the same time.

**Item 105: Removing Treated and Untreated Base and Asphalt Pavement**

Removing curb on cement-treated and untreated base or on cement treatment being removed at the same time is subsidiary to this bid Item.

Obtain a secured site for the stockpile of the treated material to be salvaged from this project. Haul and stockpile the unused material as directed. This work is subsidiary to this bid Item.

Store the treated material salvaged from this project at the project sites designated by the Engineer.

**Item 104: Removing Concrete**

**Item 105: Removing Treated and Untreated Base and Asphalt Pavement**

**Item 305: Salvaging, Hauling, and Stockpiling Reclaimable Asphalt Pavement**

Case 1 - ACP over asphalt treatment

**County:** Fort Bend, etc.

**SHEET**

**Highway:** SH 99

**Control:** 3510-04-019, etc.

Removing the Asphalt Concrete Pavement (ACP) and the asphalt treatment/asphalt stabilized base are paid for under the Item, "Salvaging, Hauling, and Stockpiling Reclaimable Asphalt Pavement."

Remove the ACP separately from the asphalt treatment/asphalt stabilized base. Make the removed depth as uniform as possible during each removal pass if the pavement depth being removed is composed of different asphalt layers. Unless otherwise approved, stockpile Reclaimable Asphalt Pavement (RAP) of differing types of quality separately by its intended use such as for the asphalt treatment, cement treatment, lime treatment, or asphalt concrete pavement. Break, crush, or mill the stockpiled materials so that 100 percent pass the 2-in. sieve.

Case 2 - ACP over cement or lime treatment

Removing the Asphalt Concrete Pavement (ACP) material is paid under the Item, "Salvaging, Hauling, and Stockpiling Reclaimable Asphalt Pavement."

Removing the cement or lime treatment is paid under the Item, "Removing Treated and Untreated Base and Asphalt Pavement."

Remove the ACP separately from the cement or lime treatment. Make the removed depth as uniform as possible during each removal pass if the pavement depth being removed is composed of different asphalt layers. Unless otherwise approved, stockpile the RAP of differing types of quality separately by its intended use such as for the asphalt treatment, cement treatment, lime treatment, or asphalt concrete pavement. Break, crush, or mill the stockpiled materials so that 100 percent pass the 2-in. sieve. Case 3 - ACP over concrete pavement

The removal of the Asphalt Concrete Pavement (ACP) material is paid under the Item, "Salvaging, Hauling, and Stockpiling Reclaimable Asphalt Pavement."

Removing the concrete pavement material is paid under the Item, "Removing Concrete."

Case 4 - ACP over concrete pavement over base

Removing the Asphalt Concrete Pavement (ACP) material is paid under the Item, "Salvaging, Hauling, and Stockpiling Reclaimable Asphalt Pavement."

Removing the concrete pavement material is paid under the Item, "Removing Concrete."

Removing the base material is paid under the Item, "Removing Treated and Untreated Base and Asphalt Pavement."

Remove the ACP separately from the base. The removed depth is as uniform as possible during each removal pass if the pavement depth being removed is composed of different asphalt layers. Stockpile the RAP of differing types of quality separately by its intended use such as for asphalt treatment, cement treatment, lime treatment, or asphalt concrete pavement. Break, crush, or mill the stockpiled materials so that 100 percent pass the 2-in. sieve.

Case 5 - Concrete pavement over base

**County:** Fort Bend, etc.

**SHEET 30G**

**Highway:** SH 99

**Control:** 3510-04-019, etc.

Removing the concrete pavement material is paid under the Item, "Removing Concrete."

Removing the base material and any asphalt bondbreaker material is paid under the Item, "Removing Treated and Untreated Base and Asphalt Pavement."

**Item 110: Excavation**

If manipulating the excavated material requires moving the same material more than once to accomplish the desired results, the excavation is measured and paid for only once regardless of the manipulation required.

Transition the ditch grades and channel bottom widths at structure locations. Use only approved channel excavation in the embankment.

The total excavation quantity shown on the plans includes the quantity for excavating to 2 ft. behind the back of the proposed curb.

Excavate, strip, and stockpile the top 6 in. of existing topsoil only at locations shown in the plans. The salvaged quantity is shown in the plans. Reuse the topsoil under the Item, "Topsoil" including measurement and payment.

**Item 112: Subgrade Widening**

Removing obstructions within the right of way, such as trees, brush, overhanging limbs, fences, foundations and other miscellaneous debris that may interfere with grading (subgrade widening) is subsidiary to the Item, "Subgrade Widening."

**Item 132: Embankment**

If salvaged base is used for the embankment material, break it into small pieces to achieve the required density and to facilitate placing in the embankment. Obtain approval of the material before placing in the embankment.

Furnish Type C material with a maximum Liquid Limit (LL) of 65, a minimum Plasticity Index (PI) of 5, and composed of suitable earth material such as loam, clay, or other materials that form a suitable embankment.

The embankment material used on the project which has a Liquid Limit exceeding 45 will be tested for Liquid Limits at the rate of one test per 20,000 cu. yd. or per total quantity less than 20,000 cu. yd., unless otherwise directed. Only use material that passes the above tests.

For unpaved areas, provide a finished grade with the top 4 in. capable of sustaining vegetation. Use fertile soil that is easily cultivated, free from objectionable material and highly resistant to erosion. Topsoil work is paid under the Item, "Topsoil."

Furnish material with a maximum Liquid Limit (LL) of 65.

**Item 134: Backfilling Pavement Edges**

**County:** Fort Bend, etc.

**SHEET**

**Highway:** SH 99

**Control:** 3510-04-019, etc.

Quantity by station includes both sides of the roadway.

The Contractor has the option of selecting the type of backfill material consisting of Reclaimable Asphalt Pavement (RAP), Flex Base, or Crushed Concrete provided that it meets the requirements listed below.

For Permeable Friction Courses (PFC), the backfill material chosen must meet the requirements of Department Test Method Tex-246-F.

If using salvaged asphalt concrete pavement, size it so that all the material, passes the 2-in. sieve. Use RAP that does not contain deleterious material such as clay or organic material.

Flex Base must meet the requirements of Item 247, Type A, Grade 1-2. Department Test Method Tex-117-E will not be required.

Crushed concrete must meet the requirements of Item 247, Grade 1-2. Department Test Methods Tex-116-E and Tex-117-E will not be required.

Place emulsified asphalt (SS-1, CSS-1, or CSS-1H) at an application rate of 0.25 gal/sq. yard.

**Item 150: Blading**

Blade the shoulders in accordance with this Item and as directed.

Perform blading for ditch grading to ensure proper drainage between the existing and proposed ditches.

If using native soil for reshaping the shoulders, no separate payment for materials will be made.

**Item 156: Bulldozer Work**

Perform bulldozer work to grade or make repairs to slopes to control erosion if such work is not within the scope of other contract requirements.

**Item 161: Compost**

**Item 162: Sodding for Erosion Control**

**Item 164: Seeding for Erosion Control**

**Item 166: Fertilizer**

**Item 168: Vegetative Watering**

Refer to the "Fertilizer, Seed, Sod, Straw, Compost, and Water" plan sheet for material specifications, application rates, and for watering requirements.

**Item 204: Sprinkling**

Perform subsidiary sprinkling as required under various other items in accordance with the Item, "Sprinkling."

Sprinkling for dust control is subsidiary to the various bid items.

**County:** Fort Bend, etc.

**SHEET 30H**

**Highway:** SH 99

**Control:** 3510-04-019, etc.

**Item 210: Rolling**

Use a medium pneumatic roller meeting the requirements of Item 210 as directed. This work is subsidiary to the various bid items. On every asphalt shot, use a minimum of 3 pneumatic rollers or as directed. Use approved rolling patterns. Successive asphalt shots will not be allowed until acceptable rolling has been accomplished on the preceding asphalt shot.

**Item 247: Flexible Base**

Place the flexible base in courses a maximum of 8 in. thick (loose measurement). Mix flexible base that requires 2 or more mixtures of material, in an approved stationary pugmill type mixer. Material passing the No. 40 sieve is known as soil binder.

Tolerances relating to a specified gradation and to a plasticity index under this specification are permitted.

Furnish one type of the base material unless otherwise authorized.

Compact the courses to a minimum density of 95 percent of the maximum density as determined using test method TEX-113-E.

Sandstone aggregate is not permitted.

**Item 260: Lime Treatment (Road-Mixed)**

For slurry placing, before discharging through the distributors, sufficiently agitate or mix the lime and water to place the lime in suspension and to obtain a uniform mixture.

The Engineer will observe the lime treatment that the Contractor elects to open to construction traffic immediately after compaction. If the construction traffic damages the subgrade, route the traffic off the damaged section in accordance with the standard specification. If the construction traffic does not damage the subgrade, cure the subgrade until other courses of material cover it. Apply these courses within 14 days with a maximum curing period of 7 days.

Place the hydrated and the commercial lime as a water suspension or slurry according to the slurry placing method shown in Section 260.4.3.2, "Slurry Placement."

Use the type of lime at particular locations as directed.

Place the quicklime dry or as a slurry.

For the dry quicklime, a spreader box is not required if the lime material is evenly distributed.

In limited areas, the Contractor may construct the lime slurry subgrade under a sequence of work in which the application, mixing, and compaction are completed in the same working day, if approved by the Engineer.

**County:** Fort Bend, etc.

**SHEET**

**Highway:** SH 99

**Control:** 3510-04-019, etc.

Provide documentation from certified public scales showing gross, tare, and net weights. Provide producer's delivery tickets also showing gross, tare, and net weights. Completely empty the lime trailers at the project site. The Engineer may direct the Contractor to reweigh any shipment of lime on certified scales. The cost of this operation is subsidiary to the Item, "Lime Treatment (Road-Mixed)."

The percentage of lime shown on the plans is estimated on the basis of engineering tests. If soil tests made during construction indicate properties different than those originally anticipated, the Engineer may vary the percentage of the lime to provide soil characteristics similar to those of the preliminary tests.

Mix the lime with the new base material in an approved pug mill type stationary mixer.

If using Type A aggregate in accordance with the Item, "Flexible Base," use only crushed stone, Grade 1.

**Item 263: Lime Treatment (Plant-Mixed)**

Use the asphalt material (PCE) to cure the entire finished lime treatment.

**Item 276: Cement Treatment (Plant-Mixed)**

Before placing the new base, wet and coat the vertical construction joints between the new base and the previously placed base with dry cement.

If the total thickness of the cement treatment is greater than 8 in., compact it in multiple lifts in accordance with Section 276.4.3, "Compaction." Place the courses in the same working day unless otherwise approved.

Use Class N Cement Treatment containing 4.5 percent cement based on the dry weight of the aggregate. There is no minimum compressive strength requirement for this Item.

The requirement for core drilling to determine the thickness of cement treatment is waived if using less than 500 sq. yd. at one location.

For widening the existing pavement, the Engineer may waive the requirements for preparing the subgrade by scarifying and compacting if the as-cut subgrade can be maintained to the density of the natural ground and to a uniform consistency when placing the base course. Keep the subgrade wet.

Compact in accordance with the standard specifications and complete the finishing operations within a period of 5 hours after adding the cement to the base material.

Cure the final course of cement treatment using an asphalt distributor that distributes the approved curing material and water mixture material at a rate of 0.25 gallons per square-yard evenly and smoothly or as recommended by the manufacturer at the recommended dilution rate, under a pressure necessary for proper distribution. Provide a curing material meeting the

requirements of the Item, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions" for curing the cement treatment. Use the following materials for curing the courses of cement treatment:

<b>Curing Material</b>	<b>Application</b>
Water	All courses, except final course
PCE	Final course

Continue curing until placing another course or opening the finished section to traffic.

Spread the material so that the layers of base are uniform in depth and in loose density before compacting.

Type E material consists of Type A material, crushed concrete (except under flexible pavement), or Reclaimed Asphalt Pavement (RAP) meeting the requirements of the Item, "Flexible Base." If approved, the 50 percent maximum RAP limitation may be waived.

Unless otherwise directed, place the next pavement layer within 7 working days of placing the base.

If using crushed stone for the Type E material under this Item, ensure it meets the requirements for the Item, "Flexible Base," Type A, Grade 1-2. Texas Test Method TEX-117-E is not required for this Item.

If using Recycled Type E cement treatment under proposed flexible pavement, produce it using the existing base salvaged from within this project or from other approved Department projects and salvaged asphalt concrete pavement. Do not use crushed concrete under flexible pavement.

If using Recycled Type E cement treatment under proposed concrete pavement, produce it using the existing base salvaged from within this project or from other approved Department projects, salvaged asphalt concrete pavement, or crushed concrete. If using crushed concrete as an aggregate, meet the requirements of Grade 3.

If using salvaged existing base and asphalt concrete pavement as described above, size it so that all the material, except the existing individual aggregate, passes the 2-in. sieve and is of a gradation that allows satisfactory compaction. Provide salvaged material that does not contain deleterious material such as clay or organic material. Provide material passing the No. 40 sieve, defined as soil binder, with a maximum Plasticity Index of 10 and a maximum Liquid Limit of 35 when tested in accordance with test method TEX-106-E.

Meet the following additional requirements if the base and ACP are salvaged from other Department projects:

1. Obtain written approval before using the material.
2. Salvage and stockpile by approved methods.
3. Stockpile the material for exclusive use by the Department.

**County:** Fort Bend, etc.

**SHEET**

**Highway:** SH 99

**Control:** 3510-04-019, etc.

**Item 292: Asphalt Treatment (Plant-Mixed)**

**Item 3076: Dense-Graded Hot Mix Asphalt**

Unless otherwise shown on the plans, RAP generated by this project will become the property of the Contractor for use in the current construction project or in future projects.

Meet the following grading requirements:

Sieve Size	Percent Passing Grade 4 (Bondbreaker)
1-3/4 in.	-
1 in.	-
1/2 in.	100
No. 4	30 - 70
No. 40	15 - 45

Physical requirements are as follows:

Maximum Plasticity Index (PI) = 8

Maximum Liquid Limit (LL) = 35

Maximum Wet Ball Mill = 50 (crushed stone)

Maximum LA Abrasion = 50 (iron ore)

If blending the materials, perform the Wet Ball Mill test for the composite aggregate.

Form bituminous mix incorporating 3.5 to 7 percent asphaltic binder by dry weight.

For nominal aggregate size less than 0.5 in., design the mix in accordance with test method TEX-204-F. The minimum stability in accordance with TEX-208-F is 30 percent with a laboratory molded density of 96 percent plus or minus 1.5 percent.

If the layer thickness after placing is 1.25 in. or less, the bondbreaker is exempt from the in-place density control described in Section 292.4.5, "Compaction."

**Item 360: Concrete Pavement**

Where the pavement curb is left off for a later tie, provide the dowels or the tie bars as indicated on the paving detail sheets. The dowel bars and tie bars are subsidiary to the various bid items.



Repair portions of the concrete pavement surfaces that are damaged while in a plastic state before that area receives permanent pavement markings and opens to traffic. Perform repairs that are structurally equivalent to and cosmetically uniform with the adjacent undamaged areas. Do not repair by grouting onto the surface.

On pavement widening, hand finishing in place of the longitudinal float will be permitted.

Where existing pavement is widened with new pavement, place the new pavement a minimum of 2 ft. wide.

Equip the batching plants to proportion by weight, aggregates and bulk cement, using approved proportioning devices and approved automatic scales.

For mono curb, the curb height transitions will be paid at the contract unit price of the larger curb height in the transition. The 2.5-in. laydown curbs for driveways will be paid at the unit price bid for the Item, "Conc Curb (Mono) (Ty II)."

High-early strength cement may be used for frontage road and city street intersection construction.

Do not use limestone dust of fracture as fine aggregate.

If the concrete design requires greater than 5.5 sacks of cementitious material per cubic yard, obtain written approval. If placing concrete pavement mixes from April 1 to October 31, inclusive, use Mix Design Option 1 as specified in Section 421.4.2.6.1.

Perform saw cutting as shown on the plans in accordance with Section 360.4.10, "Sawing Joints." This saw cutting is subsidiary to this bid Item.

The pay limits for concrete pavements with traffic rails extends to the outside edge or back of the traffic rail.

Place steel fibers for the thin bonded concrete overlay at a rate of 75 lbs. per cubic yard. Add steel fibers to the concrete mix truck via conveyor at the batch plant. Submit procedures for placing the steel fibers as recommended by the manufacturer, as part of the mix design. If procedures are not satisfactory to the Engineer, stop concrete placement until a satisfactory solution is approved.

After the concrete has been batched, do not allow additional water into the mix. Use Type F high range water-reducing admixtures for slump control at the jobsite. Submit for approval a work plan for controlling the slump.

Construct the thin bonded concrete overlay in one continuous operation. Allow traffic on the surface only after the overlay has been placed and finished.

Before placing the concrete overlay, record the location of the construction joints.

**County:** Fort Bend, etc.

**SHEET**

**Highway:** SH 99

**Control:** 3510-04-019, etc.

Locate longitudinal joints for the thin bonded overlay to match the existing longitudinal joints within a plus or minus 1 in. range. Saw cut proposed longitudinal joints to 3/8 in. wide by 1-1/4in. deep and seal the joints using a Class 5 or Class 8 joint sealing compound. Within 5 minutes of sawing, completely remove the resulting slurry from the joint by flushing with high-pressure water. Dry the joint for a minimum of 48 hours before sandblasting the joint.

Supply on the job site polyethylene fabric sufficient to cover the section of concrete pavement scheduled for placement in one shift.

If curing operations do not follow the overlay operations closely as directed, due to lack of equipment or personnel, stop the paving operations until these are corrected.

The bonded concrete overlay surface does not require tine texturing. Perform tining on other concrete surfaces, including un-bonded concrete overlay surfaces.

Complete the entire Fast Track Concrete construction process, from the time the Fast Track Work Area is closed to traffic, to the time the Fast Track Work Area is opened to traffic. The Fast Track operation includes, but is not limited to, traffic control, existing pavement and subgrade removal, preparation of subgrade, placement of steel, placement of Fast Track concrete pavement, cure time, striping, etc. Perform work in the Fast Track Work Area in an expeditious manner, within the allowable time period for any area shown below:

<u>Fast Track Work Area</u>	<u>Allowable Duration</u>
1. STA 1311+00.00 TO STA 1316+92.69:	2 weekend days maximum
2. STA 1349+17.52 TO STA 1358+90.96:	2 weekend days maximum
3. Westheimer Parkway left turn lane:	2 weekend days maximum
4. Cinco Ranch Blvd left turn lane:	2 weekend days maximum
5. Bay Hill Blvd left turn lane:	2 weekend days maximum
6. Kingsland Blvd left turn lane:	2 weekend days maximum

Failure to perform any Fast Track Work Area construction within the above time frames will be cause for the Engineer to require the Contractor to shut down all other construction operations to ensure all resources are directed toward the completion of the Fast Track operation. This shutdown will remain in force until the Fast Track operation is complete. Such a shutdown will not warrant additional time, time suspension, or any additional costs to the Department.

Unless otherwise directed in writing, provide Class HES concrete with a minimum average flexural strength of 425 psi or a minimum average compressive strength of 3,000 psi in 16 hours.

When directed in writing, open the pavement to traffic before the minimum requirements have been attained.

When needed, place and remove forms in accordance with Section 360.4.5, except do not remove forms until at least 6 hours after concrete has been placed. The time for the form removal may be extended with the direction of the Engineer if weather or other conditions make it advisable.

Sprinkling and rolling, required for the compaction of the rough subgrade in advance of fine-grading are subsidiary to this Item. Maintenance of a moist condition of the subgrade in advance of fine-grading and concrete is subsidiary work, as provided above.

**Items 360, 420, and 421: All Concrete Items**

For the Department's concrete cylinder split samples, transport the test cylinders to the Houston District Laboratory located at 7600 Washington Avenue in Houston, or to the appropriate Area Laboratory, when applicable. Transporting the test cylinders is subsidiary to the various bid items.

The approach pavement is paid for under the Item, "Concrete Pavement."

**Item 361: Repair of Concrete Pavement**

For full depth repair, remove only the quantity of pavement replaceable during the daily allowable work schedule.

Remove loose sub-base material and replace it with concrete. Use a bondbreaker, such as a polyethylene sheet, at the interface between the replaced sub-base material and the new concrete pavement.

Supply polyethylene fabric on the job site sufficient to cover the area of repair.

Do not place concrete if impending weather may result in rainfall or low temperatures that may impair the quality of the finished work.

Repair portions of the concrete pavement surfaces that are damaged while in a plastic state before those areas receive permanent pavement markings and open to traffic. Perform repairs that are structurally equivalent to and cosmetically uniform with adjacent undamaged areas. Do not repair by grouting onto the surface.

Ready mix concrete will be permitted if the equipment and construction methods can produce the desired results. Hand finishing will be permitted.

Perform saw cutting as shown on the plans in accordance with Section 360.4.10, "Sawing Joints." This saw cutting is subsidiary to this bid Item.

**Item 400: Excavation and Backfill for Structures**

Plugging existing pipe culverts is subsidiary to the various bid items.

If Recycled Cement Treatment (Type D) is included in the plans, the following additional requirements apply:

1. Use only approved sand, crushed concrete, or salvaged base free from deleterious matter, as aggregate for cement-stabilized backfill.

2. Provide crushed concrete or salvaged base backfill material in accordance with the Item, "Cement Treatment (Plant-Mixed)(Type D)" (base or crushed concrete), except the recycled Type D material must not contain Reclaimed Asphalt Pavement (RAP).
3. For backfill material below the spring line of pipes, use cement-stabilized sand rather than Recycled Type D backfill material.
4. For the cement-stabilized sand backfill, use a minimum of 7 percent of hydraulic cement based on the dry weight of backfill material. The cement content for the crushed concrete and salvaged base is specified in the Item, "Cement Treatment (Plant-Mixed) (Type D)."
5. Place and compact the stabilized backfill material using a gradation that provides a dense mass without segregating and is impervious to passing of water.

**Item 407: Steel Piling**

Assume ownership of removed temporary steel sheet piling.

**Item 416: Drilled Shaft Foundations**

Include the cost for furnishing and installing anchor bolts mounted in the drilled shafts in the unit bid price for the various diameter drilled shafts.

The Department may test using ultrasonic methods the anchor bolts for overhead sign supports, light standards, and traffic signal poles after they are installed. Replace faulty anchor bolts as directed. Do not weld the anchor bolts.

**Item 420: Concrete Substructures**

Unless otherwise noted, use Class C concrete with an ordinary surface finish for signal, lighting, or sign structure foundations.

Mass concrete is a plans quantity item.

**Item 421: Hydraulic Cement Concrete**

Entrained air is required in all slip formed concrete (bridge rail, concrete traffic barrier, pavement, etc.), but is not required for other structural concrete. Adjust the dosage of air entraining agent for low air content as directed or allowed by the Engineer. If entrained air is provided where not required, do not exceed the manufacturer's recommended dosage.

**Item 423: Retaining Walls**

Provide an exposed aggregate surface finish on retaining walls unless otherwise shown on the plans.

Place concrete riprap mow strips for retaining walls as shown on the plans and in accordance with the Item, "Riprap." Use Class B concrete reinforced with No. 4 bars spaced at 18 in. centers each direction and placed 2 in. below the surface. This work is paid for under the Item, "Riprap."

Provide and maintain positive drainage away from the earth wall system, including the leveling pad, for the contract duration.

Approved Mechanically Stabilized Earth (MSE) Wall Systems are listed at the website below or from the Department's home page>Business>Bridge>Retaining Walls>Approved MSE Panel Systems:

<http://www.txdot.gov/business/resources/approved-systems/mse-wall.html>

#### **Item 427: Surface Finishes for Concrete**

Provide a Surface Area I finish for structures. Use concrete paint for the surface finish.

#### **Item 432: Riprap**

If stone riprap is shown on the plans, use common stone riprap in accordance with Section 432.2.3.3, placed dry in accordance with Section 432.3.2.3. Do not grout. Crushed concrete may also be used.

#### **Item 442: Metal for Structures**

Use temperature zone 1 for Charpy V-Notch (CVN) testing.

Prestressed concrete panels will not be allowed on steel structures.

#### **Item 449: Anchor Bolts**

Pipe joint compound, as used in this Item, is an electrically conducting protective thread lubricant compound to be used on the foundation anchor bolts for illuminations poles (Crouse-Hinds TL-2, 0z/Gedney Stl, or Thomas & Betts Kopr-Shield).

#### **Item 462: Concrete Box Culverts and Drains**

#### **Item 464: Reinforced Concrete Pipe**

Concrete collars are subsidiary to the various bid items except for those specified on the plans for stage construction, which are paid for under the Item, "Concrete Substructures" as "CI C Conc (Collar)."

Rubber gaskets are required for concrete pipe joints except for connections of safety end treatments, driveway culverts, and joints between the existing pipes and extensions.

If performing the work under the Item, "Jacking, Boring, or Tunneling Pipe or Box," use tongue and groove pipe instead of rubber gaskets at these locations.

**County:** Fort Bend, etc.

**SHEET**

**Highway:** SH 99

**Control:** 3510-04-019, etc.

Open, install, and backfill each section, or a portion of a section, in the same day at locations requiring pipe culverts under existing roadways.

Place the pipe drains across existing roadways half at a time to allow passage of traffic. No trenches may remain open overnight.

Known locations of existing stub-outs are shown on the plans, but these stub-outs may be in a different position or condition. Delays, inconveniences, or additional work required will not be a basis for additional compensation.

Provide leave-outs or holes in the proposed storm drain structures and pipes for drainage during interim construction. This work is subsidiary to the various bid items.

The flowline elevations of side road structures are based on the proposed ditches. Field-verify these elevations and adjust them as necessary to meet the field conditions. Before placing these structures, prepare and submit for approval, the data (revised elevation, alignment, length, etc.) for the adjusted structures.

If groundwater is encountered while installing the storm drain system, install a suitable dewatering system to facilitate construction of the storm drains. The costs for materials and labor required to install and maintain this system are subsidiary to the Item, "Reinforced Concrete Pipe."

**Item 465: Junction Boxes, Manholes, and Inlets**

If required on the plans, build manholes and inlets to stage 1 construction, cover with temporary pavement, and complete in a later phase of construction. This temporary covering and pavement are subsidiary to the various bid items.

Construct manholes and inlets in graded areas, first to an elevation at least 4 in. above the top of the highest entering pipe and cover with a wooden cover. Complete the construction of such manholes and inlets to the finished elevation when completing the grading work for such manholes and inlets. Adjust the final elevation, if required, since this elevation is approximate.

Construct manholes and inlets in paved areas to an elevation so their temporary wooden covers are flush with the surface of the base material.

Do not leave excavations or trenches open overnight.

**Items 496: Removing Structures**

**Items 497: Sale of Salvageable Material**

Assume ownership and remove from the project site, items salvaged from the existing bridge decks.

Do not permit debris resulting from the structure removal or construction activities to enter a natural or manmade waterway such as drainage channels, rivers, streams, bays, etc. Remove

debris which falls into such waterways. This work is subsidiary to the Item, "Removing Structures."

**Item 502: Barricades, Signs, and Traffic Handling**

Use a traffic control plan for handling traffic through the various phases of construction. Follow the phasing sequence unless otherwise agreed upon by the Area Engineer and the Project Manager. Ensure this plan conforms to the latest "Texas Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices" and the latest Barricade and Construction (BC) Standard Sheets. The latest versions of Work Zone Standard Sheets WZ (BTS-1) and WZ (BTS-2) are the traffic control plan for the signal installations.

Submit changes to the traffic control plan to the Area Engineer. Provide a layout showing the construction phasing, signs, striping, and signalizations for changes to the original traffic control plan.

Furnish and maintain the barricades and warning signs, including the necessary temporary and portable traffic control devices, during the various phases of construction. Place and construct these barricades and warning signs in accordance with the latest "Texas Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices" for typical construction layouts.

Cover work zone signs when work related to the signs is not in progress, or when any hazard related to the signs no longer exists.

Keep the delineation devices, signs, and pavement markings clean. This work is subsidiary to the Item, "Barricades, Signs, and Traffic Handling."

Erect temporary signs when exit ramps are closed or moved to new locations during construction.

If a section is not complete before the end of the workday, pull back the base material to the existing pavement edge on a 6H: 1V slope. Edge drop-offs during the hours of darkness are not permitted.

Before detouring traffic onto the mainlane shoulders, remove dirt, debris, vegetation, and other deleterious material from the surface of the shoulders. Appropriately sign the detour in an approved manner. This work is subsidiary to the various bid items.

Coordinate and schedule the work with the appropriate Metro representative if requiring access to the High Occupancy Vehicle lanes.

Cover or remove the permanent signs and construction signs that are incorrect or that do not apply to the current situation for a particular phase.

Replace the overhead signs, informational signs, and exit signs to be removed, with temporary signs providing the correct information to the traveling public. Size the replacement signs and include them in the traffic control plan.

**County:** Fort Bend, etc.

**SHEET**

**Highway:** SH 99

**Control:** 3510-04-019, etc.

Do not mount signs on drums or barricades, except those listed in the latest Barricades and Construction standard sheets.

Use traffic cones for daytime work only. Replace the cones with plastic drums during nighttime hours.

Place positive barriers to protect drop-off conditions greater than 2 ft. within the clear zone that remain overnight.

Do not reduce the existing number of lanes open to traffic except as shown on the following time schedule.

Use the following charts for allowable and/or restricted lane-closure times for frontage road and intersecting street closures times.

**One Lane Closure\***

<b>Day</b>	<b>Daytime Closure Hours</b>	<b>Nighttime Closure Hours</b>	<b>Restricted Hours Subject to Lane Assessment Fee</b>
Monday	Not Permitted	8:00 PM – 5:00 AM	5:00 AM – 8:00 PM
Tuesday	Not Permitted	8:00 PM – 5:00 AM	5:00 AM – 8:00 PM
Wednesday	Not Permitted	8:00 PM – 5:00 AM	5:00 AM – 8:00 PM
Thursday	Not Permitted	8:00 PM – 5:00 AM	5:00 AM – 8:00 PM
Friday	Not Permitted	8:00 PM – 5:00 AM	5:00 AM – 8:00 PM
Saturday	Not Permitted	8:00 PM – 5:00 AM	5:00 AM – 8:00 PM
Sunday	Not Permitted**	8:00 PM – 5:00 AM	5:00 AM – 8:00 PM

\*Where two lanes or more exist.

\*\*Work on Sundays requires written permission from the Engineer.

The above times are approved for the traffic control conditions listed. The Area Engineer may approve other closure times if traffic counts warrant. The Area Engineer may reduce the above times for special events.

Law enforcement assistance will be required for this project and is expected to be required for major traffic control changes and lane closures. Coordinate with local law enforcement and arrange for law enforcement as directed or agreed by the Engineer. Before payment will be made, complete the “Daily Report on Law Enforcement Force Account Work” (Form 318), provided by the Department and submit daily invoices that agree with this form for any day during the month in which approved services were provided.

Provide full-time, off-duty, uniformed, certified peace officers, as part of traffic control operations. The peace officers must be able to show proof of certification by the Texas Commission on Law Enforcement Officers Standards. The cost of the officers is paid for on a force account basis.



Highway: SH 99

Control: 3510-04-019, etc.

A minimum of 7 days in advance of any total closure, notify the Houston District Public Information Office of which roadways, ramps, intersections, or lanes will be closed, the dates they will remain closed, and when they will be opened again to traffic.

A minimum of 7 days in advance of any total closure, place a portable changeable message (PCM) sign at the location of each total closure which informs the traveling public of the details of the closure. Alternately, if the Traffic Control Plan provides a positive barrier at the location, a non-trailer mounted static message board sign behind the positive barrier may be used in place of a PCM.

Minimize the number of working days for street closures. The following table lists the maximum number of working days allowed for each street closure. The closure period for each intersection occurs only during the phase when constructing that street, unless otherwise directed. Reopen the street within the number of working days allowed; otherwise, the Engineer may cease construction activities not affiliated with reopening the closed street, until it fully reopens to the traveling public. Time charges will not be suspended nor increased to compensate for this occurrence.

Street Name	Number of Working Days Allowed for Closure
Fry Rd	1 Day Maximum
Westheimer Rd	1 Day Maximum
Cinco Ranch Blvd	1 Day Maximum
Highland Knolls Dr	1 Day Maximum
Bay Hill Blvd	1 Day Maximum
Kingsland Blvd	1 Day maximum

Use Uneven Lane Signs (CW 8-11) during resurfacing operations for elevation differences between adjacent lanes of greater than 1 in.

During construction, remove, cover, adjust, or replace overhead sign panels to correspond with each current traffic control phase. The desirable size of letters for freeways is 10 in., the minimum is 8 in. This work is subsidiary to Item 502.

Before closing any City of Houston sidewalk, one or more city street lanes, or entire city streets during construction, obtain a permit to do so from the City. Obtain the required permit in person at the City of Houston Permit Office, or apply online at <http://www.gims.houstontx.gov>. During the various phases of construction, maintain and relocate Logo signs/Specific Service signs located within the project limits. Maintenance and relocation of these signs are subsidiary to the Item, "Barricades, Signs, and Traffic Handling." These signs are Department-owned and administered by LoneStar Logos, a Department signage contractor.

Relocate a logo sign to avoid interference with construction phases as necessary. Assure that relocated signs meet clearance requirements. If clearance requirements cannot be met using the

**County:** Fort Bend, etc.

**SHEET**

**Highway:** SH 99

**Control:** 3510-04-019, etc.

existing sign, contact the logo sign contractor to manufacture and deliver to the jobsite a smaller logo sign within 3 weeks. If there is absolutely no room to display the relocated logo sign, 2 weeks before relocating, contact the logo sign contractor to remove the sign and place it in storage. The telephone number for LoneStar Logos is (512) 462-1310 and the email address for the regional manager, Tyler Starr, is [tstarr@lonestarlogos.com](mailto:tstarr@lonestarlogos.com).

When relocating a logo sign, provide wooden skid mounted sign supports for the sign that are crashworthy and in accordance with the latest edition of the “Texas Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices.” Specific information on crash worthy skid mounted signs can be found at: <http://d2dtl5nnlpfr0r.cloudfront.net/tti.tamu.edu/documents/0-6782-2.pdf>

The Contractor Force Account “Safety Contingency” that has been established for this project is intended to be utilized for work zone enhancements, to improve the effectiveness of the Traffic Control Plan, that could not be foreseen in the project planning and design stage. These enhancements will be mutually agreed upon by the Engineer and the Contractor’s Responsible Person based on weekly or more frequent traffic management reviews on the project. The Engineer may choose to use existing bid items if it does not slow the implementation of enhancement.

#### **Item 504: Field Office and Laboratory**

Furnish one Type A structure for the laboratory. Ensure the windows for the structure have burglar bars.

Furnish a Type D structure for the asphalt mix control laboratory for the Engineer’s exclusive use. In addition to the requirements of this Item, “Field Office and Laboratory,” ensure this structure has a minimum height of 8 ft. Also ensure it has a minimum of 400 sq. ft. of gross floor area suitable for permanently located asphalt plants or 200 sq. ft. for temporarily located asphalt plants serving one project. Partition the floor area into a minimum of 2 interconnected rooms, and provide each room with an exterior door and a minimum of 2 windows. Construct the floor of sufficient strength to support the testing equipment and with an impervious covering.

Adequately air condition the Type D structure and furnish it with a minimum of one desk, 3 chairs, one file cabinet, a telephone, and one built-in equipment-storage cabinet suitable for storing nuclear equipment. Ensure the cabinet is a minimum of 3 ft. wide by 2 ft. deep by 3 ft. high and has a secure lock. Provide the structure with a 240-volt electrical service entrance. Use a licensed electrician to determine the service size and service entrance conductors. Provide a minimum service of four 120-volt circuits with 20 amp breakers, and a maximum of 2 grounded convenience outlets per circuit and a minimum of two 220-volt ovens with vents to the outside. Provide a structure with a minimum of 2 convenience outlets per wall and a utility sink with an adequate, clean potable water supply for testing. Do not use space heaters to heat the structure. Use support blocks for the portable structures, tie them down, and securely attach them to the ground.

Highway: SH 99

Control: 3510-04-019, etc.

Determine the asphalt content by the ignition method and meet the requirements of Section 504.2.2.4.1, "Asphalt Content by Ignition Method" except provide a NEMA 6-50R (204/240 volt, 50 A) outlet within 2.25 ft. of the ignition oven location.

If an asphalt mix plant is located at the project site, provide a Type D structure with the dimensions of a Type C structure, at the project site to perform the asphalt mix quality control tests.

If a commercial source is used for the asphalt mix, provide a Type D structure with the dimensions of a Type C structure, at the commercial source site to perform the asphalt mix quality control tests.

Equip each lab with a first aid kit and at least a 20 lb. ABC type fire extinguisher. Also equip the labs with an eye wash station. Provide equipment that meets the minimum OSHA requirements.

Furnish one Type E structure for the field office. Ensure the windows for the structure have burglar bars.

Provide a Type E field office meeting the requirements of a Type C structure. Provide this as a single structure with a minimum of 500 sq. ft. of floor space and 3 rooms. Provide the structure with the following facilities. The cost of providing these items is subsidiary to this bid Item:

1. Three desks with 3 swivel chairs, two 5-drawer file cabinets and 3 straight back chairs.
2. Telephone service and equipment consisting of a minimum of one telephone with one extension. Include the call-waiting feature in the service.
3. Potable water with an electric water cooler, a cup dispenser, and cups.
4. Adequate heating, air conditioning, lighting, and a sufficient number of electrical outlets.
5. A commercially available toilet or equivalent facility for the field office and each laboratory.
6. A suitable printer/copier/fax machine for the field office as approved by the Engineer.

Provide a fenced enclosure approximately 100 ft. by 200 ft. Provide an appropriate parking area covered with a suitable base material and with a minimum of 2 security lights, one on each end of the lot. Cost of the work and materials to provide the enclosure are subsidiary to the various bid items.

#### **Item 506: Temporary Erosion, Sedimentation and Environmental Controls**

A Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan (SWP3) is required. Since the disturbed area is more than 5 acres, a "Notice of Intent" (NOI) is also required.

**County:** Fort Bend, etc.

**SHEET**

**Highway:** SH 99

**Control:** 3510-04-019, etc.

Use appropriate measures to prevent, minimize, and control the spill of hazardous materials in the construction staging area. Remove and dispose of materials in compliance with State and Federal laws.

Before starting construction, review with the Engineer the SWP3 used for temporary erosion control as outlined on the plans. Before construction, place the temporary erosion and sedimentation control features as shown on the SWP3.

Schedule the seeding or sodding work as soon as possible. The project schedule provides for a vegetation management plan.

After completing earthwork operations, restore and reseed the disturbed areas in accordance with the Department's specifications for permanent or temporary erosion control.

Implement temporary and permanent erosion control measures to comply with the National Pollution Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) general permit under the Clean Water Act.

Before starting grading operations and during the project duration, place the temporary or permanent erosion control measures to prevent sediment from leaving the right of way.

**Item 512: Portable Traffic Barrier**

Transport Low Profile Concrete Barriers (LPCB) used for traffic handling from the Department's stockpile located on the north side of IH 610 at Long Drive.

Where required by the Engineer, provide anchor pins for Type 2 Low Profile Concrete Barriers (LPCB) as shown on the current LPCB standard. Anchor pins are subsidiary to the Low Profile Concrete Barrier.

Transport Standard Height Portable Traffic Barriers (J-J Hook) used for traffic handling from the Department's stockpile located on the south side of IH 610 at Cedar Crest St. (located across IH 610 from Long Drive).

Use only the J-J Hook type connection between barriers.

After completing the project, return Low Profile Concrete Barriers (LPCB) used for traffic handling, to the Department's stockpile located on the north side of IH 610 at Long Drive. After completing the project, return the associated LPCB connecting hardware to the area office or as directed.

After completing the project, return Standard Height Portable Traffic Barriers (including J-J Hook and Single Slope) used for traffic handling, to the Department's stockpile located on the south side of at IH 610 at Cedar Crest St. (located across IH 610 from Long Drive). After completing the project, return the associated Single Slope barrier connecting hardware to the area office or as directed.

Highway: SH 99

Control: 3510-04-019, etc.

After completing the project, Standard Height Safety Shape Portable Traffic Barriers used for traffic handling and the associated connecting hardware will become the property of the Contractor.

If placing the portable traffic barrier on pre-stressed concrete box beams with exposed reinforcing steel, protect the reinforcing steel by supporting the portable traffic barrier on 4 in. by 4 in. timbers. Place the timbers transversely and space them on 4 ft. centers. The cost of the labor and materials to perform this work are subsidiary to the Item, "Portable Traffic Barrier."

**Item 514: Permanent Concrete Traffic Barrier**

Add a 3/4-in. longitudinal chamfer to the Single Slope Concrete Barrier (SSCB) railing. Provide a continuous chamfer typically located 6 in. above the final grade. The cost of this is subsidiary to the Item, "Permanent Concrete Traffic Barrier."

**Item 529: Concrete Curb, Gutter, and Combined Curb and Gutter**

**Item 530: Intersections, Driveways, and Turnouts**

**Item 531: Sidewalks**

An air-entraining admixture is not required.

For concrete curbs, use Grade 7 aggregate conforming to Section 421.2.6 of the Item, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete."

For driveways and turnouts, coarse aggregate Grade No. 3 through No. 8 conforming to the gradation requirements specified in the Item, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete" will be permitted.

For reinforcing steel in sidewalks and pedestrian ramps, use No. 4 bars at a maximum 18 in. spacing center-to-center in both directions.

**Item 540: Metal Beam Guard Fence**

Painting the timber posts is not required.

Use timber posts for galvanized steel metal beam guard fence, except for anchorage at turned down ends.

Furnish and install wood blocks between the rail elements and the timber posts as detailed on the plans. These block-outs are subsidiary to this bid Item.

The quantity of the metal beam guard fence is subject to change.

Provide a mow strip as shown on the plans, at metal beam guard fence locations, including any guardrail end treatments.

Galvanize the rail elements supplied for this project by using a Type II Zinc Coating.

At locations requiring attachment of Metal Beam Guard Fence (MBGF) to concrete railing or concrete traffic barrier, repair and fill any existing holes in the railing or barrier that are not in the correct location for attaching the new MBGF. Perform this work in accordance with the Item, "Concrete Structure Repair." Existing anchor bolt holes that cannot be utilized must be filled with an epoxy grout before drilling new holes. Then core-drill new holes in the correct locations and repair any resulting spalls at no expense to the Department. This work is considered subsidiary to the MBGF transition section (Item 540).

**Item 542: Removing Metal Beam Guard Fence**

Remove and assume ownership of unsalvageable metal beam guard fence rail elements and posts. Transport and store any functional, salvageable rail elements, including steel posts, which are not reused in this project, to the Department's stockpile located at 4235 SH 36 South Rosenberg, TX 77471.

Replace removed wood posts which are unusable because of damage by the Contractor, at no expense to the Department.

**Item 545: Crash Cushion Attenuators**

After completing the project, return remaining unused crash cushion attenuators units to the Area Office Maintenance yard or as directed, at no cost to the Department.

A MASH compliant crash cushion attenuator is required for every temporary and permanent installation.

**Item 556: Pipe Underdrains**

Do not use crushed blast furnace slag.

Lay the underdrain pipe on a slope to insure proper drainage.

Tie the under drain pipe into the inlets as shown on the plans.

If filter material is processed gravel, use the following material requirements:

Square Sieve	Percent Retained
1/2 in.	0
No. 4	10 - 35
No. 40	55 - 85

If filter material is approved concrete sand, use the following material requirements:

Square Sieve	Percent Retained
5/8 in.	0
No. 4	0 - 40
No. 40	40 - 90

Square Sieve  
No. 100

Percent Retained  
90 - 100

**Item 585: Ride Quality for Pavement Surfaces**

To eliminate the need for corrective action due to excessive deviations in the final surface layers, exercise caution to ensure satisfactory profile results in the intermediate paving layers (mixture).

Milling will not be allowed as a corrective action for excessive deviations in the final surface layer of hot-mix asphalt.

For Continuously Reinforced Concrete Pavement (CRCP) mainlanes and direct connectors, use Surface Test Type B and Pay Adjustment Schedule 2. For ramps use Surface Test Type A.

For asphalt mainlanes and direct connectors, use Surface Test Type B and Pay Adjustment Schedule 1. For ramps use Surface Test Type A.

For concrete or asphalt curb and gutter sections or frontage roads, use Surface Test Type B and Pay Adjustment Schedule 2 except for the outside lane. Use Surface Test Type B and Pay Adjustment Schedule 3 for the outside lane.

For Jointed Reinforced Concrete Pavement (JRCP), use Surface Test Type A.

For all other roads (cross streets and intersections), use Surface Test Type A.

**Item 610: Roadway Illumination Assemblies**

The cost of providing the electrical conductor in the pole foundation or in the pole base to make connections is subsidiary to the roadway illumination assembly. The quantity for payment is the surface distance between locations.

Fabricate steel roadway illumination poles in accordance with the latest Department RIP (Roadway Illumination Poles) Standards. Poles manufactured according to the latest RIP Standards require no shop drawings. Alternate designs to the Department’s RIP Standards or the use of aluminum to fabricate poles will require the submission of shop drawings electronically.

For poles to be installed in regions where the maximum basic wind speed exceeds 110 mph or to be mounted more than 25 ft. above the surrounding terrain, provide shop drawings (see [ftp://ftp.dot.state.tx.us/pub/txdot-info/library/pubs/bus/bridge/e\\_submit\\_guide.pdf](ftp://ftp.dot.state.tx.us/pub/txdot-info/library/pubs/bus/bridge/e_submit_guide.pdf)) and calculations that are sealed, signed, and dated by a professional engineer registered or licensed in Texas.

Supply anchor bolt assemblies as shown on the RIP standard sheets, unless a larger capacity bolt assembly is required for the 3-second gust wind speed and mounting elevation at the pole installation location.

**Item 616: Performance Testing of Lighting Systems**

**County:** Fort Bend, etc.

**SHEET**

**Highway:** SH 99

**Control:** 3510-04-019, etc.

The illumination plans provide for a complete illumination system installed, connected, tested, and ready for operation.

After satisfactory completion of tests, place the new lighting fixtures in operation. Final acceptance will be made after the fixtures operate satisfactorily for a minimum period of 14 days. The 14-day test period is included in the allowed working days.

Assume responsibility for the new lighting fixtures during the test period. Make adjustments or repairs as required and repair defects or damage at no expense to the Department.

**Item 618: Conduit**

**Item 620: Electrical Conductors**

**Item 628: Electrical Services**

If the specifications for electrical items require UL-listed products, this means UL-listed or CSA-listed.

**Item 618: Conduit**

When backfilling bore pits, ensure that the conduit is not damaged during installation or due to settling backfill material. Compact select backfill in 3 equal lifts to the bottom of the conduit; or if using sand, place it 2 in. above the conduit. Ensure backfill density is equal to that of the existing soil. Prevent material from entering the conduit.

Construct bore pits a minimum of 5 ft. from the edge of the base or pavement. Close the bore pit holes overnight.

Unless otherwise shown on the plans, install underground conduit a minimum of 24 in. deep. Install the conduit in accordance with the latest National Electrical Code (NEC) and applicable Department standard sheets. Place conduit under driveways or roadways a minimum of 24 in. below the pavement surface.

If using casing to place bored conduit, the casing is subsidiary to the conduit.

If placing the conduit under existing pavement to reach the service poles, bore the conduit in place and extend it a minimum distance of 5 ft. beyond the edge of shoulder or the back of curb.

Where PVC, duct cable, and HDPE conduit 1 in. and larger is allowed and installed per Department standards, provide a PVC elbow in place of the galvanized rigid metal elbow required by the Electrical Details standards. Ensure the PVC elbow is of the same schedule rating as the conduit to which it is connected. Use only a flat, high tensile strength polyester fiber pull tape to pull conductors through the PVC conduit system.

Remove conductor and conduit to be abandoned to 1 ft. below the ground level. This work is subsidiary to the various bid items.



Do not use cast iron junction boxes in concrete traffic barriers and single slope traffic barriers. Use polymer concrete junction boxes shown on standard sheet ED(4)-14. Mount the junction boxes flush (+ 0 in., - 1/2 in.) with the concrete surface of the concrete barrier.

Use materials from pre-qualified producers as shown on the Department's Construction Division (CST) material producers list. Check the latest links on the Department's website for the list. The category is "Roadway Illumination and Electrical Supplies." The polymer concrete barrier box is subsidiary to Item 618, "Conduit."

Locate the underground utilities within the project limits. Provide the equipment necessary for locating these utilities, locate, and mark them before starting any excavation work in the area. This work is subsidiary to the various bid items. If the Contractor damages or cause damage to any existing underground utilities, repair such damage at no cost to the Department.

Ensure the interconnection of new equipment to the existing system does not interfere with the operation of the remaining system components. Ensure the system remains completely operational between the hours of 6:00 a.m. Monday and 12:00 a.m. (midnight) Saturday.

Do not interrupt system operation without coordinating with the Department's operations personnel at Houston Transtar at (713) 881-3285.

Perform work to be done on cables during weekends only.

Provide Liquid-Tight Flexible Metal (LTFM) conduit if the plans refer to flexible metal conduit. Do not use flexible metal conduit.

Unless otherwise shown on the plans, place conduit runs behind curbs at locations where curbs exist.

Use schedule 80 PVC conduit to house conductor runs under paved riprap, roadway, or driveways, unless otherwise shown on the plans.

Use Rigid Metal Conduit (RMC) for exposed conduit.

Before backfilling conduit trenches, place a detectable underground metalized mylar marking tape above the conduit and concrete encasement. Imprint the marking tape with, "TxDOT CONDUIT AND FIBER OPTIC CABLE SYSTEM. CALL (713) 802-5909 BEFORE PROCEEDING" every 18 in. Supplying and installing the marking tapes is subsidiary to the various bid items.

Conduit elbows and rigid metal extensions required when installing PVC conduit systems are subsidiary to the various bid items.

Install a continuous bare or green insulated copper wire No. 8 AWG or larger in every conduit throughout the electrical system in accordance with the Electrical Detail Standard Sheets, and the latest edition of the NEC.

**County:** Fort Bend, etc.

**SHEET**

**Highway:** SH 99

**Control:** 3510-04-019, etc.

Provide a single 1/C #14 insulated wire in conduit runs which have been identified in the plans to carry fiber optic cable. Provide UL-listed solid copper wire with orange color low density polyethylene insulation, suitable for conduit installation, rated for a temperature range of -20 C to +60 C and a voltage rating of 600V. This wire will serve as a tracer, or locate, wire for locating underground conduit containing fiber optic cabling and will be paid for under Item 620, "Electrical Conductors."

**Item 620: Electrical Conductors**

Test each wire of each cable or conductor after installation. Incomplete circuits or damage to the wire or the cable are cause for immediate rejection of the entire cable being tested. Remove and replace the entire cable at no expense to the Department. Also test the replacement cable after installation.

When pulling cables or conductors through the conduit, do not exceed the manufacturer's recommended pulling tensions. Lubricate the cables or conductors with a lubricant recommended by the cable manufacturer.

For both transformer and shoe-base type illumination poles, provide double-pole breakaway fuse holders as shown on the Department's Construction Division (CST) material producers list. Check the latest link on the Department's website for this list. The category is "Roadway Illumination and Electrical Supplies." The fuse holder is shown on the list under Items 610 and 620. Provide 10 Amp time delay fuses.

Ensure that circuits test clear of faults, grounds, and open circuits.

Split bolt connectors are allowed only for splices on the grounding conductors.

For Roadside Flashing Beacon Assemblies (Item 685) and Pedestal Pole Assemblies (Item 687) within the project, provide single-pole breakaway disconnects as shown on the Construction Division (CST) material producers list. Check the latest link on the Department's website for this list. The category is "Roadway Illumination and Electrical Supplies." The fuse holder is shown on the list under Item 685. For underground (hot) conductors, install a breakaway connector with a dummy fuse (slug). Provide dummy fuse (slug). For grounded (neutral) conductors, install a breakaway connector with a white colored marking and a permanently installed dummy fuse (slug).

For electrical licensing and electrical certification requirements for this project, see Item 7 of the Standard Specifications and any applicable special provisions to Item 7.

**Item 624: Ground Boxes**

The ground box locations are approximate. Alternate ground box locations may be used as directed, to avoid placing in sidewalks or driveways.

Ground metal ground box covers. Bond the ground box cover and ground conductors to a ground rod located in the ground box and to the system ground.

**County:** Fort Bend, etc.

**SHEET 30S**

**Highway:** SH 99

**Control:** 3510-04-019, etc.

Ground the existing metal ground box covers as shown on the latest standard sheet ED (4)-14.

During construction and until project completion, provide personnel and equipment necessary to remove ground box lids for inspection. Provide this assistance within 24 hours of notification.

Construct concrete aprons in accordance with the latest standard sheet ED (4)-14. Make the depth of the concrete apron the same as the depth of the ground box, except for Type 1 and Type 2 ground boxes. For Type 1 or Type 2 ground boxes, construct the concrete apron in accordance with details shown on the "Ground Box Details Installations" standard.

**Item 628: Electrical Services**

Verify and coordinate the electrical service location with the engineering section of the appropriate utility district or company.

Identify the electrical service pole with an address number assigned by the Utility Service Provider. Provide 2-in. numerals visible from the highway. Provide numbers cut out aluminum figures nailed to wood poles or painted figures on steel poles or service cabinets.

**Item 636: Signs**

Include aluminum route markers, exit only panels, routing signs, and other special panels attached to guide signs in the unit bid price for the parent guide sign material.

Furnish and install signs shown on the traffic signal "Summary of Traffic Signal Materials" sheet. Ensure that the legend on these sign panels is in accordance with the latest "Standard Highway Sign Designs for Texas" manual.

The locations of sign panels on overhead structures are approximate. Verify in the field before installing.

For design details not shown on the plans, provide signs and arrows conforming to the latest "Standard Highway Sign Designs for Texas" manual.

**Item 644: Small Roadside Sign Assemblies**

Sign locations shown on the plans are approximate. Before placing them, obtain approval of and then stake the exact locations for these signs.

Use the Texas Universal Triangular Slip Base with the concrete foundation for small ground mounted signs, unless otherwise shown in the plans.

Remove existing street name signs from existing stop signs and re-install them above the new stop signs. Removing and re-installing existing street name signs is subsidiary to the Item, "Small Roadside Sign Assemblies."

**County:** Fort Bend, etc.

**SHEET**

**Highway:** SH 99

**Control:** 3510-04-019, etc.

When design details are not shown on the plans, provide signs and arrows conforming to the latest "Standard Highway Sign Designs for Texas" manual.

Use Type E Super High Specific Intensity (Fluorescent Prismatic) yellow green reflective sheeting background to fabricate school signs (S1-1, S3-1, S4-3, S5-1, W16-2, SW16-9p, and SW16-7pL(R)).

Assume ownership of the removed existing signs.

Locations of the relocated signs are approximate. Before placing them, obtain approval of and then stake the exact locations for these signs.

Replace existing signs that become damaged during relocation at no expense to the Department.

#### **Item 647: Large Roadside Sign Supports and Assemblies**

Locations of the relocated signs are approximate. Before placing them, obtain approval of and then stake the exact locations for these signs.

Replace existing signs that become damaged during relocation at no expense to the Department.

Assume ownership of the removed existing signs.

#### **Item 650: Overhead Sign Supports**

Stencil the structure numbers on the new structures for permanent identification.

If sign panels mounted on an overhead sign support face the same direction of traffic, keep the bottoms of the sign panels in the same horizontal plane, unless otherwise shown in the plans.

There is no additional reimbursement for blocking or shims for fits of alignment.

Mill test reports are not required for the walkway, grating, miscellaneous secondary structural items, or hardware.

Use the existing panel supports if removing existing guide signs and if placing new panels of different sizes at the same location. Extend the supports, if needed. If the supports extend over the top of the panel, cut off the supports at the top of the panel or the top of the truss, whichever is higher.

Before fabricating, field check the sign structure elevations, details, and dimensions shown on the plans.

If sign lighting and walkways are not used, trim the sign support brackets flush with the bottoms of the signs.

Assume ownership of removed existing overhead sign supports and other removed materials.

#### **Item 656: Foundations for Traffic Control Devices**

Excavating and disposing of surplus materials for lighting standard foundations are subsidiary to the roadway illumination assembly foundation. Dispose of surplus excavated material. Use rigid metal conduit (RMC) for stub-outs in foundation and concrete structures. These stub-outs are subsidiary to the drilled shaft foundations.

Using ready mix concrete for sign foundations is optional.

**Item 662: Work Zone Pavement Markings**

At the end of each workday, mark roadways that remain open to traffic during construction operations with standard pavement markings, in accordance with the latest "Texas Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices."

Using raised markers for removable work zone pavement markings on final concrete surfaces is optional.

Do not use raised pavement markers as optional work zone pavement markings on final asphalt surfaces.

For transition lane lines and detour lane lines, use raised pavement markers as shown for solid lines on the latest Barricade and Construction standard sheet for "Work Zone Pavement Marking Details."

**Item 662: Work Zone Pavement Markings**

**Item 666: Reflectorized Pavement Markings**

**Item 668: Prefabricated Pavement Markings**

**Item 6019: Longitudinal Prefabricated Pavement Markings (PPM) with Warranty**

**Item 6020: Multipolymer Pavement Markings (MPM) with Warranty**

**Item 6038: Multipolymer Pavement Markings (MPM)**

Use Type III glass beads for thermoplastic and multipolymer pavement markings.

Use a 0.100 in. (100 mil) thickness for thermoplastic pavement markings, measured to the top of the thermoplastic, not including the exposed glass beads.

Use a 0.022 in. (22 mil) thickness for multipolymer pavement markings, measured to the top of the multipolymer, not including the exposed glass beads.

For roadways with asphalt surfaces to be striped with work zone or permanent thermoplastic markings, the Contractor has the option to apply paint and beads markings for a maximum 30-day period until placing the thermoplastic markings, or until starting the succeeding phase of work on the striped area. Maintain the paint and beads markings, at no expense to the Department, until placing the thermoplastic markings or starting the succeeding phase of work on the striped area. The work zone markings, whether paint and beads or thermoplastic, are paid under the Item, "Work Zone Pavement Markings" and the markings are paid for only once for the given phase of construction.

**County:** Fort Bend, etc.

**SHEET**

**Highway:** SH 99

**Control:** 3510-04-019, etc.

If using paint and bead markings as described above, purchase the traffic paint from the open market. If the Type II markings become dirty and require cleaning by washing, brushing, compressed air, or other approved methods before applying the Type I thermoplastic markings, this additional cleaning is subsidiary to the Item, "Reflectorized Pavement Markings."

Establish the alignment and layout for work zone striping and permanent striping.

Stripe all roadways before opening them to traffic.

Place pavement markings under these items in accordance with details shown on the plans, the latest "Texas Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices," or as directed.

When design details are not shown on the plans, provide pavement markings for arrows, words, and symbols conforming to the latest "Standard Highway Sign Designs for Texas" manual.

Place the pedestrian crosswalk pavement markings only after the pedestrian signals and push buttons are installed and operating.

#### **Item 672: Raised Pavement Markers**

If other operations are complete on the project and if the curing time period is not yet elapsed, the contract time will be suspended until the curing is done.

Before placing the raised pavement markers on concrete pavement, blast clean the surface using an abrasive-blasting medium. This work is subsidiary to the Item, "Raised Pavement Markers."

Provide epoxy adhesive that is machine-mixed or nozzle-mixed and dispensed. Equip the machine or nozzle with a mechanism to ensure positive mix measurement control.

#### **Item 677: Eliminating Existing Pavement Markings and Markers**

Remove existing pavement markings on concrete or asphalt surfaces by flail milling or as directed.

#### **Item 678: Pavement Surface Preparation for Markings**

Do not blast clean asphalt concrete pavement. Clean asphalt concrete pavement as required under the applicable specifications or as directed.

On new concrete pavement or on existing concrete pavement when placing a new stripe on a new location, remove the curing compounds and contamination from the pavement surface by flail milling or as directed. In addition, air-blast the surface with compressed air just before placing the new stripe.

On existing concrete pavement when placing a new stripe on an existing location, after removing the existing stripe under the Item, "Eliminating Existing Pavement Markings and Markers," air-blast the surface with compressed air just before placing the new stripe.

**County:** Fort Bend, etc.

**SHEET 30U**

**Highway:** SH 99

**Control:** 3510-04-019, etc.

Do not clean concrete pavement by grinding.

**Item 680: Highway Traffic Signals**

Clearly mark or highlight on the shop drawings the items being furnished for this project.

Furnish labor, tools, equipment, and materials as shown on the plans and specifications for a complete and operating signal installation.

Furnish the type of controller cabinet specified on the plans. Refer to the table shown in the Departmental Material Specifications (DMS-11170, Fully Actuated, Solid-State Traffic Signal Controller Assembly), Section 11170.6.A, Type 2 cabinet, page 4 of 39, regarding the size of the cabinet, back panel configuration, and the size of the load bay. Use the following website to view this specification: <http://www.txdot.gov/business/resources/dms.html> Complete traffic signal construction work, including correcting discrepancies shown on the Department inspector's "Traffic Signal Installation Inspection Report" before the beginning of the test period.

Provide a full-time qualified traffic signal technician responsible for installing, maintaining, or replacing traffic signal devices.

Staking in the field is subject to approval.

Make adjustments in project construction, if needed, due to conflicts with underground utilities.

Do not aim the luminaire arms mounted on traffic signal poles into the intersection. Aim each arm perpendicular to the centerline of the roadway it is intended to cover, to develop the proper illumination pattern for the intersection.

Allow the electrical work to be inspected by the City. Complying with the provisions and requirements of the City electrical ordinance is not required. Such inspection does not make the City a party to this contract.

Provide continuous conductors without splices from signal controller to signal heads. Route the conductors for luminaires to the service enclosure. Splices or attachments to the terminal block in the access compartment of the mast arm pole are not permitted except for the luminaire cable.

Abrasions to the conductor insulation caused while pulling cable for the traffic signal system are cause for immediate rejection. Remove and replace the entire damaged cable at no expense to the Department.

When pulling cables or conductors through conduit, do not exceed the manufacturer's recommended pulling tensions. Lubricate the cables or conductors with a lubricant as recommended by the cable manufacturer.

Bond the controller housing, signal poles, conduit, and spans to a minimum No. 6 AWG stranded copper conductor. An equipment grounding conductor is required in every conduit to form a

**County:** Fort Bend, etc.

**SHEET**

**Highway:** SH 99

**Control:** 3510-04-019, etc.

continuous grounding system. Effectively connect the grounding system to ground rods or concrete encased grounding electrodes as indicated in the plans.

Wrap signal heads with dark plastic or suitable material to conceal the signal faces from the time of installation until placing into operation. Do not use burlap.

Furnish signal heads from the same manufacturer.

Use Type B (high intensity prismatic) or Type D (diamond grade) retroreflective sheeting for signs mounted under or adjacent to the signal heads.

Furnish and attach compression type connectors. Install the connectors with a compression mechanical release hand-crimping tool to each individual conductor before making connections to the terminal strips.

Furnish solid conductors for traffic signal cable.

The Contractor may use ready mix concrete.

Apply membrane curing on concrete work in accordance with Section 420.4.10.3, "Membrane Curing."

The standard 4.5-in. galvanized pipe type poles, except the breakaway type, are subject only to the Engineer's inspection for their acceptance. Mill test reports or documentation will not be required.

#### **Item 682: Vehicle and Pedestrian Signal Heads**

Install two set screws on vehicle signal head mounting hardware fittings.

Furnish black housings for vehicle and pedestrian signals. Furnish black vehicle signal head back plates with 2 in. retroreflective yellow borders.

#### **Item 686: Traffic Signal Pole Assemblies (Steel)**

For a steel mast arm or steel strain pole assembly, hold the anchor bolts and conduits rigidly in place with a welded steel template.

Leave a minimum of one full diameter thread exposed on each anchor bolt securing a signal pole.

Set the anchor bolts for the steel strain poles so that two are in compression and two are in tension.

Use a Texas Cone Penetrometer reading of 10. The drilled shaft length is from the surface elevation to the bottom of the drilled shaft. Provide an additional length of the pole foundation from the surface level to the roadway level, if required for unusual locations. Provide the drilled



shaft depth regardless of the length of the pole foundation. The pole foundation depth from the surface level to the roadway level is a maximum of 4 ft., or as approved.

Locate traffic signal pole assembly foundations a minimum of 4 ft. from the roadway curb or pavement edge, or as shown on the plans.

Place steel strain poles at a 10 ft. desirable minimum distance from the roadway curb or pavement edge.

After the traffic signal pole assembly is plumb and the nuts are tight, tack-weld each anchor bolt nut in two places to its washer. Tack-weld each washer to the base plate in two places. Do not weld components to the bolt. Perform tack-welding in accordance with the Item, "Steel Structures." After tack-welding, repair galvanizing damage on bolts, nuts, and washers in accordance with Section 445.3.5, "Repairs."

The Department may test the anchor bolts using ultrasonic methods for traffic signal poles after they are installed. Replace faulty anchor bolts as directed. Do not weld the anchor bolts.

**Item 688: Pedestrian Detectors and Vehicle Loop Detectors**

Provide pedestrian push buttons a minimum of 2 in. diameter in the smallest dimension.

Install a rubber grommet or bushing between the push button assembly and the signal pole to protect the conductors.

Provide a black tube loop detector wire as specified in the "International Municipal Signal Association, Inc." (IMSA) Specifications.

At intersections where a minimum of 10 ft. spacing between adjacent accessible pedestrian signal units is not possible, provide each accessible pedestrian pushbutton with the following features: a pushbutton locator tone, a tactile arrow, a speech walk message for the walking person indication and a speech pushbutton information message.

Provide pedestrian push buttons a minimum of 2 in. diameter in the smallest dimension.

Install a rubber grommet or bushing between the push button assembly and the signal pole to protect the conductors.

**Item 730: Roadside Mowing**

**Item 734: Litter Removal**

**Item 735: Debris Removal**

**Item 738: Cleaning and Sweeping Highways**

Mow areas of existing vegetation, collect and dispose of litter, and sweep the roadway within the project limits according to the following chart for the duration of the project or as directed. This work is paid for under their respective bid items.

Roadside Mowing	Litter Removal	Debris Removal	Cleaning and Sweeping Highways
-----------------	----------------	----------------	--------------------------------

County: Fort Bend, etc.

SHEET

Highway: SH 99

Control: 3510-04-019, etc.

<b>Roadside Mowing</b>	<b>Litter Removal</b>	<b>Debris Removal</b>	<b>Cleaning and Sweeping Highways</b>
12 cycles	12 cycles	12 cycles	12 cycles

**Item 3000: Crack Attenuating Mixture**

In areas where the International Roughness Index (IRI) data indicate a need for improvement to the ride quality of the roadway, the average thickness may vary in excess of 1 in. thick.

**Item 3076: Dense-Graded Hot Mix Asphalt**

Taper the asphalt concrete pavement at the beginning and ending points.

Use a maximum 6H:1V slope for the asphalt concrete pavement edge.

Where the 6H:1V ACP edge taper extends over onto the unsurfaced shoulders, blade off the loose existing shoulder material to provide a solid base for the outside taper edge. After placing the ACP overlay, blade this material back against the edge taper. This work is subsidiary to the various bid items.

The stockpile will be the point of sampling of coarse aggregate for test method TEX-217-F (Part II, decantation).

Place the asphalt concrete pavement in courses as shown on the typical sections.

Do not use petroleum-based solvents in the beds of hot mix asphalt delivery vehicles.

Dilution of tack coat is not allowed.

Do not use Surface Aggregate Classification (SAC) C for this project.

For determining the Asphalt Content, only ignition ovens will be allowed.

The tack coat rate shown on the “Basis of Estimate” is an average rate for calculating tack coat quantities. Vary the rate based on the pavement conditions and other factors such as manufacturer’s recommendations and weather.

**Item 3081: Thin Overlay Mixtures (TOM)**

Place mixtures only when the air temperature is above 70°F.

**Item 6004: Communication Cable**

Seal each end of the communications cable that is exposed to elements during storage or after installing with a waterproof sealant, or as per manufacturer recommendations.

Ensure each communication cable run is continuous without splices from controller to controller.

Assume responsibility for the signal carrying capability and performance of the cable. Install each wire with a lightning protection device unless otherwise noted. Ground the cable in accordance with the manufacturer’s recommendation.

**Item 6053: Shifting or Removing Existing Overhead Signs**

Assume ownership of the removed sign panels.

**Item 6185: Truck Mounted Attenuator (TMA) and Trailer Attenuator (TA)**

A shadow vehicle with Truck Mounted Attenuators (TMAs) or Trailer Attenuators (TAs) is required as shown on the appropriate Traffic Control Plan (TCP) sheets. TMAs/TAs must meet the requirements of the Compliant Work Zone Traffic Control Device List.

Level 3 Compliant TMAs/TAs are required for this project.

A total of one (1) shadow vehicle with a TMA/TA is required for the work with the exception of Pavement Marking Operations. The Contractor is responsible for determining if one or more of these operations will be ongoing at the same time to determine the total number of TMAs/TAs needed on the project.

A total of three (3) shadow vehicles with a TMA/TA are required for Pavement Marking Operations. The Contractor is responsible for determining if one or more of these operations will be ongoing at the same time to determine the total number of TMAs/TAs needed on the project.

In addition to the shadow vehicles with TMAs/TAs that are specified as being required on the TCP layout sheets for this project, provide additional shadow vehicles with TMAs/TAs as shown on the TCP Standard sheets. The Contractor is responsible for determining if one or more of these operations will be ongoing at the same time to determine the total number of TMAs/TAs needed on the project.

**Item 7017: Sanitary Sewer**

Provide a record of the locations of stacks, stubs, etc. to the owner of the sanitary sewer facility.

Maintain a 12-in. minimum vertical clearance at crossings between the sanitary sewers and culverts, unless otherwise noted.

**Basis of Estimate**

Item	Description	Limit and Rate	Unit
134	Backfilling Pavement Edges • Asphalt Emulsion	0.25 Gal. / Sq. Yd.	STA
150	Blading	1 Hr. / Station	HR
247	Flexible Base • Crushed Stone	138 Lb. / Cu. Ft.	TON

Item	Description	Limit and Rate	Unit
260	Lime Treatment (Road-Mixed) For materials used as subgrade * • Lime(HYD, COM, or QK)(SLRY) or QK(DRY)	6 % by weight based on 100 Lb. / Cu. Ft. subgrade	SY TON
263	Lime Treatment (Plant-Mixed) • Hydrated Lime	3 % by weight of flexible base	TON
275	Cement Treatment (Road-Mixed) For materials used as subgrade * • Cement	6 % by weight based on 100 Lb. / Cu. Ft. subgrade	SY TON
292	Asphalt Treatment (Plant-Mixed) • Asphalt • Aggregate	110 Lb. / Sq. Yd.-In. 5 % by weight 95 % by weight	TON
310	Prime Coat	0.25 Gal. / Sq. Yd.	GAL
316	Seal Coat • Asphalt • Aggregate (Gr 4) A-R Binder • Asphalt • Aggregate (Gr 4)	0.32 Gal. / Sq. Yd. 1/130 Cu. Yd. / Sq. Yd. 0.42 Gal. / Sq. Yd. 1/130 Cu. Yd. / Sq. Yd.	GAL CY GAL CY
3000	Crack Attenuating Mixture • Asphalt • Aggregate	115 Lb. / Sq. Yd.-In. 7.5 % by weight 92.5 % by weight	TON
3076	Dense-Graded Hot Mix Asphalt • Asphalt • Aggregate Tack Coat • Applied on new HMA • Applied on Existing HMA • Applied on Milled HMA	110 Lb. / Sq. Yd.-In. 6 % by weight 94 % by weight 0.06 Gal. / Sq. Yd. 0.09 Gal. / Sq. Yd. 0.11 Gal. / Sq. Yd.	TON
3077	Superpave Mixtures • Asphalt • Aggregate	100 Lb. / Sq. Yd.-In. 8 % by weight 92 % by weight	TON
3079	Permeable Friction Course (PG-Binder) • Asphalt • Aggregate Permeable Friction Course (A-R Binder) • Asphalt Aggregate	95 Lb. / Sq. Yd.-In. 6.5 % by weight 93.5 % by weight 95 Lb. / Sq. Yd.-In. 8 % by weight 92 % by weight	TON TON

\* If used in existing roadway base, rate will be determined on a case-by-case basis.

CONTROL : 3510-04-019, ETC  
PROJECT : STP 2022(936)MM, ETC  
HIGHWAY : SH 99  
COUNTY : FORT BEND, ETC

TEXAS DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

**GOVERNING SPECIFICATIONS AND SPECIAL PROVISIONS**

ALL SPECIFICATIONS AND SPECIAL PROVISIONS APPLICABLE TO THIS PROJECT ARE IDENTIFIED AS FOLLOWS:

STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS: ADOPTED BY THE TEXAS DEPARTMENT OF  
----- TRANSPORTATION NOVEMBER 1, 2014.  
STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS ARE INCORPORATED  
INTO THE CONTRACT BY REFERENCE.

ITEMS 1 TO 9 INCL., GENERAL REQUIREMENTS AND COVENANTS  
ITEM 100 PREPARING RIGHT OF WAY (103)  
ITEM 104 REMOVING CONCRETE  
ITEM 105 REMOVING TREATED AND UNTREATED BASE AND ASPHALT PAVEMENT  
ITEM 110 EXCAVATION (132)  
ITEM 132 EMBANKMENT (100) (160) (204) (210) (216) (260) (400)  
ITEM 161 COMPOST (160)  
ITEM 162 SODDING FOR EROSION CONTROL (166) (168)  
ITEM 164 SEEDING FOR EROSION CONTROL (162) (166) (168)  
ITEM 166 FERTILIZER (520)  
ITEM 168 VEGETATIVE WATERING  
ITEM 260 LIME TREATMENT (ROAD-MIXED) (105) (132) (204) (210) (216)  
(247) (300) (310) (520) <3096>  
ITEM 275 CEMENT TREATMENT (ROAD-MIXED) (132) (204) (210) (216) (247)  
(300) (310) (520) <3096>  
ITEM 276 CEMENT TREATMENT (PLANT-MIXED) (204) (210) (216) (247) (300)  
<520><3096>  
ITEM 292 ASPHALT TREATMENT (PLANT-MIXED) (300) (301) (320) (520) (585)  
<3096>  
ITEM 310 PRIME COAT (300) (316)  
ITEM 360 CONCRETE PAVEMENT (421) (422) (438) (440) (529) (585)  
ITEM 400 EXCAVATION AND BACKFILL FOR STRUCTURES (110) (132) (401)  
(402) (403) (416) (420) (421) (423)  
ITEM 402 TRENCH EXCAVATION PROTECTION  
ITEM 403 TEMPORARY SPECIAL SHORING (410) (411) (423)  
ITEM 405 FOUNDATION LOAD TEST (404) (416)  
ITEM 409 PRESTRESSED CONCRETE PILING (404) (405) (420) (421) (424)  
(425) (440)  
ITEM 410 SOIL NAIL ANCHORS (421) (431) (440)  
ITEM 416 DRILLED SHAFT FOUNDATIONS (405) (420) (421) (423) (440) (448)

ITEM 420 CONCRETE SUBSTRUCTURES (400) (404) (421) (422) (426) (427)  
 (440) (441) (448)  
 ITEM 422 CONCRETE SUPERSTRUCTURES (420) (421) (424) (438) (440) (448)  
 (454) <780>  
 ITEM 423 RETAINING WALLS (110) (132) (216) (400) (416) (420) (421) (424)  
 (440) (445)  
 ITEM 425 PRECAST PRESTRESSED CONCRETE STRUCTURAL MEMBERS (409)  
 (420) (421) (424) (426) (427) (434) (440) (442) (445)  
 ITEM 427 SURFACE FINISHES FOR CONCRETE (420)  
 ITEM 432 RIPRAP (247) (420) (421) (431) (440)  
 ITEM 450 RAILING (420) (421) (422) (424) (440) (441) (442) (445) (446)  
 (448)  
 ITEM 454 BRIDGE EXPANSION JOINTS (429) (442) (785)  
 ITEM 462 CONCRETE BOX CULVERTS AND DRAINS (400) (402) (403) (420)  
 (421) (422) (424) (440) (464) (476)  
 ITEM 464 REINFORCED CONCRETE PIPE (400) (402) (403) (467) (476)  
 ITEM 465 JUNCTION BOXES, MANHOLES, AND INLETS (400) (420) (421) (424)  
 (440) (471)  
 ITEM 467 SAFETY END TREATMENT (400) (420) (421) (432) (440) (442) (445)  
 (460) (464)  
 ITEM 476 JACKING, BORING, OR TUNNELING PIPE OR BOX (402) (403) (460)  
 (462) (464)  
 ITEM 479 ADJUSTING MANHOLES AND INLETS (400) (421) (465) (471)  
 ITEM 496 REMOVING STRUCTURES  
 ITEM 500 MOBILIZATION  
 ITEM 502 BARRICADES, SIGNS, AND TRAFFIC HANDLING  
 ITEM 504 FIELD OFFICE AND LABORATORY  
 ITEM 506 TEMPORARY EROSION, SEDIMENTATION, AND ENVIRONMENTAL  
 CONTROLS (161) (432) (556)  
 ITEM 508 CONSTRUCTING DETOURS  
 ITEM 512 PORTABLE TRAFFIC BARRIER (420) (421) (424) (440) (442)  
 ITEM 514 PERMANENT CONCRETE TRAFFIC BARRIER (400) (416) (420) (421)  
 (424) (440) (442) (448)  
 ITEM 529 CONCRETE CURB, GUTTER, AND COMBINED CURB AND GUTTER (360)  
 (420) (421) (440)  
 ITEM 530 INTERSECTIONS, DRIVEWAYS, AND TURNOUTS (247) (260) (263)  
 (275) (276) (292) (316) (330) (334) (340) <341> (360) (421) (440)  
 <3076>  
 ITEM 531 SIDEWALKS (104) (360) (420) (421) (440) (530)  
 ITEM 540 METAL BEAM GUARD FENCE (421) (441) (445) (529)  
 ITEM 542 REMOVING METAL BEAM GUARD FENCE  
 ITEM 543 CABLE BARRIER SYSTEM (421) (658)  
 ITEM 544 GUARDRAIL END TREATMENTS  
 ITEM 545 CRASH CUSHION ATTENUATORS (421)  
 ITEM 556 PIPE UNDERDRAINS (402) (432)  
 ITEM 610 ROADWAY ILLUMINATION ASSEMBLIES (416) (421) (432) (441) (442)  
 (445) (449) (614) (616) (618) (620) (622) (624) (628)  
 ITEM 618 CONDUIT (400) (476)  
 ITEM 620 ELECTRICAL CONDUCTORS (610) (628)  
 ITEM 624 GROUND BOXES (420) (421) (432) (440) (618) (620)  
 ITEM 628 ELECTRICAL SERVICES (441) (445) (449) (618) (620) (627) (656)  
 ITEM 636 SIGNS (643)  
 ITEM 644 SMALL ROADSIDE SIGN ASSEMBLIES (421) (440) (441) (442) (445)  
 (636) (643) (656)

ITEM 647 LARGE ROADSIDE SIGN SUPPORTS AND ASSEMBLIES (416) (421)  
(440) (441) (442) (445) (636)

ITEM 650 OVERHEAD SIGN SUPPORTS (416) (420) (421) (441) (442) (445)  
(449) (618) (636) (654)

ITEM 654 SIGN WALKWAYS (441) (445)

ITEM 658 DELINEATOR AND OBJECT MARKER ASSEMBLIES (445)

ITEM 662 WORK ZONE PAVEMENT MARKINGS (666) (668) (672) (677)

ITEM 666 RETROREFLECTORIZED PAVEMENT MARKINGS (316) (502) (662) (677)  
(678)

ITEM 672 RAISED PAVEMENT MARKERS (677) (678)

ITEM 677 ELIMINATING EXISTING PAVEMENT MARKINGS AND MARKERS (300)  
(302) (316) <3096>

ITEM 678 PAVEMENT SURFACE PREPARATION FOR MARKINGS (677)

ITEM 680 HIGHWAY TRAFFIC SIGNALS (416) (610) (618) (620) (624) (625)  
(627) (628) (636) (656) (682) (684) (686) (688)

ITEM 685 ROADSIDE FLASHING BEACON ASSEMBLIES (441) (442) (445) (449)  
(610) (618) (620) (621) (622) (624) (628) (656) (682) (684) (687)

ITEM 687 PEDESTAL POLE ASSEMBLIES (445) (449) (656) (682)

ITEM 688 PEDESTRIAN DETECTORS AND VEHICLE LOOP DETECTORS (618)  
(624) (682) (684)

ITEM 690 MAINTENANCE OF TRAFFIC SIGNALS (416) (421) (476) (610) (618)  
(620) (622) (624) (625) (627) (628) (636) (656) (680) (682) (684)  
(685) (686) (687) (688)

SPECIAL PROVISIONS: SPECIAL PROVISIONS WILL GOVERN AND TAKE  
----- PRECEDENCE OVER THE SPECIFICATIONS ENUMERATED  
HEREON WHEREVER IN CONFLICT THEREWITH.

REQUIRED CONTRACT PROVISIONS, FEDERAL-AID CONSTRUCTION CONTRACTS  
(FORM FHWA 1273)

WAGE RATES

SPECIAL PROVISION "NONDISCRIMINATION" (000---002)

SPECIAL PROVISION "CERTIFICATION OF NONDISCRIMINATION IN EMPLOYMENT"  
(000---003)

SPECIAL PROVISION "NOTICE OF REQUIREMENT FOR AFFIRMATIVE ACTION TO  
ENSURE EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY (EXECUTIVE  
ORDER 11246" (000---004)

SPECIAL PROVISION "STANDARD FEDERAL EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY  
CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT SPECIFICATIONS" (000---005)

SPECIAL PROVISION "ONTHEJOB TRAINING PROGRAM" (000---006)

SPECIAL PROVISION "AMERICANS WITH DISABILITIES ACT CURB RAMP WORKSHOP  
" (000---025)

SPECIAL PROVISION "CERTIFICATE OF INTERESTED PARTIES (FORM 1295)"  
(000--1019)

SPECIAL PROVISION "SCHEDULE OF LIQUIDATED DAMAGES" (000--1243)

SPECIAL PROVISION "IMPORTANT NOTICE TO CONTRACTORS" (000--1254)

SPECIAL PROVISION "CARGO PREFERENCE ACT REQUIREMENTS IN FEDERAL AID  
CONTRACTS" (000---241)

SPECIAL PROVISION "DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS ENTERPRISE IN FEDERAL AID  
CONTRACTS" (000---394)

SPECIAL PROVISION "IMPORTANT NOTICE TO CONTRACTORS" (000---395)

SPECIAL PROVISION "NOTICE OF CONTRACTOR PERFORMANCE EVALUATIONS"

(000---659)

SPECIAL PROVISIONS TO ITEM 2 (002---009) (002---011) (002---013)

SPECIAL PROVISIONS TO ITEM 3 (003---011) (003---013)

SPECIAL PROVISIONS TO ITEM 5 (005---002) (005---003)

SPECIAL PROVISIONS TO ITEM 6 (006---012) (006---030)

SPECIAL PROVISIONS TO ITEM 7 (007---004) (007---008) (007---010)  
(007---011)

SPECIAL PROVISIONS TO ITEM 8 (008---003) (008---006) (008---030)  
(008---033) (008---045)

SPECIAL PROVISIONS TO ITEM 9 (009---010) (009---011)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 132 (132---002)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 247 (247---003)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 300 (300---020)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 302 (302---003)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 316 (316---002)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 334 (334---003)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 340 (340---004)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 341 (341---004)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 342 (342---005)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 347 (347---003)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 348 (348---004)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 420 (420---001)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 421 (421---010)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 423 (423---004)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 425 (425---001)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 426 (426---005)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 427 (427---003)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 434 (434---004)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 438 (438---002)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 440 (440---004)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 441 (441---004)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 442 (442---001)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 446 (446---005)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 447 (447---001)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 448 (448---001)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 449 (449---002)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 450 (450---001)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 462 (462---002)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 464 (464---001)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 465 (465---001)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 502 (502---008)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 506 (506---005)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 520 (520---002)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 540 (540---001)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 636 (636---001)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 643 (643---001)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 650 (650---001)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 654 (654---001)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 656 (656---001)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 666 (666---007)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 672 (672---001)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO ITEM 680 (680---006)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO SPECIAL SPECIFICATION ITEM 6064 (6064--001)

SPECIAL PROVISION TO SPECIAL SPECIFICATION ITEM 6185 (6185--002)



SPECIAL SPECIFICATIONS:

- 
- ITEM 3021 CONCRETE PAVEMENT WIDE FLANGE TERMINALS (360) (421) (440) (442)
  - ITEM 3076 DENSE-GRADED HOT-MIX ASPHALT <300><301><316><320><340><341><342><347><348><520><585><3079><3081><3082><3096>
  - ITEM 3079 PERMEABLE FRICTION COURSE (PFC) <300><301><320><342><520><585><3096>
  - ITEM 3081 THIN OVERLAY MIXTURES (TOM)
  - ITEM 3082 THIN BONDED FRICTION COURSES <210><300><301><320><342><348><520><585><3079><3096>
  - ITEM 3096 ASPHALTS, OILS, AND EMULSIONS
  - ITEM 4006 SOUND WALLS (424) (429) (447) (448)
  - ITEM 4021 THERMAL INTEGRITY PROFILER (TIP) TESTING OF DRILLED SHAFTS
  - ITEM 6001 PORTABLE CHANGEABLE MESSAGE SIGN
  - ITEM 6005 TESTING, TRAINING, DOCUMENTATION, FINAL ACCEPTANCE, AND WARRANTY
  - ITEM 6006 ELECTRONIC COMPONENTS
  - ITEM 6007 FIBER OPTIC CABLE (618) (620) (625) (6016)
  - ITEM 6008 ITS FIELD EQUIPMENT CABINET (421) (440) (449) (618) (620) (656) (687) (740) (6005) (6006)
  - ITEM 6010 CCTV FIELD EQUIPMENT (6005) (6006)
  - ITEM 6016 MULTI-DUCT CONDUIT SYSTEM (400) (401) (402) (421) (445) (476) (618) (620)
  - ITEM 6027 PREPARATION OF EXISTING CONDUITS, GROUND BOXES, OR MANHOLES (465) (618) (624)
  - ITEM 6028 INSTALLATION OF DYNAMIC MESSAGE SIGN SYSTEM (432) (441) (445) (449) (618) (620)
  - ITEM 6037 RAISED PAVEMENT MARKERS FOR SEAL COAT PROJECT (677) (678)
  - ITEM 6038 MULTI-POLYMER PAVEMENT MARKINGS (MPM) (677)
  - ITEM 6064 INTELLIGENT TRANSPORTATION SYSTEM (ITS) POLE WITH CABINET (416) (421) (440) (441) (442) (445) (449) (496) (618) (620) (740)
  - ITEM 6185 TRUCK MOUNTED ATTENUATOR (TMA) AND TRAILER ATTENUATOR (TA)
  - ITEM 6186 INTELLIGENT TRANSPORTATION SYSTEM (ITS) GROUND BOX (420) (421) (432) (440) (471) (618) (620)
  - ITEM 6292 RADAR VEHICLE DETECTION SYSTEM FOR SIGNALIZED INTERSECTION CONTROL
  - ITEM 6304 INTELLIGENT TRANSPORTATION SYSTEM (ITS) RADAR VEHICLE SENSING DEVICE
  - ITEM 6366 INSTALLATION OF WRONG WAY DRIVER SYSTEM EQUIPMENT

GENERAL: THE ABOVE-LISTED SPECIFICATION ITEMS ARE THOSE UNDER WHICH  
----- PAYMENT IS TO BE MADE. THESE, TOGETHER WITH SUCH OTHER  
PERTINENT ITEMS, IF ANY, AS MAY BE REFERRED TO IN THE ABOVE-  
LISTED SPECIFICATION ITEMS, AND INCLUDING THE SPECIAL  
PROVISIONS LISTED ABOVE, CONSTITUTE THE COMPLETE SPECIFI-  
CATIONS FOR THIS PROJECT.

**Control** 3510-04-019, ETC.  
**Project** STP 2022(936)MM, ETC.  
**Highway** SH 99  
**County** FORT BEND, ETC.

**DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS ENTERPRISE  
REQUIREMENTS**

The following goal for disadvantaged business enterprises is established:

**DBE  
9.0%**

**Certification of DBE Goal Attainment**

**By signing the proposal, the Bidder certifies that the above DBE goal will be met by committing to DBE participation that meets or exceeds the goal or providing adequate documentation of good faith efforts (GFE) to achieve the goal.**

**The DBE participation or GFE must be submitted within five (5) calendar days after bid opening. If the fifth day falls on a weekend or a day when TxDOT offices are closed, the deadline moves to the next business day.**

**The Department may impose remedies as defined by state or local law if a bidder fails to submit required documentation, including forfeiting the bid proposal guaranty and exclusion from rebidding on the contract if it is re-advertised.**

## **CHILD SUPPORT STATEMENT**

**Under Section 231.006, Family Code, the vendor or applicant certifies that the individual or business entity named in this contract, bid, or application is not ineligible to receive the specified grant, loan, or payment and acknowledges that this contract may be terminated and payment may be withheld if this certification is inaccurate.**

## CONFLICT OF INTEREST CERTIFICATION

Pursuant to Texas Government Code Section 2261.252(b), the Department is prohibited from entering into contracts in which Department officers and employees have a financial interest.

By signing the Contract, the Contractor certifies that it is not prohibited from entering into a Contract with the Department as a result of a financial interest as defined under Texas Government Code Section 2261.252(b), and that it will exercise reasonable care and diligence to prevent any actions or conditions that could result in a conflict of interest with the Department.

The Contractor also certifies that none of the following individuals, nor any of their family members within the second degree of affinity or consanguinity, owns 1% or more interest or has a financial interest as defined under Texas Government Code Section 2261.252(b) in the Contractor:

- Any member of the Texas Transportation Commission; and
- The Department's Executive Director, General Counsel, Chief of Procurement and Field Support Operations, Director of Procurement, and Director of Contract Services.

Violation of this certification may result in action by the Department.

## E-VERIFY CERTIFICATION

Pursuant to Texas Transportation Code §223.051, all TxDOT contracts for construction, maintenance, or improvement of a highway must include a provision requiring Contractors and subcontractors to use the U.S. Department of Homeland Security's E-Verify system to determine employment eligibility. By signing the contract, the Contractor certifies that prior to the award of the Contract:

- the Contractor has registered with and will, to the extent permitted by law, utilize the United States Department of Homeland Security's E-Verify system during the term of the Contract to determine the eligibility of all persons hired to perform duties within Texas during the term of the agreement; and
- the Contractor will require that all subcontractors also register with and, to the extent permitted by law, utilize the United States Department of Homeland Security's E-Verify system during the term of the subcontract to determine the eligibility of all persons hired to perform duties within Texas during the term of the agreement.

Violation of this requirement constitutes a material breach of the Contract, subjects a subcontractor to removal from the Contract, and subjects the Contractor or subcontractors to possible sanctions in accordance with Title 43, Texas Administrative Code, Chapter 10, Subchapter F, "Sanctions and Suspension for Ethical Violations by Entities Doing Business with the Department."

## Certification Regarding Disclosure of Public Information

Pursuant to Subchapter J, Chapter 552, Texas Government Code, contractors executing a contract with a governmental body that results in the expenditure of at least \$1 million in public funds must:

- 1) preserve all contracting information\* as provided by the records retention requirements applicable to Texas Department of Transportation (TxDOT) for the duration of the contract,
- 2) on request of TxDOT, promptly provide any contracting information related to the contract that is in the custody or possession of the entity, and
- 3) on completion of the contract, either:
  - A. provide, at no cost to TxDOT, all contracting information related to the contract that is in the custody or possession of the entity, or
  - B. preserve the contracting information related to the contract as provided by the records retention requirements applicable to TxDOT

The requirements of Subchapter J, Chapter 552, Government Code, may apply to this contract, and the contractor or vendor agrees that the contract can be terminated if the contractor or vendor knowingly or intentionally fails to comply with a requirement of that subchapter.

By entering into Contract, the Contractor agrees to:

- provide, or make available, to TxDOT and any authorized governmental investigating or auditing agency all records, including electronic and payment records related to the contract, for the same period provided by the records retention schedule applicable to TxDOT, and
- ensure that all subcontracts include a clause requiring the same.

\* As defined in Government Code §552.003, “Contracting information” means the following information maintained by a governmental body or sent between a governmental body and a vendor, contractor, potential vendor, or potential contractor:

- 1) information in a voucher or contract relating to the receipt or expenditure of public funds by a governmental body;
- 2) solicitation or bid documents relating to a contract with a governmental body;
- 3) communications sent between a governmental body and a vendor, contractor, potential vendor, or potential contractor during the solicitation, evaluation, or negotiation of a contract;
- 4) documents, including bid tabulations, showing the criteria by which a governmental body evaluates each vendor, contractor, potential vendor, or potential contractor responding to a solicitation and, if applicable, an explanation of why the vendor or contractor was selected; and
- 5) communications and other information sent between a governmental body and a vendor or contractor related to the performance of a final contract with the governmental body or work performed on behalf of the governmental body.

## CERTIFICATION TO NOT BOYCOTT ISRAEL

Pursuant to Texas Government Code §2271.002, the Department must include a provision requiring a written verification affirming that the Contractor does not boycott Israel, as defined in Government Code §808.001, and will not boycott Israel during the term of the contract. This provision applies to a contract that:

- 1) is with a Contractor that is not a sole proprietorship,
- 2) is with a Contractor with 10 or more full-time employees, and
- 3) has a value of \$100,000 or more.

By signing the contract, the Contractor certifies that it does not boycott Israel and will not boycott Israel during the term of this contract. "Boycott" means refusing to deal with, terminating business activities with, or otherwise taking any action that is intended to penalize, inflict economic harm on, or limit commercial relations specifically with Israel, or with a person or entity doing business in Israel or in an Israeli-controlled territory, but does not include an action made for ordinary business purposes.

Violation of this certification may result in action by the Department.

## CERTIFICATION TO NOT BOYCOTT ENERGY COMPANIES

Pursuant to Texas Government Code §2274.002, the Department must include a provision requiring a written verification affirming that the Contractor does not boycott energy companies, as defined in Government Code §809.001, and will not boycott energy companies during the term of the contract. This provision applies to a contract that:

- 1) is with a Contractor that is not a sole proprietorship,
- 2) is with a Contractor with 10 or more full-time employees, and
- 3) has a value of \$100,000 or more.

By signing the contract, the Contractor certifies that it does not boycott energy companies and will not boycott energy companies during the term of this contract. "Boycott" means taking any action that is intended to penalize, inflict economic harm on, or limit commercial relations with a company because the company: (1) engages in the exploration, production, utilization, transportation, sale, or manufacturing of fossil fuel-based energy and does not commit or pledge to meet environmental standards beyond applicable federal and state law; or (2) does business with a company described by (1).

Violation of this certification may result in action by the Department.



## CERTIFICATION TO NOT DISCRIMINATE AGAINST FIREARM ENTITIES OR FIREARM TRADE ASSOCIATIONS

Pursuant to Texas Government Code §2274.002, the Department must include a provision requiring a written verification affirming that the Contractor:

- 1) does not have a practice, policy, guidance, or directive that discriminates against a firearm entity or firearm trade association, as defined in Government Code §2274.001, and
- 2) will not discriminate against a firearm entity or firearm trade association during the term of the contract.

This provision applies to a contract that:

- 1) is with a Contractor that is not a sole proprietorship,
- 2) is with a Contractor with 10 or more full-time employees, and
- 3) has a value of \$100,000 or more.

By signing the contract, the Contractor certifies that it does not discriminate against a firearm entity or firearm trade association as described and will not do so during the term of this contract. "Discriminate against a firearm entity or firearm trade association" means, with respect to the entity or association, to: (1) refuse to engage in the trade of any goods or services with the entity or association based solely on its status as a firearm entity or firearm trade association; (2) refrain from continuing an existing business relationship with the entity or association based solely on its status as a firearm entity or firearm trade association; or (3) terminate an existing business relationship with the entity or association based solely on its status as a firearm entity or firearm trade association. "Discriminate against a firearm entity or firearm trade association" does not include: (1) the established policies of a merchant, retail seller, or platform that restrict or prohibit the listing or selling of ammunition, firearms, or firearm accessories; (2) a company's refusal to engage in the trade of any goods or services, decision to refrain from continuing an existing business relationship, or decision to terminate an existing business relationship to comply with federal, state, or local law, policy, or regulations or a directive by a regulatory agency, or for any traditional business reason that is specific to the customer or potential customer and not based solely on an entity's or association's status as a firearm entity or firearm trade association.

Violation of this certification may result in action by the Department.

# PROHIBITION ON CERTAIN TELECOMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT OR SERVICES

The Federal Register Notice issued the Final Rule and states that the amendment to 2 CFR 200.216 is effective on August 13, 2020. The new 2 CFR 200.471 regulation provides clarity that the telecommunications and video surveillance costs associated with 2 CFR 200.216 are unallowable for services and equipment from these specific providers. OMB's Federal Register Notice includes the new 2 CFR 200.216 and 2 CFR 200.471 regulations.

<https://www.federalregister.gov/documents/2020/08/13/2020-17468/guidance-for-grants-and-agreements>

Per the Federal Law referenced above, use of services, systems, or services or systems that contain components produced by any of the following manufacturers is strictly prohibited for use on this project. Therefore, for any telecommunications, CCTV, or video surveillance equipment, services or systems cannot be manufactured by, or have components manufactured by:

- Huawei Technologies Company,
- ZTE Corporation (any subsidiary and affiliate of such entities),
- Hyatera Communications Corporation,
- Hangzhou Hikvision Digital Technology Company,
- Dahua Technology Company (any subsidiary and affiliate of such entities).

Violation of this prohibition will require replacement of the equipment at the contractor's expense.

**REQUIRED CONTRACT PROVISIONS  
FEDERAL-AID CONSTRUCTION CONTRACTS**

- I. General
- II. Nondiscrimination
- III. Non-segregated Facilities
- IV. Davis-Bacon and Related Act Provisions
- V. Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act Provisions
- VI. Subletting or Assigning the Contract
- VII. Safety: Accident Prevention
- VIII. False Statements Concerning Highway Projects
- IX. Implementation of Clean Air Act and Federal Water Pollution Control Act
- X. Certification Regarding Debarment, Suspension, Ineligibility and Voluntary Exclusion
- XI. Certification Regarding Use of Contract Funds for Lobbying
- XII. Use of United States-Flag Vessels:

**ATTACHMENTS**

A. Employment and Materials Preference for Appalachian Development Highway System or Appalachian Local Access Road Contracts (included in Appalachian contracts only)

**I. GENERAL**

1. Form FHWA-1273 must be physically incorporated in each construction contract funded under title 23, United States Code, as required in 23 CFR 633.102(b) (excluding emergency contracts solely intended for debris removal). The contractor (or subcontractor) must insert this form in each subcontract and further require its inclusion in all lower tier subcontracts (excluding purchase orders, rental agreements and other agreements for supplies or services). 23 CFR 633.102(e).

The applicable requirements of Form FHWA-1273 are incorporated by reference for work done under any purchase order, rental agreement or agreement for other services. The prime contractor shall be responsible for compliance by any subcontractor, lower-tier subcontractor or service provider. 23 CFR 633.102(e).

Form FHWA-1273 must be included in all Federal-aid design-build contracts, in all subcontracts and in lower tier subcontracts (excluding subcontracts for design services, purchase orders, rental agreements and other agreements for supplies or services) in accordance with 23 CFR 633.102. The design-builder shall be responsible for compliance by any subcontractor, lower-tier subcontractor or service provider.

Contracting agencies may reference Form FHWA-1273 in solicitation-for-bids or request-for-proposals documents, however, the Form FHWA-1273 must be physically incorporated (not referenced) in all contracts, subcontracts and lower-tier subcontracts (excluding purchase orders, rental agreements and other agreements for supplies or services related to a construction contract). 23 CFR 633.102(b).

2. Subject to the applicability criteria noted in the following sections, these contract provisions shall apply to all work

performed on the contract by the contractor's own organization and with the assistance of workers under the contractor's immediate superintendence and to all work performed on the contract by piecework, station work, or by subcontract. 23 CFR 633.102(d).

3. A breach of any of the stipulations contained in these Required Contract Provisions may be sufficient grounds for withholding of progress payments, withholding of final payment, termination of the contract, suspension / debarment or any other action determined to be appropriate by the contracting agency and FHWA.

4. Selection of Labor: During the performance of this contract, the contractor shall not use convict labor for any purpose within the limits of a construction project on a Federal-aid highway unless it is labor performed by convicts who are on parole, supervised release, or probation. 23 U.S.C. 114(b). The term Federal-aid highway does not include roadways functionally classified as local roads or rural minor collectors. 23 U.S.C. 101(a).

**II. NONDISCRIMINATION** (23 CFR 230.107(a); 23 CFR Part 230, Subpart A, Appendix A; EO 11246)

The provisions of this section related to 23 CFR Part 230, Subpart A, Appendix A are applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts and to all related construction subcontracts of \$10,000 or more. The provisions of 23 CFR Part 230 are not applicable to material supply, engineering, or architectural service contracts.

In addition, the contractor and all subcontractors must comply with the following policies: Executive Order 11246, 41 CFR Part 60, 29 CFR Parts 1625-1627, 23 U.S.C. 140, Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended (29 U.S.C. 794), Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, as amended (42 U.S.C. 2000d et seq.), and related regulations including 49 CFR Parts 21, 26, and 27; and 23 CFR Parts 200, 230, and 633.

The contractor and all subcontractors must comply with: the requirements of the Equal Opportunity Clause in 41 CFR 60-1.4(b) and, for all construction contracts exceeding \$10,000, the Standard Federal Equal Employment Opportunity Construction Contract Specifications in 41 CFR 60-4.3.

Note: The U.S. Department of Labor has exclusive authority to determine compliance with Executive Order 11246 and the policies of the Secretary of Labor including 41 CFR Part 60, and 29 CFR Parts 1625-1627. The contracting agency and the FHWA have the authority and the responsibility to ensure compliance with 23 U.S.C. 140, Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended (29 U.S.C. 794), and Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, as amended (42 U.S.C. 2000d et seq.), and related regulations including 49 CFR Parts 21, 26, and 27; and 23 CFR Parts 200, 230, and 633.

The following provision is adopted from 23 CFR Part 230, Subpart A, Appendix A, with appropriate revisions to conform to the U.S. Department of Labor (US DOL) and FHWA requirements.

**1. Equal Employment Opportunity:** Equal Employment Opportunity (EEO) requirements not to discriminate and to take affirmative action to assure equal opportunity as set forth under laws, executive orders, rules, regulations (see 28 CFR Part 35, 29 CFR Part 1630, 29 CFR Parts 1625-1627, 41 CFR Part 60 and 49 CFR Part 27) and orders of the Secretary of Labor as modified by the provisions prescribed herein, and imposed pursuant to 23 U.S.C. 140, shall constitute the EEO and specific affirmative action standards for the contractor's project activities under this contract. The provisions of the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (42 U.S.C. 12101 et seq.) set forth under 28 CFR Part 35 and 29 CFR Part 1630 are incorporated by reference in this contract. In the execution of this contract, the contractor agrees to comply with the following minimum specific requirement activities of EEO:

a. The contractor will work with the contracting agency and the Federal Government to ensure that it has made every good faith effort to provide equal opportunity with respect to all of its terms and conditions of employment and in their review of activities under the contract. 23 CFR 230.409 (g)(4) & (5).

b. The contractor will accept as its operating policy the following statement:

"It is the policy of this Company to assure that applicants are employed, and that employees are treated during employment, without regard to their race, religion, sex, sexual orientation, gender identity, color, national origin, age or disability. Such action shall include: employment, upgrading, demotion, or transfer; recruitment or recruitment advertising; layoff or termination; rates of pay or other forms of compensation; and selection for training, including apprenticeship, pre-apprenticeship, and/or on-the-job training."

**2. EEO Officer:** The contractor will designate and make known to the contracting officers an EEO Officer who will have the responsibility for and must be capable of effectively administering and promoting an active EEO program and who must be assigned adequate authority and responsibility to do so.

**3. Dissemination of Policy:** All members of the contractor's staff who are authorized to hire, supervise, promote, and discharge employees, or who recommend such action or are substantially involved in such action, will be made fully cognizant of and will implement the contractor's EEO policy and contractual responsibilities to provide EEO in each grade and classification of employment. To ensure that the above agreement will be met, the following actions will be taken as a minimum:

a. Periodic meetings of supervisory and personnel office employees will be conducted before the start of work and then not less often than once every six months, at which time the contractor's EEO policy and its implementation will be reviewed and explained. The meetings will be conducted by the EEO Officer or other knowledgeable company official.

b. All new supervisory or personnel office employees will be given a thorough indoctrination by the EEO Officer, covering all major aspects of the contractor's EEO obligations within thirty days following their reporting for duty with the contractor.

c. All personnel who are engaged in direct recruitment for the project will be instructed by the EEO Officer in the contractor's procedures for locating and hiring minorities and women.

d. Notices and posters setting forth the contractor's EEO policy will be placed in areas readily accessible to employees, applicants for employment and potential employees.

e. The contractor's EEO policy and the procedures to implement such policy will be brought to the attention of employees by means of meetings, employee handbooks, or other appropriate means.

**4. Recruitment:** When advertising for employees, the contractor will include in all advertisements for employees the notation: "An Equal Opportunity Employer." All such advertisements will be placed in publications having a large circulation among minorities and women in the area from which the project work force would normally be derived.

a. The contractor will, unless precluded by a valid bargaining agreement, conduct systematic and direct recruitment through public and private employee referral sources likely to yield qualified minorities and women. To meet this requirement, the contractor will identify sources of potential minority group employees and establish with such identified sources procedures whereby minority and women applicants may be referred to the contractor for employment consideration.

b. In the event the contractor has a valid bargaining agreement providing for exclusive hiring hall referrals, the contractor is expected to observe the provisions of that agreement to the extent that the system meets the contractor's compliance with EEO contract provisions. Where implementation of such an agreement has the effect of discriminating against minorities or women, or obligates the contractor to do the same, such implementation violates Federal nondiscrimination provisions.

c. The contractor will encourage its present employees to refer minorities and women as applicants for employment. Information and procedures with regard to referring such applicants will be discussed with employees.

**5. Personnel Actions:** Wages, working conditions, and employee benefits shall be established and administered, and personnel actions of every type, including hiring, upgrading, promotion, transfer, demotion, layoff, and termination, shall be taken without regard to race, color, religion, sex, sexual orientation, gender identity, national origin, age or disability. The following procedures shall be followed:

a. The contractor will conduct periodic inspections of project sites to ensure that working conditions and employee facilities do not indicate discriminatory treatment of project site personnel.

b. The contractor will periodically evaluate the spread of wages paid within each classification to determine any evidence of discriminatory wage practices.

c. The contractor will periodically review selected personnel actions in depth to determine whether there is evidence of discrimination. Where evidence is found, the contractor will promptly take corrective action. If the review indicates that the discrimination may extend beyond the actions reviewed, such corrective action shall include all affected persons.

d. The contractor will promptly investigate all complaints of alleged discrimination made to the contractor in connection with its obligations under this contract, will attempt to resolve such complaints, and will take appropriate corrective action

within a reasonable time. If the investigation indicates that the discrimination may affect persons other than the complainant, such corrective action shall include such other persons. Upon completion of each investigation, the contractor will inform every complainant of all of their avenues of appeal.

#### **6. Training and Promotion:**

a. The contractor will assist in locating, qualifying, and increasing the skills of minorities and women who are applicants for employment or current employees. Such efforts should be aimed at developing full journey level status employees in the type of trade or job classification involved.

b. Consistent with the contractor's work force requirements and as permissible under Federal and State regulations, the contractor shall make full use of training programs (i.e., apprenticeship and on-the-job training programs for the geographical area of contract performance). In the event a special provision for training is provided under this contract, this subparagraph will be superseded as indicated in the special provision. The contracting agency may reserve training positions for persons who receive welfare assistance in accordance with 23 U.S.C. 140(a).

c. The contractor will advise employees and applicants for employment of available training programs and entrance requirements for each.

d. The contractor will periodically review the training and promotion potential of employees who are minorities and women and will encourage eligible employees to apply for such training and promotion.

**7. Unions:** If the contractor relies in whole or in part upon unions as a source of employees, the contractor will use good faith efforts to obtain the cooperation of such unions to increase opportunities for minorities and women. 23 CFR 230.409. Actions by the contractor, either directly or through a contractor's association acting as agent, will include the procedures set forth below:

a. The contractor will use good faith efforts to develop, in cooperation with the unions, joint training programs aimed toward qualifying more minorities and women for membership in the unions and increasing the skills of minorities and women so that they may qualify for higher paying employment.

b. The contractor will use good faith efforts to incorporate an EEO clause into each union agreement to the end that such union will be contractually bound to refer applicants without regard to their race, color, religion, sex, sexual orientation, gender identity, national origin, age, or disability.

c. The contractor is to obtain information as to the referral practices and policies of the labor union except that to the extent such information is within the exclusive possession of the labor union and such labor union refuses to furnish such information to the contractor, the contractor shall so certify to the contracting agency and shall set forth what efforts have been made to obtain such information.

d. In the event the union is unable to provide the contractor with a reasonable flow of referrals within the time limit set forth in the collective bargaining agreement, the contractor will, through independent recruitment efforts, fill the employment vacancies without regard to race, color, religion, sex, sexual orientation, gender identity, national origin, age, or disability; making full efforts to obtain qualified and/or qualifiable minorities and women. The failure of a union to provide

sufficient referrals (even though it is obligated to provide exclusive referrals under the terms of a collective bargaining agreement) does not relieve the contractor from the requirements of this paragraph. In the event the union referral practice prevents the contractor from meeting the obligations pursuant to Executive Order 11246, as amended, and these special provisions, such contractor shall immediately notify the contracting agency.

**8. Reasonable Accommodation for Applicants / Employees with Disabilities:** The contractor must be familiar with the requirements for and comply with the Americans with Disabilities Act and all rules and regulations established thereunder. Employers must provide reasonable accommodation in all employment activities unless to do so would cause an undue hardship.

**9. Selection of Subcontractors, Procurement of Materials and Leasing of Equipment:** The contractor shall not discriminate on the grounds of race, color, religion, sex, sexual orientation, gender identity, national origin, age, or disability in the selection and retention of subcontractors, including procurement of materials and leases of equipment. The contractor shall take all necessary and reasonable steps to ensure nondiscrimination in the administration of this contract.

a. The contractor shall notify all potential subcontractors, suppliers, and lessors of their EEO obligations under this contract.

b. The contractor will use good faith efforts to ensure subcontractor compliance with their EEO obligations.

#### **10. Assurances Required:**

a. The requirements of 49 CFR Part 26 and the State DOT's FHWA-approved Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) program are incorporated by reference.

b. The contractor, subrecipient or subcontractor shall not discriminate on the basis of race, color, national origin, or sex in the performance of this contract. The contractor shall carry out applicable requirements of 49 CFR part 26 in the award and administration of DOT-assisted contracts. Failure by the contractor to carry out these requirements is a material breach of this contract, which may result in the termination of this contract or such other remedy as the recipient deems appropriate, which may include, but is not limited to:

- (1) Withholding monthly progress payments;
- (2) Assessing sanctions;
- (3) Liquidated damages; and/or
- (4) Disqualifying the contractor from future bidding as non-responsible.

c. The Title VI and nondiscrimination provisions of U.S. DOT Order 1050.2A at Appendixes A and E are incorporated by reference. 49 CFR Part 21.

**11. Records and Reports:** The contractor shall keep such records as necessary to document compliance with the EEO requirements. Such records shall be retained for a period of three years following the date of the final payment to the contractor for all contract work and shall be available at reasonable times and places for inspection by authorized representatives of the contracting agency and the FHWA.

a. The records kept by the contractor shall document the following:

(1) The number and work hours of minority and non-minority group members and women employed in each work classification on the project;

(2) The progress and efforts being made in cooperation with unions, when applicable, to increase employment opportunities for minorities and women; and

(3) The progress and efforts being made in locating, hiring, training, qualifying, and upgrading minorities and women.

b. The contractors and subcontractors will submit an annual report to the contracting agency each July for the duration of the project indicating the number of minority, women, and non-minority group employees currently engaged in each work classification required by the contract work. This information is to be reported on [Form FHWA-1391](#). The staffing data should represent the project work force on board in all or any part of the last payroll period preceding the end of July. If on-the-job training is being required by special provision, the contractor will be required to collect and report training data. The employment data should reflect the work force on board during all or any part of the last payroll period preceding the end of July.

### III. NONSEGREGATED FACILITIES

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts and to all related construction subcontracts of more than \$10,000. 41 CFR 60-1.5.

As prescribed by 41 CFR 60-1.8, the contractor must ensure that facilities provided for employees are provided in such a manner that segregation on the basis of race, color, religion, sex, sexual orientation, gender identity, or national origin cannot result. The contractor may neither require such segregated use by written or oral policies nor tolerate such use by employee custom. The contractor's obligation extends further to ensure that its employees are not assigned to perform their services at any location under the contractor's control where the facilities are segregated. The term "facilities" includes waiting rooms, work areas, restaurants and other eating areas, time clocks, restrooms, washrooms, locker rooms and other storage or dressing areas, parking lots, drinking fountains, recreation or entertainment areas, transportation, and housing provided for employees. The contractor shall provide separate or single-user restrooms and necessary dressing or sleeping areas to assure privacy between sexes.

### IV. DAVIS-BACON AND RELATED ACT PROVISIONS

This section is applicable to all Federal-aid construction projects exceeding \$2,000 and to all related subcontracts and lower-tier subcontracts (regardless of subcontract size), in accordance with 29 CFR 5.5. The requirements apply to all projects located within the right-of-way of a roadway that is functionally classified as Federal-aid highway. 23 U.S.C. 113. This excludes roadways functionally classified as local roads or rural minor collectors, which are exempt. 23 U.S.C. 101. Where applicable law requires that projects be treated as a project on a Federal-aid highway, the provisions of this subpart will apply regardless of the location of the project. Examples include: Surface Transportation Block Grant Program projects funded under 23 U.S.C. 133 [excluding recreational trails projects], the Nationally Significant Freight and Highway

Projects funded under 23 U.S.C. 117, and National Highway Freight Program projects funded under 23 U.S.C. 167.

The following provisions are from the U.S. Department of Labor regulations in 29 CFR 5.5 "Contract provisions and related matters" with minor revisions to conform to the FHWA-1273 format and FHWA program requirements.

#### 1. Minimum wages (29 CFR 5.5)

a. All laborers and mechanics employed or working upon the site of the work, will be paid unconditionally and not less often than once a week, and without subsequent deduction or rebate on any account (except such payroll deductions as are permitted by regulations issued by the Secretary of Labor under the Copeland Act (29 CFR part 3)), the full amount of wages and bona fide fringe benefits (or cash equivalents thereof) due at time of payment computed at rates not less than those contained in the wage determination of the Secretary of Labor which is attached hereto and made a part hereof, regardless of any contractual relationship which may be alleged to exist between the contractor and such laborers and mechanics.

Contributions made or costs reasonably anticipated for bona fide fringe benefits under section 1(b)(2) of the Davis-Bacon Act on behalf of laborers or mechanics are considered wages paid to such laborers or mechanics, subject to the provisions of paragraph 1.d. of this section; also, regular contributions made or costs incurred for more than a weekly period (but not less often than quarterly) under plans, funds, or programs which cover the particular weekly period, are deemed to be constructively made or incurred during such weekly period. Such laborers and mechanics shall be paid the appropriate wage rate and fringe benefits on the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed, without regard to skill, except as provided in 29 CFR 5.5(a)(4). Laborers or mechanics performing work in more than one classification may be compensated at the rate specified for each classification for the time actually worked therein: Provided, That the employer's payroll records accurately set forth the time spent in each classification in which work is performed. The wage determination (including any additional classification and wage rates conformed under paragraph 1.b. of this section) and the Davis-Bacon poster (WH-1321) shall be posted at all times by the contractor and its subcontractors at the site of the work in a prominent and accessible place where it can be easily seen by the workers.

b.(1) The contracting officer shall require that any class of laborers or mechanics, including helpers, which is not listed in the wage determination and which is to be employed under the contract shall be classified in conformance with the wage determination. The contracting officer shall approve an additional classification and wage rate and fringe benefits therefore only when the following criteria have been met:

(i) The work to be performed by the classification requested is not performed by a classification in the wage determination; and

(ii) The classification is utilized in the area by the construction industry; and

(iii) The proposed wage rate, including any bona fide fringe benefits, bears a reasonable relationship to the wage rates contained in the wage determination.

(2) If the contractor and the laborers and mechanics to be employed in the classification (if known), or their representatives, and the contracting officer agree on the classification and wage rate (including the amount designated for fringe benefits where appropriate), a report of the action taken shall be sent by the contracting officer to the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division, U.S. Department of Labor, Washington, DC 20210. The Administrator, or an authorized representative, will approve, modify, or disapprove every additional classification action within 30 days of receipt and so advise the contracting officer or will notify the contracting officer within the 30-day period that additional time is necessary.

(3) In the event the contractor, the laborers or mechanics to be employed in the classification or their representatives, and the contracting officer do not agree on the proposed classification and wage rate (including the amount designated for fringe benefits, where appropriate), the contracting officer shall refer the questions, including the views of all interested parties and the recommendation of the contracting officer, to the Administrator for determination. The Administrator, or an authorized representative, will issue a determination within 30 days of receipt and so advise the contracting officer or will notify the contracting officer within the 30-day period that additional time is necessary.

(4) The wage rate (including fringe benefits where appropriate) determined pursuant to paragraphs 1.b.(2) or 1.b.(3) of this section, shall be paid to all workers performing work in the classification under this contract from the first day on which work is performed in the classification.

c. Whenever the minimum wage rate prescribed in the contract for a class of laborers or mechanics includes a fringe benefit which is not expressed as an hourly rate, the contractor shall either pay the benefit as stated in the wage determination or shall pay another bona fide fringe benefit or an hourly cash equivalent thereof.

d. If the contractor does not make payments to a trustee or other third person, the contractor may consider as part of the wages of any laborer or mechanic the amount of any costs reasonably anticipated in providing bona fide fringe benefits under a plan or program, Provided, That the Secretary of Labor has found, upon the written request of the contractor, that the applicable standards of the Davis-Bacon Act have been met. The Secretary of Labor may require the contractor to set aside in a separate account assets for the meeting of obligations under the plan or program.

## **2. Withholding (29 CFR 5.5)**

The contracting agency shall upon its own action or upon written request of an authorized representative of the Department of Labor, withhold or cause to be withheld from the contractor under this contract, or any other Federal contract with the same prime contractor, or any other federally-assisted contract subject to Davis-Bacon prevailing wage requirements, which is held by the same prime contractor, so much of the accrued payments or advances as may be considered necessary to pay laborers and mechanics,

including apprentices, trainees, and helpers, employed by the contractor or any subcontractor the full amount of wages required by the contract. In the event of failure to pay any laborer or mechanic, including any apprentice, trainee, or helper, employed or working on the site of the work, all or part of the wages required by the contract, the contracting agency may, after written notice to the contractor, take such action as may be necessary to cause the suspension of any further payment, advance, or guarantee of funds until such violations have ceased.

## **3. Payrolls and basic records (29 CFR 5.5)**

a. Payrolls and basic records relating thereto shall be maintained by the contractor during the course of the work and preserved for a period of three years thereafter for all laborers and mechanics working at the site of the work. Such records shall contain the name, address, and social security number of each such worker, his or her correct classification, hourly rates of wages paid (including rates of contributions or costs anticipated for bona fide fringe benefits or cash equivalents thereof of the types described in section 1(b)(2)(B) of the Davis-Bacon Act), daily and weekly number of hours worked, deductions made and actual wages paid. Whenever the Secretary of Labor has found under 29 CFR 5.5(a)(1)(iv) that the wages of any laborer or mechanic include the amount of any costs reasonably anticipated in providing benefits under a plan or program described in section 1(b)(2)(B) of the Davis-Bacon Act, the contractor shall maintain records which show that the commitment to provide such benefits is enforceable, that the plan or program is financially responsible, and that the plan or program has been communicated in writing to the laborers or mechanics affected, and records which show the costs anticipated or the actual cost incurred in providing such benefits. Contractors employing apprentices or trainees under approved programs shall maintain written evidence of the registration of apprenticeship programs and certification of trainee programs, the registration of the apprentices and trainees, and the ratios and wage rates prescribed in the applicable programs.

b.(1) The contractor shall submit weekly for each week in which any contract work is performed a copy of all payrolls to the contracting agency. The payrolls submitted shall set out accurately and completely all of the information required to be maintained under 29 CFR 5.5(a)(3)(i), except that full social security numbers and home addresses shall not be included on weekly transmittals. Instead the payrolls shall only need to include an individually identifying number for each employee (e.g., the last four digits of the employee's social security number). The required weekly payroll information may be submitted in any form desired. Optional Form WH-347 is available for this purpose from the Wage and Hour Division Web site. The prime contractor is responsible for the submission of copies of payrolls by all subcontractors. Contractors and subcontractors shall maintain the full social security number and current address of each covered worker, and shall provide them upon request to the contracting agency for transmission to the State DOT, the FHWA or the Wage and Hour Division of the Department of Labor for purposes of an investigation or audit of compliance with prevailing wage requirements. It is not a violation of this section for a prime contractor to require a subcontractor to provide addresses and social security numbers to the prime contractor for its own records, without weekly submission to the contracting agency.

(2) Each payroll submitted shall be accompanied by a "Statement of Compliance," signed by the contractor or

subcontractor or his or her agent who pays or supervises the payment of the persons employed under the contract and shall certify the following:

(i) That the payroll for the payroll period contains the information required to be provided under 29 CFR 5.5(a)(3)(ii), the appropriate information is being maintained under 29 CFR 5.5(a)(3)(i), and that such information is correct and complete;

(ii) That each laborer or mechanic (including each helper, apprentice, and trainee) employed on the contract during the payroll period has been paid the full weekly wages earned, without rebate, either directly or indirectly, and that no deductions have been made either directly or indirectly from the full wages earned, other than permissible deductions as set forth in 29 CFR part 3;

(iii) That each laborer or mechanic has been paid not less than the applicable wage rates and fringe benefits or cash equivalents for the classification of work performed, as specified in the applicable wage determination incorporated into the contract.

(3) The weekly submission of a properly executed certification set forth on the reverse side of Optional Form WH-347 shall satisfy the requirement for submission of the "Statement of Compliance" required by paragraph 3.b.(2) of this section.

(4) The falsification of any of the above certifications may subject the contractor or subcontractor to civil or criminal prosecution under 18 U.S.C. 1001 and 31 U.S.C. 231.

c. The contractor or subcontractor shall make the records required under paragraph 3.a. of this section available for inspection, copying, or transcription by authorized representatives of the contracting agency, the State DOT, the FHWA, or the Department of Labor, and shall permit such representatives to interview employees during working hours on the job. If the contractor or subcontractor fails to submit the required records or to make them available, the FHWA may, after written notice to the contractor, the contracting agency or the State DOT, take such action as may be necessary to cause the suspension of any further payment, advance, or guarantee of funds. Furthermore, failure to submit the required records upon request or to make such records available may be grounds for debarment action pursuant to 29 CFR 5.12.

#### 4. Apprentices and trainees (29 CFR 5.5)

##### a. Apprentices (programs of the USDOL).

Apprentices will be permitted to work at less than the predetermined rate for the work they performed when they are employed pursuant to and individually registered in a bona fide apprenticeship program registered with the U.S. Department of Labor, Employment and Training Administration, Office of Apprenticeship Training, Employer and Labor Services, or with a State Apprenticeship Agency recognized by the Office, or if a person is employed in his or her first 90 days of probationary employment as an apprentice in such an apprenticeship program, who is not individually registered in the program, but who has been certified by the Office of Apprenticeship Training, Employer and Labor Services or a State

Apprenticeship Agency (where appropriate) to be eligible for probationary employment as an apprentice.

The allowable ratio of apprentices to journeymen on the job site in any craft classification shall not be greater than the ratio permitted to the contractor as to the entire work force under the registered program. Any worker listed on a payroll at an apprentice wage rate, who is not registered or otherwise employed as stated above, shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed. In addition, any apprentice performing work on the job site in excess of the ratio permitted under the registered program shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the work actually performed. Where a contractor is performing construction on a project in a locality other than that in which its program is registered, the ratios and wage rates (expressed in percentages of the journeyman's hourly rate) specified in the contractor's or subcontractor's registered program shall be observed.

Every apprentice must be paid at not less than the rate specified in the registered program for the apprentice's level of progress, expressed as a percentage of the journeymen hourly rate specified in the applicable wage determination. Apprentices shall be paid fringe benefits in accordance with the provisions of the apprenticeship program. If the apprenticeship program does not specify fringe benefits, apprentices must be paid the full amount of fringe benefits listed on the wage determination for the applicable classification. If the Administrator determines that a different practice prevails for the applicable apprentice classification, fringes shall be paid in accordance with that determination.

In the event the Office of Apprenticeship Training, Employer and Labor Services, or a State Apprenticeship Agency recognized by the Office, withdraws approval of an apprenticeship program, the contractor will no longer be permitted to utilize apprentices at less than the applicable predetermined rate for the work performed until an acceptable program is approved.

##### b. Trainees (programs of the USDOL).

Except as provided in 29 CFR 5.16, trainees will not be permitted to work at less than the predetermined rate for the work performed unless they are employed pursuant to and individually registered in a program which has received prior approval, evidenced by formal certification by the U.S. Department of Labor, Employment and Training Administration.

The ratio of trainees to journeymen on the job site shall not be greater than permitted under the plan approved by the Employment and Training Administration.

Every trainee must be paid at not less than the rate specified in the approved program for the trainee's level of progress, expressed as a percentage of the journeyman hourly rate specified in the applicable wage determination. Trainees shall be paid fringe benefits in accordance with the provisions of the trainee program. If the trainee program does not mention fringe benefits, trainees shall be paid the full amount of fringe benefits listed on the wage determination unless the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division determines that there is an apprenticeship program associated with the



corresponding journeyman wage rate on the wage determination which provides for less than full fringe benefits for apprentices. Any employee listed on the payroll at a trainee rate who is not registered and participating in a training plan approved by the Employment and Training Administration shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed. In addition, any trainee performing work on the job site in excess of the ratio permitted under the registered program shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the work actually performed.

In the event the Employment and Training Administration withdraws approval of a training program, the contractor will no longer be permitted to utilize trainees at less than the applicable predetermined rate for the work performed until an acceptable program is approved.

c. Equal employment opportunity. The utilization of apprentices, trainees and journeymen under this part shall be in conformity with the equal employment opportunity requirements of Executive Order 11246, as amended, and 29 CFR part 30.

d. Apprentices and Trainees (programs of the U.S. DOT).

Apprentices and trainees working under apprenticeship and skill training programs which have been certified by the Secretary of Transportation as promoting EEO in connection with Federal-aid highway construction programs are not subject to the requirements of paragraph 4 of this Section IV. 23 CFR 230.111(e)(2). The straight time hourly wage rates for apprentices and trainees under such programs will be established by the particular programs. The ratio of apprentices and trainees to journeymen shall not be greater than permitted by the terms of the particular program.

**5. Compliance with Copeland Act requirements.** The contractor shall comply with the requirements of 29 CFR part 3, which are incorporated by reference in this contract as provided in 29 CFR 5.5.

**6. Subcontracts.** The contractor or subcontractor shall insert Form FHWA-1273 in any subcontracts and also require the subcontractors to include Form FHWA-1273 in any lower tier subcontracts. The prime contractor shall be responsible for the compliance by any subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor with all the contract clauses in 29 CFR 5.5.

**7. Contract termination: debarment.** A breach of the contract clauses in 29 CFR 5.5 may be grounds for termination of the contract, and for debarment as a contractor and a subcontractor as provided in 29 CFR 5.12.

**8. Compliance with Davis-Bacon and Related Act requirements.** All rulings and interpretations of the Davis-Bacon and Related Acts contained in 29 CFR parts 1, 3, and 5 are herein incorporated by reference in this contract as provided in 29 CFR 5.5.

**9. Disputes concerning labor standards.** As provided in 29 CFR 5.5, disputes arising out of the labor standards provisions of this contract shall not be subject to the general disputes clause of this contract. Such disputes shall be resolved in accordance with the procedures of the Department of Labor

set forth in 29 CFR parts 5, 6, and 7. Disputes within the meaning of this clause include disputes between the contractor (or any of its subcontractors) and the contracting agency, the U.S. Department of Labor, or the employees or their representatives.

#### **10. Certification of eligibility (29 CFR 5.5)**

a. By entering into this contract, the contractor certifies that neither it (nor he or she) nor any person or firm who has an interest in the contractor's firm is a person or firm ineligible to be awarded Government contracts by virtue of section 3(a) of the Davis-Bacon Act or 29 CFR 5.12(a)(1).

b. No part of this contract shall be subcontracted to any person or firm ineligible for award of a Government contract by virtue of section 3(a) of the Davis-Bacon Act or 29 CFR 5.12(a)(1).

c. The penalty for making false statements is prescribed in the U.S. Criminal Code, 18 U.S.C. 1001.

#### **V. CONTRACT WORK HOURS AND SAFETY STANDARDS ACT**

Pursuant to 29 CFR 5.5(b), the following clauses apply to any Federal-aid construction contract in an amount in excess of \$100,000 and subject to the overtime provisions of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act. These clauses shall be inserted in addition to the clauses required by 29 CFR 5.5(a) or 29 CFR 4.6. As used in this paragraph, the terms laborers and mechanics include watchmen and guards.

**1. Overtime requirements.** No contractor or subcontractor contracting for any part of the contract work which may require or involve the employment of laborers or mechanics shall require or permit any such laborer or mechanic in any workweek in which he or she is employed on such work to work in excess of forty hours in such workweek unless such laborer or mechanic receives compensation at a rate not less than one and one-half times the basic rate of pay for all hours worked in excess of forty hours in such workweek. 29 CFR 5.5.

**2. Violation; liability for unpaid wages; liquidated damages.** In the event of any violation of the clause set forth in paragraph 1 of this section, the contractor and any subcontractor responsible therefor shall be liable for the unpaid wages. In addition, such contractor and subcontractor shall be liable to the United States (in the case of work done under contract for the District of Columbia or a territory, to such District or to such territory), for liquidated damages. Such liquidated damages shall be computed with respect to each individual laborer or mechanic, including watchmen and guards, employed in violation of the clause set forth in paragraph 1 of this section, in the sum currently provided in 29 CFR 5.5(b)(2)\* for each calendar day on which such individual was required or permitted to work in excess of the standard workweek of forty hours without payment of the overtime wages required by the clause set forth in paragraph 1 of this section. 29 CFR 5.5.

\* \$27 as of January 23, 2019 (See 84 FR 213-01, 218) as may be adjusted annually by the Department of Labor; pursuant to the Federal Civil Penalties Inflation Adjustment Act of 1990).

### **3. Withholding for unpaid wages and liquidated damages.**

The FHWA or the contracting agency shall upon its own action or upon written request of an authorized representative of the Department of Labor withhold or cause to be withheld, from any moneys payable on account of work performed by the contractor or subcontractor under any such contract or any other Federal contract with the same prime contractor, or any other federally-assisted contract subject to the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act, which is held by the same prime contractor, such sums as may be determined to be necessary to satisfy any liabilities of such contractor or subcontractor for unpaid wages and liquidated damages as provided in the clause set forth in paragraph 2 of this section. 29 CFR 5.5.

**4. Subcontracts.** The contractor or subcontractor shall insert in any subcontracts the clauses set forth in paragraphs 1 through 4 of this section and also a clause requiring the subcontractors to include these clauses in any lower tier subcontracts. The prime contractor shall be responsible for compliance by any subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor with the clauses set forth in paragraphs 1 through 4 of this section. 29 CFR 5.5.

## **VI. SUBLETTING OR ASSIGNING THE CONTRACT**

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts on the National Highway System pursuant to 23 CFR 635.116.

1. The contractor shall perform with its own organization contract work amounting to not less than 30 percent (or a greater percentage if specified elsewhere in the contract) of the total original contract price, excluding any specialty items designated by the contracting agency. Specialty items may be performed by subcontract and the amount of any such specialty items performed may be deducted from the total original contract price before computing the amount of work required to be performed by the contractor's own organization (23 CFR 635.116).

a. The term "perform work with its own organization" in paragraph 1 of Section VI refers to workers employed or leased by the prime contractor, and equipment owned or rented by the prime contractor, with or without operators. Such term does not include employees or equipment of a subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor, agents of the prime contractor, or any other assignees. The term may include payments for the costs of hiring leased employees from an employee leasing firm meeting all relevant Federal and State regulatory requirements. Leased employees may only be included in this term if the prime contractor meets all of the following conditions: (based on longstanding interpretation)

- (1) the prime contractor maintains control over the supervision of the day-to-day activities of the leased employees;
- (2) the prime contractor remains responsible for the quality of the work of the leased employees;
- (3) the prime contractor retains all power to accept or exclude individual employees from work on the project; and
- (4) the prime contractor remains ultimately responsible for the payment of predetermined minimum wages, the submission of payrolls, statements of compliance and all other Federal regulatory requirements.

b. "Specialty Items" shall be construed to be limited to work that requires highly specialized knowledge, abilities, or

equipment not ordinarily available in the type of contracting organizations qualified and expected to bid or propose on the contract as a whole and in general are to be limited to minor components of the overall contract. 23 CFR 635.102.

2. Pursuant to 23 CFR 635.116(a), the contract amount upon which the requirements set forth in paragraph (1) of Section VI is computed includes the cost of material and manufactured products which are to be purchased or produced by the contractor under the contract provisions.

3. Pursuant to 23 CFR 635.116(c), the contractor shall furnish (a) a competent superintendent or supervisor who is employed by the firm, has full authority to direct performance of the work in accordance with the contract requirements, and is in charge of all construction operations (regardless of who performs the work) and (b) such other of its own organizational resources (supervision, management, and engineering services) as the contracting officer determines is necessary to assure the performance of the contract.

4. No portion of the contract shall be sublet, assigned or otherwise disposed of except with the written consent of the contracting officer, or authorized representative, and such consent when given shall not be construed to relieve the contractor of any responsibility for the fulfillment of the contract. Written consent will be given only after the contracting agency has assured that each subcontract is evidenced in writing and that it contains all pertinent provisions and requirements of the prime contract. (based on longstanding interpretation of 23 CFR 635.116).

5. The 30-percent self-performance requirement of paragraph (1) is not applicable to design-build contracts; however, contracting agencies may establish their own self-performance requirements. 23 CFR 635.116(d).

## **VII. SAFETY: ACCIDENT PREVENTION**

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts and to all related subcontracts.

1. In the performance of this contract the contractor shall comply with all applicable Federal, State, and local laws governing safety, health, and sanitation (23 CFR Part 635). The contractor shall provide all safeguards, safety devices and protective equipment and take any other needed actions as it determines, or as the contracting officer may determine, to be reasonably necessary to protect the life and health of employees on the job and the safety of the public and to protect property in connection with the performance of the work covered by the contract. 23 CFR 635.108.

2. It is a condition of this contract, and shall be made a condition of each subcontract, which the contractor enters into pursuant to this contract, that the contractor and any subcontractor shall not permit any employee, in performance of the contract, to work in surroundings or under conditions which are unsanitary, hazardous or dangerous to his/her health or safety, as determined under construction safety and health standards (29 CFR Part 1926) promulgated by the Secretary of Labor, in accordance with Section 107 of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C. 3704). 29 CFR 1926.10.

3. Pursuant to 29 CFR 1926.3, it is a condition of this contract that the Secretary of Labor or authorized representative thereof, shall have right of entry to any site of contract performance to inspect or investigate the matter of compliance

with the construction safety and health standards and to carry out the duties of the Secretary under Section 107 of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C. 3704).

### **VIII. FALSE STATEMENTS CONCERNING HIGHWAY PROJECTS**

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts and to all related subcontracts.

In order to assure high quality and durable construction in conformity with approved plans and specifications and a high degree of reliability on statements and representations made by engineers, contractors, suppliers, and workers on Federal-aid highway projects, it is essential that all persons concerned with the project perform their functions as carefully, thoroughly, and honestly as possible. Willful falsification, distortion, or misrepresentation with respect to any facts related to the project is a violation of Federal law. To prevent any misunderstanding regarding the seriousness of these and similar acts, Form FHWA-1022 shall be posted on each Federal-aid highway project (23 CFR Part 635) in one or more places where it is readily available to all persons concerned with the project:

18 U.S.C. 1020 reads as follows:

"Whoever, being an officer, agent, or employee of the United States, or of any State or Territory, or whoever, whether a person, association, firm, or corporation, knowingly makes any false statement, false representation, or false report as to the character, quality, quantity, or cost of the material used or to be used, or the quantity or quality of the work performed or to be performed, or the cost thereof in connection with the submission of plans, maps, specifications, contracts, or costs of construction on any highway or related project submitted for approval to the Secretary of Transportation; or

Whoever knowingly makes any false statement, false representation, false report or false claim with respect to the character, quality, quantity, or cost of any work performed or to be performed, or materials furnished or to be furnished, in connection with the construction of any highway or related project approved by the Secretary of Transportation; or

Whoever knowingly makes any false statement or false representation as to material fact in any statement, certificate, or report submitted pursuant to provisions of the Federal-aid Roads Act approved July 11, 1916, (39 Stat. 355), as amended and supplemented;

Shall be fined under this title or imprisoned not more than 5 years or both."

### **IX. IMPLEMENTATION OF CLEAN AIR ACT AND FEDERAL WATER POLLUTION CONTROL ACT (42 U.S.C. 7606; 2 CFR 200.88; EO 11738)**

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts in excess of \$150,000 and to all related subcontracts. 48 CFR 2.101; 2 CFR 200.326.

By submission of this bid/proposal or the execution of this contract or subcontract, as appropriate, the bidder, proposer, Federal-aid construction contractor, subcontractor, supplier, or vendor agrees to comply with all applicable standards, orders

or regulations issued pursuant to the Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7401-7671q) and the Federal Water Pollution Control Act, as amended (33 U.S.C. 1251-1387). Violations must be reported to the Federal Highway Administration and the Regional Office of the Environmental Protection Agency. 2 CFR Part 200, Appendix II.

The contractor agrees to include or cause to be included the requirements of this Section in every subcontract, and further agrees to take such action as the contracting agency may direct as a means of enforcing such requirements. 2 CFR 200.326.

### **X. CERTIFICATION REGARDING DEBARMENT, SUSPENSION, INELIGIBILITY AND VOLUNTARY EXCLUSION**

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts, design-build contracts, subcontracts, lower-tier subcontracts, purchase orders, lease agreements, consultant contracts or any other covered transaction requiring FHWA approval or that is estimated to cost \$25,000 or more – as defined in 2 CFR Parts 180 and 1200. 2 CFR 180.220 and 1200.220.

#### **1. Instructions for Certification – First Tier Participants:**

a. By signing and submitting this proposal, the prospective first tier participant is providing the certification set out below.

b. The inability of a person to provide the certification set out below will not necessarily result in denial of participation in this covered transaction. The prospective first tier participant shall submit an explanation of why it cannot provide the certification set out below. The certification or explanation will be considered in connection with the department or agency's determination whether to enter into this transaction. However, failure of the prospective first tier participant to furnish a certification or an explanation shall disqualify such a person from participation in this transaction. 2 CFR 180.320.

c. The certification in this clause is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when the contracting agency determined to enter into this transaction. If it is later determined that the prospective participant knowingly rendered an erroneous certification, in addition to other remedies available to the Federal Government, the contracting agency may terminate this transaction for cause of default. 2 CFR 180.325.

d. The prospective first tier participant shall provide immediate written notice to the contracting agency to whom this proposal is submitted if any time the prospective first tier participant learns that its certification was erroneous when submitted or has become erroneous by reason of changed circumstances. 2 CFR 180.345 and 180.350.

e. The terms "covered transaction," "debarred," "suspended," "ineligible," "participant," "person," "principal," and "voluntarily excluded," as used in this clause, are defined in 2 CFR Parts 180, Subpart I, 180.900-180.1020, and 1200. "First Tier Covered Transactions" refers to any covered transaction between a recipient or subrecipient of Federal funds and a participant (such as the prime or general contract). "Lower Tier Covered Transactions" refers to any covered transaction under a First Tier Covered Transaction (such as subcontracts). "First Tier Participant" refers to the participant

who has entered into a covered transaction with a recipient or subrecipient of Federal funds (such as the prime or general contractor). "Lower Tier Participant" refers any participant who has entered into a covered transaction with a First Tier Participant or other Lower Tier Participants (such as subcontractors and suppliers).

f. The prospective first tier participant agrees by submitting this proposal that, should the proposed covered transaction be entered into, it shall not knowingly enter into any lower tier covered transaction with a person who is debarred, suspended, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in this covered transaction, unless authorized by the department or agency entering into this transaction. 2 CFR 180.330.

g. The prospective first tier participant further agrees by submitting this proposal that it will include the clause titled "Certification Regarding Debarment, Suspension, Ineligibility and Voluntary Exclusion-Lower Tier Covered Transactions," provided by the department or contracting agency, entering into this covered transaction, without modification, in all lower tier covered transactions and in all solicitations for lower tier covered transactions exceeding the \$25,000 threshold. 2 CFR 180.220 and 180.300.

h. A participant in a covered transaction may rely upon a certification of a prospective participant in a lower tier covered transaction that is not debarred, suspended, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from the covered transaction, unless it knows that the certification is erroneous. 2 CFR 180.300; 180.320, and 180.325. A participant is responsible for ensuring that its principals are not suspended, debarred, or otherwise ineligible to participate in covered transactions. 2 CFR 180.335. To verify the eligibility of its principals, as well as the eligibility of any lower tier prospective participants, each participant may, but is not required to, check the System for Award Management website (<https://www.sam.gov/>). 2 CFR 180.300, 180.320, and 180.325.

i. Nothing contained in the foregoing shall be construed to require the establishment of a system of records in order to render in good faith the certification required by this clause. The knowledge and information of the prospective participant is not required to exceed that which is normally possessed by a prudent person in the ordinary course of business dealings.

j. Except for transactions authorized under paragraph (f) of these instructions, if a participant in a covered transaction knowingly enters into a lower tier covered transaction with a person who is suspended, debarred, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in this transaction, in addition to other remedies available to the Federal Government, the department or agency may terminate this transaction for cause or default. 2 CFR 180.325.

\*\*\*\*\*

## **2. Certification Regarding Debarment, Suspension, Ineligibility and Voluntary Exclusion – First Tier Participants:**

a. The prospective first tier participant certifies to the best of its knowledge and belief, that it and its principals:

(1) Are not presently debarred, suspended, proposed for debarment, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participating in covered transactions by any Federal department or agency, 2 CFR 180.335;.

(2) Have not within a three-year period preceding this proposal been convicted of or had a civil judgment rendered against them for commission of fraud or a criminal offense in connection with obtaining, attempting to obtain, or performing a public (Federal, State, or local) transaction or contract under a public transaction; violation of Federal or State antitrust statutes or commission of embezzlement, theft, forgery, bribery, falsification or destruction of records, making false statements, or receiving stolen property, 2 CFR 180.800;

(3) Are not presently indicted for or otherwise criminally or civilly charged by a governmental entity (Federal, State or local) with commission of any of the offenses enumerated in paragraph (a)(2) of this certification, 2 CFR 180.700 and 180.800; and

(4) Have not within a three-year period preceding this application/proposal had one or more public transactions (Federal, State or local) terminated for cause or default. 2 CFR 180.335(d).

(5) Are not a corporation that has been convicted of a felony violation under any Federal law within the two-year period preceding this proposal (USDOT Order 4200.6 implementing appropriations act requirements); and

(6) Are not a corporation with any unpaid Federal tax liability that has been assessed, for which all judicial and administrative remedies have been exhausted, or have lapsed, and that is not being paid in a timely manner pursuant to an agreement with the authority responsible for collecting the tax liability (USDOT Order 4200.6 implementing appropriations act requirements).

b. Where the prospective participant is unable to certify to any of the statements in this certification, such prospective participant should attach an explanation to this proposal. 2 CFR 180.335 and 180.340.

## **3. Instructions for Certification - Lower Tier Participants:**

(Applicable to all subcontracts, purchase orders, and other lower tier transactions requiring prior FHWA approval or estimated to cost \$25,000 or more - 2 CFR Parts 180 and 1200). 2 CFR 180.220 and 1200.220.

a. By signing and submitting this proposal, the prospective lower tier participant is providing the certification set out below.

b. The certification in this clause is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when this transaction was entered into. If it is later determined that the prospective lower tier participant knowingly rendered an erroneous certification, in addition to other remedies available to the Federal Government, the department, or agency with which this transaction originated may pursue available remedies, including suspension and/or debarment.

c. The prospective lower tier participant shall provide immediate written notice to the person to which this proposal is submitted if at any time the prospective lower tier participant learns that its certification was erroneous by reason of changed circumstances. 2 CFR 180.365.

d. The terms "covered transaction," "debarred," "suspended," "ineligible," "participant," "person," "principal," and "voluntarily excluded," as used in this clause, are defined in 2 CFR Parts 180, Subpart I, 180.900 – 180.1020, and 1200. You may contact the person to which this proposal is

submitted for assistance in obtaining a copy of those regulations. "First Tier Covered Transactions" refers to any covered transaction between a recipient or subrecipient of Federal funds and a participant (such as the prime or general contractor). "Lower Tier Covered Transactions" refers to any covered transaction under a First Tier Covered Transaction (such as subcontracts). "First Tier Participant" refers to the participant who has entered into a covered transaction with a recipient or subrecipient of Federal funds (such as the prime or general contractor). "Lower Tier Participant" refers any participant who has entered into a covered transaction with a First Tier Participant or other Lower Tier Participants (such as subcontractors and suppliers).

e. The prospective lower tier participant agrees by submitting this proposal that, should the proposed covered transaction be entered into, it shall not knowingly enter into any lower tier covered transaction with a person who is debarred, suspended, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in this covered transaction, unless authorized by the department or agency with which this transaction originated. 2 CFR 1200.220 and 1200.332.

f. The prospective lower tier participant further agrees by submitting this proposal that it will include this clause titled "Certification Regarding Debarment, Suspension, Ineligibility and Voluntary Exclusion-Lower Tier Covered Transaction," without modification, in all lower tier covered transactions and in all solicitations for lower tier covered transactions exceeding the \$25,000 threshold. 2 CFR 180.220 and 1200.220.

g. A participant in a covered transaction may rely upon a certification of a prospective participant in a lower tier covered transaction that is not debarred, suspended, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from the covered transaction, unless it knows that the certification is erroneous. A participant is responsible for ensuring that its principals are not suspended, debarred, or otherwise ineligible to participate in covered transactions. To verify the eligibility of its principals, as well as the eligibility of any lower tier prospective participants, each participant may, but is not required to, check the System for Award Management website (<https://www.sam.gov/>), which is compiled by the General Services Administration. 2 CFR 180.300, 180.320, 180.330, and 180.335.

h. Nothing contained in the foregoing shall be construed to require establishment of a system of records in order to render in good faith the certification required by this clause. The knowledge and information of participant is not required to exceed that which is normally possessed by a prudent person in the ordinary course of business dealings.

i. Except for transactions authorized under paragraph e of these instructions, if a participant in a covered transaction knowingly enters into a lower tier covered transaction with a person who is suspended, debarred, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in this transaction, in addition to other remedies available to the Federal Government, the department or agency with which this transaction originated may pursue available remedies, including suspension and/or debarment. 2 CFR 180.325.

\*\*\*\*\*

**Certification Regarding Debarment, Suspension, Ineligibility and Voluntary Exclusion--Lower Tier Participants:**

1. The prospective lower tier participant certifies, by submission of this proposal, that neither it nor its principals:

(a) is presently debarred, suspended, proposed for debarment, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participating in covered transactions by any Federal department or agency, 2 CFR 180.355;

(b) is a corporation that has been convicted of a felony violation under any Federal law within the two-year period preceding this proposal (USDOT Order 4200.6 implementing appropriations act requirements); and

(c) is a corporation with any unpaid Federal tax liability that has been assessed, for which all judicial and administrative remedies have been exhausted, or have lapsed, and that is not being paid in a timely manner pursuant to an agreement with the authority responsible for collecting the tax liability. (USDOT Order 4200.6 implementing appropriations act requirements)

2. Where the prospective lower tier participant is unable to certify to any of the statements in this certification, such prospective participant should attach an explanation to this proposal.

\*\*\*\*\*

**XI. CERTIFICATION REGARDING USE OF CONTRACT FUNDS FOR LOBBYING**

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts and to all related subcontracts which exceed \$100,000. 49 CFR Part 20, App. A.

1. The prospective participant certifies, by signing and submitting this bid or proposal, to the best of his or her knowledge and belief, that:

a. No Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid, by or on behalf of the undersigned, to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any Federal agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with the awarding of any Federal contract, the making of any Federal grant, the making of any Federal loan, the entering into of any cooperative agreement, and the extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of any Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.

b. If any funds other than Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any Federal agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with this Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement, the undersigned shall complete and submit Standard Form-LLL, "Disclosure Form to Report Lobbying," in accordance with its instructions.

2. This certification is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when this transaction was made or entered into. Submission of this certification is a prerequisite for making or entering into this transaction imposed by 31 U.S.C. 1352. Any person who fails to file the required certification shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than \$10,000 and not more than \$100,000 for each such failure.

3. The prospective participant also agrees by submitting its bid or proposal that the participant shall require that the language of this certification be included in all lower tier

subcontracts, which exceed \$100,000 and that all such recipients shall certify and disclose accordingly.

## **XII. USE OF UNITED STATES-FLAG VESSELS:**

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts, design-build contracts, subcontracts, lower-tier subcontracts, purchase orders, lease agreements, or any other covered transaction. 46 CFR Part 381.

This requirement applies to material or equipment that is acquired for a specific Federal-aid highway project. 46 CFR 381.7. It is not applicable to goods or materials that come into inventories independent of an FHWA funded-contract.

When oceanic shipments (or shipments across the Great Lakes) are necessary for materials or equipment acquired for a specific Federal-aid construction project, the bidder, proposer, contractor, subcontractor, or vendor agrees:

1. To utilize privately owned United States-flag commercial vessels to ship at least 50 percent of the gross tonnage (computed separately for dry bulk carriers, dry cargo liners, and tankers) involved, whenever shipping any equipment, material, or commodities pursuant to this contract, to the extent such vessels are available at fair and reasonable rates for United States-flag commercial vessels. 46 CFR 381.7.

2. To furnish within 20 days following the date of loading for shipments originating within the United States or within 30 working days following the date of loading for shipments originating outside the United States, a legible copy of a rated, 'on-board' commercial ocean bill-of-lading in English for each shipment of cargo described in paragraph (b)(1) of this section to both the Contracting Officer (through the prime contractor in the case of subcontractor bills-of-lading) and to the Office of Cargo and Commercial Sealift (MAR-620), Maritime Administration, Washington, DC 20590. (MARAD requires copies of the ocean carrier's (master) bills of lading, certified onboard, dated, with rates and charges. These bills of lading may contain business sensitive information and therefore may be submitted directly to MARAD by the Ocean Transportation Intermediary on behalf of the contractor). 46 CFR 381.7.

**ATTACHMENT A - EMPLOYMENT AND MATERIALS  
PREFERENCE FOR APPALACHIAN DEVELOPMENT  
HIGHWAY SYSTEM OR APPALACHIAN LOCAL ACCESS  
ROAD CONTRACTS (23 CFR 633, Subpart B, Appendix B)**

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid projects funded under the Appalachian Regional Development Act of 1965.

1. During the performance of this contract, the contractor undertaking to do work which is, or reasonably may be, done as on-site work, shall give preference to qualified persons who regularly reside in the labor area as designated by the DOL wherein the contract work is situated, or the subregion, or the Appalachian counties of the State wherein the contract work is situated, except:

a. To the extent that qualified persons regularly residing in the area are not available.

b. For the reasonable needs of the contractor to employ supervisory or specially experienced personnel necessary to assure an efficient execution of the contract work.

c. For the obligation of the contractor to offer employment to present or former employees as the result of a lawful collective bargaining contract, provided that the number of nonresident persons employed under this subparagraph (1c) shall not exceed 20 percent of the total number of employees employed by the contractor on the contract work, except as provided in subparagraph (4) below.

2. The contractor shall place a job order with the State Employment Service indicating (a) the classifications of the laborers, mechanics and other employees required to perform the contract work, (b) the number of employees required in each classification, (c) the date on which the participant estimates such employees will be required, and (d) any other pertinent information required by the State Employment Service to complete the job order form. The job order may be placed with the State Employment Service in writing or by telephone. If during the course of the contract work, the information submitted by the contractor in the original job order is substantially modified, the participant shall promptly notify the State Employment Service.

3. The contractor shall give full consideration to all qualified job applicants referred to him by the State Employment Service. The contractor is not required to grant employment to any job applicants who, in his opinion, are not qualified to perform the classification of work required.

4. If, within one week following the placing of a job order by the contractor with the State Employment Service, the State Employment Service is unable to refer any qualified job applicants to the contractor, or less than the number requested, the State Employment Service will forward a certificate to the contractor indicating the unavailability of applicants. Such certificate shall be made a part of the contractor's permanent project records. Upon receipt of this certificate, the contractor may employ persons who do not normally reside in the labor area to fill positions covered by the certificate, notwithstanding the provisions of subparagraph (1c) above.

5. The provisions of 23 CFR 633.207(e) allow the contracting agency to provide a contractual preference for the use of mineral resource materials native to the Appalachian region.

6. The contractor shall include the provisions of Sections 1 through 4 of this Attachment A in every subcontract for work which is, or reasonably may be, done as on-site work.

The wage rates listed herein are those predetermined by the Secretary of Labor and State Statute and listed in the United States Department of Labor's (USDOL) General Decisions dated **02-24-2022** and are the minimum wages to be paid accordingly for each specified classification. To determine the applicable wage rate zone, a list entitled "TEXAS COUNTIES IDENTIFIED BY WAGE RATE ZONES" is provided in the contract. Any wage rate that is not listed herein and not in the USDOL's general decision, must be submitted to the Engineer for approval. **IMPORTANT NOTICE FOR STATE PROJECTS:** only the controlling wage rate zone applies to the contract. Effective 02-24-2022.

CLASS. #	CLASSIFICATION DESCRIPTION	ZONE TX02 *(TX20220002)	ZONE TX03 *(TX20220003)	ZONE TX04 *(TX20220004)	ZONE TX05 *(TX20220005)	ZONE TX06 *(TX20220006)	ZONE TX07 *(TX20220007)	ZONE TX08 *(TX20220008)	ZONE TX24 *(TX20220024)	ZONE TX25 *(TX20220025)	ZONE TX27 *(TX20220027)	ZONE TX28 *(TX20220028)	ZONE TX29 *(TX20220029)	ZONE TX30 *(TX20220030)	ZONE TX37 *(TX20220037)	ZONE TX38 *(TX20220038)	ZONE TX42 *(TX20220042)
1428	Agricultural Tractor Operator						\$12.69					\$12.35			\$11.75		
1300	Asphalt Distributor Operator	\$14.87	\$13.48	\$13.88	\$15.72	\$15.58	\$15.55	\$15.72	\$13.28	\$15.32	\$15.62	\$14.36	\$14.25	\$14.03	\$13.75	\$14.06	\$14.40
1303	Asphalt Paving Machine Operator	\$13.40	\$12.25	\$12.35	\$13.87	\$14.05	\$14.36	\$14.20	\$13.26	\$13.99	\$14.68	\$12.92	\$13.44	\$12.53	\$14.00	\$14.32	\$12.99
1106	Asphalt Raker	\$12.28	\$10.61	\$12.02	\$14.21	\$11.65	\$12.12	\$11.64	\$11.44	\$12.69	\$12.05	\$11.34	\$11.67	\$11.40	\$12.59	\$12.36	\$11.78
1112	Batching Plant Operator, Asphalt																
1115	Batching Plant Operator, Concrete																
1214	Blaster																
1615	Boom Truck Operator						\$18.36										
1444	Boring Machine Operator																
1305	Broom or Sweeper Operator	\$11.21	\$10.33	\$10.08	\$11.99		\$11.04	\$11.62		\$11.74	\$11.41	\$10.30		\$10.23	\$10.60	\$12.68	\$11.05
1144	Communications Cable Installer																
1124	Concrete Finisher, Paving and Structures	\$13.55	\$12.46	\$13.16	\$12.85	\$12.64	\$12.56	\$12.77	\$12.44	\$14.12	\$13.04	\$13.38	\$12.64	\$12.80	\$12.79	\$12.98	\$13.32
1318	Concrete Pavement Finishing Machine Operator				\$16.05		\$15.48			\$16.05		\$19.31				\$13.07	
1315	Concrete Paving, Curing, Float, Texturing Machine Operator											\$16.34					\$11.71
1333	Concrete Saw Operator				\$14.67					\$14.48	\$17.33						\$13.99
1399	Concrete/Gunite Pump Operator																
1344	Crane Operator, Hydraulic 80 tons or less				\$18.22		\$18.36			\$18.12	\$18.04	\$20.21			\$18.63	\$13.86	
1345	Crane Operator, Hydraulic Over 80 Tons																
1342	Crane Operator, Lattice Boom 80 Tons or Less	\$16.82	\$14.39	\$13.85	\$17.27		\$15.87			\$17.27		\$14.67			\$16.42	\$14.97	\$13.87
1343	Crane Operator, Lattice Boom Over 80 Tons				\$20.52		\$19.38			\$20.52		\$17.49			\$25.13	\$15.80	
1306	Crawler Tractor Operator	\$13.96	\$16.63	\$13.62	\$14.26		\$15.67			\$14.07	\$13.15	\$13.38			\$14.60	\$13.68	\$13.50
1351	Crusher or Screen Plant Operator																
1446	Directional Drilling Locator						\$11.67										
1445	Directional Drilling Operator				\$20.32		\$17.24										
1139	Electrician	\$20.96		\$19.87	\$19.80		\$26.35		\$20.27	\$19.80		\$20.92				\$27.11	\$19.87
1347	Excavator Operator, 50,000 pounds or less	\$13.46	\$12.56	\$13.67	\$17.19		\$12.88	\$14.38	\$13.49	\$17.19		\$13.88			\$14.09	\$12.71	\$14.42
1348	Excavator Operator, Over 50,000 pounds		\$15.23	\$13.52	\$17.04		\$17.71			\$16.99	\$18.80	\$16.22				\$14.53	\$13.52
1150	Flagger	\$9.30	\$9.10	\$8.50	\$10.28	\$8.81	\$9.45	\$8.70	\$10.06	\$9.71	\$9.03	\$8.81	\$9.08	\$9.08	\$9.90	\$10.33	\$8.10
1151	Form Builder/Setter, Structures	\$13.52	\$12.30	\$13.38	\$12.91	\$12.71	\$12.87	\$12.38	\$12.26	\$13.84	\$12.98	\$13.07	\$13.61	\$12.82	\$14.73	\$12.23	\$12.25
1160	Form Setter, Paving & Curb	\$12.36	\$12.16	\$13.93	\$11.83	\$10.71	\$12.94			\$13.16	\$12.54	\$11.33	\$10.69		\$13.33	\$12.34	\$13.93
1360	Foundation Drill Operator, Crawler Mounted				\$17.99					\$17.99						\$17.43	
1363	Foundation Drill Operator, Truck Mounted		\$16.86	\$22.05	\$21.51		\$16.93			\$21.07	\$20.20	\$20.76		\$17.54	\$21.39	\$15.89	\$22.05
1369	Front End Loader Operator, 3 CY or Less	\$12.28	\$13.49	\$13.40	\$13.85		\$13.04	\$13.15	\$13.29	\$13.69	\$12.64	\$12.89			\$13.51	\$13.32	\$12.17
1372	Front End Loader Operator, Over 3 CY	\$12.77	\$13.69	\$12.33	\$14.96		\$13.21	\$12.86	\$13.57	\$14.72	\$13.75	\$12.32			\$13.19	\$13.17	\$13.02
1329	Joint Sealer																
1172	Laborer, Common	\$10.30	\$9.86	\$10.08	\$10.51	\$10.71	\$10.50	\$10.24	\$10.58	\$10.72	\$10.45	\$10.30	\$10.25	\$10.03	\$10.54	\$11.02	\$10.15
1175	Laborer, Utility	\$11.80	\$11.53	\$12.70	\$12.17	\$11.81	\$12.27	\$12.11	\$11.33	\$12.32	\$11.80	\$11.53	\$11.23	\$11.50	\$11.95	\$11.73	\$12.37



CLASS. #	CLASSIFICATION DESCRIPTION	ZONE TX02 *(TX20220002)	ZONE TX03 *(TX20220003)	ZONE TX04 *(TX20220004)	ZONE TX05 *(TX20220005)	ZONE TX06 *(TX20220006)	ZONE TX07 *(TX20220007)	ZONE TX08 *(TX20220008)	ZONE TX24 *(TX20220024)	ZONE TX25 *(TX20220025)	ZONE TX27 *(TX20220027)	ZONE TX28 *(TX20220028)	ZONE TX29 *(TX20220029)	ZONE TX30 *(TX20220030)	ZONE TX37 *(TX20220037)	ZONE TX38 *(TX20220038)	ZONE TX42 *(TX20220042)
1346	Loader/Backhoe Operator	\$14.18	\$12.77	\$12.97	\$15.68		\$14.12			\$15.18	\$13.58	\$12.87		\$13.21	\$14.13	\$14.29	\$12.90
1187	Mechanic	\$20.14	\$15.47	\$17.47	\$17.74	\$17.00	\$17.10			\$17.68	\$18.94	\$18.58	\$17.00	\$16.61	\$18.46	\$16.96	\$17.47
1380	Milling Machine Operator	\$15.54	\$14.64	\$12.22	\$14.29		\$14.18			\$14.32	\$14.35	\$12.86			\$14.75	\$13.53	\$12.80
1390	Motor Grader Operator, Fine Grade	\$17.49	\$16.52	\$16.88	\$17.12	\$18.37	\$18.51	\$16.69	\$16.13	\$17.19	\$18.35	\$17.07	\$17.74	\$17.47	\$17.08	\$15.69	\$20.01
1393	Motor Grader Operator, Rough	\$16.15	\$14.62	\$15.83	\$16.20	\$17.07	\$14.63	\$18.50		\$16.02	\$16.44	\$15.12	\$16.85	\$14.47	\$17.39	\$14.23	\$15.53
1413	Off Road Hauler			\$10.08	\$12.26		\$11.88			\$12.25		\$12.23			\$13.00	\$14.60	
1196	Painter, Structures					\$21.29	\$18.34						\$21.29			\$18.62	
1396	Pavement Marking Machine Operator	\$16.42		\$13.10	\$13.55		\$19.17	\$12.01		\$13.63	\$14.60	\$13.17		\$16.65	\$10.54	\$11.18	\$13.10
1443	Percussion or Rotary Drill Operator																
1202	Piledriver																\$14.95
1205	Pipelayer		\$11.87	\$14.64	\$13.17	\$11.17	\$12.79		\$11.37	\$13.24	\$12.66	\$13.24	\$11.17	\$11.67		\$12.12	\$14.64
1384	Reclaimer/Pulverizer Operator	\$12.85			\$11.90		\$12.88			\$11.01		\$10.46					
1500	Reinforcing Steel Worker	\$13.50	\$14.07	\$17.53	\$16.17		\$14.00			\$16.18	\$12.74	\$15.83		\$17.10		\$15.15	\$17.72
1402	Roller Operator, Asphalt	\$10.95		\$11.96	\$13.29		\$12.78	\$11.61		\$13.08	\$12.36	\$11.68		\$11.71	\$11.95	\$11.50	
1405	Roller Operator, Other	\$10.36		\$10.44	\$11.82		\$10.50	\$11.64		\$11.51	\$10.59	\$10.30		\$12.04	\$12.85	\$11.57	\$10.66
1411	Scraper Operator	\$10.61	\$11.07	\$10.85	\$12.88		\$12.27		\$11.12	\$12.96	\$11.88	\$12.43		\$11.22	\$13.95	\$13.47	\$10.89
1417	Self-Propelled Hammer Operator																
1194	Servicer	\$13.98	\$12.34	\$14.11	\$14.74		\$14.51	\$15.56	\$13.44	\$14.58	\$14.31	\$13.83		\$12.43	\$13.72	\$13.97	\$14.11
1513	Sign Erector																
1708	Slurry Seal or Micro-Surfacing Machine Operator																
1341	Small Slipform Machine Operator									\$15.96							
1515	Spreader Box Operator	\$12.60		\$13.12	\$14.71		\$14.04			\$14.73	\$13.84	\$13.68		\$13.45	\$11.83	\$13.58	\$14.05
1705	Structural Steel Welder															\$12.85	
1509	Structural Steel Worker						\$19.29									\$14.39	
1339	Subgrade Trimmer																
1143	Telecommunication Technician																
1145	Traffic Signal/Light Pole Worker						\$16.00										
1440	Trenching Machine Operator, Heavy						\$18.48										
1437	Trenching Machine Operator, Light																
1609	Truck Driver Lowboy-Float	\$14.46	\$13.63	\$13.41	\$15.00	\$15.93	\$15.66			\$16.24	\$16.39	\$14.30	\$16.62	\$15.63	\$14.28	\$16.03	\$13.41
1612	Truck Driver Transit-Mix				\$14.14					\$14.14							
1600	Truck Driver, Single Axle	\$12.74	\$10.82	\$10.75	\$13.04	\$11.61	\$11.79	\$13.53	\$13.16	\$12.31	\$13.40	\$10.30	\$11.61		\$11.97	\$11.46	\$10.75
1606	Truck Driver, Single or Tandem Axle Dump Truck	\$11.33	\$14.53	\$11.95	\$12.95		\$11.68		\$14.06	\$12.62	\$11.45	\$12.28		\$13.08	\$11.68	\$11.48	\$11.10
1607	Truck Driver, Tandem Axle Tractor with Semi Trailer	\$12.49	\$12.12	\$12.50	\$13.42		\$12.81	\$13.16		\$12.86	\$16.22	\$12.50			\$13.80	\$12.27	\$12.50
1441	Tunneling Machine Operator, Heavy																
1442	Tunneling Machine Operator, Light																
1706	Welder		\$14.02		\$14.86		\$15.97		\$13.74	\$14.84					\$13.78		
1520	Work Zone Barricade Servicer	\$10.30	\$12.88	\$11.46	\$11.70	\$11.57	\$11.85	\$10.77		\$11.68	\$12.20	\$11.22	\$11.51	\$12.96	\$10.54	\$11.67	\$11.76

Notes:

\*Represents the USDOL wage decision.

Any worker employed on this project shall be paid at the rate of one and one half (1-1/2) times the regular rate for every hour worked in excess of forty (40) hours per week.

For reference, the titles and descriptions for the classifications listed here are detailed further in the AGC of Texas' *Standard Job Classifications and Descriptions for Highway, Heavy, Utilities, and Industrial Construction in Texas* posted on the AGC's Web site for any contractor.

**TEXAS COUNTIES IDENTIFIED BY  
WAGE RATE ZONES: 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 24, 25, 27, 28, 29, 30, 37, 38, 42**

County Name	Zone	County Name	Zone	County Name	Zone	County Name	Zone
Anderson	28	Donley	37	Karnes	27	Reagan	37
Andrews	37	Duval	30	Kaufman	25	Real	37
Angelina	28	Eastland	37	Kendall	7	Red River	28
Aransas	29	Ector	2	Kenedy	30	Reeves	8
Archer	25	Edwards	8	Kent	37	Refugio	27
Armstrong	2	El Paso	24	Kerr	27	Roberts	37
Atascosa	7	Ellis	25	Kimble	37	Robertson	7
Austin	38	Erath	28	King	37	Rockwall	25
Bailey	37	Falls	28	Kinney	8	Runnels	37
Bandera	7	Fannin	28	Kleberg	27	Rusk	4
Bastrop	7	Fayette	27	Knox	37	Sabine	28
Baylor	37	Fisher	37	Lamar	28	San Augustine	28
Bee	27	Floyd	37	Lamb	37	San Jacinto	38
Bell	7	Foard	37	Lampasas	7	San Patricio	29
Bexar	7	Fort Bend	38	LaSalle	30	San Saba	37
Blanco	27	Franklin	28	Lavaca	27	Schleicher	37
Borden	37	Freestone	28	Lee	27	Scurry	37
Bosque	28	Frio	27	Leon	28	Shackelford	37
Bowie	4	Gaines	37	Liberty	38	Shelby	28
Brazoria	38	Galveston	38	Limestone	28	Sherman	37
Brazos	7	Garza	37	Lipscomb	37	Smith	4
Brewster	8	Gillespie	27	Live Oak	27	Somervell	28
Briscoe	37	Glasscock	37	Llano	27	Starr	30
Brooks	30	Goliad	29	Loving	37	Stephens	37
Brown	37	Gonzales	27	Lubbock	2	Sterling	37
Burleson	7	Gray	37	Lynn	37	Stonewall	37
Burnet	27	Grayson	25	Madison	28	Sutton	8
Caldwell	7	Gregg	4	Marion	28	Swisher	37
Calhoun	29	Grimes	28	Martin	37	Tarrant	25
Callahan	25	Guadalupe	7	Mason	27	Taylor	2
Cameron	3	Hale	37	Matagorda	27	Terrell	8
Camp	28	Hall	37	Maverick	30	Terry	37
Carson	2	Hamilton	28	McCulloch	37	Throckmorton	37
Cass	28	Hansford	37	McLennan	7	Titus	28
Castro	37	Hardeman	37	McMullen	30	Tom Green	2
Chambers	38	Hardin	38	Medina	7	Travis	7
Cherokee	28	Harris	38	Menard	37	Trinity	28
Childress	37	Harrison	42	Midland	2	Tyler	28
Clay	25	Hartley	37	Milam	28	Upshur	4
Cochran	37	Haskell	37	Mills	37	Upton	37
Coke	37	Hays	7	Mitchell	37	Uvalde	30
Coleman	37	Hemphill	37	Montague	37	Val Verde	8
Collin	25	Henderson	28	Montgomery	38	Van Zandt	28
Collingsworth	37	Hidalgo	3	Moore	37	Victoria	6
Colorado	27	Hill	28	Morris	28	Walker	28
Comal	7	Hockley	37	Motley	37	Waller	38
Comanche	37	Hood	28	Nacogdoches	28	Ward	37
Concho	37	Hopkins	28	Navarro	28	Washington	28
Cooke	37	Houston	28	Newton	28	Webb	3
Coryell	7	Howard	37	Nolan	37	Wharton	27
Cottle	37	Hudspeth	8	Nueces	29	Wheeler	37
Crane	37	Hunt	25	Ochiltree	37	Wichita	5
Crockett	8	Hutchinson	37	Oldham	37	Wilbarger	37
Crosby	2	Irion	2	Orange	38	Willacy	30
Culberson	8	Jack	28	Palo Pinto	28	Williamson	7
Dallam	37	Jackson	27	Panola	28	Wilson	7
Dallas	25	Jasper	28	Parker	25	Winkler	37
Dawson	37	Jeff Davis	8	Parmer	37	Wise	25
Deaf Smith	37	Jefferson	38	Pecos	8	Wood	28
Delta	25	Jim Hogg	30	Polk	28	Yoakum	37
Denton	25	Jim Wells	27	Potter	2	Young	37
DeWitt	27	Johnson	25	Presidio	8	Zapata	30
Dickens	37	Jones	25	Rains	28	Zavala	30
Dimmit	30			Randall	2		

# Special Provision to Item 000

## Nondiscrimination



### 1. DESCRIPTION

All recipients of federal financial assistance are required to comply with various nondiscrimination laws including Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, as amended, (Title VI). Title VI forbids discrimination against anyone in the United States on the grounds of race, color, or national origin by any agency receiving federal funds.

Texas Department of Transportation, as a recipient of Federal financial assistance, and under Title VI and related statutes, ensures that no person shall on the grounds of race, religion (where the primary objective of the financial assistance is to provide employment per 42 U.S.C. § 2000d-3), color, national origin, sex, age or disability be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or otherwise be subjected to discrimination under any Department programs or activities.

### 2. DEFINITION OF TERMS

Where the term “contractor” appears in the following six nondiscrimination clauses, the term “contractor” is understood to include all parties to contracts or agreements with the Texas Department of Transportation.

### 3. NONDISCRIMINATION PROVISIONS

During the performance of this contract, the contractor agrees as follows:

- 3.1. **Compliance with Regulations.** The Contractor shall comply with the Regulations relative to nondiscrimination in Federally-assisted programs of the Department of Transportation (hereinafter, “DOT”) Title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, Part 21, as they may be amended from time to time, (hereinafter referred to as the Regulations), which are herein incorporated by reference and made a part of this contract.
- 3.2. **Nondiscrimination.** The contractor, with regard to the work performed by it during the contract, shall not discriminate on the grounds of race, color, or national origin in the selection and retention of subcontractors, including procurements of materials and leases of equipment. The contractor shall not participate either directly or indirectly in the discrimination prohibited by section 21.5 of the Regulations, including employment practices when the contract covers a program set forth in Appendix B of the Regulations.
- 3.3. **Solicitations for Subcontracts, Including Procurements of Materials and Equipment:** In all solicitations either by competitive bidding or negotiation made by the contractor for work to be performed under a subcontract, including procurements of materials or leases of equipment, each potential subcontractor or supplier shall be notified by the contractor of the contractor's obligations under this contract and the Regulations relative to nondiscrimination on the grounds of race, color, or national origin.
- 3.4. **Information and Reports:** The contractor shall provide all information and reports required by the Regulations or directives issued pursuant thereto, and shall permit access to its books, records, accounts, other sources of information, and its facilities as may be determined by the Recipient or the Texas Department of Transportation to be pertinent to ascertain compliance with such Regulations, orders and instructions. Where any information required of a contractor is in the exclusive possession of another who fails or refuses to furnish this information the contractor shall so certify to the Recipient, or the Texas Department of Transportation as appropriate, and shall set forth what efforts it has made to obtain the information.

- 3.5. **Sanctions for Noncompliance.** In the event of the contractor's noncompliance with the nondiscrimination provisions of this contract, the Recipient shall impose such contract sanctions as it or the Texas Department of Transportation may determine to be appropriate, including, but not limited to:
- withholding of payments to the contractor under the contract until the contractor complies, and/or
  - cancellation, termination or suspension of the contract, in whole or in part.
- 3.6. **Incorporation of Provisions.** The contractor shall include the provisions of paragraphs (1) through (6) in every subcontract, including procurements of materials and leases of equipment, unless exempt by the Regulations, or directives issued pursuant thereto. The contractor shall take such action with respect to any subcontract or procurement as the Recipient or the Texas Department of Transportation may direct as a means of enforcing such provisions including sanctions for non-compliance: Provided, however, that, in the event a contractor becomes involved in, or is threatened with, litigation with a subcontractor or supplier as a result of such direction, the contractor may request the Recipient to enter into such litigation to protect the interests of the Recipient, and, in addition, the contractor may request the United States to enter into such litigation to protect the interests of the United States.

---

# Special Provision to Item 000

## Certification of Nondiscrimination in Employment

---



### 1. GENERAL

By signing this proposal, the Bidder certifies that he has participated in a previous contract or subcontract subject to the equal opportunity clause, as required by Executive Orders 10925, 11114, or 11246, or if he has not participated in a previous contract of this type, or if he has had previous contract or subcontracts and has not filed, he will file with the Joint Reporting Committee, the Director of the Office of Federal Contract Compliance, a Federal Government contracting or administering agency, or the former President's Committee on Equal Employment Opportunity, all reports due under the applicable filing requirements.

**Note**—The above certification is required by the Equal Employment Opportunity Regulations of the Secretary of Labor (41 CFR 60-1.7(b)(1)), and must be submitted by Bidders and proposed subcontractors only in connection with contracts and subcontracts which are subject to the equal opportunity clause. Contracts and subcontracts which are exempt from the equal opportunity clause are set forth in 41 CFR 60-1.5. (Generally only contracts or subcontracts of \$10,000 or under are exempt.)

Currently, Standard Form 100 (EEO-1) is the only report required by the Executive Orders or their implementing regulations.

Proposed prime contractors and subcontractors who have participated in a previous contract or subcontract subject to the Executive Orders and have not filed the required reports should note that 41 CFR 60-1.7(b)(1) prevents the award of contracts and subcontracts unless such contractor submits a report covering the delinquent period or such other period specified by the Federal Highway Administration or by the Director, Office of Federal Contract Compliance, U.S. Department of Labor.

## Special Provision to Item 000

# Notice of Requirement for Affirmative Action to Ensure Equal Employment Opportunity (Executive Order 11246)



### 1. GENERAL

In addition to the affirmative action requirements of the Special Provision titled "Standard Federal Equal Employment Opportunity Construction Contract Specifications" as set forth elsewhere in this proposal, the Bidder's attention is directed to the specific requirements for utilization of minorities and females as set forth below.

### 2. GOALS

2.1. Goals for minority and female participation are hereby established in accordance with 41 CFR 60-4.

2.2. The goals for minority and female participation expressed in percentage terms for the Contractor's aggregate work force in each trade on all construction work in the covered area are as follows:

Goals for minority participation in each trade, %	Goals for female participation in each trade, %
See Table 1	6.9

2.3. These goals are applicable to all the Contractor's construction work (whether or not it is Federal or federally assisted) performed in the covered area. If the Contractor performs construction work in a geographical area located outside of the covered area, it will apply the goals established for such geographical area where the work is actually performed. With regard to this second area, the Contractor also is subject to the goals for both its federally involved and non-federally involved construction. The Contractor's compliance with the Executive Order and the regulations in 41 CFR Part 60-4 will be based on its implementation of the Standard Federal Equal Employment Opportunity Construction Contract Specifications Special Provision and its efforts to meet the goals. The hours of minority and female employment and training must be substantially uniform throughout the length of the Contract, and in each trade, and the Contractor must make a good faith effort to employ minorities and women evenly on each of its projects. The transfer of minority and female employees or trainees from Contractor to Contractor or from project to project for the sole purpose of meeting the Contractor's goals will be a violation of the Contract, the Executive Order and the regulations in 41 CFR Part 60-4. Compliance with the goals will be measured against the total work hours performed.

2.4. A Contractor or subcontractor will be considered in compliance with these provisions by participation in the Texas Highway-Heavy Branch, AGC, Statewide Training and Affirmative Action Plan. Provided that each Contractor or subcontractor participating in this plan must individually comply with the equal opportunity clause set forth in 41 CFR 60-1.4 and must make a good faith effort to achieve the goals set forth for each participating trade in the plan in which it has employees. The overall good performance of other Contractors and subcontractors toward a goal in an approved plan does not excuse any covered Contractor's or subcontractor's failure to make good faith efforts to achieve the goals contained in these provisions. Contractors or subcontractors participating in the plan must be able to demonstrate their participation and document their compliance with the provisions of this Plan.

### 3. SUBCONTRACTING

The Contractor must provide written notification to the Department within 10 working days of award of any construction subcontract in excess of \$10,000 at any tier for construction work under the Contract resulting from this solicitation pending concurrence of the Department in the award. The notification will list the names,

address and telephone number of the subcontractor; employer identification number; estimated dollar amount of the subcontract; estimated starting and completion dates of the subcontract; and the geographical area in which the Contract is to be performed.

---

#### 4. COVERED AREA

As used in this special provision, and in the Contract resulting from this solicitation, the geographical area covered by these goals for female participation is the State of Texas. The geographical area covered by these goals for other minorities are the counties in the State of Texas as indicated in Table 1.

---

#### 5. REPORTS

The Contractor is hereby notified that he may be subject to the Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs (OFCCP) reporting and record keeping requirements as provided for under Executive Order 11246 as amended. OFCCP will provide direct notice to the Contractor as to the specific reporting requirements that he will be expected to fulfill.

**Table 1**  
**Goals for Minority Participation**

<b>County</b>	<b>Participation, %</b>	<b>County</b>	<b>Participation, %</b>
Anderson	22.5	Chambers	27.4
Andrews	18.9	Cherokee	22.5
Angelina	22.5	Childress	11.0
Aransas	44.2	Clay	12.4
Archer	11.0	Cochran	19.5
Armstrong	11.0	Coke	20.0
Atascosa	49.4	Coleman	10.9
Austin	27.4	Collin	18.2
Bailey	19.5	Collingsworth	11.0
Bandera	49.4	Colorado	27.4
Bastrop	24.2	Comal	47.8
Baylor	11.0	Comanche	10.9
Bee	44.2	Concho	20.0
Bell	16.4	Cooke	17.2
Bexar	47.8	Coryell	16.4
Blanco	24.2	Cottle	11.0
Borden	19.5	Crane	18.9
Bosque	18.6	Crockett	20.0
Bowie	19.7	Crosby	19.5
Brazoria	27.3	Culberson	49.0
Brazos	23.7	Dallam	11.0
Brewster	49.0	Dallas	18.2
Briscoe	11.0	Dawson	19.5
Brooks	44.2	Deaf Smith	11.0
Brown	10.9	Delta	17.2
Burleson	27.4	Denton	18.2
Burnet	24.2	DeWitt	27.4
Caldwell	24.2	Dickens	19.5
Calhoun	27.4	Dimmit	49.4
Callahan	11.6	Donley	11.0
Cameron	71.0	Duval	44.2
Camp	20.2	Eastland	10.9
Carson	11.0	Ector	15.1
Cass	20.2	Edwards	49.4
Castro	11.0	Ellis	18.2

County	Participation, %	County	Participation, %
El Paso	57.8	Kenedy	44.2
Erath	17.2	Kent	10.9
Falls	18.6	Kerr	49.4
Fannin	17.2	Kimble	20.0
Fayette	27.4	King	19.5
Fisher	10.9	Kinney	49.4
Floyd	19.5	Kleberg	44.2
Foard	11.0	Knox	10.9
Fort Bend	27.3	Lamar	20.2
Franklin	17.2	Lamb	19.5
Freestone	18.6	Lampasas	18.6
Frio	49.4	LaSalle	49.4
Gaines	19.5	Lavaca	27.4
Galveston	28.9	Lee	24.2
Garza	19.5	Leon	27.4
Gillespie	49.4	Liberty	27.3
Glasscock	18.9	Limestone	18.6
Goliad	27.4	Lipscomb	11.0
Gonzales	49.4	Live Oak	44.2
Gray	11.0	Llano	24.2
Grayson	9.4	Loving	18.9
Gregg	22.8	Lubbock	19.6
Grimes	27.4	Lynn	19.5
Guadalupe	47.8	Madison	27.4
Hale	19.5	Marion	22.5
Hall	11.0	Martin	18.9
Hamilton	18.6	Mason	20.0
Hansford	11.0	Matagorda	27.4
Hardeman	11.0	Maverick	49.4
Hardin	22.6	McCulloch	20.0
Harris	27.3	McLennan	20.7
Harrison	22.8	McMullen	49.4
Hartley	11.0	Medina	49.4
Haskell	10.9	Menard	20.0
Hays	24.1	Midland	19.1
Hemphill	11.0	Milam	18.6
Henderson	22.5	Mills	18.6
Hidalgo	72.8	Mitchell	10.9
Hill	18.6	Montague	17.2
Hockley	19.5	Montgomery	27.3
Hood	18.2	Moore	11.0
Hopkins	17.2	Morris	20.2
Houston	22.5	Motley	19.5
Howard	18.9	Nacogdoches	22.5
Hudspeth	49.0	Navarro	17.2
Hunt	17.2	Newton	22.6
Hutchinson	11.0	Nolan	10.9
Irion	20.0	Nueces	41.7
Jack	17.2	Ochiltree	11.0
Jackson	27.4	Oldham	11.0
Jasper	22.6	Orange	22.6
Jeff Davis	49.0	Palo Pinto	17.2
Jefferson	22.6	Panola	22.5
Jim Hogg	49.4	Parker	18.2
Jim Wells	44.2	Parmer	11.0
Johnson	18.2	Pecos	18.9
Jones	11.6	Polk	27.4
Karnes	49.4	Potter	9.3
Kaufman	18.2	Presidio	49.0
Kendall	49.4	Randall	9.3



<b>County</b>	<b>Participation, %</b>	<b>County</b>	<b>Participation, %</b>
Rains	17.2	Reagan	20.0
Real	49.4	Throckmorton	10.9
Red River	20.2	Titus	20.2
Reeves	18.9	Tom Green	19.2
Refugio	44.2	Travis	24.1
Roberts	11.0	Trinity	27.4
Robertson	27.4	Tyler	22.6
Rockwall	18.2	Upshur	22.5
Runnels	20.0	Upton	18.9
Rusk	22.5	Uvalde	49.4
Sabine	22.6	Val Verde	49.4
San Augustine	22.5	Van Zandt	17.2
San Jacinto	27.4	Victoria	27.4
San Patricio	41.7	Walker	27.4
San Saba	20.0	Waller	27.3
Schleicher	20.0	Ward	18.9
Scurry	10.9	Washington	27.4
Shackelford	10.9	Webb	87.3
Shelby	22.5	Wharton	27.4
Sherman	11.0	Wheeler	11.0
Smith	23.5	Wichita	12.4
Somervell	17.2	Wilbarger	11.0
Starr	72.9	Willacy	72.9
Stephens	10.9	Williamson	24.1
Sterling	20.0	Wilson	49.4
Stonewall	10.9	Winkler	18.9
Sutton	20.0	Wise	18.2
Swisher	11.0	Wood	22.5
Tarrant	18.2	Yoakum	19.5
Taylor	11.6	Young	11.0
Terrell	20.0	Zapata	49.4
Terry	19.5	Zavala	49.4

# Special Provision to Item 000

## Standard Federal Equal Employment Opportunity Construction Contract Specifications (Executive Order 11246)



### 1. GENERAL

1.1. As used in these specifications:

- "Covered area" means the geographical area described in the solicitation from which this Contract resulted;
- "Director" means Director, Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs, United States Department of Labor, or any person to whom the Director delegates authority;
- "Employer identification number" means the Federal Social Security number used on the Employer's Quarterly Federal Tax Return, U.S. Treasury Department Form 941.
- "Minority" includes:
  - Black (all persons having origins in any of the Black African racial groups not of Hispanic origin);
  - Hispanic (all persons of Mexican, Puerto Rican, Cuban, Central or South American or other Spanish Culture or origin, regardless of race);
  - Asian and Pacific Islander (all persons having origins in any of the original peoples of the Far East, Southeast Asia, the Indian Subcontinent, or the Pacific Islands); and
  - American Indian or Alaskan Native (all persons having origins in any of the original peoples of North American and maintaining identifiable tribal affiliations through membership and participation or community identification).

1.2. Whenever the Contractor, or any Subcontractor at any tier, subcontracts a portion of the work involving any construction trade, it will physically include in each subcontract in excess of \$10,000 the provisions of these specifications and the Notice which contains the applicable goals for minority and female participation and which is set forth in the solicitations from which this Contract resulted.

1.3. If the Contractor is participating (pursuant to 41 CFR 60-4.5) in a Hometown Plan approved by the U. S. Department of Labor in the covered area either individually or through an association, its affirmative action obligations on all work in the Plan area (including goals and timetables) will be in accordance with that plan for those trades which have unions participating in the Plan. Contractors must be able to demonstrate their participation in and compliance with the provisions of any such Hometown Plan. Each Contractor or Subcontractor participating in an approved Plan is individually required to comply with its obligations under the equal employment opportunity (EEO) clause, and to make a good faith effort to achieve each goal under the Plan in each trade in which it has employees. The overall good faith performance by other Contractors or Subcontractors toward a goal in an approved Plan does not excuse any covered Contractor's or Subcontractor's failure to take good faith efforts to achieve the Plan goals and timetables.

1.4. The Contractor will implement the specific affirmative action standards provided in Section 1.7.1. through Section 1.7.16. of these specifications. The goals set forth in the solicitation from which this Contract resulted are expressed as percentages of the total hours of employment and training of minority and female utilization the Contractor should reasonably be able to achieve in each construction trade in which it has employees in the covered area. Covered construction Contractors performing Contracts in geographical areas where they do not have a Federal or federally assisted construction Contract will apply the minority and female goals established for the geographical area where the Contract is being performed. Goals are published periodically in the Federal Register in notice form and such notices may be obtained from any Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs office or any Federal procurement contracting officer. The

Contractor is expected to make substantially uniform progress toward its goals in each craft during the period specified.

- 1.5. Neither the provisions of any collective bargaining agreement, nor the failure by a union with whom the Contractor has a collective bargaining agreement, to refer either minorities or women will excuse the Contractor's obligations under these specifications, Executive Order 11246, or the regulations promulgated pursuant thereto.
- 1.6. In order for the nonworking training hours of apprentices and trainees to be counted in meeting the goals, such apprentices and trainees must be employed by the Contractor during the training period, and the Contractor must have made a commitment to employ the apprentices and trainees at the completion of their training, subject to the availability of employment opportunities. Trainees must be trained pursuant to training programs approved by the U. S. Department of Labor.
- 1.7. The Contractor will take specific affirmative actions to ensure equal employment opportunity. The evaluation of the Contractor's compliance with these specifications will be based upon its effort to achieve maximum results from its actions. The Contractor will document these efforts fully, and will implement affirmative action steps at least as extensive as the following:
  - 1.7.1. Ensure and maintain a working environment free of harassment, intimidation, and coercion at all sites, and in all facilities at which the Contractor's employees are assigned to work. The Contractor, where possible, will assign two or more women to each construction project. The Contractor will specifically ensure that all foremen, superintendents, and other on-site supervisory personnel are aware of and carry out the Contractor's obligation to maintain such a working environment, with specific attention to minority or female individuals working at such sites or in such facilities.
  - 1.7.2. Establish and maintain a current list of minority and female recruitment sources, provide written notification to minority and female recruitment sources and to community organizations when the Contractor or its unions have employment opportunities available, and maintain a record of the organizations' responses.
  - 1.7.3. Maintain a current file of the names, addresses and telephone numbers of each minority and female off-the-street applicant and minority or female referral from a union, a recruitment source or community organization and of what action was taken with respect to each such individual. If such individual was sent to the union hiring hall for referral and was not referred back to the Contractor by the union or, if referred, not employed by the Contractor, this will be documented in the file with the reason therefor, along with whatever additional actions the Contractor may have taken.
  - 1.7.4. Provide immediate written notification to the Director when the union or unions with which the Contractor has a collective bargaining agreement has not referred to the Contractor a minority person or woman sent by the Contractor, or when the Contractor has other information that the union referral Process has impeded the Contractor's efforts to meet its obligations.
  - 1.7.5. Develop on-the-job training opportunities and/or participate in training programs for the area which expressly include minorities and women, including upgrading programs and apprenticeship and trainee programs relevant to the Contractor's employment needs, especially those programs funded or approved by the Department of Labor. The Contractor will provide notice of these programs to the sources compiled under 7b above.
  - 1.7.6. Disseminate the Contractor's EEO policy by providing notice of the policy to unions and training programs and requesting their cooperation in assisting the Contractor in meeting its EEO obligations; by including it in any policy manual and Collective bargaining agreement; by publicizing it in the company newspaper, annual report, etc.; by specific review of the policy with all management personnel and with all minority and female employees at least once a year; and by posting the company EEO policy on bulletin boards accessible to all employees at each location where construction work is performed.
  - 1.7.7. Review, at least annually, the company's EEO policy and affirmative action obligations under these specifications with all employees having any responsibility for hiring, assignment, layoff, termination or other

employment decisions including specific review of these items with on-site supervisory personnel such as Superintendents, General Foremen, etc., before the initiation of construction work at any job site. A written record must be made and maintained identifying the time and place of these meetings, persons attending, subject matter discussed, and disposition of the subject matter.

- 1.7.8. Disseminate the Contractor's EEO policy externally by including it in any advertising in the news media, specifically including minority and female news media, and providing written notification to and discussing the Contractor's EEO policy with other Contractors and Subcontractors with whom the Contractor does or anticipates doing business.
- 1.7.9. Direct its recruitment efforts, both oral and written, to minority, female and community organizations, to schools with minority and female students and to minority and female recruitment and training organizations serving the Contractor's recruitment area and employment needs. Not later than one month before the date for the acceptance of applications for apprenticeship or other training by any recruitment source, the Contractor will send written notification to organizations such as the above, describing the openings, screening procedures, and tests to be used in the selection process.
- 1.7.10. Encourage present minority and female employees to recruit other minority persons and women and, where reasonable, provide after school, summer and vacation employment to minority and female youth both on the site and in other areas of a Contractor's workforce.
- 1.7.11. Validate all tests and other selection requirements where there is an obligation to do so under 41 CFR Part 60-3.
- 1.7.12. Conduct, at least annually, an inventory and evaluation at least of all minority and female personnel for promotional opportunities and encourage these employees to seek or to prepare for, through appropriate training, etc., such opportunities.
- 1.7.13. Ensure that seniority practices, job classifications, work assignments and other personnel practices, do not have a discriminatory effect by continually monitoring all personnel and employment-related activities to ensure that the EEO policy and the Contractor's obligations under these specifications are being carried out.
- 1.7.14. Ensure that all facilities and company activities are non-segregated except that separate or single-user toilet and necessary changing facilities will be provided to assure privacy between the sexes.
- 1.7.15. Document and maintain a record of all solicitations of offers for subcontracts from minority and female construction contractors and suppliers, including circulation of solicitations to minority and female contractor associations and other business associations.
- 1.7.16. Conduct a review, at least annually, of all supervisors' adherence to and performance under the Contractor's EEO policies and affirmative action obligations.
- 1.8. Contractors are encouraged to participate in voluntary associations which assist in fulfilling one or more of their affirmative action obligations (Section 7.1. through Section 7.16.). The efforts of a contractor association, joint contractor-union, contractor-community, or other similar group of which the Contractor is a member and participant, may be asserted as fulfilling any one or more of its obligations under Section 7.1. through Section 7.16. of these Specifications provided that the Contractor actively participates in the group, makes every effort to assure that the group has a positive impact on the employment of minorities and women in the industry, ensures that the concrete benefits of the program are reflected in the Contractor's minority and female workforce participation, makes a good faith effort to meet its individual goals and timetables, and can provide access to documentation which demonstrates the effectiveness of actions taken on behalf of the Contractor. The obligation to comply, however, is the Contractor's and failure of such a group to fulfill an obligation will not be a defense for the Contractor's noncompliance.
- 1.9. A single goal for minorities and a separate single goal for women have been established. The Contractor, however, is required to provide equal employment opportunity and to take affirmative action for all minority groups, both male and female, and all women, both minority and non-minority. Consequently, the Contractor

may be in violation of the Executive Order if a particular group is employed in a substantially disparate manner (for example, even though the Contractor has achieved its goals for women generally, the Contractor may be in violation of the Executive Order if a specific minority group of women is underutilized).

- 1.10. The Contractor shall not use the goals and timetables or affirmative action standards to discriminate against any person because of race, color, religion, sex, or national origin.
- 1.11. The Contractor will not enter into any Subcontract with any person or firm debarred from Government Contracts pursuant to Executive Order 11246.
- 1.12. The Contractor will carry out such sanctions and penalties for violation of these specifications and of the Equal Opportunity Clause, including suspension, termination and cancellation of existing subcontracts as may be imposed or ordered pursuant to Executive Order 11246, as amended, and its implementing regulations, by the Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs. Any Contractor who fails to carry out such sanctions and penalties will be in violation of these specifications and Executive Order 11246, as amended.
- 1.13. The Contractor, in fulfilling its obligations under these specifications, will implement specific affirmative action steps, at least as extensive as those standards prescribed in paragraph 7 of these specifications, so as to achieve maximum results from its efforts to ensure equal employment opportunity. If the Contractor fails to comply with the requirements of the Executive Order, the implementing regulations, or these specifications, the Director will proceed in accordance with 41 CFR 60-4.8.
- 1.14. The Contractor will designate a responsible official to monitor all employment-related activity to ensure that the company EEO policy is being carried out, to submit reports relating to the provisions hereof as may be required by the Government and to keep records. Records must at least include for each employee the name, address, telephone numbers, construction trade, union affiliation if any, employee identification number when assigned, social security number, race, sex, status (e.g., mechanic, apprentice, trainee, helper, or laborer), dates of changes in status, hours worked per week in the indicated trade, rate of pay, and locations at which the work was performed. Records must be maintained in an easily understandable and retrievable form; however, to the degree that existing records satisfy this requirement, Contractors shall not be required to maintain separate records.
- 1.15. Nothing herein provided will be construed as a limitation upon the application of other laws which establish different standards of compliance or upon the application of requirements for the hiring of local or other area residents (e.g., those under the Public Works Employment Act of 1977 and the Community Development Block Grant Program).
- 1.16. In addition to the reporting requirements set forth elsewhere in this Contract, the Contractor and the subcontractors holding subcontracts, not including material suppliers, of \$10,000 or more, will submit for every month of July during which work is performed, employment data as contained under Form PR 1391 (Appendix C to 23 CFR, Part 230), and in accordance with the included instructions.

---

# Special Provision to Item 000

## On-the-Job Training Program

---



---

### 1. DESCRIPTION

The primary objective of this Special Provision is the training and advancement of minorities, women and economically disadvantaged persons toward journeyworker status. Accordingly, make every effort to enroll minority, women and economically disadvantaged persons to the extent that such persons are available within a reasonable area of recruitment. This training commitment is not intended, and will not be used to discriminate against any applicant for training, whether or not he/she is a member of a minority group.

---

### 2. TRAINEE ASSIGNMENT

Training assignments are based on the past volume of state-let highway construction contracts awarded with the Department. Contractors meeting the selection criteria will be notified of their training assignment at the beginning of the reporting year by the Department's Office of Civil Rights.

---

### 3. PROGRAM REQUIREMENTS

Fulfill all of the requirements of the On-the-Job Training Program including the maintenance of records and submittal of periodic reports documenting program performance. Trainees will be paid at least 60% of the appropriate minimum journeyworker's rate specified in the Contract for the first half of the training period, 75% for the third quarter, and 90% for the last quarter, respectively.

---

### 4. REIMBURSEMENT

If requested, Contractors may be reimbursed \$0.80 per training hour at no additional cost to the Department. Training may occur on this project, all other Department contracts, or local-administered federal-aid projects with concurrence of the local government entity. However, reimbursement for training is not available on projects to the extent that such projects that do not contain federal funds.

---

### 5. COMPLIANCE

The Contractor will have fulfilled the contractual responsibilities by having provided acceptable training to the number of trainees specified in their goal assignment. Noncompliance may be cause for corrective and appropriate measures pursuant to Article 8.7., "Abandonment of Work or Default of Contract," which may be used to comply with the sanctions for noncompliance pursuant to 23 CFR Part 230.

---

# Special Provision to Item 000

## Americans with Disabilities Act Curb Ramp Workshop

---



Before starting work, schedule and attend a mandatory preconstruction Americans with Disabilities Act curb ramp workshop. The workshop will be administered by the Department, will be four hours or less, and will be held during normal working hours at an approved location in proximity to the project.

Supervisory personnel responsible for control of the work must attend the workshop.

The Department will provide workshop facilitators and facilities. No direct compensation will be made for fulfilling these requirements, as this workshop is considered subsidiary to the Items of the Contract.

---

## Special Provision 000

### Certificate of Interested Parties (Form 1295)

---



Submit a notarized Form 1295, "Certificate of Interested Parties," in the following instances:

- at Contract execution for Contracts awarded by the Commission;
- at Contract execution for Contracts awarded by the District Engineer or Chief Engineer with an award amount of \$1,000,000 or more; at any time an existing Contract awarded by the District Engineer or Chief Engineer increases in value to \$1,000,000 or more due to changes in the Contract; at any time there is an increase of \$1,000,000 or more to an existing Contract (change orders, extensions, and renewals); or
- at any time there is a change to the information in Form 1295, when the form was filed for an existing Contract.

Form 1295 and instructions on completing and filing the form are available on the Texas Ethics Commission website.



# Special Provision 000

## Important Notice to Contractors



For Dollar Amount of Original Contract		Dollar Amount of Daily Contract Administration Liquidated Damages per Working Day
From More Than	To and including	
0	1,000,000	618
1,000,000	3,000,000	832
3,000,000	5,000,000	940
5,000,000	15,000,000	1317
15,000,000	25,000,000	1718
25,000,000	50,000,000	2411
50,000,000	Over 50,000,000	4265

In addition to the amount shown in Table 1, the Liquidated Damages will be increased by the amount shown in Item 8 of the General Notes for Road User Cost (RUC), when applicable.

# Special Provision 000

## Important Notice to Contractors



As of December 5, 2022, utility, right of way acquisition, and encroachment, within the project limits have not been cleared. The Department anticipates clearance by the dates listed below. Unless otherwise stated, clearance of these obstructions will be performed by their owners. Estimated clearance dates are not anticipated to interfere with the Contractor's operations. In the event the clearance dates are not met, requests for additional compensation or time will be made in accordance with the standard specifications.

The Contractor is invited to review the mapped information of obstructions on file with the Engineer.

UTILITY			
Utility Owner	Approximate Location	Estimated Clearance Date	Effect on Construction
GRAND LAKES MUD 4	STA. 1361+51	2/1/2023	None; 4 mo. buffer
GRAND LAKES MUD 4	STA. 1361+56	2/1/2023	None; 4 mo. buffer
CONSOLIDATED (UG)	STA. 1361+40	2/1/2023	None; 4 mo. buffer
CENTERPOINT ENERGY GAS	STA. 1470+16	2/1/2023	None; 4 mo. buffer
AT&T (UG)	STA. 1470+25	2/1/2023	None; 4 mo. buffer
CENTERPOINT ENERGY GAS	STA. 1517+90	2/1/2023	None; 4 mo. buffer
CONSOLIDATED (UG)	STA. 1545+42	2/1/2023	None; 4 mo. buffer
COMCAST (UG)	STA. 1548+33	2/1/2023	None; 17 mo. buffer
COMCAST (UG)	STA. 1556+85	2/1/2023	None; 17 mo. buffer
CONSOLIDATED (UG)	STA. 1573+02	2/1/2023	None; 4 mo. buffer
COMCAST (UG)	STA. 1573+16	2/1/2023	None; 4 mo. buffer
AT&T (UG)	STA. 1573+17	2/1/2023	None; 4 mo. buffer
PS LIGHT WAVE (UG)	STA. 1579+11	2/1/2023	None; 17 mo. buffer
PS LIGHT WAVE (UG)	STA. 1584+85	2/1/2023	None; 4 mo. buffer
CIMMARON MUD	STA. 1596+38	2/1/2023	None; 4 mo. buffer
AT&T LEGACY (UG)	SBFR STA. 2315+05 to 2329+66	9/4/2023	None; 10 mo. buffer
ATMOS PIPELINE	SBFR STA. 2329+80 to 2333+61	2/22/2024	None; 5 mo. buffer
CENTERPOINT ENERGY ELECTRIC (OHE)	SBFR STA. 2314+55 to 2335+12	9/4/2023	None; 10 mo. buffer
CENTERPOINT ENERGY GAS	SBFR STA. 2333+08 to 2337+67	9/4/2023	None; 10 mo. buffer
COMCAST (OH)	SBFR STA. 2314+55 to 2335+12	9/4/2023	None; 10 mo. buffer
CONSOLIDATED (UG)	SBFR STA. 2315+05 to 2338+00 & 2350+00 to 2355+00	9/4/2023	None; 10 mo. buffer
CONSOLIDATED (UG)	SBFR STA. 2338+00 & 2350+00	9/4/2023	None; 10 mo. buffer

UTILITY			
Utility Owner	Approximate Location	Estimated Clearance Date	Effect on Construction
CROWN CASTLE (UG)	SBFR STA. 2333+00 to 2360+30	9/4/2023	None; 10 mo. buffer
CENTURYLINK (UG)	SBFR STA. 2315+05 to 2329+66	9/4/2023	None; 10 mo. buffer
PHONOSCOPE (OH)	SBFR STA. 2314+55 to 2335+12	9/4/2023	None; 10 mo. buffer

RIGHT-OF-WAY ACQUISITION			
Parcel Number	Owner	Estimated Acquisition Date	Effect on Construction
101 (SBFR)	Rulica/Grand Parkway, LLC	4/24/2023	None; 15 mo. buffer
102 (SBFR)	Seven Meadows Community Association, Inc.	3/24/2023	None; 16 mo. buffer
103 (SBFR)	Meadows Marketplace Shopping Center LP	3/24/2023	None; 16 mo. buffer

ENCROACHMENT			
Description	Location	Estimated Clearance Date	Effect on Construction
Flower Beds	West of Westheimer Pkwy intersection	2/1/2023	None; 21 mo. buffer
Flower Beds	East of Westheimer Pkwy intersection	2/1/2023	None; 21 mo. buffer
Flower Beds	Westheimer Pkwy intersection under bridge	2/1/2023	None; 21 mo. buffer
Flower Beds	West of Cinco Ranch Blvd intersection	2/1/2023	None; 21 mo. buffer
Flower Beds	East of Cinco Ranch Blvd intersection	2/1/2023	None; 21 mo. buffer
Flower Beds	Cinco Ranch Blvd intersection under bridge	2/1/2023	None; 21 mo. buffer
Flower Beds	West of Bay Hill Blvd / Highland Knolls Dr. intersection	2/1/2023	None; 21 mo. buffer
Flower Beds	East of Bay Hill Blvd / Highland Knolls Dr. intersection	2/1/2023	None; 21 mo. buffer
Flower Beds	Bay Hill Blvd / Highland Knolls Dr. intersection under bridge	2/1/2023	None; 21 mo. buffer
Flower Beds	West of Kingsland Blvd. intersection	2/1/2023	None; 21 mo. buffer
Flower Beds	East of Kingsland Blvd. intersection	2/1/2023	None; 21 mo. buffer

---

# Special Provision 000

## Cargo Preference Act Requirements in Federal Aid Contracts

---



### 1. DESCRIPTION

All recipients of federal financial assistance are required to comply with the U.S. Department of Transportation's (DOT) Cargo Preference Act Requirements, 46 CFR Part 381, Use of United States-Flag Vessels.

This requirement applies to material or equipment that is acquired specifically for a Federal-aid highway project. It is not applicable to goods or materials that come into inventories independent of a Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) funded contract.

When oceanic shipments are necessary for materials or equipment acquired for a specific Federal-aid construction project, the contractor agrees to:

- Utilize privately owned United States-flag commercial vessels to ship at least 50 percent of the gross tonnage (computed separately for dry bulk carriers, dry cargo liners, and tankers) involved, whenever shipping any equipment, material, or commodities pursuant to this contract, to the extent such vessels are available at fair and reasonable rates for United States-flag commercial vessels.
- Furnish a legible copy of a rated, on-board commercial ocean bill-of-lading in English for each shipment of cargo described in paragraph (b) (1) of 46 CFR Part 381 Section 7, "Federal Grant, Guaranty, Loan and Advance of Funds Agreements," within 20 days following the date of loading for shipments originating within the United States or within 30 working days following the date of loading for shipments originating outside the United States, to both the Engineer (through the prime contractor in the case of subcontractor bills-of-lading) and to the Division of National Cargo, Office of Market Development, Maritime Administration, Washington, DC 20590.
- Insert the substance of the provisions of this clause in all subcontracts issued pursuant to this contract.

# Special Provision to Item 000

## Disadvantaged Business Enterprise in Federal-Aid Contracts



### 1. DESCRIPTION

The purpose of this Special Provision is to carry out the U.S. Department of Transportation's (DOT) policy of ensuring nondiscrimination in the award and administration of DOT-assisted Contracts and creating a level playing field on which firms owned and controlled by individuals who are determined to be socially and economically disadvantaged can compete fairly for DOT-assisted Contracts.

### 2. DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS ENTERPRISE IN FEDERAL-AID CONTRACTS

- 2.1. **Policy.** It is the policy of the DOT and the Texas Department of Transportation (Department) that DBEs, as defined in 49 CFR Part 26, Subpart A, and the Department's DBE Program, will have the opportunity to participate in the performance of Contracts financed in whole or in part with federal funds. The DBE requirements of 49 CFR Part 26, and the Department's DBE Program, apply to this Contract as follows.

The Contractor will solicit DBEs through reasonable and available means, as defined in 49 CFR Part 26, Appendix A, and the Department's DBE Program, or show a good faith effort to meet the DBE goal for this Contract.

The Contractor, subrecipient, or subcontractor will not discriminate on the basis of race, color, national origin, or sex in the performance of this Contract. Carry out applicable requirements of 49 CFR Part 26 in the award and administration of DOT-assisted Contracts. Failure to carry out these requirements is a material breach of this Contract, which may result in the termination of this Contract or such other remedy as the Department deems appropriate.

The requirements of this Special Provision must be physically included in any subcontract.

By signing the Contract proposal, the Bidder is certifying that the DBE goal as stated in the proposal will be met by obtaining commitments from eligible DBEs or that the Bidder will provide acceptable evidence of good faith effort to meet the commitment.

#### 2.2. Definitions.

- 2.2.1. **Administrative Reconsideration.** A process by which the low bidder may request reconsideration when the Department determines the good faith effort (GFE) requirements have not been met.

- 2.2.2. **Commercially Useful Function (CUF).** A CUF occurs when a DBE has the responsibility for the execution of the work and carrying out such responsibilities by actually performing, managing, and supervising the work.

- 2.2.3. **Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE).** A for-profit small business certified through the Texas Unified Certification Program in accordance with 49 CFR Part 26, that is at least 51% owned by one or more socially and economically disadvantaged individuals, or in the case of a publicly owned business, in which is at least 51% of the stock is owned by one or more socially and economically disadvantaged individuals, and whose management and daily business operations are controlled by one or more of the individuals who own it.

- 2.2.4. **DBE Joint Venture.** An association of a DBE firm and one or more other firms to carry out a single business enterprise for profit for which purpose they combine their property, capital, efforts, skills, and knowledge, and

in which the DBE is responsible for a distinct, clearly defined portion of the work of the Contract and whose share in the capital contribution, control, management, risks, and profits of the joint venture are commensurate with its ownership interest.

- 2.2.5. **DOT.** The U.S. Department of Transportation, including the Office of the Secretary, the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA), the Federal Transit Administration (FTA), and the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA).
- 2.2.6. **Federal-Aid Contract.** Any Contract between the Department and a Contractor that is paid for in whole or in part with DOT financial assistance.
- 2.2.7. **Good Faith Effort.** All necessary and reasonable steps to achieve the contract goal which, by their scope, intensity, and appropriateness to the objective, could reasonably be expected to obtain sufficient DBE participation, even if not fully successful. Good faith efforts are evaluated prior to award and throughout performance of the Contract. For guidance on good faith efforts, see 49 CFR Part 26, Appendix A.
- 2.2.8. **North American Industry Classification System (NAICS).** A designation that best describes the primary business of a firm. The NAICS is described in the North American Industry Classification Manual—United States, which is available on the Internet at the U.S. Census Bureau website: <http://www.census.gov/eos/www/naics/>.
- 2.2.9. **Race-Conscious.** A measure or program that is focused specifically on assisting only DBEs, including women-owned businesses.
- 2.2.10. **Race-Neutral DBE Participation.** Any participation by a DBE through customary competitive procurement procedures.
- 2.2.11. **Texas Unified Certification Program (TUCP) Directory.** An online directory listing all DBEs currently certified by the TUCP. The Directory identifies DBE firms whose participation on a Contract may be counted toward achievement of the assigned DBE Contract goal.
- 2.3. **Contractor's Responsibilities.**
- 2.3.1. **DBE Liaison Officer.** Designate a DBE liaison officer who will administer the Contractor's DBE program and who will be responsible for maintenance of records of efforts and contacts made to subcontract with DBEs.
- 2.3.2. **Compliance Tracking System (CTS).** This Contract is subject to electronic Contract compliance tracking. Contractors and DBEs are required to provide any noted and requested Contract compliance-related data electronically in the Department's tracking system. This includes commitments, payments, substitutions, and good faith efforts. Contractors and DBEs are responsible for responding by any noted response date or due date to any instructions or request for information, and to check the system on a regular basis. A Contractor is responsible for ensuring all DBEs have completed all requested items and that their contact information is accurate and up-to-date. The Department may require additional information related to the Contract to be provided electronically through the system at any time before, during, or after contract award. The system is web-based and can be accessed at the following Internet address: <https://txdot.txdotcms.com/>.
- In its sole discretion, the Department may require that contract compliance tracking data be submitted by Contractors and DBEs in an alternative format prescribed by the Department.
- 2.3.3. **Apparent Low Bidder.** The apparent low bidder must submit DBE commitments to satisfy the DBE goal or submit good faith effort Form 2603 and supporting documentation demonstrating why the goal could not be achieved, in whole or part, no later than 5 calendar days after bid opening. The means of transmittal and the risk of timely receipt of the information will be the bidder's responsibility and no extension of the 5-calendar-day timeframe will be allowed for any reason.

2.3.4. **DBE Contractor.** A DBE Contractor may receive credit toward the DBE goal for work performed by its own forces and work subcontracted to DBEs. In the event a DBE subcontracts to a non-DBE, that information must be reported monthly.

2.3.5. **DBE Committal.** Only those DBEs certified by the TUCP are eligible to be used for goal attainment. The Department maintains the TUCP DBE Directory. The Directory can be accessed at the following Internet address: <https://txdot.txdotcms.com/FrontEnd/VendorSearchPublic.asp?TN=txdot&XID=2340>.

A DBE must be certified on the day the commitment is considered and at time of subcontract execution. It is the Contractor's responsibility to ensure firms identified for participation are approved certified DBE firms.

The Bidder is responsible to ensure that all submittals are checked for accuracy. Any and all omissions, deletions, and/or errors that may affect the end result of the commitment package are the sole liabilities of the bidder.

Commitments in excess of the goal are considered race-neutral commitments.

2.3.6. **Good Faith Effort Requirements.** A Contractor who cannot meet the Contract goal, in whole or in part, must make adequate good faith efforts to obtain DBE participation as so stated and defined in 49 CFR Part 26, Appendix A.

2.3.6.1. **Administrative Reconsideration.** If the Department determines that the apparent low bidder has failed to satisfy the good faith efforts requirement, the Department will notify the Bidder of the failure and will give the Bidder an opportunity to provide written documentation or argument concerning the issue of whether it met the goal or made adequate good faith efforts to do so..

The Bidder must request an administrative reconsideration of that determination within 3 days of the date of receipt of the notice. The request must be submitted directly to the Texas Department of Transportation, Civil Rights Division, 125 East 11th Street, Austin, Texas 78701-2483.

If a request for administrative reconsideration is not filed within the period specified the determination made is final and further administrative appeal is barred.

If a reconsideration request is timely received, the reconsideration decision will be made by the Department's DBE liaison officer or, if the DBE liaison officer took part in the original determination, the Department's executive director will appoint a department employee to perform the administrative reconsideration. The employee will hold a senior leadership position and will report directly to the executive director.

The meeting or written documentation must be provided or held within 7 days of the date the request was submitted.

The Department will provide to the Bidder a written decision if the Bidder did or did not make adequate good faith efforts to meet the Contract goal. The reconsideration decision is final and is not administratively appealed to DOT.

2.3.7. **Determination of DBE Participation.** The work performed by the DBE must be reasonably construed to be included in the work area and NAICS work code identified by the Contractor in the approved commitment.

Participation by a DBE on a Contract will not be counted toward DBE goals until the amount of the participation has been paid to the DBE.

Payments made to a DBE that was not on the original commitment may be counted toward the Contract goal if that DBE was certified as a DBE before the execution of the subcontract and has performed a Commercially Useful Function.

The total amount paid to the DBE for work performed with its own forces is counted toward the DBE goal. When a DBE subcontracts part of the work of its Contract to another firm, the value of the subcontracted work may be counted toward DBE goals only if the subcontractor is itself a DBE.

DBE Goal credit for the DBE subcontractors leasing of equipment or purchasing of supplies from the Contractor or its affiliates is not allowed. Project materials or supplies acquired from an affiliate of the Contractor cannot directly or indirectly (second or lower tier subcontractor) be used for DBE goal credit.

If a DBE firm is declared ineligible due to DBE decertification after the execution of the DBE's subcontract, the DBE firm may complete the work and the DBE firm's participation will be counted toward the Contract goal. If the DBE firm is decertified before the DBE firm has signed a subcontract, the Contractor is obligated to replace the ineligible DBE firm or demonstrate that it has made good faith efforts to do so.

The Contractor may count 100% of its expenditure to a DBE manufacturer. According to 49 CFR 26.55(e)(1)(i), a DBE manufacturer is a firm that operates or maintains a factory or establishment that produces, on the premises, the materials, supplies, articles, or equipment required under the Contract and of the general character described by the specifications.

The Contractor may count only 60% of its expenditure to a DBE regular dealer. According to 49 CFR 26.55(e)(2)(i), a DBE regular dealer is a firm that owns, operates, or maintains a store, warehouse, or other establishment in which the materials, supplies, articles, or equipment of the general character described by the specifications and required under the Contract are bought, kept in stock, and regularly sold or leased to the public in the usual course of business. A firm may be a regular dealer in such bulk items as petroleum products, steel, cement, gravel, stone, or asphalt without owning, operating, or maintaining a place of business if the firm both owns and operates distribution equipment for the products. Any supplementing of regular dealers' own distribution equipment must be by a long-term lease agreement and not on an ad hoc or contract-by-contract basis. A long-term lease with a third-party transportation company is not eligible for 60% goal credit.

With respect to materials or supplies purchased from a DBE that is neither a manufacturer nor a regular dealer, the Contractor may count the entire amount of fees or commissions charged for assistance in the procurement of the materials and supplies, or fees or transportation charges for the delivery of materials or supplies required on a job site.

A Contractor may count toward its DBE goal a portion of the total value of the Contract amount paid to a DBE joint venture equal to the distinct, clearly defined portion of the work of the Contract performed by the DBE.

2.3.8. **Commercially Useful Function.** It is the Contractor's obligation to ensure that each DBE used on federal-assisted contracts performs a commercially useful function on the Contract.

The Department will monitor performance during the Contract to ensure each DBE is performing a CUF.

Under the terms established in 49 CFR 26.55, a DBE performs a CUF when it is responsible for execution of the work of the Contract and is carrying out its responsibilities by actually performing, managing, and supervising the work involved.

With respect to material and supplies used on the Contract, a DBE must be responsible for negotiating price, determining quality and quantity, ordering the material, installing the material, if applicable, and paying for the material itself.

With respect to trucking, the DBE trucking firm must own and operate at least one fully licensed, insured, and operational truck used on the Contract. The DBE may lease trucks from another DBE firm, including an owner-operator who is certified as a DBE. The DBE who leases trucks from another DBE receives credit for the total value of the transportation services the lessee DBE provides on the Contract. The DBE may also lease trucks from a non-DBE firm, including from an owner-operator. The DBE that leases trucks equipped with drivers from a non-DBE is entitled to credit for the total value of transportation services provided by non-DBE leased trucks equipped with drivers not to exceed the value of transportation services on the Contract



provided by DBE-owned trucks or leased trucks with DBE employee drivers. Additional participation by non-DBE owned trucks equipped with drivers receives credit only for the fee or commission it receives as a result of the lease arrangement.

A DBE does not perform a CUF when its role is limited to that of an extra participant in a transaction, Contract, or project through which funds are passed in order to obtain the appearance of DBE participation. The Department will evaluate similar transactions involving non-DBEs in order to determine whether a DBE is an extra participant.

If a DBE does not perform or exercise responsibility for at least 30% of the total cost of its Contract with its own work force, or the DBE subcontracts a greater portion of the work than would be expected on the basis of normal industry practice for the type of work involved, the Department will presume that the DBE is not performing a CUF.

If the Department determines that a DBE is not performing a CUF, no work performed by such DBE will count as eligible participation. The denial period of time may occur before or after a determination has been made by the Department.

In case of the denial of credit for non-performance of a CUF, the Contractor will be required to provide a substitute DBE to meet the Contract goal or provide an adequate good faith effort when applicable.

- 2.3.8.1. **Rebuttal of a Finding of No Commercially Useful Function.** Consistent with the provisions of 49 CFR 26.55(c)(4)&(5), before the Department makes a final finding that no CUF has been performed by a DBE, the Department will notify the DBE and provide the DBE the opportunity to provide rebuttal information.

CUF determinations are not subject to administrative appeal to DOT.

- 2.3.9. **Joint Check.** The use of joint checks between a Contractor and a DBE is allowed with Department approval. To obtain approval, the Contractor must submit a completed Form 2178, "DBE Joint Check Approval," to the Department.

The Department will closely monitor the use of joint checks to ensure that such a practice does not erode the independence of the DBE nor inhibit the DBE's ability to perform a CUF. When joint checks are utilized, DBE credit toward the Contract goal will be allowed only when the subcontractor is performing a CUF in accordance with 49 CFR 26.55(c)(1).

Long-term or open-ended joint checking arrangements may be a basis for further scrutiny and may result in the lack of participation towards the Contract goal requirement if DBE independence cannot be established.

Joint checks will not be allowed simply for the convenience of the Contractor.

If the proper procedures are not followed or the Department determines that the arrangements result in a lack of independence for the DBE involved, no credit for the DBE's participation as it relates to the material cost will be used toward the Contract goal requirement, and the Contractor will need to make up the difference elsewhere on the project.

- 2.3.10. **DBE Termination and Substitution.** No DBE named in the commitment submitted under Section 2.3.5. will be terminated for convenience, in whole or part, without the Department's approval. This includes, but is not limited to, instances in which a Contractor seeks to perform work originally designated for a DBE subcontractor with its own forces or those of an affiliate, a non-DBE firm, or with another DBE firm.

Unless consent is provided, the Contractor will not be entitled to any payment for work or material unless it is performed or supplied by the listed DBE.

The Contractor, prior to submitting its request to terminate, must first give written notice to the DBE of its intent to terminate and the reason for the termination. The Contractor will copy the Department on the Notice of Intent to terminate.

The DBE has 5 calendar days to respond to the Contractor's notice and will advise the Contractor and the Department of the reasons, if any, why it objects to the proposed termination of its subcontract and why the Department should not approve the prime Contractor's request for termination.

The Department may provide a shorter response time if required in a particular case as a matter of public necessity.

The Department will consider both the Contractor's request and DBE's stated position prior to approving the request. The Department may provide a written approval only if it agrees, for reasons stated in its concurrence document, that the Contractor has good cause to terminate the DBE. If the Department does not approve the request, the Contractor must continue to use the committed DBE firm in accordance with the Contract. For guidance on what good cause includes, see 49 CFR 26.53.

Good cause does not exist if the Contractor seeks to terminate, reduce, or substitute a DBE it relied upon to obtain the Contract so that the Contractor can self-perform the work for which the DBE firm was engaged.

When a DBE subcontractor is terminated, make good faith efforts to find, as a substitute for the original DBE, another DBE to perform, at least to the extent needed to meet the established Contract goal, the work that the original DBE was to have performed under the Contract.

Submit the completed Form 2228, "DBE Termination Substitution Request," within seven (7) days, which may be extended for an additional 7 days if necessary at the request of the Contractor. The Department will provide a written determination to the Contractor stating whether or not good faith efforts have been demonstrated. If the Department determines that good faith efforts were not demonstrated, the Contractor will have the opportunity to appeal the determination to the Civil Rights Division.

- 2.3.11. **Reports and Records.** By the 15th of each month and after work begins, report payments to meet the DBE goal and for DBE race-neutral participation on projects with or without goals. These payment reports will be required until all DBE subcontracting or material supply activity is completed. Negative payment reports are required when no activity has occurred in a monthly period.

Notify the Area Engineer if payment to any DBE subcontractor is withheld or reduced.

Before receiving final payment from the Department, the Contractor must indicate a final payment on the compliance tracking system. The final payment is a summary of all payments made to the DBEs on the project.

All records must be retained for a period of 3 years following completion of the Contract work, and must be available at reasonable times and places for inspection by authorized representatives of the Department or the DOT. Provide copies of subcontracts or agreements and other documentation upon request.

- 2.3.12. **Failure to Comply.** If the Department determines the Contractor has failed to demonstrate good faith efforts to meet the assigned goal, the Contractor will be given an opportunity for reconsideration by the Department.

A Contractor's failure to comply with the requirements of this Special Provision will constitute a material breach of this Contract. In such a case, the Department reserves the right to terminate the Contract; to deduct the amount of DBE goal not accomplished by DBEs from the money due or to become due the Contractor; or to secure a refund, not as a penalty but as liquidated damages, to the Department or such other remedy or remedies as the Department deems appropriate.

- 2.3.13. **Investigations.** The Department may conduct reviews or investigations of participants as necessary. All participants, including, but not limited to, DBEs and complainants using DBE Subcontractors to meet the

Contract goal, are required to cooperate fully and promptly with compliance reviews, investigations, and other requests for information.

2.3.14.

**Falsification and Misrepresentation.** If the Department determines that a Contractor or subcontractor was a knowing and willing participant in any intended or actual subcontracting arrangement contrived to artificially inflate DBE participation or any other business arrangement determined by the Department to be unallowable, or if the Contractor engages in repeated violations, falsification, or misrepresentation, the Department may:

- refuse to count any fraudulent or misrepresented DBE participation;
- withhold progress payments to the Contractor commensurate with the violation;
- reduce the Contractor's prequalification status;
- refer the matter to the Office of Inspector General of the US Department of Transportation for investigation; and/or
- seek any other available contractual remedy.

# Special Provision Item 000

## Important Notice to Contractors



The contractor's attention is directed to the fact that there are experience requirements associated with the Intelligent Transportation Systems (ITS) items contained on this project. The contractor or its subcontractor must provide information to the Engineer that they meet these requirements with the initial submittals for the associated bid items and before installing or testing ITS items. Following are the ITS items and requirements that must be met if the item is on this project.

### Category A. Pulling Fiber Optic Cable.

Contractor or subcontractor must meet the following experience requirements:

- Three years continuous existence offering services in the installation of fiber optic cable through an outdoor conduit system and terminating in ground boxes, field cabinets or enclosures, or buildings; and
- Three completed projects where the personnel pulled fiber optic cable, minimum 5-mile in length, through an outdoor conduit system for each project. The completed fiber optic cable systems must have been in continuous satisfactory operation for a minimum of 1 year.

### Category B. Splicing and Testing of Fiber Optic Cable.

Contractor or subcontractor must meet the following experience requirements:

- Three years continuous existence offering services in the fields of fusion splicing and testing of fiber optic cable installed through a conduit system and terminating in ground boxes, field cabinets or enclosures, or buildings. Experience must include the following:
  - termination of a minimum of 48 fibers within a fiber distribution frame,
  - optical time-domain reflectometer (OTDR) testing and measurement of end to end attenuation of single mode and multimode fibers,
  - system troubleshooting and maintenance,
  - training of personnel in system maintenance,
  - use of water-tight splice enclosures, and
  - fusion splicing of fiber optic cable which meet the tolerable dB losses listed in Table 1 below; and

**Table 1**  
**Sample Table**

Mode	dB Loss Range
Single mode	0.05–0.10
Multimode	0.20–0.30

- Three completed projects where the personnel performed fiber optic cable splicing and terminations, system testing, system troubleshooting and maintenance during the course of the project and provided training on system maintenance. Each project must have consisted of a minimum 5-mile length of fiber optic cable. The completed fiber optic cable systems must have been in continuous satisfactory operation for a minimum of 1 year.

### Category C. System Integration.

Contractor or subcontractor must meet the following experience requirements:

- Three years of providing system integration on wire line and wireless projects including, but not limited to, programming of layer-2 Ethernet switches, integrating into existing systems and coordination with traffic management centers; and
- Three completed projects requiring system integration and configuration of hardware including but not limited to Ethernet switches, video encoders and decoders, and radios.

#### **Category D. Dynamic Message Sign (DMS) Installation.**

Contractor or subcontractor must meet the following experience requirements:

- Three years continuous existence offering services in the installation of DMS signs; and
- Three completed projects consisting of a minimum of 2 signs in each project where the personnel installed, integrated, and tested DMS on outdoor, permanently mounted overhead structure(s) and related sign control equipment. The completed sign system installations must have been in continuous satisfactory operation for a minimum of 1 year; and
- One project (may be 1 of the 3 projects in the preceding paragraph) in which the personnel worked in cooperation with technical representatives of the equipment supplier to perform the installation, integration, or acceptance testing of the work. The Contractor will not be required to furnish equipment on this project from the same supplier who was referenced in the qualification documentation.

#### **Category E. Closed Circuit Television (CCTV) Equipment Installation.**

Contractor or subcontractor must meet the following experience requirements:

- Three years continuous existence offering services in the installation of CCTV camera systems;
- Three completed projects consisting of a minimum of 5 cameras in each project where the personnel installed, tested, and integrated CCTV cameras on outdoor, permanently mounted structure(s) and related camera control and transmission equipment. The completed CCTV camera system installations must have been in continuous satisfactory operation for a minimum of 1 year; and
- One project (may be 1 of the 3 projects in the preceding paragraph) in which the personnel worked in cooperation with technical representatives of the equipment supplier to perform installation, integration, or acceptance testing of the work. The Contractor will not be required to furnish equipment on this project from the same supplier who was referenced in the qualification documentation.

#### **Category F. Wireless Communications.**

Contractor or subcontractor must meet the following experience requirements:

- Three years continuous existence offering services in the installation of wireless communications. Experience must include the following:
  - Conducting radio installation studies, which include signal noise studies, spectrum analysis, antenna gain and radio power calculations, system attenuation, and measurement of standing wave ratios;
  - Installation, troubleshooting, and repair of broadband radio systems, which include equipment installation, configuration of radios, antenna calibration, and cabling; and
  - Installation, troubleshooting, and repair of interconnected Ethernet networks (LAN and WAN), which include cabling, switch or router configuration, and network analysis; and
- Three projects consisting of wireless communications installation, troubleshooting, and repair. Each project must include transmitting signals over a minimum of 1-mile distance and installation of a minimum of 3 devices; and
- One project (may be 1 of the 3 projects in the preceding paragraph) in which the personnel worked in cooperation with technical representatives of the equipment supplier to perform installation, integration, or acceptance testing of the work. The Contractor will not be required to furnish equipment on this project from the same supplier who was referenced in the qualification documentation.

**Category G. Radar Detection Systems.**

Contractor or subcontractor must meet the following experience requirements:

- Three years continuous existence offering services in the installation of radar detection systems. Experience must include the following:
  - freeway and arterial management,
  - forward fire and side fire applications,
  - single zone and dual beam detection, and
  - equipment setup, testing, and troubleshooting; and
- Three projects consisting of installation, configuration, and setup of radar detection systems; and
- One project (may be 1 of the 3 projects in the preceding paragraph) in which the personnel worked in cooperation with technical representatives of the equipment supplier to perform installation, integration, or acceptance testing of the work. The Contractor will not be required to furnish equipment on this project from the same supplier who was referenced in the qualification documentation.

Should the contractor have subcontractors which meet the above requirements, and should these subcontractors be unable to complete the ITS items contained within the project, the contractor must resubmit qualification material on alternate subcontractors for approval before the applicable category of work can be continued.

# Special Provision 000

## Notice of Contractor Performance Evaluations



### 1. GENERAL

In accordance with Texas Transportation Code §223.012, the Engineer will evaluate Contractor performance based on quality, safety, and timeliness of the project.

### 2. DEFINITIONS

- 2.1. **Project Recovery Plan (PRP)**—a formal, enforceable plan developed by the Contractor, in consultation with the District, that documents the cause of noted quality, safety, and timeliness issues and specifies how the Contractor proposes to correct project-specific performance deficiencies.

In accordance with Title 43, Texas Administrative Code (TAC), §9.23, the District will request a PRP if the Contractor's performance on a project is below the Department's acceptable standards and will monitor the Contractor's compliance with the established plan.

- 2.2. **Corrective Action Plan (CAP)**—a formal, enforceable plan developed by the Contractor, and proposed for adoption by the Construction or Maintenance Division, that documents the cause of noted quality, safety, and timeliness issues and specifies how the Contractor proposes to correct statewide performance deficiencies.

In accordance with 43 TAC §9.23, the Division will request a CAP if the average of the Contractor's statewide final evaluation scores falls below the Department's acceptable standards for the review period and will monitor the Contractor's compliance with the established plan.

### 3. CONTRACTOR EVALUATIONS

In accordance with Title 43, Texas Administrative Code (TAC) §9.23, the Engineer will schedule evaluations at the following intervals, at minimum:

- Interim evaluations—at or within 30 days after the anniversary of the notice to proceed, for Contracts extending beyond 1 yr., and
- Final evaluation—upon project closeout.

In case of a takeover agreement, neither the Surety nor its performing Contractor will be evaluated.

In addition to regularly scheduled evaluations, the Engineer may schedule an interim evaluation at any time to formally communicate issues with quality, safety, or timeliness. Upon request, work with the Engineer to develop a PRP to document expectations for correcting deficiencies.

Comply with the PRP as directed. Failure to comply with the PRP may result in additional remedial actions available to the Engineer under Item 5, "Control of the Work." Failure to meet a PRP to the Engineer's satisfaction may result in immediate referral to the Performance Review Committee for consideration of further action against the Contractor.

The Engineer will consider and document any events outside the Contractor's control that contributed to the failure to meet performance standards or comply with a PRP, including consideration of sufficient time.

Follow the escalation ladder if there is a disagreement regarding an evaluation or disposition of a PRP. The Contractor may submit additional documentation pertaining to the dispute. The District Engineer's decision

on a Contractor's evaluation score and recommendation of action required in a PRP or follow up for non-compliance is final.

---

#### **4. DIVISION OVERSIGHT**

Upon request of the Construction or Maintenance Division, develop and submit for Division approval a proposed CAP to document expectations for correcting deficiencies in the performance of projects statewide.

Comply with the CAP as directed. The CAP may be modified at any time up to completion or resolution after written approval of the premise of change from the Division. Failure to meet an adopted or revised adopted CAP to the Division's satisfaction within 120 days will result in immediate referral to the Performance Review Committee for consideration of further action against the Contractor.

The Division will consider and document any events outside the Contractor's control that contributed to the failure to meet performance standards or comply with a CAP, including consideration of sufficient time and associated costs as appropriate.

---

#### **5. PERFORMANCE REVIEW COMMITTEE**

The Performance Review Committee, in accordance with 43 TAC §9.24, will review at minimum all final evaluations, history of compliance with PRPs, any adopted CAPs including agreed modifications, any information about events outside a Contractor's control contributing to the Contractor's performance, and any documentation submitted by the Contractor and may recommend one or more of the following actions:

- take no action,
- reduce the Contractor's bidding capacity,
- prohibit the Contractor from bidding on one or more projects,
- immediately suspend the Contractor from bidding for a specified period of time, by reducing the Contractor's bidding capacity to zero, or
- prohibit the Contractor from being awarded a Contract on which they are the apparent low bidder.

The Deputy Executive Director will determine any further action against the Contractor.

---

#### **6. APPEALS PROCESS**

In accordance with 43 TAC §9.25, the Contractor may appeal remedial actions determined by the Deputy Executive Director.



## Special Provision to Item 2

### Instructions to Bidders



Item 2, "Instructions to Bidders," of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Article 2.3., "Issuing Proposal Forms,"** second paragraph, is supplemented by the following.

The Department will not issue a proposal form if one or more of the following apply:

- the Bidder or affiliate of the Bidder that was originally determined as the apparent low Bidder on a project, but was deemed nonresponsive for failure to submit a DBE commitment as specified in Article 2.14., "Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE)," is prohibited from rebidding that specific project.

**Article 2.7., "Nonresponsive Bid,"** is supplemented by the following:

The Department will not accept a nonresponsive bid. A bid that has one or more of the deficiencies listed below is considered nonresponsive:

- the Bidder failed to submit a DBE commitment as specified in Article 2.14., "Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE)."

**Article 2.14., "Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE),"** is added.

The apparent low bidder must submit DBE commitment information on federally funded projects with DBE goals within 5 calendar days (as defined in 49 CFR Part 26, Subpart A) of bid opening. For a submission that meets the 5-day requirement, administrative corrections will be allowed.

If the apparent low Bidder fails to submit their DBE information within the specified timeframe, they will be deemed nonresponsive and the proposal guaranty will become the property of the State, not as a penalty, but as liquidated damages. The Bidder forfeiting the proposal guaranty will not be considered in future proposals for the same work unless there has been a substantial change in the design of the work. The Department may recommend that the Commission:

- reject all bids, or
- award the Contract to the new apparent low Bidder, if the new apparent low Bidder submits DBE information within one calendar day of notification by the Department.

If the new apparent low Bidder is unable to submit the required DBE information within one calendar day:

- the new apparent low Bidder will not be deemed nonresponsive,
- the new apparent low Bidder's guaranty will not be forfeited,
- the Department will reject all bids, and
- the new apparent low Bidder will remain eligible to receive future proposals for the same project.

## Special Provision to Item 2

### Instructions to Bidders



Item 2, "Instructions to Bidders," of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Article 2.3., "Issuing Proposal Forms,"** is supplemented by the following:

- the Bidder or affiliate of the Bidder that was originally determined as the apparent low Bidder on a project, but was deemed nonresponsive for failure to register or participate in the Department of Homeland Security's (DHS) E-Verify system as specified in Article 2.15., "Department of Homeland Security (DHS) E-Verify System," is prohibited from rebidding that specific project.

**Article 2.7., "Nonresponsive Bid,"** is supplemented by the following:

- the Bidder failed to participate in the Department of Homeland Security's (DHS) as specified in Article 2.15., "Department of Homeland Security (DHS) E-Verify System."

**Article 2.15., "Department of Homeland Security (DHS) E-Verify System,"** is added.

The Department will not award a Contract to a Contractor that is not registered in the DHS E-Verify system. Remain active in E-Verify throughout the life of the contract. In addition, in accordance with paragraph six of Article 8.2, "Subcontracting," include this requirement in all subcontracts and require that subcontractors remain active in E-Verify until their work is completed.

If the apparent low Bidder does not appear on the DHS E-Verify system prior to award, the Department will notify the Contractor that they must submit documentation showing that they are compliant within 5-business days after the date the notification was sent. A Contractor who fails to comply or respond within the deadline will be declared non-responsive and the Department will execute the proposal guaranty. The proposal guaranty will become the property of the State, not as a penalty, but as liquidated damages. The Bidder forfeiting the proposal guaranty will not be considered in future proposals for the same work unless there has been a substantial change in the scope of the work.

The Department may recommend that the Commission:

- reject all bids, or
- award the Contract to the new apparent low Bidder, if the Department is able to verify the Bidder's participation in the DHS E-verify system. For the Bidder who is not registered in E-Verify, the Department will allow for one business day after notification to provide proof of registration.

If the Department is unable to verify the new apparent low Bidder's participation in the DHS E-Verify system within one calendar day:

- the new apparent low Bidder will not be deemed nonresponsive,
- the new apparent low Bidder's guaranty will not be forfeited,
- the Department will reject all bids, and
- the new apparent low Bidder will remain eligible to receive future proposals for the same project.

---

## Special Provision to Item 2

### Instructions to Bidders

---



Item 2, "Instructions to Bidders" of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Article 3., "Issuing Proposal Forms,"** is supplemented by the following:

The Electronic State Business Daily (ESBD), the Integrated Contractor Exchange (iCX) system, and the project proposal are the official sources of advertisement and bidding information for the State and Local Lettings. Bidders should bid the project using the information found therein, including any addenda. These sources take precedence over information from other sources, including TxDOT webpages, which are unofficial and intended for informational purposes only.

---

## Special Provision to Item 3 Award and Execution Contract

---



Item 3, Award and Execution of Contract," of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Section 4.3, "Insurance."** The first sentence is voided and replaced by the following:

For construction and building Contracts, submit a certificate of insurance showing coverages in accordance with Contract requirements. For routine maintenance Contracts, refer to Article 8, "Beginning of Work."

**Article 8, "Beginning of Work."** The first sentence is supplemented by the following:

For a routine maintenance Contract, do not begin work until a certificate of insurance showing coverages in accordance with the Contract requirements is provided and accepted.

## Special Provision to Item 3

### Award and Execution of Contract



Item 3, "Award and Execution of Contract" of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Section 4.3 "Insurance" is being amended by the following:**

**Table 2**  
**Insurance Requirements**

<b>Type of Insurance</b>	<b>Amount of Coverage</b>
Commercial General Liability Insurance	Not Less Than: \$600,000 each occurrence
Business Automobile Policy	Not Less Than: \$600,000 combined single limit
Workers' Compensation	Not Less Than: Statutory
All Risk Builder's Risk Insurance (For building-facilities contracts only)	100% of Contract Price

---

# Special Provision to Item 5

## Control of the Work

---



Item 5, "Control of the Work," of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Article 5.1, "Authority of Engineer,"** is voided and replaced by the following.

The Engineer has the authority to observe, test, inspect, approve, and accept the work. The Engineer decides all questions about the quality and acceptability of materials, work performed, work progress, Contract interpretations, and acceptable Contract fulfillment. The Engineer has the authority to enforce and make effective these decisions.

The Engineer acts as a referee in all questions arising under the terms of the Contract. The Engineer's decisions will be final and binding.

The Engineer will pursue and document actions against the Contractor as warranted to address Contract performance issues. Contract remedies include, but are not limited to, the following:

- conducting interim performance evaluations requiring a Project Recovery Plan, in accordance with Title 43, Texas Administrative Code (TAC) §9.23,
- requiring the Contractor to remove and replace defective work, or reducing payment for defective work,
- removing an individual from the project,
- suspending the work without suspending working day charges,
- assessing standard liquidated damages to recover the Department's administrative costs, including additional project-specific liquidated damages when specified in the Contract in accordance with 43 TAC §9.22,
- withholding estimates,
- declaring the Contractor to be in default of the Contract, and
- in case of a Contractor's failure to meet a Project Recovery Plan, referring the issue directly to the Performance Review Committee for consideration of further action against the Contractor in accordance with 43 TAC §9.24.

The Engineer will consider and document any events outside the Contractor's control that contributed to the failure to meet performance standards, including consideration of sufficient time.

Follow the issue escalation ladder if there is disagreement regarding the application of Contract remedies.

---

## Special Provision to Item 5

### Control of the Work

---



Item 5, "Control of the Work" of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Article 5.4, "Coordination of Plans, Specifications, and Special Provisions," the last sentence of the last paragraph is replaced by the following:**

Failure to promptly notify the Engineer will constitute a waiver of all contract claims against the Department for misunderstandings or ambiguities that result from the errors, omissions, or discrepancies.

---

## Special Provision to Item 6

### Control of Materials

---



Item 6, "Control of Materials" of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Article 6.10., "Hazardous Materials,"** is voided and replaced by the following:

Comply with the requirements of Article 7.12., "Responsibility for Hazardous Materials."

Notify the Engineer immediately when a visual observation or odor indicates that materials on sites owned or controlled by the Department may contain hazardous materials. Except as noted herein, the Department is responsible for testing, removing, and disposing of hazardous materials not introduced by the Contractor. The Engineer may suspend work wholly or in part during the testing, removing, or disposing of hazardous materials, except in the case where hazardous materials are introduced by the Contractor.

Use materials that are free of hazardous materials. Notify the Engineer immediately if materials are suspected to contain hazardous materials. If materials delivered to the project by the Contractor are suspected to contain hazardous materials, have an approved commercial laboratory test the materials for the presence of hazardous materials as approved. Remove, remediate, and dispose of any of these materials found to contain hazardous materials. The work required to comply with this section will be at the Contractor's expense if materials are found to contain hazardous materials. Working day charges will not be suspended and extensions of working days will not be granted for activities related to handling hazardous material introduced by the Contractor. If suspected materials are not found to contain hazardous materials, the Department will reimburse the Contractor for hazardous materials testing and will adjust working day charges if the Contractor can show that this work impacted the critical path.

**10.1. Painted Steel Requirements.** Coatings on existing steel contain hazardous materials unless otherwise shown on the plans. Remove paint and dispose of steel coated with paint containing hazardous materials in accordance with the following:

**10.1.1. Removing Paint From Steel** For contracts that are specifically for painting steel, Item 446, "Field Cleaning and Painting Steel" will be included as a pay item. Perform work in accordance with that item.

For projects where paint must be removed to allow for the dismantling of steel or to perform other work, the Department will provide for a separate contractor (third party) to remove paint containing hazardous materials prior to or during the Contract. Remove paint covering existing steel shown not to contain hazardous materials in accordance with Item 446, "Field Cleaning and Painting Steel."

**10.1.2. Removal and Disposal of Painted Steel.** For steel able to be dismantled by unbolting, paint removal will not be performed by the Department. The Department will remove paint, at locations shown on the plans or as agreed, for the Contractor's cutting and dismantling purposes. Utilize Department cleaned locations for dismantling when provided or provide own means of dismantling at other locations.

Painted steel to be retained by the Department will be shown on the plans. For painted steel that contains hazardous materials, dispose of the painted steel at a steel recycling or smelting facility unless otherwise shown on the plans. Maintain and make available to the Engineer invoices and other records obtained from the facility showing the received weight of the steel and the facility name. Dispose of steel that does not contain hazardous material coatings in accordance with federal, state and local regulations.



**10.2. Asbestos Requirements.** The plans will indicate locations or elements where asbestos containing materials (ACM) are known to be present. Where ACM is known to exist or where previously unknown ACM has been found, the Department will arrange for abatement by a separate contractor prior to or during the Contract. Notify the Engineer of proposed dates of demolition or removal of structural elements with ACM at least 60 days before beginning work to allow the Department sufficient time for abatement.

The Department of State Health Services (DSHS), Asbestos Programs Branch, is responsible for administering the requirements of the National Emissions Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutants, 40 CFR Part 61, Subpart M and the Texas Asbestos Health Protection Rules (TAHPR). Based on EPA guidance and regulatory background information, bridges are considered to be a regulated "facility" under NESHAP. Therefore, federal standards for demolition and renovation apply.

The Department is required to notify the DSHS at least 10 working days (by postmarked date) before initiating demolition or renovation of each structure or load bearing member shown on the plans. If the actual demolition or renovation date is changed or delayed, notify the Engineer in writing of the revised dates in sufficient time to allow for the Department's notification to DSHS to be postmarked at least 10 days in advance of the actual work.

Failure to provide the above information may require the temporary suspension of work under Article 8.4., "Temporary Suspension of Work or Working Day Charges," due to reasons under the control of the Contractor. The Department retains the right to determine the actual advance notice needed for the change in date to address post office business days and staff availability.

**10.3. Lead Abatement.** Provide traffic control as shown on the plans, and coordinate and cooperate with the third party and the Department for managing or removing hazardous materials. Work for the traffic control shown on the plans and coordination work will not be paid for directly but will be subsidiary to pertinent Items.

# Special Provision to Item 006

## Control of Materials



Item 6, “Control of Materials” of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Section 1.1, “Buy America,”** The section is removed and replaced by the following:

Comply with the latest provisions of Build America, Buy America Act (BABA Act) of the Bipartisan Infrastructure Law which restricts funds being made available from Federal financial assistance programs unless all the iron products, steel products, manufactured products, and construction materials used in the project are produced in the United States. Use steel or iron products, manufactured products, or construction materials produced in the United States except when:

- a waiver exists exempting the material from Buy America compliance
- the cost of materials, including delivery, does not exceed 0.1% of the total Contract cost or \$2,500, whichever is greater,
- the Contract contains an alternate item for a foreign source product and the Contract is awarded based on the alternate item, or
- the materials are temporarily installed.

For construction materials submit a notarized original of TxDOT Construction Material Buy America Certification Form (Department Form 2806) with the proper attachments for verification of compliance.

Construction Materials are classified as an article, material, or supply—other than an item of primarily iron or steel; a manufactured product; cement and cementitious materials; aggregates such as stone, sand, or gravel; or aggregate binding agents or additives—that is or consists primarily of:

- Non-ferrous metals,
- plastic and polymer-based products (including polyvinylchloride, composite building materials, and polymers used in fiber optic cables),
- Glass (including optic glass)
- Lumber, or
- Drywall.

Details shown on the plans provide additional clarification on Buy America requirements for this project.

For steel or Iron materials submit a notarized original of the FORM D-9-USA-1 (Department Form 1818) with the proper attachments for verification of compliance. For Steel or Iron materials the manufacturing process includes any process that modifies the chemical content, physical shape or size, or final finish of a product. The manufacturing process begins with initial melting and mixing and continues through fabrication (cutting, drilling, welding, bending, etc.) and coating (paint, galvanizing, epoxy, etc.).

**Article 4., “Sampling, Testing, and Inspection,”** is supplemented by the following:

Meet with the Engineer and choose either the Department or a Department-selected Commercial Lab (CL) for conducting the subset of project-level sampling and testing shown in Table 1, “Select Guide Schedule Sampling and Testing.” Selection may be made on a test by test basis. CLs will meet the testing turnaround times shown (includes test time and time for travel and sampling and reporting) and in all cases issue test reports as soon as possible.

If the Contractor chooses a Department-selected CL for any Table 1 sampling and testing:

- notify the Engineer, District Lab, and the CL of project scheduling that may require CL testing;
- provide the Engineer, District Lab, and CL at least 24 hours' notice by phone or e-mail;
- reimburse the Department for CL Table 1 testing using the contract fee schedule for the CL (including mileage, travel, and stand ime) at the minimum guide schedule testing frequencies;
- reimburse the Department for CL Table 1 testing above the minimum guide schedule frequencies for retesting when minimum frequency testing results in failures to meet specification limits;
- agree with the Engineer and CL upon a policy regarding notification for testing services;
- give any cancellation notice to the Engineer, District Lab, and CL by phone or e-mail;
- reimburse the Department a \$150 cancellation fee to cover technician time and mileage charges for previously scheduled work cancelled without adequate notice, which resulted in mobilization of technician and/or equipment by the CL; and
- all CL charges will be reimbursed to the Department by a deduction from the Contractor's monthly pay estimate.

If the CL does not meet the Table 1 turnaround times, testing charge to the Contractor will be reduced by 50% for the first late day and an additional 5% for each succeeding late day.

Approved CL project testing above the minimum testing frequencies in the Guide Schedule of Sampling and Testing, and not as the result of failing tests, will be paid by the Department.

Other project-level Guide Schedule sampling and testing not shown on Table 1 will be the responsibility of the Department.

**Table 1**  
**Select Guide Schedule Sampling and Testing (Note 1)**

TxDOT Test	Test Description	Turn-Around Time (Calendar days)
<b>SOILS/BASE</b>		
<a href="#">Tex-101-E</a>	Preparation of Soil and Flexible Base Materials for Testing (included in other tests)	
<a href="#">Tex-104-E</a>	Liquid Limit of Soils (included in 106-E)	
<a href="#">Tex-105-E</a>	Plastic Limit of Soils (included in 106-E)	
<a href="#">Tex-106-E</a>	Calculating the Plasticity Index of Soils	7
<a href="#">Tex-110-E</a>	Particle Size Analysis of Soils	6
<a href="#">Tex-113-E</a>	Moisture-Density Relationship of Base Materials	7
<a href="#">Tex-114-E</a>	Moisture-Density Relationship of Subgrade and Embankment Soil	7
<a href="#">Tex-115-E</a>	Field Method for In-Place Density of Soils and Base Materials	2
<a href="#">Tex-116-E</a>	Ball Mill Method for the Disintegration of Flexible Base Material	5
<a href="#">Tex-117-E, Part II</a>	Triaxial Compression Tests For Disturbed Soils and Base Materials (Part II)	6
<a href="#">Tex-113-E</a> w/ <a href="#">Tex-117-E</a>	Moisture-Density Relationship of Base Materials <b>with</b> Triaxial Compression Tests For Disturbed Soils and Base Materials (Part II)	10
<a href="#">Tex-140-E</a>	Measuring Thickness of Pavement Layer	2
<a href="#">Tex-145-E</a>	Determining Sulfate Content in Soils - Colorimetric Method	4
<b>HOT MIX ASPHALT</b>		
<a href="#">Tex-200-F</a>	Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregate (dry, from ignition oven with known correction factors)	1 (Note 2)
<a href="#">Tex-203-F</a>	Sand Equivalent Test	3
<a href="#">Tex-206-F</a> , w/ <a href="#">Tex-207-F</a> , Part I, w/ <a href="#">Tex-227-F</a>	<b>(Lab-Molded Density of Production Mixture – Texas Gyrotory)</b> Method of Compacting Test Specimens of Bituminous Mixtures <b>with</b> Density of Compacted Bituminous Mixtures, Part I - Bulk Specific Gravity of Compacted Bituminous Mixtures, <b>with</b> Theoretical Maximum Specific Gravity of Bituminous Mixtures	1 (Note 2)
<a href="#">Tex-207-F</a> , Part I &/or Part VI	<b>(In-Place Air Voids of Roadway Cores)</b> Density of Compacted Bituminous Mixtures, Part I - Bulk Specific Gravity of Compacted Bituminous Mixtures <b>&amp;/or</b> Part VI - Bulk Specific Gravity of Compacted Bituminous Mixtures Using the Vacuum Method	1 (Note 2)

<a href="#">Tex-207-F</a> , Part V	Density of Compacted Bituminous Mixtures, Part V - Determining Mat Segregation using a Density-Testing Gauge	3
<a href="#">Tex-207-F</a> , Part VII	Density of Compacted Bituminous Mixtures, Part VII - Determining Longitudinal Joint Density using a Density-Testing Gauge	4
<a href="#">Tex-212-F</a>	Moisture Content of Bituminous Mixtures	3
<a href="#">Tex-217-F</a>	Deleterious Material and Decantation Test for Coarse Aggregate	4
<a href="#">Tex-221-F</a>	Sampling Aggregate for Bituminous Mixtures, Surface Treatments, and LRA (included in other tests)	
<a href="#">Tex-222-F</a>	Sampling Bituminous Mixtures (included in other tests)	
<a href="#">Tex-224-F</a>	Determination of Flakiness Index	3
<a href="#">Tex-226-F</a>	Indirect Tensile Strength Test (production mix)	4
<a href="#">Tex-235-F</a>	Determining Draindown Characteristics in Bituminous Materials	3
<a href="#">Tex-236-F</a> (Correction Factors)	Asphalt Content from Asphalt Paving Mixtures by the Ignition Method (Determining Correction Factors)	4
<a href="#">Tex-236-F</a>	Asphalt Content from Asphalt Paving Mixtures by the Ignition Method (Production Mixture)	1 (Note 2)
<a href="#">Tex-241-F</a> w/ <a href="#">Tex-207-F</a> , Part I, w/ <a href="#">Tex-227-F</a>	<b>(Lab-Molded Density of Production Mixture – Superpave Gyratory)</b> Superpave Gyratory Compacting of Specimens of Bituminous Mixtures (production mixture) <b>with</b> Density of Compacted Bituminous Mixtures, Part I- Part I - Bulk Specific Gravity of Compacted Bituminous Mixtures, <b>with</b> Theoretical Maximum Specific Gravity of Bituminous Mixtures	1 (Note 2)
<a href="#">Tex-242-F</a>	Hamburg Wheel-Tracking Test (production mix, molded samples)	3
<a href="#">Tex-244-F</a>	Thermal Profile of Hot Mix Asphalt	1
<a href="#">Tex-246-F</a>	Permeability of Water Flow of Hot Mix Asphalt	3
<a href="#">Tex-280-F</a>	Flat and Elongated Particles	3
<a href="#">Tex-530-C</a>	Effect of Water on Bituminous Paving Mixtures (production mix)	4
<b>AGGREGATES</b>		
<a href="#">Tex-400-A</a>	Sampling Flexible Base, Stone, Gravel, Sand, and Mineral Aggregates	3
<a href="#">Tex-410-A</a>	Abrasion of Coarse Aggregate Using the Los Angeles Machine	5
<a href="#">Tex-411-A</a>	Soundness of Aggregate by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate	12
<a href="#">Tex-461-A</a>	Degradation of Coarse Aggregate by Micro-Deval Abrasion	5
<b>CHEMICAL</b>		
<a href="#">Tex-612-J</a>	Acid Insoluble Residue for Fine Aggregate	4
<b>GENERAL</b>		
HMA Production Specialist [TxAPA – Level 1-A] (\$/hr)		
HMA Roadway Specialist [TxAPA – Level 1-B] (\$/hr)		
Technician Travel/Standby Time (\$/hr)		
Per Diem (\$/day – meals and lodging)		
Mileage Rate (\$/mile from closest CL location)		
<b>Note 1– Turn-Around Time includes test time and time for travel/sampling and reporting.</b>		
<b>Note 2 – These tests require turn-around times meeting the governing specifications. Provide test results within the stated turn-around time. CL is allowed one additional day to provide the signed and sealed report.</b>		

# Special Provision to Item 7

## Legal Relations and Responsibilities



Item 7, "Legal Relations and Responsibilities," of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Section 7.7.2., "Texas Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (TPDES) Permits and Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plans (SWP3)," is voided and replaced by the following:**

**7.2. Texas Pollution Discharge Elimination System (TPDES) Permits and Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plans (SWP3).**

**7.2.1. Projects with less than one acre of soil disturbance including required associated project specific locations (PSL's) per TPDES GP TXR 150000.**

No posting or filing will be required for soil disturbances within the right of way. Adhere to the requirements of the SWP3.

**7.2.2. Projects with one acre but less than five acres of soil disturbance including required associated PSL's per TPDES GP TXR 150000.**

The Department will be considered a primary operator for Operational Control Over Plans and Specifications as defined in TPDES GP TXR 150000 for construction activity in the right of way. The Department will post a small site notice along with other requirements as defined in TPDES GP TXR 150000 as the entity of having operational control over plans and specifications for work shown on the plans in the right of way.

The Contractor will be considered a Primary Operator for Day-to-Day Operational Control as defined in TPDES GP TXR 150000 for construction activity in the right of way. In addition to the Department's actions, the Contractor will post a small site notice along with other requirements as defined in TPDES GP TXR 150000 as the entity of having day-to-day operational control of the work shown on the plans in the right of way. This is in addition to the Contractor being responsible for TPDES GP TXR 150000 requirements for on- right of way and off- right of way PSL's. Adhere to all requirements of the SWP3 as shown on the plans. The Contractor will be responsible for Implement the SWP3 for the project site in accordance with the plans and specifications, TPDES General Permit TXR150000, and as directed.

**7.2.3. Projects with 5 acres or more of soil disturbance including required associated PSL's per TPDES GP TXR 150000.**

The Department will be considered a primary operator for Operational Control Over Plans and Specifications as defined in TPDES GP TXR 150000 for construction activities in the right of way. The Department will post a large site notice, file a notice of intent (NOI), notice of change (NOC), if applicable, and a notice of termination (NOT) along with other requirements per TPDES GP TXR 150000 as the entity having operational control over plans and specifications for work shown on the plans in the right of way.

The Contractor will be considered a primary operator for Day-to-Day Operational Control as defined in TPDES GP TXR 150000 for construction activities in the right of way. In addition to the Department's actions, the Contractor shall file a NOI, NOC, if applicable, and NOT and post a large site notice along with other requirements as the entity of having day-to-day operational control of the work shown on the plans in the right of way. This is in addition to the Contractor

being responsible for TPDES GP TXR 150000 requirements for on- right of way and off- right of way PSL's. Adhere to all requirements of the SWP3 as shown on the plans.

---

## Special Provision to Item 7

### Legal Relations and Responsibilities

---



Item 7, "Legal Relations and Responsibilities" of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Section 19.1., Minimum Wage Requirements for Federally Funded Contracts.** The second paragraph is voided and replaced by the following:

Submit electronic payroll records to the Engineer using the Department's payroll system.

**Section 19.2., Minimum Wage Requirements for State Funded Contracts.** The second paragraph is voided and replaced by the following:

Submit electronic payroll records to the Engineer using the Department's payroll system.

---

## Special Provision to Item 7

# Legal Relations and Responsibilities

---



Item 7, "Legal Relations and Responsibilities," of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Section 7.2.4., "Public Safety and Convenience."** The first paragraph is deleted and replaced by the following.

Ensure the safety and convenience of the public and property as provided in the Contract and as directed. Keep existing roadways open to traffic or construct and maintain detours and temporary structures for safe public travel. Manage construction to minimize disruption to traffic. Maintain the roadway in a good and passable condition, including proper drainage and provide for ingress and egress to adjacent property.

If the construction of the project requires the closing of a highway, as directed, coordinate the closure with the Engineer and work to ensure all lanes and ramps possible are available during peak traffic periods before, during, and after significant traffic generator events to avoid any adverse economic impact on the municipalities during:

- dates or events as shown on the plans, and
- other dates as directed.



# Special Provision to Item 007

## Legal Relations and Responsibilities



Item 7, "Legal Relations and Responsibilities," of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below.

**Section 2.6., "Barricades, Signs, and Traffic Handling,"** the first paragraph is voided and replaced by the following:

- 2.6. **Barricades, Signs, and Traffic Handling.** Comply with the requirements of Item 502 "Barricades, Signs, and Traffic Handling," and as directed. Provide traffic control devices that conform to the details shown on the plans, the TMUTCD, and the Department's Compliant Work Zone Traffic Control Device List maintained by the Traffic Safety Division. When authorized or directed, provide additional signs or traffic control devices not required by the plans.

**Section 2.6.1., "Contractor Responsible Person and Alternative,"** is voided and replaced by the following:

- 2.6.1. **Contractor Responsible Person and Alternative.** Designate in writing, a Contractor's Responsible Person (CRP) and an alternate to be the representative of the Contractor who is responsible for taking or directing corrective measures regarding the traffic control. The CRP or alternate must be accessible by phone 24 hr. per day and able to respond when notified. The CRP and alternate must comply with the requirements of Section 2.6.5., "Training."

**Section 2.6.2, "Flaggers,"** the first paragraph is voided and replaced by the following:

- 2.6.2. **Flaggers.** Designate in writing, a flagger instructor who will serve as a flagging supervisor and is responsible for training and assuring that all flaggers are qualified to perform flagging duties. Certify to the Engineer that all flaggers will be trained and make available upon request a list of flaggers trained to perform flagging duties.

**Section 2.6.5, "Training,"** is voided and replaced by the following:

- 2.6.5. **Training.** Train workers involved with the traffic control using Department-approved training as shown on the "Traffic Control Training" Material Producer List.

Coordinate enrollment, pay associated fees, and successfully complete Department-approved training or Contractor-developed training. Training is valid for the period prescribed by the provider. Except for law enforcement personnel training, refresher training is required every 4 yr. from the date of completion unless otherwise specified by the course provider. The Engineer may require training at a frequency instead of the period prescribed based on the Department's needs. Training and associated fees will not be measured or paid for directly but are considered subsidiary to pertinent Items.

Certify to the Engineer that workers involved in traffic control and other work zone personnel have been trained and make available upon request a copy of the certification of completion to the Engineer. Ensure the following is included in the certification of completion:

- name of provider and course title,
- name of participant,
- date of completion, and
- date of expiration.

Where Contractor-developed training or a Department-approved training course does not produce a certification, maintain a log of attendees. Make the log available upon request. Ensure the log is legible and includes the following:

- printed name and signature of participant,
- name and title of trainer, and
- date of training.

2.6.5.1. **Contractor-developed Training.** Develop and deliver Contractor-developed training meeting the minimum requirements established by the Department. The outline for this training must be submitted to the Engineer for approval at the preconstruction meeting. The CRP or designated alternate may deliver the training instead of the Department-approved training. The work performed and materials furnished to develop and deliver the training will not be measured or paid for directly but will be considered subsidiary to pertinent Items.

2.6.5.1.1. **Flagger Training Minimum Requirements.** A Contractor's certified flagging instructor is permitted to train other flaggers.

2.6.5.1.2. **Optional Contractor-developed Training for Other Work Zone Personnel.** For other work zone personnel, the Contractor may provide training meeting the curriculum shown below instead of Department-approved training.

Minimum curriculum for Contractor-provided training is as follows:

Contractor-developed training must provide information on the use of personnel protection equipment, occupational hazards and health risks, and other pertinent topics related to traffic management. The type and amount of training will depend on the job duties and responsibilities. Develop training applicable to the work being performed. Develop training to include the following topics.

- The Life You Save May Be Your Own (or other similar company safety motto).
- Purpose of the training.
  - It's the Law.
  - To make work zones safer for workers and motorist.
  - To understand what is needed for traffic control.
  - To save lives including your own.
- Personal and Co-Worker Safety.
  - **High Visibility Safety Apparel.** Discuss compliant requirements; inspect regularly for fading and reduced reflective properties; if night operations are required, discuss the additional and appropriate required apparel in addition to special night work risks; if moving operations are underway, discuss appropriate safety measures specific to the situation and traffic control plan.
  - **Blind Areas.** A blind area is the area around a vehicle or piece of construction equipment not visible to the operators, either by line of sight or indirectly by mirrors. Discuss the "Circle of Safety" around equipment and vehicles; use of spotters; maintain eye contact with equipment operators; and use of hand signals.
  - **Runovers and Backovers.** Remain alert at all times; keep a safe distance from traffic; avoid turning your back to traffic and if you must then use a spotter; and stay behind protective barriers, whenever possible. Note: It is not safe to sit on or lean against a concrete barrier, these barriers can deflect four plus feet when struck by a vehicle.
  - Look out for each other, warn co-workers.
  - Be courteous to motorists.
  - Do not run across active roadways.
  - Workers must obey traffic laws and drive courteously while operating vehicles in the work zones.
  - Workers must be made aware of company distracted driving policies.
- **Night Time Operations.** Focus should be placed on projects with a nighttime element.

- **Traffic Control Training.** Basics of Traffic Control.
  - Identify work zone traffic control supervisor and other appropriate persons to report issues to when they arise.
  - Emphasize that work zone traffic control devices must be in clean and in undamaged condition. If devices have been hit but not damaged, put back in their correct place and report to traffic control supervisor. If devices have been damaged, replace with new one and report to traffic control supervisor. If devices are dirty, faded or have missing or damaged reflective tape clean or replace and report to traffic control supervisor. Show examples of non-acceptable device conditions. Discuss various types of traffic control devices to be used and where spacing requirements can be found.
  - **Channelizing Devices and Barricades with Slanted Stripes.** Stripes are to slant in the direction you want traffic to stay or move to; demonstrate this with a device.
  - **Traffic Queuing.** Workers must be made aware of traffic queuing and the dangers created by it. Workers must be instructed to immediately notify the traffic control supervisor and other supervisory personnel if traffic is queuing beyond advance warning sign and devices or construction limits.
  - **Signs.** Signs must be straight and not leaning. Report problems to the traffic control supervisor or other as designated for immediate repair. Covered signs must be fully covered. If covers are damaged or out of place, report to traffic control supervisor or other as designated.

---

## Special Provision to Item 8 Prosecution and Progress

---



Item 8, "Prosecution and Progress" of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Article 8.1., "Prosecution of Work."** The first sentence of the first paragraph is voided and replaced by the following:

Begin work 90 calendar days after the authorization date to begin work. Do not begin work before or after this period unless authorized in writing by the Engineer.

## Special Provision to Item 8

### Prosecution and Progress



Item 8, "Prosecution and Progress" of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

This item is supplemented by the following:

9. **Incentive Using Road-User Cost or Contract Administration Liquidated Damage Values and Disincentive Using Road-User Cost.** This special provision is for the application of incentives and disincentives as follows:
- incentives for early Contract completion using contract administration liquidated damage or substantial completion of work ahead of time using daily road-user cost values as basis and
  - disincentives for late substantial completion of work using daily road-user costs.
- Incentive provisions, based on contract administration liquidated damages, will apply when shown on the plans. Incentive provisions, based on road-user cost, will apply when shown on the plans. Disincentive provisions, based on road-user cost, will apply when road-user cost incentive provisions are shown on the plans. The disincentive provisions, based on road-user cost, will also apply when shown separately on the plans (without an associated road-user cost incentive). Definitions are as follows:
- **Contract Completion** - The final acceptance date (day) unless performance, establishment and maintenance periods occur. In the case of performance, establishment and maintenance periods, completion shall be considered when all work is complete and accepted except for performance, establishment and maintenance periods, with time computed to the suspension of time charges for the acceptance process.
  - **Substantial Completion of Work** - The date (day) when all project work (or the work for a specified milestone or phase) requiring lane or shoulder closures or obstructions is completed, and traffic is following the lane arrangement as shown on the plans for the finished roadway (or the specified milestone or phase of work); all pavement construction and resurfacing are complete; and traffic control devices and pavement markings are in their final position (or as called for on the plans for the specified milestone of work). The Engineer may make an exception for permanent pavement markings provided the lack of markings does not cause a disruption to traffic flow or an unsafe condition for the traveling public, and work zone pavement markings are in place.

When A + B Bidding provisions are included in the Contract, the B working days bid will be considered as the time allowed for completion, contract or substantial as applicable. In addition, the plans will show either the number of working days or a specific date for the purposes of computing substantial completion incentives or disincentives.

Time charge adjustments will be made in accordance with the schedule required to meet Article 8.1, "Prosecution of Work" and Article 8.5, "Project Schedules," the proposal, and the plans. For Contracts with milestone dates, time charges for the completion incentives and disincentives will not be adjusted for weather, weekends, holidays, or other unforeseeable events not under the control or responsibility of the Department. However, time charges for completion incentives or disincentives may be adjusted by the Engineer when;

- work, under the control of the Department, such as extension of limits or changes in scope, change the actual duration of completion,

- delays occur due to unadjusted utilities or unclear right-of-way when clearance is not the responsibility of the Contractor, or
- catastrophic events occur, such as a declared state of emergency or natural disaster, if the event directly affects the Contractor's prosecution.

- 9.1. **Incentives.** When shown on the plans and in accordance with the Contract, the Department will pay an incentive for the early Contract completion or substantial completion of work under the number of working days stipulated in the Contract. The maximum number of working days used in computing the credit will be 30 days for each milestone and Contract completion incentive unless otherwise shown in the Contract. The amount of the credit will be added to money due or to become due to the Contractor.
- 9.1.1. **Early Contract Completion Incentive.** The incentive will be based on the difference between the actual early Contract completion days and the Contract completion days in the Contract. The difference will then be multiplied by the daily contract administration liquidated damage value shown in the proposal.
- 9.1.2. **Early Substantial Completion of Work Incentive.** The incentive will be based on the differences between the actual early substantial completion of work and the Contract days allowed to substantially complete the work (or the specified milestone or phase of work). The difference will then be multiplied by the daily road-user cost values specified for substantial Contract completion (or road-user cost specified for the corresponding milestone or phase of work).
- 9.2. **Disincentives for Failure to Substantially Complete Work on Time.** When shown on the plans and in accordance with the Contract, failure to substantially complete the work (or specified milestone or phase of work) within the established number of working days will result in the assessment of disincentives using the daily road-user cost shown on the plans for each working day in excess of those allowed. The road-user cost disincentive deductions will be in addition to any Contract administration liquidated damages, in accordance with Article 8.6, "Failure to Complete Work on Time." The amount of the disincentive will be deducted from money due or to become due to the Contractor. The road-user cost disincentives will be assessed not as a penalty, but for added expense incurred by the traveling public.

---

## Special Provision to Item 8 Prosecution and Progress

---



Item 8, "Prosecution and Progress" of the Standard Specification is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Article 8.2., "Subcontracting,"** is supplemented by the following paragraph, which is added as paragraph six to this article:

The Contractor certifies by signing the Contract that the Contractor will not enter into any subcontract with a subcontractor that is not registered in the Department of Homeland Security's (DHS) E-Verify system. Require that all subcontractors working on the project register and require that all subcontractors remain active in the DHS E-Verify system until their work is complete on the project.

---

## Special Provision to Item 8 Prosecution and Progress

---



Item 8, "Prosecution and Progress" of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clause cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Article 8.7.2., "Wrongful Default,"** is revised and replaced by the following:

If it is determined after the Contractor is declared in default, that the Contractor was not in default, the rights and obligations of all parties will be the same as if termination had been issued for the convenience of the public as provided in Article 8.8 "Termination of Contract."



---

## Special Provision to Item 8

### Prosecution and Progress

---



Item 8, "Prosecution and Progress," of the Standard Specifications, is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Article 8.6., "Failure to Complete Work on Time,"** is supplemented by the following:

**8.6.1. Lane Closure Assessment Fees.**

Monetary assessment, as shown on the plans, will be made against the Contractor for any lane closure or obstruction that overlaps into the peak hour traffic for each time increment defined on the plans or portion thereof, per lane, regardless of the length of lane closure or obstruction.

**8.6.1.1. Definition of Terms.** For this Contract, the following definitions apply:

**8.6.1.1.1. Time increment.** Any continuous defined increment of time period or portion thereof for a period beginning at that point when lanes are closed or obstructed by the Contractor's operations.

**8.6.1.1.2. Assessment Fee.** The amount shown on the proposal for each defined time increment, representing the average cost of interference and inconvenience to the road user for each lane closed or obstructed during peak hour traffic. The Engineer may allow a proportional fee assessment for closures that do not involve an entire defined time increment.

**8.6.1.1.3. Closure or Obstruction.** When the Contractor's operations result in a reduced lane width of the travel way or shoulder less than that specified on the plan documents.

**8.6.1.1.4. Peak Hour Traffic Times.** Schedule of days and times described in the General Notes, when lane closures or obstructions are not allowed.

**8.6.1.2. Fee Calculation and Collection.** The assessment fee will be deducted from the amount due to the Contractor on the monthly construction estimate, and thus retained by the Department. The Engineer will determine the time of overlap of lane closures or obstructions for calculating the assessment fee. The assessment fee is based on road user costs and is assessed not as a penalty, but for added expense incurred by the traveling public.

---

## Special Provision to Item 009

### Measurement and Payment

---



Item 009 "Measurement and Payment" of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Article 9.5., "PROGRESS PAYMENTS" is supplemented with the following:**

It is the Department's desire to pay a Contractor for work through the last working day of the month; however, the use of early cut-off dates for monthly estimates and MOH is a project management practice to manage workload at the Area Office level. Approval for using early cut-off dates is at the District's discretion. The earliest cut-off date for estimates is the 25<sup>th</sup> of the month.

**Article 9.6., "PAYMENT FOR MATERIAL ON HAND (MOH)" first paragraph is amended as follows:**

If payment for MOH is desired, request compensation for the invoice cost of acceptable nonperishable materials that have not been used in the work before the request, and that have been delivered to the work location or are in acceptable storage places. Nonperishable materials are those that do not have a shelf life or whose characteristics do not materially change when exposed to the elements. Include only materials that have been sampled, tested, approved, or certified, and are ready for incorporation into the work. Only materials which are completely constructed or fabricated on the Contractor's order for a specific Contract and are so marked and on which an approved test report has been issued are eligible. Payment for MOH may include the following types of items: concrete traffic barrier, precast concrete box culverts, concrete piling, reinforced concrete pipe, and illumination poles. Any repairs required after fabricated materials have been approved for storage will require approval of the Engineer before being made and will be made at the Contractor's expense. Include only those materials and products, when cumulated under an individual item or similar bid items, that have an invoice cost of at least \$1,000 in the request for MOH payment (e.g. For MOH eligibility, various sizes of conductor are considered similar bid items and may be cumulated to meet the threshold; for small roadside signs, the sign supports, mounting bolts, and the sign face is considered one bid item or similar bid items for more than one pay item for sign supports.) Requests for MOH are to be submitted at least two days before but not later than the estimate cutoff date unless otherwise agreed. If there is a need to request MOH after the established cut-off date, the district can make accommodation as the need arises. This needed accommodation is to be the exception, though, and not the rule.

---

## Special Provision to Item 9 Measurement and Payment

---



Item 9, "Measurement and Payment" of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Section 9.7.1.4.3., "Standby Equipment Costs,"** is voided and replaced by the following:

7.1.4.3. **Standby Equipment Costs.** Payment for standby equipment will be made in accordance with Section 9.7.1.4., "Equipment," except that the 15% markup will not be allowed and that:

**Section 7.1.4.3.1., "Contractor-Owned Equipment,"** is voided and replaced by the following:

7.1.4.3.1. **Contractor-Owned Equipment.** For Contractor-owned equipment:

- Standby will be paid at 50% of the monthly Equipment Watch rate after the regional and age adjustment factors have been applied. Operating costs will not be allowed. Calculate the standby rate as follows.

$$\text{Standby rate} = (\text{FHWA hourly rate} - \text{operating costs}) \times 50\%$$

- If an hourly rate is needed, divide the monthly *Equipment Watch* rate by 176.
- No more than 8 hr. of standby will be paid during a 24-hr. day period, nor more than 40 hr. per week.
- Standby costs will not be allowed during periods when the equipment would have otherwise been idle.

# Special Provision to Item 132

## Embankment



Item 132, "Embankment" of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Article 132.3.4., "Compaction Methods."** The last sentence is replaced by the following.

Compact embankments in accordance with Section 132.3.4.1., "Ordinary Compaction," or Section 132.3.4.2., "Density Control," as shown on the plans. The Contractor may use Section 132.3.4.3., "Density Control by Computer-Generated (CG) Curve," as an option for density control.

**Article 132.3.4., "Compaction Methods,"** is supplemented by the following.

**3.4.3. Density Control by Computer-Generated (CG) Curve.** At the Contractor's discretion, CG curves may be used for density control.

Compact each layer to the required density using equipment complying with Item 210, "Rolling." Determine the maximum lift thickness based on the ability of the compacting operation and equipment to meet the required density. Do not exceed layer thickness of 12 in. loose or 10 in. compacted material, unless otherwise approved. Maintain a level layer with consistent thickness to ensure uniform compaction.

When using this method for each source and type of material, or when directed, sample and conduct testing according to the input parameters specified in Table 3 and provide CG field moisture-density curves based on each soil-compactors-lift thickness combination and CG Tex-114-E moisture-density curves based on each lift of soil. The CG field dry density ( $D_{fcg}$ ) must be greater than or equal to the CG Tex-114-E maximum dry density ( $D_{acg}$ ). The Engineer may obtain independent soil samples for supplemental Tex-114-E lab tests to check a supplemental maximum dry density ( $D_a$ ) and optimum moisture content ( $W_{opt}$ ) for reference when new CG curves are submitted. Provide access to the computer program used to generate the curve, when directed.

**Table 3**  
**Computer-Generated Lab and Field Compaction Curve Input Criteria**

Input Variables	Test Method
Liquid Limit, %	Tex-104-E
Plasticity Index (PI), %	Tex-106-E
Soil gradation	Tex-110-E Tex-111-E
Soil classification	Tex-112-E
Compaction roller brand, type, and model	N/A
Loose lift thickness, in.	N/A
Soil specific gravity	Use 2.65 for soil type SC. Use 2.68 for soil type CL. Use 2.69 for soil type CH.

Provide a compaction control report showing all input and output parameters and CG compaction curves, including:

- CG Tex-114-E laboratory maximum dry density ( $D_{acg}$ ),
- CG Tex-114-E laboratory optimum moisture content ( $W_{optcg}$ ),
- CG field maximum dry density ( $D_{fcg}$ ),

- CG field optimum moisture content ( $W_{f_{optcg}}$ ),
- graph of CG laboratory and field compaction curves and the “Zero Air Voids Line,” and
- minimum number of roller passes to achieve the required density and moisture content.

Meet the requirements for field maximum dry density ( $D_{fcg}$ ) and field optimum moisture content ( $W_{f_{optcg}}$ ) specified in Table 4, unless otherwise shown on the plans. Use only the specific roller and soil properties utilized in lift construction as input parameters to generate the CG field curve used to meet moisture-density requirements in construction.

**Table 4**  
**Computer-Generated Lab and Field Compaction Curve Input Criteria**

Description	Density	Moisture Content
	Tex-115-E	
$PI \leq 15$	$\geq 98\% D_{fcg}$	$\geq W_{f_{optcg}}$
$15 < PI \leq 35$	$\geq 98\% D_{fcg}$ and $\leq 102\% D_{fcg}$	$\geq W_{f_{optcg}}$
$PI > 35$	$\geq 95\% D_{acg}$ and $\leq 100\% D_{acg}$	$\geq W_{f_{optcg}}$

Each layer is subject to testing by the Engineer for density and moisture content. During compaction, the moisture content of the soil should be above CG optimum moisture content but should not exceed the value shown on the moisture-density curve, above optimum, required to achieve 98% dry density.

When the CG field maximum dry density ( $D_{fcg}$ ) is not achieved, perform the following steps in order.

- Verify that construction controls including lift soil properties, minimum number and uniformity of compactor passes, lift thickness, and moisture content are correct.
- If needed, rework the lift with the corrected controls using the original CG curve.
- Generate a new CG field compaction curve based on actual in-place soil properties and rework the lift.
- Generate a non-CG Tex-114-E moisture-density reference standard and rework the material using this reference standard.

When required, remove small areas of the layer to allow for density tests. Replace the removed material and recompact at no additional expense to the Department. Proof-roll in accordance with Item 216, “Proof Rolling,” when shown on the plans or as directed. Correct soft spots as directed.

**Article 132.3.5., “Maintenance of Moisture and Reworking.”** The first sentence is replaced by the following.

Maintain the density and moisture content once all requirements in Table 2 or 4 are met.

---

# Special Provision to Item 247

## Flexible Base

---



Item 247, "Flexible Base" of the Standard Specifications, is hereby amended with respect to the clauses cited below, and no other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed hereby.

**Section 2.4., "Certification."** This section is added.

Personnel certified by the Department-approved soils and base certification program must conduct all sampling, field testing, and laboratory testing required by the following:

- Section 2.1, "Aggregate,"
- Section 2.1.3.2, "Recycled Material (Including Crushed Concrete) Requirements,"
- Section 4.3, "Compaction," for measuring flexible base depth, and
- Section 4.3.2, "Density Control," for determining the roadway density and moisture content.

Supply the Engineer with a list of certified personnel and copies of their current certificates before laboratory and field testing is performed and when personnel changes are made. At any time during the project, the Engineer may perform production tests as deemed necessary in accordance with Item 5, "Control of the Work."

**Section 2.5., "Reporting and Responsibilities."** This section is added.

Use Department-provided templates to record and calculate all test data. Obtain the current version of the templates at <http://www.txdot.gov/inside-txdot/forms-publications/consultants-contractors/forms/site-manager.html> or from the Engineer. The Engineer and the Contractor will provide any available test results to the other party when requested. Record and electronically submit all test results and pertinent information on Department-provided templates.

**Section 2.6., "Sampling."** This section is added.

The Engineer will sample flexible base from stockpiles located at the production site or at the project location in accordance with [Tex-400-A](#), Section 5.3. The Engineer will label the sample containers as "Engineer," "Contractor" or "Supplier," and "CST/M&P." Witness the sampling and take immediate possession of the sample containers labeled "Contractor" or "Supplier." The Engineer will maintain custody of the samples labeled "CST/M&P" until testing and reporting is completed.

**Section 2.7., "Referee Testing."** This section is added.

CST/M&P is the referee laboratory. The Contractor may request referee testing when the Engineer's test results fail to meet any of the material requirements listed in Table 1. Make the request via email within 5 working days after receiving test results from the Engineer. Submit test reports signed and sealed by a licensed professional engineer from a commercial laboratory listed on the Department's Material Producer List (MPL) of laboratories approved to perform compaction and triaxial compression testing located at <http://ftp.dot.state.tx.us/pub/txdot-info/cmd/mpl/complabs.pdf>. Submit completed test reports electronically on Department-provided templates in their original format. The referee laboratory will report test results to the Engineer within the allowable number of working days listed in Table 2 from the time the referee laboratory receives the samples. It is at the discretion of the Engineer or the referee laboratory to deny a referee request upon review of the test reports provided by the Contractor.

**Table 2**  
**Number of Allowable Working Days to Report Referee Test Results**

Material Property	Test Method	Working Days
Gradation	Tex-110-E, Part I	5
Liquid Limit (Multi-Point Method)	Tex-104-E, Part I	5
Plasticity Index	Tex-106-E	5
Wet Ball Mill Value	Tex-116-E, Parts I and II	5
Wet Ball Mill, % Increase passing #40 sieve		
Compressive Strength <sup>1</sup>	Tex-117-E, Part II	6
Compressive Strength <sup>2</sup>	Tex-117-E	12

1. Moisture-Density curve provided by the District
2. Moisture-Density curve determined by the referee laboratory

**Section 4.6., "Ride Quality."** This section is voided and replaced by the following.

Measurement of ride quality only applies to the final travel lanes that receive a 1- or 2-course surface treatment for the final riding surface, unless otherwise shown on the plans. Measure the ride quality of the base course either before or after the application of the prime coat, as directed, and before placement of the surface treatment. Use a certified profiler operator from the Department's MPL. When requested, furnish the Engineer documentation for the person certified to operate the profiler.

Provide all profile data to the Engineer in electronic data files within 3 days of measuring the ride quality using the format specified in [Tex-1001-S](#). The Engineer will use Department software to evaluate longitudinal profiles to determine areas requiring corrective action. Correct 0.1-mi.sections for each wheel path having an average international roughness index (IRI) value greater than 100 in. per mile to an IRI value of 100 in. per mile or less, unless otherwise shown on the plans.

Re-profile and correct sections that fail to maintain ride quality, as directed. Correct re-profiled sections until specification requirements are met, as approved. Perform this work at no additional expense to the Department.

---

## Special Provision to Item 300 Asphalt, Oils, and Emulsions

---



Item 300, "Asphalt, Oils, and Emulsions" of the Standard Specifications is replaced by Special Specification [3096](#), "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions." All Item 300 Special Provisions are no longer available, beginning with the April 2022 letting.



# Special Provision to Item 302

## Aggregates for Surface Treatments



Item 302, "Aggregates for Seal Coats," of the Standard Specifications, is hereby amended with respect to the clauses cited below, and no other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed hereby.

Section 2.1., "Aggregate." Tables 2 and 3 are voided and replaced by the following.

**Table 2**  
**Aggregate Gradation Requirements (Cumulative % Retained<sup>1</sup>)**

Sieve	Grade								
	1	2	3S <sup>2</sup>	3		4S <sup>2</sup>	4	5S <sup>2</sup>	5
				Non-Lightweight	Lightweight				
1"	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
7/8"	0-2	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
3/4"	20-35	0-2	0	0	0	-	-	-	-
5/8"	85-100	20-40	0-5	0-5	0-2	0	0	-	-
1/2"	-	80-100	55-85	20-40	10-25	0-5	0-5	0	0
3/8"	95-100	95-100	95-100	80-100	60-80	60-85	20-40	0-5	0-5
1/4"	-	-	-	95-100	95-100	-	-	65-85	-
#4	-	-	-	-	-	95-100	95-100	95-100	50-80
#8	99-100	99-100	99-100	98-100	98-100	98-100	98-100	98-100	98-100

1. Round test results to the nearest whole number.
2. Single-size gradation.

**Table 3**  
**Aggregate Quality Requirements**

Property	Test Method	Requirement <sup>1</sup>	
		Minimum	Maximum
SAC	<a href="#">AQMP</a>	As shown on the plans	
Deleterious Material <sup>2</sup> , %	<a href="#">Tex-217-F</a> , Part I	-	2.0
Decantation, %	<a href="#">Tex-406-A</a>	-	1.5
Flakiness Index, %	<a href="#">Tex-224-F</a>	-	17
Gradation	<a href="#">Tex-200-F</a> , Part I	Table 2 Requirements	
Los Angeles Abrasion, %	<a href="#">Tex-410-A</a>	-	35
Magnesium Sulfate Soundness, 5 Cycle, %	<a href="#">Tex-411-A</a>	-	25
Micro-Deval Abrasion, %	<a href="#">Tex-461-A</a>	Note 3	
Coarse Aggregate Angularity <sup>4</sup> , 2 Crushed Faces, %	<a href="#">Tex-460-A</a> , Part I	85	-
Additional Requirements for Lightweight Aggregate			
Dry Loose Unit Wt., lb./cu. ft.	<a href="#">Tex-404-A</a>	35	60
Pressure Slaking, %	<a href="#">Tex-431-A</a>	-	6.0
Freeze-Thaw Loss, %	<a href="#">Tex-432-A</a>	-	10.0
Water Absorption, 24hr., %	<a href="#">Tex-433-A</a>	-	12.0

1. Material requirements are listed below, unless otherwise shown on the plans.
2. Not required for lightweight aggregate.
3. Used to estimate the magnesium sulfate soundness loss in accordance with Section 2.1.1.
4. Only required for crushed gravel.

**Section 2.1.1., “Micro-Deval Abrasion,”** is added.

The Engineer will perform a minimum of one Micro-Deval abrasion test in accordance with [Tex-461-A](#) for each coarse aggregate source per project that has a Rated Source Soundness Magnesium (RSSM) loss value greater than 15 as listed in the BRSQC. The Engineer may waive all Micro-Deval testing based on a satisfactory test history of the same aggregate source.

The Engineer will estimate the magnesium sulfate soundness loss for each coarse aggregate source, when tested, using the following formula.

$$Mg_{est.} = (RSSM)(MD_{act.}/RSMD)$$

where:

$Mg_{est.}$  = magnesium sulfate soundness loss

$MD_{act.}$  = actual Micro-Deval percent loss

$RSMD$  = Rated Source Micro-Deval

When the estimated magnesium sulfate soundness loss is greater than the maximum magnesium sulfate soundness loss specified, the coarse aggregate source will not be allowed for use unless otherwise approved by the Engineer. The Engineer may require additional testing before granting approval.

**Section 2.2., “Precoating.”** The third paragraph is voided and replaced by the following.

The Engineer retains the right to remove precoat material from aggregate samples in accordance with [Tex-210-F](#), or as recommended by the Construction Division, and test the aggregate to verify compliance with Table 2 and Table 3 requirements. Gradation testing may be performed with precoat intact.

**Section 2.3., “Sampling,”** is added.

Personnel who conduct sampling and witnessing of sampling must be certified by the Department-approved certification program. Supply the Engineer with a list of certified personnel and copies of their current certificates before beginning construction and when personnel changes are made. At any time during the project, the Engineer may perform production tests as deemed necessary in accordance with Item 5, “Control of the Work.”

The Engineer will sample aggregate from stockpiles located at the production site, intermediate distribution site, or project location in accordance with [Tex-221-F](#), Section 3.2.3. The Engineer will split each sample into 2 equal portions in accordance with [Tex-200-F](#), Section 3.3, and label these portions “Engineer” and “Contractor” or “Supplier.” Witness the sampling and splitting, and take immediate possession of the samples labeled “Contractor” or “Supplier”.

**Section 2.4., “Reporting and Responsibilities,”** is added.

The Engineer will provide test results to the Contractor and Supplier within 10 working days from the date the stockpile was sampled for sources listed on the Department’s Bituminous Rated Source Quality Catalog (BRSQC), unless otherwise directed. The Engineer will provide test results for the LA Abrasion ([Tex-410-A](#)) and Magnesium Sulfate Soundness ([Tex-411-A](#)) tests within 30 calendar days for sources not listed on the BRSQC, or for sources not meeting the requirements of Section 2.1.1., “Micro-Deval Abrasion.” The Engineer will report to the other party within 24 hours when any test result does not meet the requirements listed in Table 2 or Table 3.

---

## Special Provision to Item 316

### Seal Coat

---



Item 316, "Seal Coat" of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Section 4.8, "Asphalt Placement"** is supplemented by the following:

4.8.5. Collect all samples in accordance with Tex-500-C, "Sampling Bituminous Materials, Pre-Molded Joint Fillers, and Joint Sealers" from the distributor and with witness by the Engineer.

At least once per project, collect split samples of each binder grade and source used. The Engineer will submit one split sample to MTD for testing and retain the other split sample.

In addition, collect one sample of each binder grade and source used on the project for each production day. The Engineer will retain these samples.

The Engineer will keep all retained samples for one yr., for hot-applied binders and cutback asphalts; or for two mo., for emulsified asphalts. The Engineer may submit retained samples to MTD for testing as necessary or as requested by MTD.

# Special Provision to Item 334

## Hot-Mix Cold-Laid Asphalt Concrete Pavement



Item 334, "Hot-Mix Cold-Laid Asphalt Concrete Pavement," of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed hereby.

Section 334.4.1.2., "Job-Mix Formula Approval," Table 5, is voided and replaced by the following:

**Table 5**  
**Laboratory Mixture Design Properties**

Property	Test Method	Requirement
Target laboratory-molded density, % <sup>1</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-207-F</a>	94.0 ± 1.5
Hveem stability, Min	<a href="#">Tex-208-F</a>	35
Hydrocarbon-volatile content, %, Max	<a href="#">Tex-213-F</a>	0.6
Moisture content, %, Max <sup>2</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-212-F</a>	1.0
Boil test, %, Max <sup>3</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-530-C</a>	10

1. Unless otherwise shown on the plans.
2. Unless otherwise approved.
3. Limit may be increased or eliminated when approved.

---

## Special Provision to Item 340 Dense-Graded Hot-Mix (Small Quantity)

---



Item 340, "Dense-Graded Hot-Mix (Small Quantity)" of the Standard Specifications is replaced by Special Specification [3076](#), "Dense-Graded Hot-Mix Asphalt," Section 4.9.4., "Exempt Production." All Item 340 Special Provisions and bid codes are no longer available, beginning with the February 2022 letting.

---

## Special Provision to Item 341 Dense-Graded Hot-Mix Asphalt

---



Item 341, "Dense-Graded Hot-Mix Asphalt" of the Standard Specifications is replaced by Special Specification [3076](#), "Dense-Graded Hot-Mix Asphalt." All Item 341 Special Provisions and bid codes are no longer available, beginning with the February 2020 letting.

---

## Special Provision to Item 342 Permeable Friction Course (PFC)

---



Item 342, "Permeable Friction Course (PFC)" of the Standard Specifications is replaced by Special Specification [3079](#), "Permeable Friction Course." All Item 342 Special Provisions and bid codes are no longer available, beginning with the April 2022 letting.

---

## Special Provision to Item 347 Thin Overlay Mixture (TOM)

---



Item 347, "Thin Overlay Mixture (TOM)" of the Standard Specifications is replaced by Special Specification [3081](#), "Thin Overlay Mixture (TOM)". All Item 347 Special Provisions and bid codes are no longer available, beginning with the April 2022 letting.



---

## Special Provision to Item 348 Thin Bonded Friction Courses

---



Item 348, "Thin Bonded Friction Courses" of the Standard Specifications is replaced by Special Specification [3082](#), "Thin Bonded Friction Courses." All Item 348 Special Provisions and bid codes are no longer available, beginning with the April 2022 letting.

---

## Special Provision to Item 420

### Concrete Substructure

---



Item 420, "Concrete Substructures" of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clause cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Article 420.6., "Payment."** The first paragraph is replaced by the following:

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for the class of concrete and element identified and by the special designation when appropriate. This price is full compensation for furnishing, hauling, and mixing concrete materials; furnishing, bending, fabricating, splicing, welding and placing the required reinforcement; clips, blocks, metal spacers, ties, wire, or other materials used for fastening reinforcement in place; placing, finishing, and curing concrete; mass placement controls; applying ordinary surface finish; furnishing and placing drains, metal flashing strips, and expansion-joint material; excavation, subgrade preparation; and forms and falsework, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.

# Special Provision to Item 421

## Hydraulic Cement Concrete



Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete" of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Article 421.2., "Materials,"** the second sentence of the first paragraph is voided and replaced by the following.

Provide aggregates from sources listed in the Department's Concrete Rated Source Quality Catalog (CRSQC).

**Article 421.2.2., Supplementary Cementing Materials (SCM),** is voided and replaced with the following.

Supplementary Cementing Materials (SCM).

- **Fly Ash.** Furnish fly ash, Modified fly ash (MFA), and Ground Bottom Ash (GBA) conforming to [DMS-4610](#), "Fly Ash."
- **Slag Cement.** Furnish Slag Cement conforming to [DMS-4620](#), "Slag Cement."
- **Silica Fume.** Furnish silica fume conforming to [DMS-4630](#), "Silica Fume."
- **Metakaolin.** Furnish metakaolin conforming to [DMS-4635](#), "Metakaolin."

**Article 421.3.1.3., "Agitators and Truck and Stationary Mixers,"** the first paragraph is voided and replaced by the following.

Provide stationary and truck mixers capable of combining the ingredients of the concrete into a thoroughly mixed and uniform mass and capable of discharging the concrete so that the requirements of [Tex-472-A](#) are met.

**Article 421.3.1.3., "Agitators and Truck and Stationary Mixers,"** is supplemented with the following.

Truck mixers with automated water and chemical admixture measurement and slump and slump flow monitoring equipment meeting the requirement of ASTM C 94 will be allowed. Provide data every 6 mo. substantiating the accuracy of slump, slump flow, temperature, water, and chemical admixture measurements. The slump measured by the automated system must be within 1 in. of the slump measured in accordance with [Tex-415-A](#). The concrete temperature measured by the automated system must be within 1°F of concrete temperature measured in accordance with [Tex-422-A](#). The Engineer will not use the automated measurements for acceptance.

Article 421.4.2, "Mix Design Proportioning," Table 8 is voided and replaced by the following.

**Table 8**  
**Concrete Classes**

Class of Concrete	Design Strength, <sup>1</sup> Min $f'_c$ (psi)	Max w/cm Ratio	Coarse Aggregate Grades <sup>2,3,4</sup>	Cement Types	Mix Design Options	Exceptions to Mix Design Options	General Usage <sup>5</sup>
A	3,000	0.60	1-4, 8	I, II, I/II, IL, IP, IS, IT, V	1, 2, 4, & 7	When the cementitious material content does not exceed 520 lb./cu. yd., any fly ash listed in the MPL may be used at a cement replacement of 20% to 50%.	Curb, gutter, curb & gutter, conc. retards, sidewalks, driveways, back-up walls, anchors, non-reinforced drilled shafts
B	2,000	0.60	2-7				Riprap, traffic signal controller foundations, small roadside signs, and anchors
C <sup>6</sup>	3,600	0.45	1-6	I, II, I/II, IP, IL, IS, IT, V	1-8		Drilled shafts, bridge substructure, traffic rail, culverts except top slab of direct traffic culverts, headwalls, wing walls, inlets, manholes, traffic barrier
E	3,000	0.50	2-5	I, II, I/II, IL, IP, IS, IT, V	1-8	When the cementitious material content does not exceed 520 lb./cu. yd., any fly ash listed in the MPL may be used at a cement replacement of 20% to 50%.	Seal concrete
F <sup>6</sup>	Note <sup>7</sup>	0.45	2-5	I, II, I/II, IP, IL, IS, IT, V			Railroad structures; occasionally for bridge piers, columns, bents, post-tension members
H <sup>6</sup>	Note <sup>7</sup>	0.45	3-6	I, II, I/II, III, IP, IL, IS, IT, V	1-4, 8	Mix design options 1-8 allowed for cast-in-place concrete and the following precast elements unless otherwise stated in the plans: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Bridge Deck Panels,</li> <li>■ Retaining Wall Systems,</li> <li>■ Coping,</li> <li>■ Sound Walls,</li> <li>■ Wall Columns,</li> <li>■ Traffic Rail,</li> <li>■ Traffic Barrier,</li> <li>■ Long/Arch Span Culverts, and</li> <li>■ precast concrete products included in Items 462, 464, and 465.</li> </ul> Do not use Type III cement in mass placement concrete. Up to 20% of blended cement may be replaced with listed SCMs when Option 4 is used for precast concrete. Options 6, & 7 allowed for cast-in-place Class H concrete.	Precast concrete, post-tension members
S <sup>6</sup>	4,000	0.45	2-5	I, II, I/II, IP, IL, IS, IT, V	1-8		Bridge slabs, top slabs of direct traffic culverts, approach slabs
P	See Item 360, "Concrete Pavement."	0.50	2-3	I, II, I/II, IL, IP, IS, IT, V	1-8	When the cementitious material content does not exceed 520 lb./cu. yd., any fly ash listed in the MPL may be used at a cement replacement of 20% to 50%.	Concrete pavement

Class of Concrete	Design Strength, <sup>1</sup> Min $f_c$ (psi)	Max w/cm Ratio	Coarse Aggregate Grades <sup>2,3,4</sup>	Cement Types	Mix Design Options	Exceptions to Mix Design Options	General Usage <sup>5</sup>
CO <sup>6</sup>	4,600	0.40	6		1-8		Bridge deck concrete overlay
LMC <sup>6</sup>	4,000	0.40	6-8				Latex-modified concrete overlay
SS <sup>6</sup>	3,600	0.45	4-6	I, II, I/II, IP, IL, IS, IT, V	1-8	Use a minimum cementitious material content of 658 lb./cu. yd. of concrete. Limit the alkali loading to 4.0 lbs./cu. yd. or less when using option 7.	Slurry displacement shafts, underwater drilled shafts
K <sup>6</sup>	Note <sup>7</sup>	0.40	Note <sup>7</sup>	I, II, I/II, III, IP, IL, IS, IT, V	1-8		Note <sup>7</sup>
HES	Note <sup>7</sup>	0.45	Note <sup>7</sup>	I, IL, II, I/II, III		Mix design options do not apply. 700 lb. of cementitious material per cubic yard limit does not apply.	Concrete pavement, concrete pavement repair
"X" (HPC) <small>6,8,9</small>	Note <sup>10</sup>	0.45	Note <sup>10</sup>	I, II, I/II, III, IP, IL, IS, IT, V	1-4, & 8	Maximum fly ash replacement for Option 3 may be increased to 50%. Up to 20% of a blended cement may be replaced with listed SCMs for Option 4. Do not use Option 8 for precast concrete.	
"X" (SRC) <small>6,8,9</small>	Note <sup>10</sup>	0.45	Note <sup>10</sup>	I/II, II, IP, IL, IS, IT, V	1-4, & 7	When using fly ash, only use fly ashes allowed for SRC as listed in the Fly Ash MPL. Type III-MS may be used where allowed. Type I and Type III cements may be use when fly ashes allowed for SRC as listed in the Fly Ash MPL are used, and with a maximum w/cm of 0.40. Up to 20% of blended cement may be replaced with listed SCMs when Option 4 is used for precast concrete. Use Option 7 for precast concrete where allowed.	

- Design strength must be attained within 56 days.
- Do not use Grade 1 coarse aggregate except in massive foundations with 4 in. minimum clear spacing between reinforcing steel bars, unless otherwise permitted. Do not use Grade 1 aggregate in drilled shafts.
- Use Grade 8 aggregate in extruded curbs unless otherwise approved.
- Other grades of coarse aggregate maybe used in non-structural concrete classes when allowed by the Engineer.
- For information only.
- Structural concrete classes.
- As shown on the plans or specified.
- "X" denotes class of concrete shown on the plans or specified.
- (HPC): High Performance Concrete, (SRC): Sulfate Resistant Concrete.
- Same as class of concrete shown on the plans.

**Article 421.4.2.2., "Aggregates,"** is supplemented by the following.

Use the following equation to determine if the aggregate combination meets the sand equivalency requirement when blending fine aggregate or using an intermediate aggregate:

$$\frac{(SE_1 \times P_1) + (SE_2 \times P_2) + (SE_{ia} \times P_{ia})}{100} \geq 80\%$$

where:

$SE_1$  = sand equivalency (%) of fine aggregate 1

$SE_2$  = sand equivalency (%) of fine aggregate 2

$SE_{ia}$  = sand equivalency (%) of intermediate aggregate passing the 3/8 in. sieve

$P_1$  = percent by weight of fine aggregate 1 of the fine aggregate blend

$P_2$  = percent by weight of fine aggregate 2 of the fine aggregate blend

$P_{ia}$  = percent by weight of intermediate aggregate passing the 3/8 in. sieve

**Article 421.4.2.3., “Chemical Admixtures,”** the second paragraph is voided and replaced with the following.

Use a 30% calcium nitrite solution when a corrosion-inhibiting admixture is required. Dose the admixture at the rate of gallons of admixture per cubic yard of concrete shown on the plans. Use set retarding admixtures, as needed, to control setting time to ensure concrete containing corrosion inhibiting admixtures remain workable for the entire duration of the concrete placement. Perform setting time testing and slump loss testing during trial batch testing.

**Article 421.4.2.5., “Slump,”** the second paragraph is voided and not replaced. Table 9 is voided and replaced with below:

**Table 9**  
**Placement Slump Requirements**

General Usage	Placement Slump Range, <sup>1,2</sup> in.
Walls (over 9 in. thick), caps, columns, piers	3 to 7
Bridge slabs, top slabs of direct traffic culverts, approach slabs, concrete overlays, latex-modified concrete for bridge deck overlays	3 to 6
Inlets, manholes, walls (less than 9 in. thick), bridge railing, culverts, concrete traffic barrier, concrete pavement (formed)	4 to 6
Precast concrete	4 to 9
Underwater concrete placements	6 to 8-1/2
Drilled shafts, slurry displaced and underwater drilled shafts	See Item 416, “Drilled Shaft Foundations.”
Curb, gutter, curb and gutter, concrete retards, sidewalk, driveways, seal concrete, anchors, riprap, small roadside sign foundations, concrete pavement repair, concrete repair	As approved

1. Maximum slump values may be increase above these values shown using chemical admixtures, provided the admixture treated concrete has the same or lower water-to-cementitious ratio and does not exhibit segregation or excessive bleeding. Request approval to increase slump limits in advance for proper evaluation by the Engineer.
2. For fiber reinforced concrete, perform slump before addition of fibers.

**Article 421.4.2.6., “Mix Design Options”**, is voided and replaced with the following.

**Option 1.** Replace cement with at least the minimum dosage listed in the Fly Ash MPL for the fly ash used in the mixture. Do not replace more than 50% of the cement with fly ash.

**Option 2.** Replace 35% to 50% of the cement with slag cement.

**Option 3.** Replace 35% to 50% of the cement with a combination of fly ash, slag cement, MFA, metakaolin, or at least 3% silica fume; however, no more than 35% may be fly ash, and no more than 10% may be silica fume.

**Option 4.** Use Type IP, Type IS, or Type IT cement as allowed in Table 8 for each class of concrete. Up to 10% of a Type IP, Type IS, or Type IT cement may be replaced with fly ash, slag cement, or silica fume. Use no more than 10% silica fume in the final cementitious material mixture if the Type IT cement contains silica fume, and silica fume is used to replace the cement.

**Option 5.** Option 5 is left intentionally blank.

**Option 6.** Use a lithium nitrate admixture at a minimum dosage determined by testing conducted in accordance with Tex-471-A. Before use of the mix, provide an annual certified test report signed and sealed by a licensed professional engineer, from a laboratory on the Department's MPL, certified by the Construction Division as being capable of testing according to Tex-471-A.

**Option 7.** Ensure the total alkali contribution from the cement in the concrete does not exceed 3.5 lb. per cubic yard of concrete when using hydraulic cement not containing SCMs calculated as follows:

$$\text{lb. alkali per cu. yd.} = \frac{(\text{lb. cement per cu. yd.}) \times (\% \text{ Na}_2\text{O equivalent in cement})}{100}$$

In the above calculation, use the maximum cement alkali content reported on the cement mill certificate.

**Option 8.** Use Table 10 when deviating from Options 1–3 or when required by the Fly Ash MPL. Perform required testing annually and submit results to the Engineer. Laboratories performing ASTM C1260, ASTM C1567, and ASTM C1293 testing must be listed on the Department's MPL. Before use of the mix, provide a certified test report signed and sealed by a licensed professional engineer demonstrating the proposed mixture conforms to the requirements of Table 10.

Provide a certified test report signed and sealed by a licensed professional engineer, when HPC is required, and less than 20% of the cement is replaced with SCMs, demonstrating ASTM C1202 test results indicate the permeability of the concrete is less than 1,500 coulombs tested immediately after either of the following curing schedules:

- Moisture cure specimens 56 days at 73°F.
- Moisture cure specimens 7 days at 73°F followed by 21 days at 100°F.

**Table 10**  
**Option 8 Testing and Mix Design Requirements**

Scenario	ASTM C1260 Result		Testing Requirements for Mix Design Materials or Prescriptive Mix Design Options
	Mix Design Fine Aggregate	Mix Design Coarse Aggregate	
<b>A</b>	> 0.10%	> 0.10%	Determine the dosage of SCMs needed to limit the 14-day expansion of each aggregate <sup>1</sup> to 0.10% when tested individually in accordance with ASTM C1567.
<b>B</b>	≤ 0.10%	≤ 0.10%	Use the minimum replacement listed in the Fly Ash MPL, or When Option 8 is listed on the MPL, use a minimum of 40% fly ash with a maximum CaO <sup>2</sup> content of 25%, or Use any ternary combination which replaces 35% to 50% of cement.
	≤ 0.10%	ASTM C1293 1 yr. Expansion ≤ 0.04%	Use a minimum of 20% of any fly ash; or Use any ternary combination which replaces 20% to 50% of cement.
<b>C</b>	≤ 0.10%	> 0.10%	Determine the dosage of SCMs needed to limit the 14-day expansion of coarse and intermediate <sup>1</sup> aggregate to 0.10% when tested individually in accordance with ASTM C1567.
<b>D</b>	> 0.10%	≤ 0.10%	Use the minimum replacement listed in the Fly Ash MPL, or When Option 8 is listed on the MPL, use a minimum of 40% fly ash with a maximum CaO <sup>2</sup> content of 25%, or Use any ternary combination which replaces 35% to 50% of cement.
	> 0.10%	ASTM C1293 1 yr. Expansion ≤ 0.04%	Determine the dosage of SCMs needed to limit the 14-day expansion of each fine aggregate to 0.10% when individually tested in accordance with ASTM C1567.

1. Intermediate size aggregates will fall under the requirements of mix design coarse aggregate.
2. Average the CaO content from the previous ten values as listed on the test certificate.

**Article 421.4.2.7., "Optimized Aggregate Gradation (OAG) Concrete,"** the first sentence of the first paragraph is voided and replaced by the following.

The gradations requirements in Table 4 and Table 6 do not apply when OAG concrete is specified or used by the Contractor unless otherwise shown on the plans.

The fineness modulus for fine aggregate listed in Table 5, does not apply when OAG Concrete is used,

**Article 421.4.6.2., “Delivering Concrete,”** the third paragraph is supplemented by the following.

When truck mixers are equipped with automated water or chemical admixture measurement and slump or slump flow monitoring equipment, the addition of water or chemical admixtures during transit is allowed. Reports generated by this equipment must be submitted to the Engineer daily.

**Article 421.4.6.2., “Delivering Concrete,”** the fifth paragraph is voided and replaced with the following. Begin the discharge of concrete delivered in truck mixers within the times listed in Table 14. Concrete delivered after these times, and concrete that has not begun to discharge within these times will be rejected

**Article 421.4.8.3., “Testing of Fresh Concrete,”** is voided and replaced with the following.

**Testing Concrete.** The Engineer, unless specified in other Items or shown on the plans, will test the fresh and hardened concrete in accordance with the following methods:

- Slump. [Tex-415-A](#);
- Air Content. [Tex-414-A](#) or [Tex-416-A](#);
- Temperature. [Tex-422-A](#);
- Making and Curing Strength Specimens. [Tex-447-A](#);
- Compressive Strength. [Tex-418-A](#);
- Flexural Strength. [Tex-448-A](#); and
- Maturity. [Tex-426-A](#).

Flexural strength and maturity specimens will not be made unless specified in other items or shown on the plans.

Concrete with slump less than minimum required after all addition of water withheld will be rejected, unless otherwise allowed by the Engineer. Concrete with slump exceeding maximum allowed may be used at the contractor’s option. If used, Engineer will make, test, and evaluate strength specimens as specified in Article 421.5., “Acceptance of Concrete.” Acceptance of concrete not meeting air content or temperature requirements will be determined by Engineer. Fresh concrete exhibiting segregation and excessive bleeding will be rejected.

**Article 421.4.8.3.1. “Job-Control Testing,”** is voided and not replaced.



---

## Special Provision to Item 423

### Retaining Walls

---



Item 423, "Retaining Walls" of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Article 2.4.2., Select.** The following sentence will be added to the fifth paragraph:

When Type CS select fill is used for cement stabilized backfill, the Plasticity Index (PI) as determined by Test Method [Tex-106-E](#) shall not exceed 6.

---

# Special Provision to Item 425

## Precast Prestressed Concrete Structural Members

---



Item 425, "Precast Prestressed Concrete Structural Members" of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Section 2.3., "Prestressing Steel."** The first bullet is voided and replaced with the following.

- Seven-wire steel strand meeting [DMS-4500](#), "Steel Strand, Uncoated Seven-Wire Low Relaxation for Prestressed Concrete."

**Section 2.3., "Prestressing Steel."** The second paragraph is voided and replaced with the following.

Use 7-wire steel strand produced by a prequalified manufacturer on the list in the Department MPL maintained by the Materials and Tests Division. The Department may take samples in accordance with [Tex-710-I](#) to verify compliance with specification requirements.

# Special Provision to Item 426

## Post-Tensioning



Item 426, "Post-Tensioning" of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Section 2.1., "Prestressing Steel."** The first bullet is voided and replaced with the following.

- Seven-wire steel strand meeting [DMS-4500](#), "Steel Strand, Uncoated Seven-Wire Low Relaxation for Prestressed Concrete," or

**Section 2.2., "Post-Tensioning System."** The second bulleted item is voided and replaced with the following:

- Provide pre-packaged grouts in accordance with [DMS-4670](#), "Grouts for Post-Tensioning." Do not use grouts that exceed the manufacturers' recommended shelf life or 6 mo. after date of manufacture, whichever is less.

**Section 4.2., "Required Submittals."** The section is voided and replaced with the following.

4.2. **Required Submittals.** Submit information required in this Section for post-tensioned elements, in addition to forming and falsework plans required by Item 420, "Concrete Substructures," and Item 424, "Precast Concrete Structural Members (Fabrication)." Include all necessary construction information in these submittals for cast-in-place and precast construction including, but not limited to the information required in this Section.

4.2.1. **Design Calculations.** Provide design procedures, coefficients, allowable stresses, tendon spacing, and clearances in accordance with the AASHTO LRFD *Bridge Design Specifications* and PTI/ASBI M50 unless otherwise shown on the plans. Submit enough calculations to support the proposed system and method of post-tensioning including friction loss diagrams. When the required jacking force for a particular type of tendon, duct, and configuration is furnished on the plans, design calculations are not required except to adjust for conditions different from those shown on the plans.

4.2.2. **Post-Tensioning Details.** Provide drawings with details that meet the requirements of PTI/ASBI M50 and this Specification.

4.2.3. **Grouting Plan.** Submit for approval written grouting procedures at least four weeks before the start of the element's construction. Include items required by PTI M55.

Include the names of people responsible for PT installation and grouting operations, with the foreman of each grouting crew certified as a PTI Level 2 Bonded PT Field Specialist and ASBI Certified Grouting Technician.

4.2.4. **Stressing Safety Plan.** Provide a plan to protect the public, workers, and Department personnel on and around the vicinity where post-tensioning operations are occurring.

Submit for approval, a detailed safety plan which identifies potential risk associated with post-tensioning operations, including but not limited to:

- tendon alignment,
- temporary shoring,
- ram operations, and
- stand anchorage.

**Section 4.3., “Design Calculations.”** The section is voided and replaced with the following.

- 4.3. **Packaging, Storing, and Handling of Post-Tensioning Components.** Package, store, and handle post-tensioning steel, grout, duct, and other accessories in accordance with PTI/ASBI M50 and PTI M55 unless otherwise indicated. Acceptance and rejection criteria for strand will follow PTI/ASBI M50 and PTI M55.

The following exceptions apply:

- grout storage onsite will be limited to 30 days unless approval by the Engineer is given in advance of material delivery,
- install grout caps and ensure vents are closed at all times so that water and other contaminants cannot enter the duct before strand installation, and
- do not flush ducts at any time.

**Section 4.4., “Packaging, Storing, and Handling of Post-Tensioning Components.”** The section is voided and replaced with the following.

- 4.4. **Duct and Prestressing Steel Installation for Post-Tensioning.** Follow PTI/ASBI M50 for duct and prestressing steel installation procedures and requirements unless otherwise specified. Verify that concrete strength requirements on the plans are met for stressing and staged loading of post-tensioned structural elements.

Stress the tendons within seven days of installing the strand in the ducts unless otherwise approved in advance. Follow the tensioning procedure noted in the approved post-tensioning details.

**Section 4.5., “Duct and Prestressing Steel Installation for Post-Tensioning.”** The section is voided and replaced with the following.

- 4.5. **Grouting.** Grout in accordance with PTI M55.

Grout within 14 days of tendon stressing unless otherwise specified or approved. Obtain approval to extend the grouting time before stressing tendons.

Do not allow the grout temperature to exceed 85°F during mixing and pumping. Do not grout when the ambient temperature is below 35°F. Field-test the grout in accordance with Table 1 during grout installation. Perform field-testing by trained personnel at the Contractor’s expense while witnessed by the Engineer. Pump at the lowest pressure possible that will maintain a continuous flow of grout.

**Table1**  
**Requirements for Field-Testing of Grout**

Test	Frequency	Requirement
Schupak Pressure Bleed Test (ASTM C1741)	1 per day	Per <a href="#">DMS-4670</a>
Fluidity test ( <a href="#">Tex-437-A</a> , Method 2)	2 every 2 hr. 2 min. per day	per <a href="#">DMS-4670</a>
Compressive Strength test (3" × 6" cylinders)	1 per day	per <a href="#">DMS-4670</a>
Mud Balance test ( <a href="#">Tex-130-E</a> , Part II) <sup>1,2</sup>	2 per day	per <a href="#">PTI M55</a>

1. Take one sample from the mixer and one sample from the farthest duct outlet.
2. Verify wet density is within the range established by the department.

**Section 4.6., “Grouting.”** The section is voided and not replaced.

**Article 5., “MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT.”** The section is voided and replaced with the following.

5. **MEASUREMENT**

This Item will be measured by the each PT element or member. An element or member is defined by one of the following individual components.

- PT Cap

- PT Column
- PT Bent
- Other elements shown in the plans.

The PT may extend into other elements which is subsidiary to the main element being post-tensioned.

6.

#### **PAYMENT**

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "PT" for the member type shown on the plans. This price is full compensation for submittals, mock-ups, prestressing steel, post-tensioning, ducts, grout fittings, grout, end anchorages, bearing plates, equipment, labor, materials, tools, and incidentals. Materials furnished for testing will not be paid for directly.

Post-tensioning of precast members, tensioned at a fabrication plant, will not be paid for directly but will be subsidiary to pertinent Items.

---

## Special Provision to Item 427

### Surface Finishes for Concrete

---



Item 427, "Surface Finishes for Concrete" of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Article 427.2.1 "Coatings,"** is supplemented with the following:

**Epoxy Waterproofing.** Provide Type X Epoxy per [DMS-6100](#) "Epoxies and Adhesives." Match color of coating with Federal Standard 595C color 35630, concrete gray, unless otherwise shown on the plans.

**Article 427.4.2.2 "Application,"** is supplemented with the following:

**Epoxy Waterproofing.** Mix epoxy per manufacturer's instructions. Apply the coating on a dry surface at a maximum application rate of 100 sq. ft per gallon. Apply a thin uniform film of mixed epoxy to the substrate by the use of a short nap roller or brush. The epoxy may be sprayed following the thinning requirements of the manufacturer. No more than 15% reduction is permitted.

Match the color of the applied coating with the color standard shown on the plans. Apply when ambient temperature is between 50°F and 100°F.

**Article 427.6 "Payment,"** the second paragraph is voided and replaced in its entirety with:

When a surface finish for concrete is specified as a pay item, the work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Adhesive Grout Finish," "Concrete Paint Finish," "Opaque Sealer Finish," "Silicone Resin Paint Finish," "Epoxy Waterproof Finish," or "Blast Finish." This price is full compensation for materials; cleaning and preparing surfaces; application of materials; and equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.

---

# Special Provision to Item 434

## Bridge Bearings

---



Item 434, "Bridge Bearings" of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Section 434.2.1., "Plain and Laminated Elastomeric Bearings,"** is voided and replaced with the following:

Manufacturers of plain and laminated elastomeric bearing pads must be approved in accordance with DMS-7365, "Qualification Procedure for Elastomeric Bridge Bearing Pad Manufacturers." The Materials and Tests Division (MTD) maintains a list of approved elastomeric bridge bearing pad manufacturers.

Manufacturers that produce laminated elastomeric bearings with a top steel plate or special components (steel guide bars and bottom plate) must comply with AASHTO's NTPEP Committee Work Plan for Evaluation of Plain and Laminated Elastomeric Bridge Bearing Manufacturers. DMS-7365 does not apply to manufacturers of bridge bearings where the laminated elastomeric bearing pad is a component of the completed bearing assembly.

**Section 434.2.1.1., "Elastomer,"** is voided and replaced with the following:

Provide elastomer for bearings formulated from previously unvulcanized 100% virgin polychloroprene rubber polymers meeting the physical properties, heat resistance, and compression set requirements of AASHTO M 251, Table X1.1, unless otherwise shown on the plans. Do not provide bearings containing previously vulcanized synthetic rubber or other synthetic rubber-like polymers. Perform material tests on the finished product in accordance with the applicable test methods. Do not use standard laboratory test slabs for this purpose. Prepare test specimens from the finished product in accordance with ASTM D3183.

Obtain approval for each elastomer formulation before use on Department projects. Submit certified test results to MTD to prequalify and obtain approval of a particular formulation. Show actual test values obtained and the required values for the physical properties, heat resistance, and compression set of the elastomer when tested for compliance with the minimum requirements of AASHTO M 251, Table X1.1.

Forward samples (freight prepaid) to MTD, or their contracted testing laboratory when directed.

Submit only elastomer of the type or types to be supplied. Submit prequalification samples consisting of 2 finished bearing pads typical of the formulation and workmanship for Department projects. Submit 2 samples of each type when laminated and plain bearing pads are required. Laminated sample bearing pads may represent both plain bearing pads and laminated bearing pads for an elastomer formulation.

Plain sample bearing pads must measure 9 in. × 19 in. × 1 in. Laminated sample bearing pads must measure 9 in. × 14 in. × 1-1/2 in. with the following number of steel laminates:

- 50 durometer—3 steel laminates,
- 60 durometer—2 steel laminates, and
- 70 durometer—2 steel laminates.

Bond strength testing of laminated prequalification samples will be performed by the Department in accordance with [Tex-601-J](#), Part I—"Bond Strength Test Method 1". The tested sample must achieve a minimum bond strength of 40 lbf/in. of width.

Presence of chlorinated compounds (neoprene) in the elastomer will be verified by the Department in accordance with [Tex-601-J](#), Part III—Chlorinated Compound Test Method 3.

Costs associated with testing elastomer formulations failing to conform to the requirements of this Item are borne by the bearing manufacturer. This cost will be assessed at the rate established by MTD at the time of testing.

Certify that the submitted samples are of the same basic elastomer formulation and of equivalent cure as the finished products to be furnished on Department projects.

Complete prequalification testing will be performed for each formulation at least once every 2 yr. and when necessary.

**Section 434.2.1.2., "Steel Laminates,"** is voided and replaced with the following:

Provide steel laminates, for laminated bearing pads, of commercial grade steel strip or sheet with a thickness of 0.105 ±0.015 in.

**Section 434.2.2.1.2., "Laminated Elastomeric Bearing Pad and Steel Plate,"** the first paragraph is amended to include the following sentence:

Bearing manufacturers that produce the laminated elastomeric bearing pad component of a sliding elastomeric bearing must comply with AASHTO's NTPEP Committee Work Plan for Evaluation of Plain and Laminated Elastomeric Bridge Bearing Manufacturers.

**Section 434.3.1., "Plain and Laminated Elastomeric Bearings,"** is voided and replaced with the following:

Electronically submit shop drawings for the complete assembly before fabrication of laminated elastomeric bearings with or without steel top plates or special components in accordance with the plans and Item 441, "Steel Structures." Provide a bearing layout with the shop drawings.

Mold together components of a laminated bearing pad to form an integral unit free of voids or separations in the elastomer or between the elastomer and the steel laminates or plates, unless otherwise shown on the plans. Provide well-vulcanized elastomer between the laminates or plates and on the outer surfaces of the bearing pad that is uniform and integral and resists separation by mechanical means into separate, definite, well-defined elastomeric layers. Evidence of this layered construction, either at the outer surfaces or within the bearing pad, will be cause for rejection. Repair of damaged elastomer on sides of laminated bearing pads is not allowed for product acceptance. Repair of damaged elastomer on top or bottom surfaces of laminated bearing pads is allowed when approved.

Cover edges of steel laminates with 1/8 in. to 1/4 in. of elastomer except exposure of the laminates will be permitted at approved laminate restraining devices and around holes entirely enclosed in the finished structure. Position laminates within 1/8 in. of plan location.

Plain bearing pads may be molded individually, cut from previously molded strips or slabs molded to the full thickness of the finished bearing pads, or extruded and cut to length. The finish of cut surfaces must be ANSI 250, or smoother. The finished bearing pads must have no voids or separations detectable either at the bearing surfaces or within the bearing pad. Plain elastomeric bearing pads must be well vulcanized, uniform, and integral units of such construction that the bearing pad is incapable of being separated by any mechanical means into separate, definite, well-defined elastomeric layers. Evidence of layered construction either at the outer surfaces or within the bearing pad will be cause for rejection.

The permissible variation from the dimensions and configuration shown on the plans for both plain and laminated bearing pads will be as listed in AASHTO M 251, Table 2. Flash tolerance, finish, and appearance must meet the requirements of the latest edition of the Rubber Handbook published by the US Tire Manufacturer's Association, RMA F3 and T.063 for molded bearings, and RMA F2 for extruded bearings.

Perform required welding in accordance with Item 441, "Steel Structures." Manufacture guide bars, when required, so adjacent top and bottom bar surfaces are parallel to within 1/16 in. in the assembled position. The tolerance for diameter of anchor bolt holes is +1/8 in., -0. The maximum deviation for flatness of steel plates is 1/16 in. in any 24 in. or as shown on the plans.

**Section 434.3.1.1., "Marking,"** the first paragraph is voided and replaced with the following:



Mark the bearing type on the surface of each bearing as shown on the plans. The marking must remain legible until placement in the structure. Permanently mark, in addition, laminated bearings with:

- manufacturer's name or trademark,
- lot number, and
- date of manufacture (month-year).

**Section 434.3.1.2., "Testing and Acceptance,"** is voided and replaced with the following:

Perform testing, inspection, and acceptance of plain and laminated elastomeric bearing pads in accordance with DMS-7365, "Qualification Procedure for Elastomeric Bridge Bearing Pad Manufacturers."

For laminated elastomeric bearings with a steel top plate or special components (steel guide bars and bottom plate), apply a compression load of 2,250 psi or a stress approved by the Engineer to each bearing. Provide calibrated equipment per ASTM E4 for this compression testing. Each bearing will be acceptable if there is no visible evidence of bond failure or other damage and if the finished bearing meets other pertinent portions of this Item. Samples may be taken if the quality of production becomes questionable.

**Section 434.3.2.1., "Lower Component,"** is voided and replaced with the following:

Manufacture one additional bearing lower component per project for testing purposes. Notify MTD, which will sample a bearing lower component at random from the lot, after bearings have been manufactured for a project. Forward selected samples (freight prepaid) to MTD, or to their contracted testing laboratory when directed. Lower component samples will be tested to the following:

- [Tex-601-J](#), Part II—"Adhesion Test Method 2." Adhesion between the PTFE material and steel plate must meet a minimum 20 lb. per inch of width;
- [Tex-601-J](#), Part III—"Chlorinated Compound Test Method 3." Laminated bearing pad elastomer must contain chlorinated compounds (neoprene); and
- PTFE physical properties in accordance with Table 1, with the exception of Melting Point Testing (ASTM D4894).

Costs associated with testing sliding elastomeric bearing lower component project samples failing to conform to these requirements are borne by the bearings manufacturer. This cost will be assessed at the rate established by Construction Division at the time of testing.

**Section 434.3.3.2., "Testing and Acceptance."** The last paragraph is voided.

---

## Special Provision to Item 438

### Cleaning and Sealing Joints

---



Item 438, "Cleaning and Sealing Joints," of the Standard Specifications, is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**The first paragraph in Article 438.2., "Materials,"** the first paragraph is voided and replaced with the following:

Use sealants of the class specified on the plans that meet the requirements of DMS-6310, "Joint Sealants and Fillers" except as modified herein. Use primers recommended by the manufacturer of the sealant if required. When a foam-type joint seal is specified, provide one of the listed systems shown on the plans with material meeting the following:

- UV stable polymer impregnated foam body;
- rated for +/-50% contraction/expansion of joint opening;
- adhered to expansion joint surfaces with epoxy adhesive;
- factory attached traffic grade silicone with minimum thickness of 0.07 in. on upper surface;
- compatible field installed silicone caulk to attached silicone top to joint edges and for splicing;
- pre-compressed system for field installation; and
- provide a range of widths of joint seals to ensure the joint seal is in compression after installation is complete.

**Article 438.4., "Construction,"** is amended by the following:

When foam-type joint seal is shown on the plans, provide a technician associated with the joint seal manufacturer for training and installation of the initial joint. Provide written instructions from the manufacturer for joint seal installation. Measure all joint openings and size the width of joint seal in accordance with manufacturer's specifications.

**Article 438.6., "Payment,"** the second paragraph is voided and replaced by the following:

When shown as a pay item, the work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Cleaning and Sealing Existing Joints," "Cleaning and Sealing Joints" of the class, if specified, "Cleaning and Sealing Joints (Foam)," and "Cleaning Existing Joints," and "Resizing and Sealing Joints." This price is full compensation for furnishing all materials; sawing, routing, and cleaning and installing; disposing of debris; and equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.

---

# Special Provision to Item 440

## Reinforcement for Concrete

---



Item 440, "Standard Specification Title" of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Article 440.2., "Materials"** is supplemented with the following:

- 2.14. Provide zinc-coated, hot-dip galvanized Class I or II steel reinforcement conforming to ASTM A767, Grades 60 or 75 when shown on the plans and as allowed.
- 2.15. Provide continuously hot-dip galvanized reinforcement (CGR) conforming to ASTM A1094 steel reinforcement, Grades 60 or 75 when shown on the plans and as allowed.

**Article 440.2.5., "Weldable Reinforcing Steel"** is supplemented with the following:

All welding operations must be performed prior to hot-dip galvanizing.

**Article 440.2.8., "Mechanical Couplers"** is supplemented with the following:

Provide hot-dipped or mechanically galvanized couplers when splicing galvanized reinforcing or continuously galvanized reinforcing.

**Article 440.2.11., "Low-Carbon, Chromium Reinforcing Steel."** The first sentence is voided and replaced by the following:

Provide deformed steel bars conforming to ASTM A1035, Grade 100, Type CS when low-carbon, chromium reinforcing steel is required on the plans. Type CM will only be permitted if specified on the plans.

**Article 440.3.1., "Bending"** is supplemented with the following:

Do not bend hot-dip galvanized reinforcement. Only minor positioning adjustments are permitted.

Bending of continuously galvanized reinforcement is permitted after galvanizing.

**Article 440.3.5, "Placing"** the following will be added to paragraph four.

Use Class 1 or 1A supports with continuously galvanized reinforcing. Provide epoxy or plastic-coated tie wires and clips for use with epoxy coated reinforcing steel.

**Article 440.3.6.3., "Repairing Coating"** is supplemented with the following:

Repair damaged galvanized surfaces in accordance with Article 445.3.5.2. "Repair Processes."

# Special Provision to Item 441

## Steel Structures



Item 441, "Steel Structures" of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Section 441.2.2., "Approved Electrodes and Flux-Electrode Combinations,"** is voided and replaced with the following:

Use only electrodes and flux-electrode combinations conforming to AWS A5 specifications, and pertinent classifications for the applicable welding processes. When requested, submit a current Certificate of Conformance (COC) containing all test results as required by the applicable AWS A5 specification and welding code. Provide proof of Buy America compliance for welding consumables when requested. For bridge main member fabrication, submit the COC annually.

**Section 441.2.3., "High-Strength Bolts,"** is revised and replaced by the following:

Use fasteners that meet Item 447, "Structural Bolting." Use galvanized fasteners on field connections of bridge members when ASTM F3125-Grade A325 bolts are specified, and steel is painted.

**Section 441.3.1.5.1., "Plants,"** The second and third paragraphs are voided and replaced with the following:

Fabrication plants that produce the following non-bridge steel members must be approved in accordance with DMS-7380, "Steel Non-Bridge Member Fabrication Plant Qualification."

- Item 610, "Roadway Illumination Poles"
- Item 613, "High Mast Illumination Poles"
- Item 614, "High Mast Rings and Support Assemblies"
- Item 650, "Overhead Sign Support Structures"
- Item 654, "Sign Walkways"
- Item 686, "Traffic Signal Poles"
- Special Specification 6064, "Intelligent Transportation System (ITS) Poles."

The Materials and Tests Division (MTD) maintains a list of approved non-bridge fabrication plants on the Department MPL that produce these members.

**Section 441.3.1.6.1., "Erection Drawings,"** the third paragraph is voided and replaced with the following:

Perform erection engineering evaluation of the structural adequacy and stability of constructing the bridge system for each step of the steel erection.

**Section 441.3.1.5.3., "Nondestructive Testing (NDT),"** is voided and replaced with the following:

Personnel performing NDT must be qualified in accordance with the applicable AWS code and the employer's Written Practice. Level III personnel who qualifies Level I and Level II technicians must be certified by ASNT for which the NDT Level III is qualified. In addition, NDT technicians must pass hands-on tests that MTD administers. This will remain current provided they continue to perform testing on Department materials as evidenced by test reports requiring their signature. A technician who fails any of the hands-on tests must wait 3 mo. or as approved otherwise before retesting. Qualification to perform NDT will be revoked when the technician's employment is terminated or when the technician goes 6 mo. without performing a test on a Department project. The technician must pass a new hands-on test to be re-certified. Testing of similar weld joints for non-Department projects may be considered by the Engineer instead of re-testing provided enough documentation is submitted with the signature of the project's Engineer. These requirements also apply to testing agencies, and individual third-party contractors.

**Section 441.3.1.5.4., “Welding Procedure Specification Qualification Testing,”** is voided and replaced by the following:

For Fabricators qualified in accordance with DMS-7370, DMS-7380, or DMS-7395, laboratories performing procedure qualification testing for welding procedure specifications (WPSs) must be accredited by a nationally recognized agency that performs testing in accordance with ISO/International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) 17025 in the mechanical field of testing.

**Section 441.3.1.9., “Material Identification,”** is amended to include the following paragraph:

Low-stress stencil marks must have a radius instead of a sharp point. Acceptable stencils include dot, vibration, and rounded-V stencils. Label these stencils so that they are easily distinguishable from other stencils that are not low-stress.

**Section 441.3.2.4.1., “Flange Tilt,”** the last sentence is voided and replaced with the following:

Minor jacking that does not deform the material will be permitted.

**Section 441.3.2.5.3., “Magnetic Particle Testing,”** is voided and replaced with the following:

Use alternating current (AC) when using the yoke method unless otherwise approved. Welds may be further evaluated with half-wave rectified DC for subsurface indications. Centerline cracking may be detected with aluminum prod method when approved.

**Section 441.3.5.8., “Hammering,”** is added to state the following:

Do not perform hammering on any portion of the member that causes the material to permanently deform. Avoid damage to the material by measures such as use of brass or aluminum hammers or by padding the area to be hammered.

**Section 441.3.8.1., “Shop Painting,”** is amended to include with the following paragraph:

Measure the anchor profile after blast cleaning at random locations along the thermal cut surfaces. If specified anchor profile is not achieved over the entire flame cut surface, grind the edges and re-blast to achieve the required anchor pattern.

**Section 441.3.9., “Handling and Storage of Materials,”** The second sentence of the second paragraph is replaced by the following:

Keep materials clean and avoid damaging of the applied coating.

---

## Special Provision to Item 442

### Metal for Structures

---



Item 442, "Metal for Structures" of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clause cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Section 442.2.1.3.3., "Fasteners."** The first sentence of the first paragraph is replaced by the following:

**Fasteners.** Provide high-strength bolts that meet ASTM F3125-Grade A325 unless otherwise shown on the plans.

**Section 442.2.1.3.3., "Fasteners."** The third paragraph is deleted and not replaced.

---

# Special Provision to Item 446

## Field Cleaning and Painting Steel

---



For this project, Item 446, "Field Cleaning and Painting Steel," of the Standard Specifications, is hereby amended with respect to the clauses cited below, and no other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed hereby.

**Section 446.4.1., "Qualification,"** the first and second paragraphs are voided and replaced by the following:

Submit to the Engineer documentation verifying SSPC QP 1 or NACE NIICAP AS-1 certification for work requiring the removal or application of coatings. Additionally, submit to the Engineer documentation verifying SSPC QP 2 Cat A or NACE NIICAP AS-2 certification when work requires removal of coatings containing hazardous materials. Maintain certifications throughout the project. No work may be performed without current and active certifications unless otherwise shown on the plans. The Engineer may waive certification requirements for minor, touch-up repair work and coating steel members repaired in accordance with Item 784, "Steel Member Repair."

The Engineer may waive certification requirements, when stated on the plans, for the purpose of qualification in either contractor certification program if the project has been accepted as a qualification project as part of the process for obtaining SSPC QP1 Cat A or NACE NIICAP AS-1 certification. Submit certification applications and proof of acceptance before beginning work or provide SSPC QP 7 certification when required on the plans.

**Section 446.4.7.3.2., "Classes of Cleaning,"** is amended with the following:

Prepare all surfaces of painted steel members subsequently exposed from structural operations, such as deck removal or steel repair, in accordance with this Item. Prevent loose or damaged paint from entering the environment.

# Special Provision to Item 447

## Structural Bolting



Item 447, "Structural Bolting" of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clause cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Article 447.2.2., "Bolt Assemblies."** The first paragraph is replaced by the following:

**Bolt Assemblies.** Provide ASTM F3125 bolts and nuts and washers meeting the type, grade, and finish requirements in Table 1, unless otherwise shown in the plans.

**Article 447.2.2., "Bolt Assemblies."** The second paragraph is replaced by the following:

Use Grade A325 or Grade A490 Type 3 plain (uncoated) bolts for weathering steel as indicated and Grade A325 Type 1 galvanized bolts for coated steel, unless otherwise shown on the plans.

**Article 447.2.2., "Bolt Assemblies."** Table 1 is replaced by the following:

**Table 1**  
**ASTM Type, Finish, and Grade for Structural Bolts, Nuts, and Washers**

	Bolt <sup>1</sup> Grade	Bolt Type	Bolt Finish	ASTM A563 Nut Grade and Finish	ASTM F436 Washer Type and Finish
Heavy-Hex Bolts <sup>1</sup>	A325	1	Galvanized	DH, <sup>2</sup> galvanized and lubricated	1; galvanized
	A325	3	Plain	C3 and DH3; plain	3; plain
	A490	3	Plain	DH3; plain	3; plain
Tension-Control Bolts <sup>1</sup>	F1852	1	Galvanized	DH, <sup>2</sup> galvanized and lubricated	1; galvanized
	F1852	3	Plain	C3 and DH3; plain	3; plain
	F2280	3	Plain	DH3; plain	3; plain

1. ASTM F3125 High Strength Structural Bolts
2. ASTM A194 Heavy Hex Grade 2H nuts may be substituted.

**Article 447.2.6., "Fitup Bolts and Erection Pins."** The first paragraph is replaced by the following:

**Fitup Bolts and Erection Pins.** Provide heavy-hex fitup bolts of the same diameter as the connection bolts. Do not use washer-type indicating devices for fitups. Do not reuse galvanized bolts or Grade A490 bolts that have been used as fitup bolts. Provide a sufficient number of erection or drift pins, 1/32 in. larger than the bolt diameter.

**Article 447.4.3., "General."** The second sentence of the third paragraph is replaced by the following:

Install hardened washers under both the nut and bolt head of Grade A490 bolts when the outer plies being fastened have a yield strength less than 40 ksi.



**Article 447.4.3., “General.”** Table 2 is replaced by the following:

**Table 2  
Bolt Tension**

Nominal Bolt Size, in.	Minimum Tension (kips)	
	Grade A325 Bolts	Grade A490 Bolts
½	12	15
5/8	19	24
¾	28	35
7/8	39	49
1	51	64
1-1/8	56	80
1-1/4	71	102
1-3/8	85	121
1-1/2	103	148

**Article 447.4.5.2., “Install Bolts.”** The second paragraph is replaced by the following:

Fully tighten a minimum number of bolts as directed until the plies are in full contact if snugging does not bring the plies of the joint into full contact. Mark these bolts as fitup bolts. Use a non-galvanized Grade A325 bolt of the same diameter as a fitup bolt in connections requiring the use of galvanized Grade A325 bolts. Re-snug all remaining bolts.

**Article 447.4.5.3., “Tension Bolts.”** The first paragraph is replaced by the following:

**Tension Bolts.** Loosen all fitup bolts after tensioning all the other bolts in the connection. Ungalvanized Grade A325 bolts used as fitup bolts may be reused in a connection using this type of bolt. Replace all galvanized bolts and Grade A490 bolts used as fitup bolts. Tension these remaining untensioned bolts in accordance with this paragraph. Ensure the element not turned by the wrench (bolt head or nut) does not rotate.

**Article 447.4.5.4., “Bolt Reuse.”** The first paragraph is replaced by the following:

**Bolt Reuse.** Do not reuse Grade A490 or galvanized Grade A325 bolts. Ungalvanized Grade A325 bolts may be reused one time if the threads have not been damaged. Re-tensioning previously tensioned bolts loosened by the tensioning of adjacent bolts is not considered to be reuse.

---

## Special Provision to Item 448

### Structural Field Welding

---



Item 448, "Structural Field Welding" of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Article 448.2., "Materials,"** the third paragraph is voided and replaced with the following:

Use only electrodes and flux-electrode combinations conforming to AWS A5 specifications and pertinent classifications for the applicable welding processes. When requested, submit a current Certificate of Conformance (COC) containing acceptable wording indicating Buy America compliance and all tests required by the applicable AWS specifications and welding codes. Tests must be conducted on electrodes of the same class, size, and brand; and manufactured by the same process and with the same materials as the electrodes to be furnished.

# Special Provision to Item 449

## Anchor Bolts



Item 449, "Anchor Bolts" of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clause cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Section 449.2.1., "Bolts and Nuts."** Table 1 is replaced by the following:

Table 1  
Bolt and Nut Standards

Specified Anchor Bolt Category	Bolt Standards	Nut Standards
Mild steel	ASTM A307 Gr. A, F1554 Gr. 36, or A36	ASTM A563
Medium-strength, mild steel	ASTM F1554 Gr. 55 with supplementary requirement S1	ASTM A194 Gr. 2 or A563 Gr. D or better
High-strength steel	ASTM F3125-Grade A325 or ASTM A449 <sup>1</sup>	ASTM A194 or A563, heavy hex
Alloy steel	ASTM A193 Gr. B7 or F1554 Gr. 105	ASTM A194 Gr. 2H or A563 Gr. DH, heavy hex

1. If headed bolts are specified, ASTM A449 bolts must be heavy hex head.

**Section 449.3.3.1,"Anchor Bolt Thread Lubricant Coating,"** The first sentence of the first paragraph is voided and replaced by the following.

Coat anchor bolt threads before installing nuts with an electrically conducting lubricant compound described in Section 449.3.3.2.1., "Definitions," for traffic signal poles, roadway illumination poles, high mast illumination poles, intelligent transportation system poles, overhead sign support structures, and steel electrical service supports.

**Section 449.3.3.2,"Anchor Bolt Tightening Procedure,"** The first sentence of the first paragraph is voided and replaced by the following.

Tighten anchor bolts for traffic signal poles, shoe base and concrete traffic barrier base roadway illumination poles, high mast illumination poles, intelligent transportation system poles, and overhead sign support structures in accordance with this Section.

---

## Special Provision to Item 450 Railing

---



Item 450, "Railing" of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Section 450.3.1.2, "Fabrication,"** is supplemented with the following.

Fabrication plants that produce metal railing (steel and aluminum) must be approved in accordance with DMS-7395, "Metal Railing Fabrication Plant Qualification." This required approval does not include fabricators of chain link fence. The Materials and Tests Division maintains a MPL of approved fabrication plants of metal railing.

Permanently mark each metal railing post base plate, at a visible location when erected, with the fabrication plant's insignia or trademark. For fabricated rail panels, provide this permanent mark on one post base plate, per panel.

# Special Provision to Item 462

## Concrete Box Culverts and Drains



Item 462, "Concrete Box Culverts and Drains," of the Standard Specifications, is hereby amended with respect to the clauses cited below, and no other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed hereby.

**Section 2.1., "General."** The last paragraph is voided and replaced with the following:

Furnish material for precast formed and machine-made box culverts in accordance with DMS-7305, "Fabrication and Qualification Procedure for Multi-Project Fabrication Plants of Precast Concrete Drainage Structures."

**Sections 2.2.2., "Formed Precast," and 2.2.3., "Machine-Made Precast,"** are voided and replaced by the following.

2.2.2 **Precast.** Precast formed and machine –made box culvert fabrication plants must be approved in accordance with DMS-7305, "Fabrication and Qualification Procedure for Multi-Project Fabrication Plants of Precast Concrete Drainage Structures." The Construction Division maintains a list of approved precast box culvert fabrication plants on the Department's MPL. Fabricate precast boxes in accordance with DMS-7305, "Fabrication and Qualification Procedure for Multi-Project Fabrication Plants of Precast Concrete Drainage Structures."

**Sections 2.3.2., "Formed Precast," and 2.3.3., "Machine-Made Precast,"** are voided and replaced by the following.

2.3.2 **Precast.** Make, cure, and test compressive test specimens for precast formed and machine –made box culverts in accordance with DMS-7305, "Fabrication and Qualification Procedure for Multi-Project Fabrication Plants of Precast Concrete Drainage Structures."

**Section 2.5., "Marking,"** the first paragraph is voided and replaced with the following.

**Marking.** Clearly mark each precast unit with the following:

- Name or trademark of fabricator and plant location;
- ASTM designation and product designation (when applicable);
- Date of manufacture,
- Box size,
- Minimum and maximum fill heights,
- Designation "TX" for precast units fabricated per DMS-7305,
- Fabricator's designated approval stamp for each approved unit,
- Designation "SR" for boxes meeting sulfate-resistant concrete plan requirements (when applicable), and
- Precast drainage structures used for jacking and boring (when applicable).

**Section 2.6., "Tolerances."** The section is voided and replaced with the following.

Ensure precast sections meet the permissible variations listed in ASTM C1577.

Ensure that the sides of a section at each end do not vary from being perpendicular to the top and bottom by more than 1/2 in. when measured diagonally between opposite interior corners. Deviations from this tolerance will be acceptable if the sections can be fitted at the plant and the joint opening at any point does not exceed 1 in. Use match-marks for proper installation on sections that have been accepted in this manner.

Ensure wall and slab thicknesses are not less than shown on the plans except for occasional deficiencies not greater than 3/16 in. or 5%, whichever is greater. If proper jointing is not affected, thicknesses in excess of plan requirements are acceptable.

**Section 2.7., “Defects and Repair.”** The section is voided and replaced with the following:

Fine cracks on the surface of members that do not extend to the plane of the nearest reinforcement are acceptable unless the cracks are numerous and extensive. Repair cracks that extend into the plane of the reinforcing steel in accordance with the Department’s Concrete Repair Manual. The Engineer may accept boxes with repairs that are sound, properly finished, and cured in conformance with pertinent specifications. Discontinue further production of precast sections until corrections are made and proper curing is provided when fine cracks on the surface indicate poor curing practices.

Repair precast boxes in accordance with DMS-7305, “Fabrication and Qualification Procedure for Multi-Project Fabrication Plants of Precast Concrete Drainage Structures.”

**Section 2.8., “Storage and Shipment.”** This section is voided and replaced with the following:

- 2.8      **Storage and Shipment.** Store precast sections on a level surface. Do not place any load on the sections until design strength is reached and curing is complete. Store and ship precast boxes in accordance with DMS-7305, “Fabrication and Qualification Production for Multi-Project Fabrication Plants of Precast Concrete Drainage Structures.

---

## Special Provision to Item 464

### Reinforced Concrete Pipe

---



Item 464, "Reinforced Concrete Pipe," of the Standard Specifications, is hereby amended with respect to the clauses cited below, and no other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed hereby.

**Section 2.1., "Fabrication."** The section is voided and replaced with the following.

Fabrication plants must be approved by the Materials and Tests Division in accordance with DMS-7305, "Fabrication and Qualification Procedure for Multi-Project Fabrication Plants of Precast Concrete Drainage Structures," before furnishing precast reinforced concrete pipe for Departmental projects. The Department's MPL has a list of approved reinforced concrete pipe plants.

Furnish material and fabricate reinforced concrete pipe in accordance with DMS-7305, "Fabrication and Qualification Procedure for Multi-Project Fabrication Plants of Precast Concrete Drainage Structures."

**Section 2.3., "Marking."** The first paragraph is voided and replaced with the following.

Furnish each section of reinforced concrete pipe marked with the following information specified in DMS-7305, "Fabrication and Qualification Procedure for Multi-Project Fabrication Plants of Precast Concrete Drainage Structures."

- Class or D-Load of pipe,
- ASTM designation,
- Date of manufacture,
- Pipe size,
- Name or trademark of fabricator and plant location,
- Designation "TX" for precast units fabricated per DMS-7305;
- Designated fabricator's approval stamp for each approved unit,
- Pipe to be used for jacking and boring (when applicable), and
- Designation "SR" for pipe meeting sulfate-resistant concrete plan requirements (when applicable).

**Section 2.5., "Causes for Rejection."** The section is voided and replaced with the following.

Individual sections of pipe may be rejected for any of the conditions stated in the Annex of DMS-7305, "Fabrication and Qualification Procedure for Multi-Project Fabrication Plants of Precast Concrete Drainage Structures."

**Section 2.6., "Repairs."** The section is voided and replaced with the following:

Make repairs, if necessary, as stated in the Annex of DMS-7305, "Fabrication and Qualification Procedure for Multi-Project Fabrication Plants of Precast Concrete Drainage Structures."

---

# Special Provision to Item 465

## Junction Boxes, Manholes, and Inlets

---



Item 465, "Junction Boxes, Manholes, and Inlets," of the Standard Specifications, is hereby amended with respect to the clauses cited below, and no other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed hereby.

**Section 2.1., "Concrete,"** The section is voided and replaced with the following.

Furnish concrete per DMS-7305 for formed and machine-made precast junction boxes, manholes, and inlets. Furnish Class C concrete for cast-in-place junction boxes, manholes, and inlets unless otherwise shown on the plans.

**Section 3.1., "Precast Junction Boxes, Manholes, and Inlets,"** The section is voided and replaced with the following.

Construct formed and machine-made precast junction boxes, manholes, and inlets in accordance with DMS-7305, "Fabrication and Qualification Procedure for Multi-Project Fabrication Plants of Precast Concrete Drainage Structures" and the Contract Plans, except as otherwise noted in this Item.

Multi-project fabrication plants as defined in Item 424 "Precast Concrete Structural Members (Fabrication)," that produce junction boxes, manholes, and inlets will be approved by the Materials and Tests Division in accordance with DMS-7305, "Fabrication and Qualification Procedure for Multi-Project Fabrication Plants of Precast Concrete Drainage Structures." The Department's MPL has a list of approved multi-project fabrication plants.

**Section 3.1.1., "Lifting Holes,"** The section is voided and not replaced.

**Section 3.1.2., "Marking,"** The section is voided and replaced with the following.

**Marking.** Clearly mark each precast junction box, manhole, and inlet unit with the following information:

- name or trademark of fabricator and plant location;
- product designation;
- ASTM designation (if applicable);
- date of manufacture;
- designation "TX" for precast units fabricated per DMS-7305;
- designated fabricator's approval stamp for each approved unit; and
- designation "SR" for product meeting sulfate-resistant concrete plan requirements (when applicable).



---

## Special Provision to Item 502

### Barricades, Signs and Traffic Handling

---



Item 502, "Barricades, Signs and Traffic Handling" of the Standard Specifications, is hereby amended with respect to the clauses cited below, and no other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed hereby.

**Article 502.1., "Description,"** is supplemented by the following:

Temporary work-zone (TWZ) traffic control devices manufactured after December 31, 2019, must have been successfully tested to the crashworthiness requirements of the 2016 edition of the Manual for Assessing Safety Hardware (MASH). Such devices manufactured on or before this date and successfully tested to NCHRP Report 350 or the 2009 edition of MASH may continue to be used throughout their normal service lives. An exception to the manufacture date applies when, based on the project's date of letting, a category of MASH-2016 compliant TWZ traffic control devices are not approved, or are not self-certified after the December 31, 2019, date. In such case, devices that meet NCHRP-350 or MASH-2009 may be used regardless of the manufacture date.

Such TWZ traffic control devices include: portable sign supports, barricades, portable traffic barriers designated exclusively for use in temporary work zones, crash cushions designated exclusively for use in temporary work zones, longitudinal channelizers, truck and trailer mounted attenuators. Category I Devices (i.e., lightweight devices) such as cones, tubular markers and drums without lights or signs attached however, may be self-certified by the vendor or provider, with documentation provided to Department or as are shown on Department's Compliant Work Zone Traffic Control Device List.

**Article 502.4., "Payment,"** is supplemented by the following:

Truck mounted attenuators and trailer attenuators will be paid for under Special Specification, "Truck Mounted Attenuator (TMA) and Trailer Attenuator (TA)." Portable Changeable Message Signs will be paid for under Special Specification, "Portable Changeable Message Sign." Portable Traffic Signals will be paid for under Special Specification, "Portable Traffic Signals."

## Special Provision to Item 506

# Temporary Erosion, Sedimentation, and Environmental Controls



Item 506, "Temporary Erosion, Sedimentation, and Environmental Controls," of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Article 506.1., "Description."** The second paragraph is voided and replaced by the following.

Contractor is considered primary operator to have day-to-day operational control as defined in TPDES GP TXR150000.

- 1.1. For projects with soil disturbance of less than 1 acre, no submittal to TCEQ will be required but Contractor will follow SWP3. For projects with soil disturbance of 1 acre to less than 5 acres a small site notice will be posted at the site. For projects with soil disturbance of 5 acres or more a Notice of Intent (NOI) is required and a large site notice posted at site. Postings will be in accordance with TPDES GP TXR150000. Postings not associated with project specific locations will be in same location as Department's postings.
- 1.2. **Notice of Intent (NOI).** Submit a NOI, if applicable, with the TCEQ under the TPDES GP TXR150000 at least 7 days prior to commencement of construction activities at the project site. Provide a signed copy to the Engineer and any other MS4 operators at the time of submittal. The Department will submit their NOI prior to contractor submission and will provide a copy for Contractor's use in completing the Contractor's NOI form.
- 1.3. **Notice of Change (NOC).** Upon concurrence of the Engineer, submit a NOC, if applicable, to the TCEQ within 14 days of discovery of a change or revision to the NOI as required by the TPDES GP TXR150000. Provide a signed copy of the NOC to the Engineer and any other MS4 operators at the time of submittal.
- 1.4. **Notice of Termination (NOT).** Upon concurrence of the Engineer, submit a NOT, if applicable, to the TCEQ within 30 days of the Engineer's approval that 70% native background vegetative cover is met or equivalent permanent stabilization have been employed in accordance with the TPDES GP TXR 150000. Provide a signed copy of the NOT to the Engineer and any other MS4 operators at the time of submittal.

**Section 506.3.1, "Contractor Responsible Person Environmental (CRPE) Qualifications and Responsibilities,"** is supplemented by the following:

- 3.1. **Contractor Responsible Person Environmental (CRPE) Qualifications and Responsibilities.** Provide and designate in writing at the preconstruction conference a CRPE and alternate CRPE who have overall responsibility for the storm water management program. The CRPE will implement stormwater and erosion control practices; will oversee and observe stormwater control measure monitoring and management; will monitor the project site daily and produce daily monitoring reports as long as there are BMPs in place or soil disturbing activities are evident to ensure compliance with the SWP3 and TPDES General Permit TXR150000. Daily monitor reports shall be maintained and made available upon request. During time suspensions when work is not occurring or on contract non-work days, daily inspections are not required unless a rain event has occurred. The CRPE will provide recommendations on how to improve the effectiveness of control measures. Attend the Department's preconstruction conference for the project. Ensure training is completed as identified in Section 506.3.3., "Training," by all applicable personnel before employees work on the project. Document and maintain and make available upon request, a list, signed by the CRPE, of all applicable Contractor and subcontractor employees who have completed the training. Include the employee's name, the training course name, and date the employee completed the training.

**Section 506.3.3., "Training,"** is supplemented by the following:

Training is provided by the Department at no cost to the Contractor and is valid for 3 yr. from the date of completion. The Engineer may require the following training at a frequency less than 3 yr. based on environmental needs:

- "Environmental Management System: Awareness Training for the Contractor" (English and Spanish) (Approximate running time 20 min.), and
- "Storm Water: Environmental Requirements During Construction" (English and Spanish) (Approximate running time 20 min.).

The Contractor responsible person environmental (CRPE), alternate CRPE designated for emergencies, Contractor's superintendent, Contractor, and subcontractor lead personnel involved in soil disturbing or SWP3 activities must enroll in and complete the training listed below and maintain and make available upon request the certificate of completion. Training is provided by a third party and is valid for 3 yr. from the date shown on the Certificate of Completion. Coordinate enrollment as prescribed by the Department and pay associated fees for the following training:

- "Revegetation During Construction,"
- "Construction General Permit Compliance," and
- "Construction Stage Gate Checklist (CSGC)."

Training and associated fee will not be measured or paid for directly but are subsidiary to this Item.

---

## Special Provision to Item 520

### Weighing and Measuring Equipment

---



Item 520, "Weighing and Measuring Equipment" of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Article 520.2., "Equipment."** The third paragraph is voided and replaced by the following.

Calibrate truck scales using weights certified by the Texas Department of Agriculture (TDA) or an equivalent agency as approved. Provide a written calibration report from a scale mechanic for truck scale calibrations. Cease plant operations during the checking operation. Do not use inaccurate or inadequate scales. Bring performance errors as close to zero as practicable when adjusting equipment.

**Article 520.2., "Equipment."** The fourth paragraph is amended to include the following:

At the Contractors option, an electronic ticket delivery system (e-ticketing) may be used instead of printed tickets. The use of e-ticketing will require written approval of the Engineer. At a minimum, the approved system will:

- Provide electronic, real-time e-tickets meeting the requirements of the applicable bid items;
- Automatically generate e-tickets using software and hardware fully integrated with the automated scale system used to weigh the material, and be designed in such a way that data input cannot be altered by the Contractor or the Engineer;
- Provide the Engineer access to the e-ticketing data in real-time with a web-based or app-based system compatible with iOS;
- Provide offline capabilities to prevent data loss if power or connectivity is lost;
- Require both the Contractor and the Engineer to accept or reject the e-ticket and provide the ability to record the information required by the applicable bid items, as well as any comments. Record the time of the approval/rejection and include it in the summary spreadsheet described below. Provide each party the capability to edit their respective actions and any entered information;

The Contractor may discontinue use of the e-ticket system and provide printed tickets as needed to meet the requirements of the applicable bid items.

---

## Special Provision to Item 540 Metal Beam Guard Fence

---



Item 540, "Metal Beam Guard Fence" of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Article 540.4.7, "Measurement,"** is voided and replaced with the following:

**Long Span System.** Measurement will be by each long span system, complete in place. Each long span system will be from the first CRT to the last CRT in the system.

---

# Special Provision to Item 636

## Signs

---



Item 636, "Signs" of the Standard Specifications, is hereby amended with respect to the clauses cited below, and no other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed hereby.

**Section 636.3.1, "Fabrication."** is deleted.

**Section 636.3.1.2, "Sheeting Application."** The last sentence of the fourth paragraph is voided and replaced by the following.

Do not splice sheeting or overlay films for signs fabricated with ink or with colored transparent films.

# Special Provision to Item 643

## Sign Identification Decals



Item 643, "Sign Identification Decals," of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Article 2. "Materials."** The sign identification decal design shown in Figure 1 and the description for each row in Table 1 are supplemented by the following.

Texas Department of Transportation													
<b>C</b>	<b>Fabrication Date</b>											<b>T</b>	1
J	F	M	A	M	J	J	A	S	O	N	D		2
	201		202		203		204		205				3
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9			4
<b>Sheeting MFR - Substrate</b>													
A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	J	K	L	M		5
<b>Film MFR</b>													
A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	J	K	L	M		6
<b>Sheeting MFR - Legend</b>													
A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	J	K	L	M		7
<b>Installation Date</b>													
				0	1	2	3						8
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9			9
J	F	M	A	M	J	J	A	S	O	N	D		10
	201		202		203		204		205				11
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9			12
<b>Name of Sign Fabricator</b> <b>Physical Address</b> <b>City, State, Zip Code</b>													13

**Figure 1**  
**Decal Design (Row numbers explained in Table 1)**

**Table 1**  
**Decal Description**  
**Row Explanation**

<b>1</b>	Sign fabricator
<b>2</b>	Month fabricated
<b>3</b>	First 3 digits of year fabricated
<b>4</b>	Last digit of year fabricated
<b>5</b>	Manufacturer of the sheeting applied to the substrate
<b>6</b>	Film (colored transparent or non-reflective black) manufacturer
<b>7</b>	Manufacturer of the sheeting for the legend
<b>8</b>	Tens digit of date installed
<b>9</b>	Ones digit of date installed
<b>10</b>	Month installed
<b>11</b>	First 3 digits of year installed
<b>12</b>	Last digit of year installed
<b>13</b>	Name of sign fabricator and physical location of sign shop



---

## Special Provision to Item 650

### Overhead Sign Supports

---



Item 650, "Overhead Sign Supports" of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Section 650.3.3., "Fabrication,"** is voided and replaced with the following:

**Fabrication.** Fabricate and weld in accordance with Item 441, "Steel Structures," AWS D1.1, *Structural Welding Code—Steel*, and the requirements of this Item.

Fabrication plants that produce overhead sign support structures must be approved in accordance with [DMS-7380](#), "Steel Non-Bridge Member Fabrication Plant Qualification." The Materials and Tests Division maintains a [Material Producer List \(MPL\)](#) of approved overhead sign support structure fabrication plants.

For monotube type overhead sign supports fabricated with seam-welded pipe, locate the longitudinal seam weld at the neutral axis during the bending process of the post.

For cantilevered-truss type overhead sign support columns with diameters exceeding 30 in., one circumferential complete joint penetration weld splice is permitted per column. Locate the splice at a minimum height of half the column length. Provide mounting channels for the installation of traffic control devices unless otherwise shown on the plans.

Provide 100% ultrasonic testing (UT) in accordance with the AWS D1.1, *Structural Welding Code - Steel*, on all circumferential butt joint weld splices of:

- monotube type posts, and
- cantilevered-truss type columns.

UT acceptance and rejection criteria must be in accordance with AWS D1.1, for cyclically loaded nontubular connections in tension.

For alternate design cantilevered-truss type overhead sign support columns, perform at least 10% UT on longitudinal seam welds with a Department approved procedure to ensure minimum specified penetration. Perform testing at a minimum of three locations on each column (top, middle, and bottom). The minimum length of each test area must be 10 in. If minimum specified penetration is not achieved in any of the tested areas, test an additional 24 in. beyond the originally selected test areas requiring the specified minimum penetration. Test the entire column seam weld if any locations within the additional 24 in. test areas does not achieve the specified minimum penetration. Repair the deficient areas with a Department approved repair procedure and retest.

Measure required dimensions of truss type overhead sign support structures including the following:

- camber of overhead sign bridge trusses (in vertical position), and
- rise of cantilever overhead sign support trusses (in horizontal position).

Shop assemble monotube type overhead sign supports in the horizontal position to ensure specification compliance for all required dimensions, alignment, geometry, and fit.

Permanently mark sign support base plates with the fabrication plant's insignia. For monotube type supports, place the mark on the base plate adjacent to the hand hole access compartment.

Conformance to plans and other approved drawings does not relieve the Contractor of responsibility for proper fit of components.

**Section 650.34., "Galvanizing,"** is voided and replaced with the following:

**Galvanizing.** Provide punched, drilled, or mechanically guided thermal-cut holes in steel parts or members, when allowed, before galvanizing. Mechanically guided thermal-cut hole quality should be per Item 445, "Galvanizing." Hot-dip galvanize all fabricated parts in accordance with Item 445, "Galvanizing."

---

## Special Provision to Item 654

### Sign Walkways

---



Item 654, "Sign Walkways" of the Standard Specifications, is hereby amended with respect to the clauses cited below, and no other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed hereby.

**Section 654.3.2, "Fabrication."** The following language is added after the first paragraph.

Fabrication plants that produce sign walkways must be approved in accordance with DMS-7380, "Steel Non-Bridge Member Fabrication Plant Qualification." The Construction Division maintains a list of approved sign walkway fabrication plants on the Department's Material Producers List.

---

## Special Provision to Item 656

### Foundations for Traffic Control Devices

---



Item 656, "Foundations for Traffic Control Devices" of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Article 3. "Construction,"** the first paragraph is supplemented by the following:

Ensure the top of the foundation and anchor bolts meet specified requirements in relation to the final grade.

# Special Provision to Item 666

## Retroreflectorized Pavement Markings



Item 666, "Retroreflectorized Pavement Markings," of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Section 2.3., "Glass Traffic Beads."** The first paragraph is voided and replaced by the following:

Furnish drop-on glass beads in accordance with DMS-8290, "Glass Traffic Beads," or as approved. Furnish a double-drop of Type II and Type III drop-on glass beads for longitudinal pavement markings where each type bead is applied separately in equal portions (by weight), unless otherwise approved. Apply the Type III beads before applying the Type II beads. Furnish Type II beads for work zone pavement markings and transverse markings or symbols.

**Section 4.3.1., "Type I Markings.,"** is supplemented by the following:

**4.3.1.3. Spot Striping.** Perform spot striping on a callout basis with a minimum callout quantity as shown on the plans.

**Section 4.3.2., "Type II Markings.,"** is supplemented by the following:

**4.3.2.1. Spot Striping.** Perform spot striping on a callout basis with a minimum callout quantity as shown on the plans.

**Section 4.4., "Retroreflectivity Requirements.,"** is voided and replaced by the following.

Type I markings for Contracts totaling more than 20,000 ft. of pavement markings must meet the following minimum retroreflectivity values for all longitudinal edgeline, centerline or no passing barrier-line, and lane line markings when measured any time after 3 days, but not later than 10 days after application.

- White markings: 250 millicandelas per square meter per lux (mcd/m<sup>2</sup>/lx)
- Yellow markings: 175 mcd/m<sup>2</sup>/lx

Retroreflectivity requirements for Type I markings are not required for Contracts with less than 20,000 ft. of pavement markings or Contracts with callout work, unless otherwise shown on the plans.

**Section 4.5., "Retroreflectivity Measurements.,"** is voided and replaced by the following:

Use a mobile retroreflectorimeter to measure retroreflectivity for Contracts totaling more than 50,000 ft. of pavement markings, unless otherwise shown on the plans. For Contracts with less than 50,000 ft. of pavement markings, mobile or portable retroreflectorimeters may be used at the Contractor's discretion. Coordinate with and obtain authorization from the Engineer before starting any retroreflectivity data collection.

**Section 4.5.1., "Mobile Retroreflectorimeter Measurements."** The last paragraph is voided and replaced by the following.

Restripe again at the Contractor's expense with a minimum of 0.060 in. (60 mils) of Type I marking material if the average of these measurements falls below the minimum retroreflectivity requirements. Take measurements every 0.1 miles a minimum of 10 days after this third application within that mile segment for that series of markings. If the markings do not meet minimum retroreflectivity after this third application, the Engineer may require removal of all existing markings, a new application as initially specified, and a repeat of the application process until minimum retroreflectivity requirements are met.

**Section 4.5.2., "Portable Retroreflector Measurements."** The first and second paragraphs are voided and replaced by the following.

Provide portable measurement averages for every 1.0 mile unless otherwise specified or approved. Take a minimum of 20 measurements for each 1-mi. section of roadway for each series of markings (e.g., edgeline, center skip line, each line of a double line) and direction of traffic flow when using a portable reflectometer. Measure each line in both directions for centerlines on two-way roadways (i.e., measure both double solid lines in both directions and measure all center skip lines in both directions). The spacing between each measurement must be at least 100 ft. The Engineer may decrease the mileage frequency for measurements if the previous measurements provide satisfactory results. The Engineer may require the original number of measurements if concerns arise.

Restripe at the Contractor's expense with a minimum of 0.060 in. (60 mils) of Type I marking material if the averages of these measurements fail. Take a minimum of 10 more measurements after 10 days of this second application within that mile segment for that series of markings. Restripe again at the Contractor's expense with a minimum of 0.060 in. (60 mils) of Type I marking material if the average of these measurements falls below the minimum retroreflectivity requirements. If the markings do not meet minimum retroreflectivity after this third application, the Engineer may require removal of all existing markings, a new application as initially specified, and a repeat of the application process until minimum retroreflectivity requirements are met.

**Section 4.6. "Performance Period."** The first sentence is voided and replaced by the following:

All longitudinal markings must meet the minimum retroreflectivity requirements within the time frame specified. All markings must meet all other performance requirements of this specification for at least 30 calendar days after installation.

**Article 6. "Payment."** The first two paragraphs are voided and replaced by the following.

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Pavement Sealer" of the size specified; "Retroreflectorized Pavement Markings" of the type and color specified and the shape, width, size, and thickness (Type I markings only) specified, as applicable; "Retroreflectorized Pavement Markings with Retroreflective Requirements" of the types, colors, sizes, widths, and thicknesses specified; "Retroreflectorized Profile Pavement Markings" of the various types, colors, shapes, sizes, and widths specified; or "Reflecterized Pavement Marking (Call Out)" of the shape, width, size, and thickness (Type I markings only) specified, as applicable; or "Pavement Sealer (Call Out)" of the size specified.

This price is full compensation for materials, application of pavement markings, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.

---

## Special Provision to Item 672

### Raised Pavement Markings

---



For this project, Item 672, "Raised Pavement Markings," of the Standard Specifications, is hereby amended with respect to the clauses cited below, and no other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed hereby.

**Article 672.3., "Construction,"** the twelfth paragraph is voided and replaced by the following:

Provide a 30-day performance period that begins the day following written acceptance for each separate location or patch. The date of written acceptance will be the last calendar day of each month for the RPMs installed that month for the completed separate project locations. This written acceptance does not constitute final acceptance.

**Article 672.3., "Construction,"** is supplemented by the following:

**672.3.1. Raised Pavement Markers Patch.** Raised Pavement Markers will be in accordance with Item 672, "Raised Pavement Markers." Unless otherwise directed in the General Notes and Specification Data, a patch will be defined as 1,000 LF or less along the center line of the roadway. The Engineer will determine whether to remove and place markers on the entire roadway segment or just the patch areas. Unless otherwise directed on the plans, the Contractor will remove temporary pavement markings (tabs or temporary tape) prior to placement of permanent markers.

**Article 672.5., "Payment,"** the first paragraph is voided and replaced by the following:

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid at the unit price bid for "Reflectorized Pavement Marker," "Traffic Button," "Plowable Reflectorized Pavement Marker," or "Reflectorized Pavement Marker (Patch)" of the types specified.





---

## Special Provision to Item 680 Highway Traffic Signals

---



Item 680, "Highway Traffic Signals" of the Standard Specifications is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Article 680.3.1.1.2,"Conduit,"** The fourth sentence of the first paragraph is voided and replaced by the following.

Seal the ends of each conduit with approved sealant, after all cables and conductors are installed.

---

# Special Provision to Special Specification 6064 Intelligent Transportation System (ITS) Pole with Cabinet

---



Special Specification 6064, "Intelligent Transportation System (ITS) Pole with Cabinet" is amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed.

**Section 6064.3.1., "Anchor Bolts."** The second sentence is voided and replaced with the following:

Galvanize these items in accordance with Item 445, "Galvanizing."

**Section 6064.3.2., "ITS Poles."** Voided and replaced with the following:

**ITS Poles.** Fabricate ITS poles in accordance with the details shown on the plans, this Item, and Item 441, "Steel Structures." Alternate designs are not acceptable unless approved by the Department.

Provide properly fitting components. Provide round, octagonal (8-sided), or dodecagonal (12-sided) pole shafts tapered to the heights shown on the plans.

Permanently mark, at a visible location when erected, ITS pole base plates with the design wind speed. Locate the handholes, as shown on the plans, opposite of the direction of traffic flow.

Permanently mark, at a visible location when erected, ITS pole base plates with the fabrication plant's insignia. Place the mark on the pole base plate adjacent to the handhole access compartment.

Provide circumferential welds only at the ends of the shaft. Provide no more than two longitudinal seam welds in shaft sections. Provide 100% penetration within 6 in. of circumferential base welds and 60% minimum penetration at other locations along the longitudinal seam welds, unless otherwise specified. Use a welding technique that minimizes acid entrapment during later galvanizing. Hot-dip galvanize all fabricated parts in accordance with Item 445, "Galvanizing."

Perform at least 10% ultrasonic testing (UT) of longitudinal seam welds on the pole shafts. Use a Department approved UT procedure to ensure 60% or 85% minimum penetration where specified. Perform testing at a minimum of three locations on each shaft section (at both ends and middle). The minimum length of each test area must be 10 in. If minimum penetration is not achieved in any of the tested areas, test an additional 24 in. beyond the originally selected test areas requiring 60% or 85% penetration. Test the entire shaft seam weld if any locations within the additional 24 in. test areas does not achieve 60% or 85% penetration. Repair the deficient areas with a Department approved repair procedure and retest.

Fabricate air terminal and bracket assembly to serve as a lightning arrester in accordance with ITS pole air terminal details and IEEE standards for lightning protection. Bond air terminal with air terminal bracket via clad weld or other approved bolted connection.

---

# Special Provision to Special Specification 6185

## Truck Mounted Attenuator (TMA) and Trailer Attenuator (TA)

---



Item 6185, "Truck Mounted Attenuator (TMA) and Trailer Attenuator (TA)" of the Standard Specifications, is hereby amended with respect to the clauses cited below, and no other clauses or requirements of this Item are waived or changed hereby.

**Article 4. "Measurement"**, is voided and replaced by the following:

- 4.1. **Truck Mounted Attenuator/Trailer Attenuator (Stationary).** This Item will be measured by the day. TMA/TAs must be set up in a work area and operational before a calendar day can be considered measurable. A day will be measured for each TMA/TA set up and operational on the worksite.
- 4.2. **Truck Mounted Attenuator/Trailer Attenuator (Mobile Operation).** This Item will be measured by the hour or by the day. The time begins once the TMA/TA is ready for operation at the predetermined site and stops when notified by the Engineer. When measurement by the hour is specified, a minimum of 4 hr. will be paid each day for each operating TMA/TA used in a mobile operation. When measurement by the day is specified, a day will be measured for each TMA/TA set up and operational on the worksite.

# Special Specification 3021

## Concrete Pavement Wide Flange Terminals



### 1. DESCRIPTION

Construct wide flange terminals for concrete pavement.

### 2. MATERIALS

Furnish materials conforming to the following:

- Item 360, "Concrete Pavement,"
- Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete,"
- Item 440, "Reinforcement for Concrete," and
- Item 442, "Metal for Structures."

Use ASTM A 36 steel for wide-flange structural steel. Shop-fabricate wide-flange beams in accordance with the plans. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, wide-flange beams are not required to be welded or spliced at longitudinal construction joints.

### 3. CONSTRUCTION

Construct concrete pavement wide flange terminals in accordance with the plans.

- 3.1. **Excavation, Backfilling, and Base Preparation.** Excavate and backfill in accordance with Item 400, "Excavation and Backfill for Structures," and the plans. Avoid over-excavation. Restore subgrade and base layers damaged by excavation. Construct subgrade, base, and pavement layers in accordance with the plans.
- 3.2. **Reinforcement and Structural Steel.** Secure reinforcement in position before concrete placement in accordance with Item 440, "Reinforcement for Concrete," and the plans. Accurately secure wide-flange beams in position in accordance with the plans and with sufficient supports to safely maintain alignment during concrete placement and finishing.
- 3.3. **Concrete Placement and Finishing.** Use Class P hydraulic cement concrete. Place hydraulic concrete pavement in accordance with Item 360, "Concrete Pavement." Place bridge approach slabs in accordance with Item 422, "Concrete Superstructures."
- 3.4. **Opening to Traffic.** Open concrete pavement terminal to traffic in conformance with Item 360, "Concrete Pavement."

### 4. MEASUREMENT

This Item will be measured by the foot of concrete pavement terminal complete in place. Measurement will be made perpendicular to the direction of the flow of traffic.

This is a plans quantity measurement Item. The quantity to be paid is the quantity shown in the proposal, unless modified by Article 9.2, "Plans Quantity Measurement." Additional measurement or calculations will be made if adjustments of quantities are required.

---

**5. PAYMENT**

The work performed and the materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as specified under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Wide Flange Pavement Terminals."

This price is full compensation for excavation, disposal of waste material, backfilling, 12 in. cement treatment, hydraulic cement concrete (sleeper slab and support slab) underneath the concrete pavement, joint material, reinforcing steel, wide-flange beams, equipment, materials, labor, tools and incidentals.

Subgrade treatment, asphalt concrete, base material, and curbing required by the plans will be measured and paid for in accordance with pertinent Items. Concrete pavement constructed as part of the concrete pavement terminal will be paid for under Item 360, "Concrete Pavement."

# Special Specification 3076

## Dense-Graded Hot-Mix Asphalt



### 1. DESCRIPTION

Construct a hot-mix asphalt (HMA) pavement layer composed of a compacted, dense-graded mixture of aggregate and asphalt binder mixed hot in a mixing plant. Payment adjustments will apply to HMA placed under this specification unless the HMA is deemed exempt in accordance with Section 3076.4.9.4., "Exempt Production."

### 2. MATERIALS

Furnish uncontaminated materials of uniform quality that meet the requirements of the plans and specifications.

Notify the Engineer of all material sources and before changing any material source or formulation. The Engineer will verify that the specification requirements are met when the Contractor makes a source or formulation change, and may require a new laboratory mixture design, trial batch, or both. The Engineer may sample and test project materials at any time during the project to verify specification compliance in accordance with Item 6, "Control of Materials."

- 2.1. **Aggregate.** Furnish aggregates from sources that conform to the requirements shown in Table 1 and as specified in this Section. Aggregate requirements in this Section, including those shown in Table 1, may be modified or eliminated when shown on the plans. Additional aggregate requirements may be specified when shown on the plans. Provide aggregate stockpiles that meet the definitions in this Section for coarse, intermediate, or fine aggregate. Aggregate from reclaimed asphalt pavement (RAP) is not required to meet Table 1 requirements unless otherwise shown on the plans. Supply aggregates that meet the definitions in [Tex-100-E](#) for crushed gravel or crushed stone. The Engineer will designate the plant or the quarry as the sampling location. Provide samples from materials produced for the project. The Engineer will establish the Surface Aggregate Classification (SAC) and perform Los Angeles abrasion, magnesium sulfate soundness, and Micro-Deval tests. Perform all other aggregate quality tests listed in Table 1. Document all test results on the mixture design report. The Engineer may perform tests on independent or split samples to verify Contractor test results. Stockpile aggregates for each source and type separately. Determine aggregate gradations for mixture design and production testing based on the washed sieve analysis given in [Tex-200-F](#), Part II.

- 2.1.1. **Coarse Aggregate.** Coarse aggregate stockpiles must have no more than 20% material passing the No. 8 sieve. Aggregates from sources listed in the Department's *Bituminous Rated Source Quality Catalog* (BRSQC) are preapproved for use. Use only the rated values for hot-mix listed in the BRSQC. Rated values for surface treatment (ST) do not apply to coarse aggregate sources used in hot-mix asphalt.

For sources not listed on the Department's BRSQC:

- build an individual stockpile for each material;
- request the Department test the stockpile for specification compliance; and
- once approved, do not add material to the stockpile unless otherwise approved.

Provide aggregate from non-listed sources only when tested by the Engineer and approved before use. Allow 30 calendar days for the Engineer to sample, test, and report results for non-listed sources.

Provide coarse aggregate with at least the minimum SAC shown on the plans. SAC requirements only apply to aggregates used on the surface of travel lanes. SAC requirements apply to aggregates used on surfaces other than travel lanes when shown on the plans. The SAC for sources on the Department's *Aggregate Quality Monitoring Program (AQMP)* ([Tex-499-A](#)) is listed in the BRSQC.

- 2.1.1.1. **Blending Class A and Class B Aggregates.** Class B aggregate meeting all other requirements in Table 1 may be blended with a Class A aggregate to meet requirements for Class A materials, unless otherwise shown on the plans. Ensure that at least 50% by weight, or volume if required, of the material retained on the No. 4 sieve comes from the Class A aggregate source when blending Class A and B aggregates to meet a Class A requirement unless otherwise shown on the plans. Blend by volume if the bulk specific gravities of the Class A and B aggregates differ by more than 0.300. Coarse aggregate from RAP and Recycled Asphalt Shingles (RAS) will be considered as Class B aggregate for blending purposes.

The Engineer may perform tests at any time during production, when the Contractor blends Class A and B aggregates to meet a Class A requirement, to ensure that at least 50% by weight, or volume if required, of the material retained on the No. 4 sieve comes from the Class A aggregate source. The Engineer will use the Department's mix design template, when electing to verify conformance, to calculate the percent of Class A aggregate retained on the No. 4 sieve by inputting the bin percentages shown from readouts in the control room at the time of production and stockpile gradations measured at the time of production. The Engineer may determine the gradations based on either washed or dry sieve analysis from samples obtained from individual aggregate cold feed bins or aggregate stockpiles. The Engineer may perform spot checks using the gradations supplied by the Contractor on the mixture design report as an input for the template; however, a failing spot check will require confirmation with a stockpile gradation determined by the Engineer.

- 2.1.1.2. **Micro-Deval Abrasion.** The Engineer will perform a minimum of one Micro-Deval abrasion test in accordance with [Tex-461-A](#) for each coarse aggregate source used in the mixture design that has a Rated Source Soundness Magnesium (RSSM) loss value greater than 15 as listed in the BRSQC. The Engineer will perform testing before the start of production and may perform additional testing at any time during production. The Engineer may obtain the coarse aggregate samples from each coarse aggregate source or may require the Contractor to obtain the samples. The Engineer may waive all Micro-Deval testing based on a satisfactory test history of the same aggregate source.

The Engineer will estimate the magnesium sulfate soundness loss for each coarse aggregate source, when tested, using the following formula:

$$Mg_{est.} = (RSSM)(MD_{act.}/RSMD)$$

where:

$Mg_{est.}$  = magnesium sulfate soundness loss

$MD_{act.}$  = actual Micro-Deval percent loss

$RSMD$  = Rated Source Micro-Deval

When the estimated magnesium sulfate soundness loss is greater than the maximum magnesium sulfate soundness loss specified, the coarse aggregate source will not be allowed for use unless otherwise approved. The Engineer will consult the Soils and Aggregates Section of the Materials and Tests Division, and additional testing may be required before granting approval.

- 2.1.2. **Intermediate Aggregate.** Aggregates not meeting the definition of coarse or fine aggregate will be defined as intermediate aggregate. Supply intermediate aggregates, when used that are free from organic impurities. The Engineer may test the intermediate aggregate in accordance with [Tex-408-A](#) to verify the material is free from organic impurities. Supply intermediate aggregate from coarse aggregate sources, when used that meet the requirements shown in Table 1 unless otherwise approved.

Test the stockpile if 10% or more of the stockpile is retained on the No. 4 sieve, and verify that it meets the requirements in Table 1 for crushed face count ([Tex-460-A](#)) and flat and elongated particles ([Tex-280-F](#)).

2.1.3.

**Fine Aggregate.** Fine aggregates consist of manufactured sands, screenings, and field sands. Fine aggregate stockpiles must meet the gradation requirements in Table 2. Supply fine aggregates that are free from organic impurities. The Engineer may test the fine aggregate in accordance with [Tex-408-A](#) to verify the material is free from organic impurities. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, up to 10% of the total aggregate may be field sand or other uncrushed fine aggregate. Use fine aggregate, with the exception of field sand, from coarse aggregate sources that meet the requirements shown in Table 1 unless otherwise approved.

Test the stockpile if 10% or more of the stockpile is retained on the No. 4 sieve and verify that it meets the requirements in Table 1 for crushed face count ([Tex-460-A](#)) and flat and elongated particles ([Tex-280-F](#)).

**Table 1**  
**Aggregate Quality Requirements**

Property	Test Method	Requirement
<b>Coarse Aggregate</b>		
SAC	<a href="#">Tex-499-A</a> (AQMP)	As shown on the plans
Deleterious material, %, Max	<a href="#">Tex-217-F</a> , Part I	1.5
Decantation, %, Max	<a href="#">Tex-217-F</a> , Part II	1.5
Micro-Deval abrasion, %	<a href="#">Tex-461-A</a>	Note 1
Los Angeles abrasion, %, Max	<a href="#">Tex-410-A</a>	40
Magnesium sulfate soundness, 5 cycles, %, Max	<a href="#">Tex-411-A</a>	30
Crushed face count, <sup>2</sup> %, Min	<a href="#">Tex-460-A</a> , Part I	85
Flat and elongated particles @ 5:1, %, Max	<a href="#">Tex-280-F</a>	10
<b>Fine Aggregate</b>		
Linear shrinkage, %, Max	<a href="#">Tex-107-E</a>	3
Sand equivalent, %, Min	<a href="#">Tex-203-F</a>	45

- Used to estimate the magnesium sulfate soundness loss in accordance with Section 3076.2.1.1.2., "Micro-Deval Abrasion."
- Only applies to crushed gravel.

**Table 2**  
**Gradation Requirements for Fine Aggregate**

Sieve Size	% Passing by Weight or Volume
3/8"	100
#8	70–100
#200	0–30

2.2.

**Mineral Filler.** Mineral filler consists of finely divided mineral matter such as agricultural lime, crusher fines, hydrated lime, or fly ash. Mineral filler is allowed unless otherwise shown on the plans. Use no more than 2% hydrated lime or fly ash unless otherwise shown on the plans. Use no more than 1% hydrated lime if a substitute binder is used unless otherwise shown on the plans or allowed. Test all mineral fillers except hydrated lime and fly ash in accordance with [Tex-107-E](#) to ensure specification compliance. The plans may require or disallow specific mineral fillers. Provide mineral filler, when used, that:

- is sufficiently dry, free-flowing, and free from clumps and foreign matter as determined by the Engineer;
- does not exceed 3% linear shrinkage when tested in accordance with [Tex-107-E](#); and
- meets the gradation requirements in Table 3, unless otherwise shown on the plans.

**Table 3**  
**Gradation Requirements for Mineral Filler**

Sieve Size	% Passing by Weight or Volume
#8	100
#200	55–100

2.3.

**Baghouse Fines.** Fines collected by the baghouse or other dust-collecting equipment may be reintroduced into the mixing drum.

2.4.

**Asphalt Binder.** Furnish the type and grade of performance-graded (PG) asphalt specified on the plans.



- 2.5. **Tack Coat.** Furnish CSS-1H, SS-1H, or a PG binder with a minimum high-temperature grade of PG 58 for tack coat binder in accordance with Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions." Specialized tack coat materials listed on the Department's MPL are allowed or required when shown on the plans. Do not dilute emulsified asphalts at the terminal, in the field, or at any other location before use.
- 2.6. **Additives.** Use the type and rate of additive specified when shown on the plans. Additives that facilitate mixing, compaction, or improve the quality of the mixture are allowed when approved. Provide the Engineer with documentation such as the bill of lading showing the quantity of additives used in the project unless otherwise directed.
- 2.6.1. **Lime and Liquid Antistripping Agent.** When lime or a liquid antistripping agent is used, add in accordance with Item 301, "Asphalt Antistripping Agents." Do not add lime directly into the mixing drum of any plant where lime is removed through the exhaust stream unless the plant has a baghouse or dust collection system that reintroduces the lime into the drum.
- 2.6.2. **Warm Mix Asphalt (WMA).** Warm Mix Asphalt (WMA) is defined as HMA that is produced within a target temperature discharge range of 215°F and 275°F using approved WMA additives or processes from the Department's MPL.
- WMA is allowed for use on all projects and is required when shown on the plans. When WMA is required, the maximum placement or target discharge temperature for WMA will be set at a value below 275°F.
- Department-approved WMA additives or processes may be used to facilitate mixing and compaction of HMA produced at target discharge temperatures above 275°F; however, such mixtures will not be defined as WMA.
- 2.6.3. **Compaction Aid.** Compaction Aid is defined as a chemical warm mix additive that is used to produce an asphalt mixture at a discharge temperature greater than 275°F.
- Compaction Aid is allowed for use on all projects and is required when shown on the plans.
- 2.7. **Recycled Materials.** Use of RAP and RAS is permitted unless otherwise shown on the plans. Use of RAS is restricted to only intermediate and base mixes unless otherwise shown on the plans. Do not exceed the maximum allowable percentages of RAP and RAS shown in Table 4. The allowable percentages shown in Table 4 may be decreased or increased when shown on the plans. Determine the asphalt binder content and gradation of the RAP and RAS stockpiles for mixture design purposes in accordance with [Tex-236-F](#), Part I. The Engineer may verify the asphalt binder content of the stockpiles at any time during production. Perform other tests on RAP and RAS when shown on the plans. Asphalt binder from RAP and RAS is designated as recycled asphalt binder. Calculate and ensure that the ratio of the recycled asphalt binder to total binder does not exceed the percentages shown in Table 5 during mixture design and HMA production when RAP or RAS is used. Use a separate cold feed bin for each stockpile of RAP and RAS during HMA production.
- Surface, intermediate, and base mixes referenced in Tables 4 and 5 are defined as follows:
- **Surface.** The final HMA lift placed at the top of the pavement structure or placed directly below mixtures produced in accordance with Items 316, 342, 347, or 348;
  - **Intermediate.** Mixtures placed below an HMA surface mix and less than or equal to 8.0 in. from the riding surface; and
  - **Base.** Mixtures placed greater than 8.0 in. from the riding surface. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, mixtures used for bond breaker are defined as base mixtures.
- 2.7.1. **RAP.** RAP is salvaged, milled, pulverized, broken, or crushed asphalt pavement. Fractionated RAP is defined as a stockpile that contains RAP material with a minimum of 95.0% passing the 3/8-in. or 1/2-in. sieve, before burning in the ignition oven, unless otherwise approved. The Engineer may allow the Contractor to use an alternate to the 3/8-in. or 1/2-in. screen to fractionate the RAP.

Use of Contractor-owned RAP including HMA plant waste is permitted unless otherwise shown on the plans. Department-owned RAP stockpiles are available for the Contractor's use when the stockpile locations are shown on the plans. If Department-owned RAP is available for the Contractor's use, the Contractor may use Contractor-owned fractionated RAP and replace it with an equal quantity of Department-owned RAP. Department-owned RAP generated through required work on the Contract is available for the Contractor's use when shown on the plans. Perform any necessary tests to ensure Contractor- or Department-owned RAP is appropriate for use. The Department will not perform any tests or assume any liability for the quality of the Department-owned RAP unless otherwise shown on the plans. The Contractor will retain ownership of RAP generated on the project when shown on the plans.

Do not use Department- or Contractor-owned RAP contaminated with dirt or other objectionable materials. Do not use Department- or Contractor-owned RAP if the decantation value exceeds 5% and the plasticity index is greater than 8. Test the stockpiled RAP for decantation in accordance with [Tex-406-A](#), Part I. Determine the plasticity index in accordance with [Tex-106-E](#) if the decantation value exceeds 5%. The decantation and plasticity index requirements do not apply to RAP samples with asphalt removed by extraction or ignition.

Do not intermingle Contractor-owned RAP stockpiles with Department-owned RAP stockpiles. Remove unused Contractor-owned RAP material from the project site upon completion of the project. Return unused Department-owned RAP to the designated stockpile location.

**Table 4**  
**Maximum Allowable Amounts of RAP<sup>1</sup>**

Maximum Allowable Fractionated RAP (%)		
Surface	Intermediate	Base
15.0	25.0	30.0

1. Must also meet the recycled binder to total binder ratio shown in Table 5.

#### 2.7.2.

**RAS.** Use of post-manufactured RAS or post-consumer RAS (tear-offs) is not permitted in surface mixtures unless otherwise shown on the plans. RAS may be used in intermediate and base mixtures unless otherwise shown on the plans. Up to 3% RAS may be used separately or as a replacement for fractionated RAP in accordance with Table 4 and Table 5. RAS is defined as processed asphalt shingle material from manufacturing of asphalt roofing shingles or from re-roofing residential structures. Post-manufactured RAS is processed manufacturer's shingle scrap by-product. Post-consumer RAS is processed shingle scrap removed from residential structures. Comply with all regulatory requirements stipulated for RAS by the TCEQ. RAS may be used separately or in conjunction with RAP.

Process the RAS by ambient grinding or granulating such that 100% of the particles pass the 3/8 in. sieve when tested in accordance with [Tex-200-F](#), Part I. Perform a sieve analysis on processed RAS material before extraction (or ignition) of the asphalt binder.

Add sand meeting the requirements of Table 1 and Table 2 or fine RAP to RAS stockpiles if needed to keep the processed material workable. Any stockpile that contains RAS will be considered a RAS stockpile and be limited to no more than 3.0% of the HMA mixture in accordance with Table 4.

Certify compliance of the RAS with [DMS-11000](#), "Evaluating and Using Nonhazardous Recyclable Materials Guidelines." Treat RAS as an established nonhazardous recyclable material if it has not come into contact with any hazardous materials. Use RAS from shingle sources on the Department's MPL. Remove substantially all materials before use that are not part of the shingle, such as wood, paper, metal, plastic, and felt paper. Determine the deleterious content of RAS material for mixture design purposes in accordance with [Tex-217-F](#), Part III. Do not use RAS if deleterious materials are more than 0.5% of the stockpiled RAS unless otherwise approved. Submit a sample for approval before submitting the mixture design. The Department will perform the testing for deleterious material of RAS to determine specification compliance.

2.8.

**Substitute Binders.** Unless otherwise shown on the plans, the Contractor may use a substitute PG binder listed in Table 5 instead of the PG binder originally specified, if using recycled materials, and if the substitute PG binder and mixture made with the substitute PG binder meet the following:

- the substitute binder meets the specification requirements for the substitute binder grade in accordance with Section 300.2.10., "Performance-Graded Binders;" and
- the mixture has less than 10.0 mm of rutting on the Hamburg Wheel test ([Tex-242-F](#)) after the number of passes required for the originally specified binder. Use of substitute PG binders may only be allowed at the discretion of the Engineer if the Hamburg Wheel test results are between 10.0 mm and 12.5 mm.

**Table 5**  
**Allowable Substitute PG Binders and Maximum Recycled Binder Ratios**

Originally Specified PG Binder	Allowable Substitute PG Binder for Surface Mixes	Allowable Substitute PG Binder for Intermediate and Base Mixes	Maximum Ratio of Recycled Binder <sup>1</sup> to Total Binder (%)		
			Surface	Intermediate	Base
76-22 <sup>4,5</sup>	70-22	70-22	10.0	20.0	25.0
70-22 <sup>2,5</sup>	N/A	64-22	10.0	20.0	25.0
64-22 <sup>2,3</sup>	N/A	N/A	10.0	20.0	25.0
76-28 <sup>4,5</sup>	70-28	70-28	10.0	20.0	25.0
70-28 <sup>2,5</sup>	N/A	64-28	10.0	20.0	25.0
64-28 <sup>2,3</sup>	N/A	N/A	10.0	20.0	25.0

1. Combined recycled binder from RAP and RAS. RAS is not permitted in surface mixtures unless otherwise shown on the plans.
2. Binder substitution is not allowed for surface mixtures.
3. Binder substitution is not allowed for intermediate and base mixtures.
4. Use no more than 10.0% recycled binder in surface mixtures when using this originally specified PG binder.
5. Use no more than 20.0% recycled binder when using this originally specified PG binder for intermediate mixtures. Use no more than 25.0% recycled binder when using this originally specified PG binder for base mixtures.

3.

### EQUIPMENT

Provide required or necessary equipment in accordance with Item 320, "Equipment for Asphalt Concrete Pavement."

4.

### CONSTRUCTION

Produce, haul, place, and compact the specified paving mixture. In addition to tests required by the specification, Contractors may perform other QC tests as deemed necessary. At any time during the project, the Engineer may perform production and placement tests as deemed necessary in accordance with Item 5, "Control of the Work." Schedule and participate in a mandatory pre-paving meeting with the Engineer on or before the first day of paving unless otherwise shown on the plans.

4.1.

**Certification.** Personnel certified by the Department-approved hot-mix asphalt certification program must conduct all mixture designs, sampling, and testing in accordance with Table 6. Supply the Engineer with a list of certified personnel and copies of their current certificates before beginning production and when personnel changes are made. Provide a mixture design developed and signed by a Level 2 certified specialist. Provide Level 1A certified specialists at the plant during production operations. Provide Level 1B certified specialists to conduct placement tests. Provide AGG101 certified specialists for aggregate testing.

**Table 6**  
**Test Methods, Test Responsibility, and Minimum Certification Levels**

Test Description	Test Method	Contractor	Engineer	Level <sup>1</sup>
<b>1. Aggregate and Recycled Material Testing</b>				
Sampling	<a href="#">Tex-221-F</a>	✓	✓	1A/AGG101
Dry sieve	<a href="#">Tex-200-F</a> , Part I	✓	✓	1A/AGG101
Washed sieve	<a href="#">Tex-200-F</a> , Part II	✓	✓	1A/AGG101
Deleterious material	<a href="#">Tex-217-F</a> , Parts I & III	✓	✓	AGG101
Decantation	<a href="#">Tex-217-F</a> , Part II	✓	✓	AGG101
Los Angeles abrasion	<a href="#">Tex-410-A</a>		✓	TxDOT
Magnesium sulfate soundness	<a href="#">Tex-411-A</a>		✓	TxDOT
Micro-Deval abrasion	<a href="#">Tex-461-A</a>		✓	AGG101
Crushed face count	<a href="#">Tex-460-A</a>	✓	✓	AGG101
Flat and elongated particles	<a href="#">Tex-280-F</a>	✓	✓	AGG101
Linear shrinkage	<a href="#">Tex-107-E</a>	✓	✓	AGG101
Sand equivalent	<a href="#">Tex-203-F</a>	✓	✓	AGG101
Organic impurities	<a href="#">Tex-408-A</a>	✓	✓	AGG101
<b>2. Asphalt Binder &amp; Tack Coat Sampling</b>				
Asphalt binder sampling	<a href="#">Tex-500-C</a> , Part II	✓	✓	1A/1B
Tack coat sampling	<a href="#">Tex-500-C</a> , Part III	✓	✓	1A/1B
<b>3. Mix Design &amp; Verification</b>				
Design and JMF changes	<a href="#">Tex-204-F</a>	✓	✓	2
Mixing	<a href="#">Tex-205-F</a>	✓	✓	2
Molding (TGC)	<a href="#">Tex-206-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
Molding (SGC)	<a href="#">Tex-241-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
Laboratory-molded density	<a href="#">Tex-207-F</a> , Parts I & VI	✓	✓	1A
Rice gravity	<a href="#">Tex-227-F</a> , Part II	✓	✓	1A
Ignition oven correction factors <sup>2</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-236-F</a> , Part II	✓	✓	2
Indirect tensile strength	<a href="#">Tex-226-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
Hamburg Wheel test	<a href="#">Tex-242-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
Boil test	<a href="#">Tex-530-C</a>	✓	✓	1A
<b>4. Production Testing</b>				
Selecting production random numbers	<a href="#">Tex-225-F</a> , Part I		✓	1A
Mixture sampling	<a href="#">Tex-222-F</a>	✓	✓	1A/1B
Molding (TGC)	<a href="#">Tex-206-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
Molding (SGC)	<a href="#">Tex-241-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
Laboratory-molded density	<a href="#">Tex-207-F</a> , Parts I & VI	✓	✓	1A
Rice gravity	<a href="#">Tex-227-F</a> , Part II	✓	✓	1A
Gradation & asphalt binder content <sup>2</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-236-F</a> , Part I	✓	✓	1A
Control charts	<a href="#">Tex-233-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
Moisture content	<a href="#">Tex-212-F</a> , Part II	✓	✓	1A/AGG101
Hamburg Wheel test	<a href="#">Tex-242-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
Micro-Deval abrasion	<a href="#">Tex-461-A</a>		✓	AGG101
Boil test	<a href="#">Tex-530-C</a>	✓	✓	1A
Abson recovery	<a href="#">Tex-211-F</a>		✓	TxDOT
<b>5. Placement Testing</b>				
Selecting placement random numbers	<a href="#">Tex-225-F</a> , Part II		✓	1B
Trimming roadway cores	<a href="#">Tex-251-F</a> , Parts I & II	✓	✓	1A/1B
In-place air voids	<a href="#">Tex-207-F</a> , Parts I & VI	✓	✓	1A
In-place density (nuclear method)	<a href="#">Tex-207-F</a> , Part III	✓		1B
Establish rolling pattern	<a href="#">Tex-207-F</a> , Part IV	✓		1B
Control charts	<a href="#">Tex-233-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
Ride quality measurement	<a href="#">Tex-1001-S</a>	✓	✓	Note 3
Segregation (density profile)	<a href="#">Tex-207-F</a> , Part V	✓	✓	1B
Longitudinal joint density	<a href="#">Tex-207-F</a> , Part VII	✓	✓	1B
Thermal profile	<a href="#">Tex-244-F</a>	✓	✓	1B
Shear Bond Strength Test	<a href="#">Tex-249-F</a>		✓	TxDOT

- Level 1A, 1B, AGG101, and 2 are certification levels provided by the Hot Mix Asphalt Center certification program.
- Refer to Section 3076.4.9.2.3., "Production Testing," for exceptions to using an ignition oven.
- Profiler and operator are required to be certified at the Texas A&M Transportation Institute facility when Surface Test Type B is specified.

4.2.

**Reporting and Responsibilities.** Use Department-provided templates to record and calculate all test data, including mixture design, production and placement QC/QA, control charts, thermal profiles, segregation density profiles, and longitudinal joint density. Obtain the current version of the templates at <http://www.txdot.gov/inside-txdot/forms-publications/consultants-contractors/forms/site-manager.html> or from the Engineer. The Engineer and the Contractor will provide any available test results to the other party when requested. The maximum allowable time for the Contractor and Engineer to exchange test data is as given in Table 7 unless otherwise approved. The Engineer and the Contractor will immediately report to the other party any test result that requires suspension of production or placement, a payment adjustment less than 1.000, or that fails to meet the specification requirements. Record and electronically submit all test results and pertinent information on Department-provided templates.

Subsequent sublots placed after test results are available to the Contractor, which require suspension of operations, may be considered unauthorized work. Unauthorized work will be accepted or rejected at the discretion of the Engineer in accordance with Article 5.3., "Conformity with Plans, Specifications, and Special Provisions."

**Table 7**  
**Reporting Schedule**

Description	Reported By	Reported To	To Be Reported Within
<b>Production Quality Control</b>			
Gradation <sup>1</sup>	Contractor	Engineer	1 working day of completion of the subplot
Asphalt binder content <sup>1</sup>			
Laboratory-molded density <sup>2</sup>			
Moisture content <sup>3</sup>			
Boil test <sup>3</sup>			
<b>Production Quality Assurance</b>			
Gradation <sup>3</sup>	Engineer	Contractor	1 working day of completion of the subplot
Asphalt binder content <sup>3</sup>			
Laboratory-molded density <sup>1</sup>			
Hamburg Wheel test <sup>4</sup>			
Boil test <sup>3</sup>			
Binder tests <sup>4</sup>			
<b>Placement Quality Control</b>			
In-place air voids <sup>2</sup>	Contractor	Engineer	1 working day of completion of the lot
Segregation <sup>1</sup>			
Longitudinal joint density <sup>1</sup>			
Thermal profile <sup>1</sup>			
<b>Placement Quality Assurance</b>			
In-place air voids <sup>1</sup>	Engineer	Contractor	1 working day after receiving the trimmed cores <sup>5</sup>
Segregation <sup>3</sup>			1 working day of completion of the lot
Longitudinal joint density <sup>3</sup>			
Thermal profile <sup>3</sup>			
Aging ratio <sup>4</sup>			
Payment adjustment summary	Engineer	Contractor	2 working days of performing all required tests and receiving Contractor test data

1. These tests are required on every subplot.
2. Optional test. When performed on split samples, report the results as soon as they become available.
3. To be performed at the frequency specified in Table 16 or as shown on the plans.
4. To be reported as soon as the results become available.
5. 2 days are allowed if cores cannot be dried to constant weight within 1 day.

The Engineer will use the Department-provided template to calculate all payment adjustment factors for the lot. Sublot samples may be discarded after the Engineer and Contractor sign off on the payment adjustment summary documentation for the lot.

Use the procedures described in [Tex-233-F](#) to plot the results of all quality control (QC) and quality assurance (QA) testing. Update the control charts as soon as test results for each subplot become available. Make the control charts readily accessible at the field laboratory. The Engineer may suspend production for failure to update control charts.

- 4.3. **Quality Control Plan (QCP).** Develop and follow the QCP in detail. Obtain approval for changes to the QCP made during the project. The Engineer may suspend operations if the Contractor fails to comply with the QCP.

Submit a written QCP before the mandatory pre-paving meeting. Receive approval of the QCP before beginning production. Include the following items in the QCP:

- 4.3.1. **Project Personnel.** For project personnel, include:

- a list of individuals responsible for QC with authority to take corrective action;
- current contact information for each individual listed; and
- current copies of certification documents for individuals performing specified QC functions.

- 4.3.2. **Material Delivery and Storage.** For material delivery and storage, include:

- the sequence of material processing, delivery, and minimum quantities to assure continuous plant operations;
- aggregate stockpiling procedures to avoid contamination and segregation;
- frequency, type, and timing of aggregate stockpile testing to assure conformance of material requirements before mixture production; and
- procedure for monitoring the quality and variability of asphalt binder.

- 4.3.3. **Production.** For production, include:

- loader operation procedures to avoid contamination in cold bins;
- procedures for calibrating and controlling cold feeds;
- procedures to eliminate debris or oversized material;
- procedures for adding and verifying rates of each applicable mixture component (e.g., aggregate, asphalt binder, RAP, RAS, lime, liquid antistripping, WMA);
- procedures for reporting job control test results; and
- procedures to avoid segregation and drain-down in the silo.

- 4.3.4. **Loading and Transporting.** For loading and transporting, include:

- type and application method for release agents; and
- truck loading procedures to avoid segregation.

- 4.3.5. **Placement and Compaction.** For placement and compaction, include:

- proposed agenda for mandatory pre-paving meeting, including date and location;
- proposed paving plan (e.g., paving widths, joint offsets, and lift thicknesses);
- type and application method for release agents in the paver and on rollers, shovels, lutes, and other utensils;
- procedures for the transfer of mixture into the paver, while avoiding segregation and preventing material spillage;
- process to balance production, delivery, paving, and compaction to achieve continuous placement operations and good ride quality;
- paver operations (e.g., operation of wings, height of mixture in auger chamber) to avoid physical and thermal segregation and other surface irregularities; and
- procedures to construct quality longitudinal and transverse joints.

#### 4.4. Mixture Design.

4.4.1. **Design Requirements.** The Contractor will design the mixture using a Superpave Gyrotory Compactor (SGC). A Texas Gyrotory Compactor (TGC) may be used when shown on the plans. Use the dense-graded design procedure provided in [Tex-204-F](#). Design the mixture to meet the requirements listed in Tables 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 8, 9, and 10.

4.4.1.1. **Design Number of Gyration (Ndesign) When The SGC Is Used.** Design the mixture at 50 gyrations (Ndesign). Use a target laboratory-molded density of 96.0% to design the mixture; however, adjustments can be made to the Ndesign value as noted in Table 9. The Ndesign level may be reduced to at least 35 gyrations at the Contractor's discretion.

Use an approved laboratory from the Department's MPL to perform the Hamburg Wheel test, and provide results with the mixture design, or provide the laboratory mixture and request that the Department perform the Hamburg Wheel test. The Engineer will be allowed 10 working days to provide the Contractor with Hamburg Wheel test results on the laboratory mixture design.

The Engineer will provide the mixture design when shown on the plans. The Contractor may submit a new mixture design at any time during the project. The Engineer will verify and approve all mixture designs (JMF1) before the Contractor can begin production.

Provide the Engineer with a mixture design report using the Department-provided template. Include the following items in the report:

- the combined aggregate gradation, source, specific gravity, and percent of each material used;
- asphalt binder content and aggregate gradation of RAP and RAS stockpiles;
- the target laboratory-molded density (or Ndesign level when using the SGC);
- results of all applicable tests;
- the mixing and molding temperatures;
- the signature of the Level 2 person or persons that performed the design;
- the date the mixture design was performed; and
- a unique identification number for the mixture design.

**Table 8**  
**Master Gradation Limits (% Passing by Weight or Volume) and VMA Requirements**

Sieve Size	B Fine Base	C Coarse Surface	D Fine Surface	F Fine Mixture
2"	–	–	–	–
1-1/2"	100.0 <sup>1</sup>	–	–	–
1"	98.0–100.0	100.0 <sup>1</sup>	–	–
3/4"	84.0–98.0	95.0–100.0	100.0 <sup>1</sup>	–
1/2"	–	–	98.0–100.0	100.0 <sup>1</sup>
3/8"	60.0–80.0	70.0–85.0	85.0–100.0	98.0–100.0
#4	40.0–60.0	43.0–63.0	50.0–70.0	70.0–90.0
#8	29.0–43.0	32.0–44.0	35.0–46.0	38.0–48.0
#30	13.0–28.0	14.0–28.0	15.0–29.0	12.0–27.0
#50	6.0–20.0	7.0–21.0	7.0–20.0	6.0–19.0
#200	2.0–7.0	2.0–7.0	2.0–7.0	2.0–7.0
<b>Design VMA, % Minimum</b>				
–	13.0	14.0	15.0	16.0
<b>Production (Plant-Produced) VMA, % Minimum</b>				
–	12.5	13.5	14.5	15.5

1. Defined as maximum sieve size. No tolerance allowed.

**Table 9**  
**Laboratory Mixture Design Properties**

Mixture Property	Test Method	Requirement
Target laboratory-molded density, % (SGC)	<a href="#">Tex-207-F</a>	96.0
Design gyrations (N <sub>design</sub> for SGC)	<a href="#">Tex-241-F</a>	50 <sup>1</sup>
Indirect tensile strength (dry), psi	<a href="#">Tex-226-F</a>	85–200 <sup>2</sup>
Boil test <sup>3</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-530-C</a>	–

- Adjust within a range of 35–100 gyrations when shown on the plans or specification or when mutually agreed between the Engineer and Contractor.
- The Engineer may allow the IDT strength to exceed 200 psi if the corresponding Hamburg Wheel rut depth is greater than 3.0 mm and less than 12.5 mm.
- Used to establish baseline for comparison to production results. May be waived when approved.

**Table 10**  
**Hamburg Wheel Test Requirements**

High-Temperature Binder Grade	Test Method	Minimum # of Passes @ 12.5 mm <sup>1</sup> Rut Depth, Tested @ 50°C
PG 64 or lower	<a href="#">Tex-242-F</a>	10,000 <sup>2</sup>
PG 70		15,000 <sup>3</sup>
PG 76 or higher		20,000

- When the rut depth at the required minimum number of passes is less than 3 mm, the Engineer may require the Contractor to increase the target laboratory-molded density (TGC) by 0.5% to no more than 97.5% or lower the N<sub>design</sub> level (SGC) to at least 35 gyrations.
- May be decreased to at least 5,000 passes when shown on the plans.
- May be decreased to at least 10,000 passes when shown on the plans.

- 4.4.1.2. **Target Laboratory-Molded Density When The TGC Is Used.** Design the mixture at a 96.5% target laboratory-molded density. Increase the target laboratory-molded density to 97.0% or 97.5% at the Contractor's discretion or when shown on the plans or specification.
- 4.4.2. **Job-Mix Formula Approval.** The job-mix formula (JMF) is the combined aggregate gradation, target laboratory-molded density (or N<sub>design</sub> level), and target asphalt percentage used to establish target values for hot-mix production. JMF1 is the original laboratory mixture design used to produce the trial batch. When WMA is used, JMF1 may be designed and submitted to the Engineer without including the WMA additive. When WMA is used, document the additive or process used and recommended rate on the JMF1 submittal. The Engineer and the Contractor will verify JMF1 based on plant-produced mixture from the trial batch unless otherwise approved. The Engineer may accept an existing mixture design previously used on a Department project and may waive the trial batch to verify JMF1. The Department may require the Contractor to reimburse the Department for verification tests if more than 2 trial batches per design are required.
- 4.4.2.1. **Contractor's Responsibilities.**
- 4.4.2.1.1. **Providing Gyrotory Compactor.** Use a SGC calibrated in accordance with [Tex-241-F](#) to design the mixture in accordance with [Tex-204-F](#), Part IV, for molding production samples. Locate the SGC, if used, at the Engineer's field laboratory and make the SGC available to the Engineer for use in molding production samples. Furnish a TGC calibrated in accordance with [Tex-914-K](#) when shown on the plans to design the mixture in accordance with [Tex-204-F](#), Part I, for molding production samples.
- 4.4.2.1.2. **Gyrotory Compactor Correlation Factors.** Use [Tex-206-F](#), Part II, to perform a gyrotory compactor correlation when the Engineer uses a different gyrotory compactor. Apply the correlation factor to all subsequent production test results.
- 4.4.2.1.3. **Submitting JMF1.** Furnish a mix design report (JMF1) with representative samples of all component materials and request approval to produce the trial batch. Provide approximately 10,000 g of the design mixture if opting to have the Department perform the Hamburg Wheel test on the laboratory mixture, and request that the Department perform the test.



- 4.4.2.1.4. **Supplying Aggregates.** Provide approximately 40 lb. of each aggregate stockpile unless otherwise directed.
- 4.4.2.1.5. **Supplying Asphalt.** Provide at least 1 gal. of the asphalt material and enough quantities of any additives proposed for use.
- 4.4.2.1.6. **Ignition Oven Correction Factors.** Determine the aggregate and asphalt correction factors from the ignition oven in accordance with [Tex-236-F](#), Part II. Provide correction factors that are not more than 12 months old. Provide the Engineer with split samples of the mixtures before the trial batch production, including all additives (except water), and blank samples used to determine the correction factors for the ignition oven used for QA testing during production. Correction factors established from a previously approved mixture design may be used for the current mixture design if the mixture design and ignition oven are the same as previously used, unless otherwise directed.
- 4.4.2.1.7. **Boil Test.** Perform the test and retain the tested sample from [Tex-530-C](#) until completion of the project or as directed. Use this sample for comparison purposes during production. The Engineer may waive the requirement for the boil test.
- 4.4.2.1.8. **Trial Batch Production.** Provide a plant-produced trial batch upon receiving conditional approval of JMF1 and authorization to produce a trial batch, including the WMA additive or process if applicable, for verification testing of JMF1 and development of JMF2. Produce a trial batch mixture that meets the requirements in Table 4, Table 5, and Table 11. The Engineer may accept test results from recent production of the same mixture instead of a new trial batch.
- 4.4.2.1.9. **Trial Batch Production Equipment.** Use only equipment and materials proposed for use on the project to produce the trial batch.
- 4.4.2.1.10. **Trial Batch Quantity.** Produce enough quantity of the trial batch to ensure that the mixture meets the specification requirements.
- 4.4.2.1.11. **Number of Trial Batches.** Produce trial batches as necessary to obtain a mixture that meets the specification requirements.
- 4.4.2.1.12. **Trial Batch Sampling.** Obtain a representative sample of the trial batch and split it into 3 equal portions in accordance with [Tex-222-F](#). Label these portions as "Contractor," "Engineer," and "Referee." Deliver samples to the appropriate laboratory as directed.
- 4.4.2.1.13. **Trial Batch Testing.** Test the trial batch to ensure the mixture produced using the proposed JMF1 meets the mixture requirements in Table 11. Ensure the trial batch mixture is also in compliance with the Hamburg Wheel requirement in Table 10. Use a Department-approved laboratory to perform the Hamburg Wheel test on the trial batch mixture or request that the Department perform the Hamburg Wheel test. The Engineer will be allowed 10 working days to provide the Contractor with Hamburg Wheel test results on the trial batch. Provide the Engineer with a copy of the trial batch test results.
- 4.4.2.1.14. **Development of JMF2.** Evaluate the trial batch test results after the Engineer grants full approval of JMF1 based on results from the trial batch, determine the optimum mixture proportions, and submit as JMF2. Adjust the asphalt binder content or gradation to achieve the specified target laboratory-molded density. The asphalt binder content established for JMF2 is not required to be within any tolerance of the optimum asphalt binder content established for JMF1; however, mixture produced using JMF2 must meet the voids in mineral aggregates (VMA) requirements for production shown in Table 8. If the optimum asphalt binder content for JMF2 is more than 0.5% lower than the optimum asphalt binder content for JMF1, the Engineer may perform or require the Contractor to perform [Tex-226-F](#) on Lot 1 production to confirm the indirect tensile strength does not exceed 200 psi. Verify that JMF2 meets the mixture requirements in Table 5.
- 4.4.2.1.15. **Mixture Production.** Use JMF2 to produce Lot 1 as described in Section 3076.4.9.3.1.1., "Lot 1 Placement," after receiving approval for JMF2 and a passing result from the Department's or a Department-approved

laboratory's Hamburg Wheel test on the trial batch. If desired, proceed to Lot 1 production, once JMF2 is approved, at the Contractor's risk without receiving the results from the Department's Hamburg Wheel test on the trial batch.

Notify the Engineer if electing to proceed without Hamburg Wheel test results from the trial batch. Note that the Engineer may require up to the entire subplot of any mixture failing the Hamburg Wheel test to be removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense.

4.4.2.1.16. **Development of JMF3.** Evaluate the test results from Lot 1, determine the optimum mixture proportions, and submit as JMF3 for use in Lot 2.

4.4.2.1.17. **JMF Adjustments.** If JMF adjustments are necessary to achieve the specified requirements, make the adjustments before beginning a new lot. The adjusted JMF must:

- be provided to the Engineer in writing before the start of a new lot;
- be numbered in sequence to the previous JMF;
- meet the mixture requirements in Table 4 and Table 5;
- meet the master gradation limits shown in Table 8; and
- be within the operational tolerances of JMF2 listed in Table 11.

4.4.2.1.18. **Requesting Referee Testing.** Use referee testing, if needed, in accordance with Section 3076.4.9.1., "Referee Testing," to resolve testing differences with the Engineer.

**Table 11**  
**Operational Tolerances**

Description	Test Method	Allowable Difference Between Trial Batch and JMF1 Target	Allowable Difference from Current JMF Target	Allowable Difference between Contractor and Engineer <sup>1</sup>
Individual % retained for #8 sieve and larger	<a href="#">Tex-200-F</a> or <a href="#">Tex-236-F</a>	Must be Within Master Grading Limits in Table 8	$\pm 5.0^{2,3}$	$\pm 5.0$
Individual % retained for sieves smaller than #8 and larger than #200			$\pm 3.0^{2,3}$	$\pm 3.0$
% passing the #200 sieve			$\pm 2.0^{2,3}$	$\pm 1.6$
Asphalt binder content, %	<a href="#">Tex-236-F</a>	$\pm 0.5$	$\pm 0.3^3$	$\pm 0.3$
Laboratory-molded density, %	<a href="#">Tex-207-F</a>	$\pm 1.0$	$\pm 1.0$	$\pm 1.0$
In-place air voids, %		N/A	N/A	$\pm 1.0$
Laboratory-molded bulk specific gravity		N/A	N/A	$\pm 0.020$
VMA, %, min	<a href="#">Tex-204-F</a>	Note <sup>4</sup>	Note <sup>4</sup>	N/A
Theoretical maximum specific (Rice) gravity	<a href="#">Tex-227-F</a>	N/A	N/A	$\pm 0.020$

1. Contractor may request referee testing only when values exceed these tolerances.
2. When within these tolerances, mixture production gradations may fall outside the master grading limits; however, the % passing the #200 will be considered out of tolerance when outside the master grading limits.
3. Only applies to mixture produced for Lot 1 and higher.
4. Test and verify that Table 8 requirements are met.

4.4.2.2. **Engineer's Responsibilities.**

4.4.2.2.1. **Gyratory Compactor.** For SGC mixtures designed in accordance with [Tex-204-F](#), Part IV, the Engineer will use a Department SGC, calibrated in accordance with [Tex-241-F](#), to mold samples for laboratory mixture design verification. For molding trial batch and production specimens, the Engineer will use the Contractor-provided SGC at the field laboratory or provide and use a Department SGC at an alternate location. The Engineer will make the Contractor-provided SGC in the Department field laboratory available to the Contractor for molding verification samples.

For TGC mixtures designed in accordance with [Tex-204-F](#), Part I, the Engineer will use a Department TGC, calibrated in accordance with [Tex-914-K](#), to mold samples for trial batch and production testing. The Engineer will make the Department TGC and the Department field laboratory available to the Contractor for molding verification samples, if requested by the Contractor.

4.4.2.2.2. **Conditional Approval of JMF1 and Authorizing Trial Batch.** The Engineer will review and verify conformance of the following information within 2 working days of receipt:

- the Contractor's mix design report (JMF1);
- the Contractor-provided Hamburg Wheel test results;
- all required materials including aggregates, asphalt, additives, and recycled materials; and
- the mixture specifications.

The Engineer will grant the Contractor conditional approval of JMF1 if the information provided on the paper copy of JMF1 indicates that the Contractor's mixture design meets the specifications. When the Contractor does not provide Hamburg Wheel test results with laboratory mixture design, 10 working days are allowed for conditional approval of JMF1. The Engineer will base full approval of JMF1 on the test results on mixture from the trial batch.

Unless waived, the Engineer will determine the Micro-Deval abrasion loss in accordance with Section 3076.2.1.1.2., "Micro-Deval Abrasion." If the Engineer's test results are pending after two working days, conditional approval of JMF1 will still be granted within two working days of receiving JMF1. When the Engineer's test results become available, they will be used for specification compliance.

After conditionally approving JMF1, including either Contractor- or Department-supplied Hamburg Wheel test results, the Contractor is authorized to produce a trial batch.

4.4.2.2.3. **Hamburg Wheel Testing of JMF1.** If the Contractor requests the option to have the Department perform the Hamburg Wheel test on the laboratory mixture, the Engineer will mold samples in accordance with [Tex-242-F](#) to verify compliance with the Hamburg Wheel test requirement in Table 10.

4.4.2.2.4. **Ignition Oven Correction Factors.** The Engineer will use the split samples provided by the Contractor to determine the aggregate and asphalt correction factors for the ignition oven used for QA testing during production in accordance with [Tex-236-F](#), Part II. Provide correction factors that are not more than 12 months old.

4.4.2.2.5. **Testing the Trial Batch.** Within 1 full working day, the Engineer will sample and test the trial batch to ensure that the mixture meets the requirements in Table 11. If the Contractor requests the option to have the Department perform the Hamburg Wheel test on the trial batch mixture, the Engineer will mold samples in accordance with [Tex-242-F](#) to verify compliance with the Hamburg Wheel test requirement in Table 10.

The Engineer will have the option to perform the following tests on the trial batch:

- [Tex-226-F](#), to verify that the indirect tensile strength meets the requirement shown in Table 9; and
- [Tex-530-C](#), to retain and use for comparison purposes during production.

4.4.2.2.6. **Full Approval of JMF1.** The Engineer will grant full approval of JMF1 and authorize the Contractor to proceed with developing JMF2 if the Engineer's results for the trial batch meet the requirements in Table 11. The Engineer will notify the Contractor that an additional trial batch is required if the trial batch does not meet these requirements.

4.4.2.2.7. **Approval of JMF2.** The Engineer will approve JMF2 within one working day if the mixture meets the requirements in Table 5 and the gradation meets the master grading limits shown in Table 8. The asphalt binder content established for JMF2 is not required to be within any tolerance of the optimum asphalt binder content established for JMF1; however, mixture produced using JMF2 must meet the VMA requirements shown in Table 8. If the optimum asphalt binder content for JMF2 is more than 0.5% lower than the optimum asphalt binder content for JMF1, the Engineer may perform or require the Contractor to perform [Tex-226-F](#) on Lot 1 production to confirm the indirect tensile strength does not exceed 200 psi.

4.4.2.2.8. **Approval of Lot 1 Production.** The Engineer will authorize the Contractor to proceed with Lot 1 production (using JMF2) as soon as a passing result is achieved from the Department's or a Department-approved laboratory's Hamburg Wheel test on the trial batch. The Contractor may proceed at its own risk with Lot 1 production without the results from the Hamburg Wheel test on the trial batch.

If the Department's or Department-approved laboratory's sample from the trial batch fails the Hamburg Wheel test, the Engineer will suspend production until further Hamburg Wheel tests meet the specified values. The Engineer may require up to the entire subplot of any mixture failing the Hamburg Wheel test be removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense.

4.4.2.2.9. **Approval of JMF3 and Subsequent JMF Changes.** JMF3 and subsequent JMF changes are approved if they meet the mixture requirements shown in Table 4, Table 5, and the master grading limits shown in Table 8, and are within the operational tolerances of JMF2 shown in Table 11.

4.5. **Production Operations.** Perform a new trial batch when the plant or plant location is changed. Take corrective action and receive approval to proceed after any production suspension for noncompliance to the specification. Submit a new mix design and perform a new trial batch when the asphalt binder content of:

- any RAP stockpile used in the mix is more than 0.5% higher than the value shown on the mixture design report; or
- RAS stockpile used in the mix is more than 2.0% higher than the value shown on the mixture design report.

4.5.1. **Storage and Heating of Materials.** Do not heat the asphalt binder above the temperatures specified in Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions," or outside the manufacturer's recommended values. Provide the Engineer with daily records of asphalt binder and hot-mix asphalt discharge temperatures (in legible and discernible increments) in accordance with Item 320, "Equipment for Asphalt Concrete Pavement," unless otherwise directed. Do not store mixture for a period long enough to affect the quality of the mixture, nor in any case longer than 12 hr. unless otherwise approved.

4.5.2. **Mixing and Discharge of Materials.** Notify the Engineer of the target discharge temperature and produce the mixture within 25°F of the target. Monitor the temperature of the material in the truck before shipping to ensure that it does not exceed the maximum production temperatures listed in Table 12 (or 275°F for WMA). The Department will not pay for or allow placement of any mixture produced above the maximum production temperatures listed in Table 12.

**Table 12**  
**Maximum Production Temperature**

High-Temperature Binder Grade <sup>1</sup>	Maximum Production Temperature
PG 64	325°F
PG 70	335°F
PG 76	345°F

1. The high-temperature binder grade refers to the high-temperature grade of the virgin asphalt binder used to produce the mixture.

Produce WMA within the target discharge temperature range of 215°F and 275°F when WMA is required. Take corrective action any time the discharge temperature of the WMA exceeds the target discharge range. The Engineer may suspend production operations if the Contractor's corrective action is not successful at controlling the production temperature within the target discharge range. Note that when WMA is produced, it may be necessary to adjust burners to ensure complete combustion such that no burner fuel residue remains in the mixture.

Control the mixing time and temperature so that substantially all moisture is removed from the mixture before discharging from the plant. Determine the moisture content, if requested, by oven-drying in accordance with

[Tex-212-F](#), Part II, and verify that the mixture contains no more than 0.2% of moisture by weight. Obtain the sample immediately after discharging the mixture into the truck, and perform the test promptly.

- 4.6. **Hauling Operations.** Clean all truck beds before use to ensure that mixture is not contaminated. Use a release agent shown on the Department's MPL to coat the inside bed of the truck when necessary.

Use equipment for hauling as defined in Section 3076.4.7.3.3., "Hauling Equipment." Use other hauling equipment only when allowed.

- 4.7. **Placement Operations.** Collect haul tickets from each load of mixture delivered to the project and provide the Department's copy to the Engineer approximately every hour, or as directed. Use a hand-held thermal camera or infrared thermometer, when a thermal imaging system is not used, to measure and record the internal temperature of the mixture as discharged from the truck or Material Transfer Device (MTD) before or as the mix enters the paver and an approximate station number or GPS coordinates on each ticket. Calculate the daily yield and cumulative yield for the specified lift and provide to the Engineer at the end of paving operations for each day unless otherwise directed. The Engineer may suspend production if the Contractor fails to produce and provide haul tickets and yield calculations by the end of paving operations for each day.

Prepare the surface by removing raised pavement markers and objectionable material such as moisture, dirt, sand, leaves, and other loose impediments from the surface before placing mixture. Remove vegetation from pavement edges. Place the mixture to meet the typical section requirements and produce a smooth, finished surface with a uniform appearance and texture. Offset longitudinal joints of successive courses of hot-mix by at least 6 in. Place mixture so that longitudinal joints on the surface course coincide with lane lines and are not placed in the wheel path, or as directed. Ensure that all finished surfaces will drain properly. Place the mixture at the rate or thickness shown on the plans. The Engineer will use the guidelines in Table 13 to determine the compacted lift thickness of each layer when multiple lifts are required. The thickness determined is based on the rate of 110 lb./sq. yd. for each inch of pavement unless otherwise shown on the plans.

**Table 13**  
**Compacted Lift Thickness and Required Core Height**

Mixture Type	Compacted Lift Thickness Guidelines		Minimum Untrimmed Core Height (in.) Eligible for Testing
	Minimum (in.)	Maximum (in.)	
B	2.50	5.00	1.75
C	2.00	4.00	1.50
D	1.50	3.00	1.25
F	1.25	2.50	1.25

- 4.7.1. **Weather Conditions.**

- 4.7.1.1. **When Using a Thermal Imaging System.** Place mixture when the roadway surface is dry and the roadway surface temperature is at or above the temperatures listed in Table 14A. The Engineer may restrict the Contractor from paving surface mixtures if the ambient temperature is likely to drop below 32°F within 12 hr. of paving. Place mixtures only when weather conditions and moisture conditions of the roadway surface are suitable as determined by the Engineer. Provide output data from the thermal imaging system to demonstrate to the Engineer that no recurring severe thermal segregation exists in accordance with Section 3076.4.7.3.1.2., "Thermal Imaging System."

**Table 14A**  
**Minimum Pavement Surface Temperatures**

High-Temperature Binder Grade <sup>1</sup>	Minimum Pavement Surface Temperatures (°F)	
	Subsurface Layers or Night Paving Operations	Surface Layers Placed in Daylight Operations
PG 64	35	40
PG 70	45 <sup>2</sup>	50 <sup>2</sup>
PG 76	45 <sup>2</sup>	50 <sup>2</sup>

1. The high-temperature binder grade refers to the high-temperature grade of the virgin asphalt binder used to produce the mixture.
2. Contractors may pave at temperatures 10°F lower than these values when a chemical WMA additive is used as a compaction aid in the mixture or when using WMA.

## 4.7.1.2.

**When Not Using a Thermal Imaging System.** When using a thermal camera instead of the thermal imaging system, place mixture when the roadway surface temperature is at or above the temperatures listed in Table 14B unless otherwise approved or as shown on the plans. Measure the roadway surface temperature with a hand-held thermal camera or infrared thermometer. The Engineer may allow mixture placement to begin before the roadway surface reaches the required temperature if conditions are such that the roadway surface will reach the required temperature within 2 hr. of beginning placement operations. Place mixtures only when weather conditions and moisture conditions of the roadway surface are suitable as determined by the Engineer. The Engineer may restrict the Contractor from paving if the ambient temperature is likely to drop below 32°F within 12 hr. of paving.

**Table 14B**  
**Minimum Pavement Surface Temperatures**

High-Temperature Binder Grade <sup>1</sup>	Minimum Pavement Surface Temperatures (°F)	
	Subsurface Layers or Night Paving Operations	Surface Layers Placed in Daylight Operations
PG 64	45	50
PG 70	55 <sup>2</sup>	60 <sup>2</sup>
PG 76	60 <sup>2</sup>	60 <sup>2</sup>

1. The high-temperature binder grade refers to the high-temperature grade of the virgin asphalt binder used to produce the mixture.
2. Contractors may pave at temperatures 10°F lower than these values when a chemical WMA additive is used as a compaction aid in the mixture, when using WMA, or utilizing a paving process with equipment that eliminates thermal segregation. In such cases, for each sublot and in the presence of the Engineer, use a hand-held thermal camera operated in accordance with [Tex-244-F](#) to demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Engineer that the uncompacted mat has no more than 10°F of thermal segregation.

## 4.7.2.

**Tack Coat.**

## 4.7.2.1.

**Application.** Clean the surface before placing the tack coat. The Engineer will set the rate between 0.04 and 0.10 gal. of residual asphalt per square yard of surface area. Apply a uniform tack coat at the specified rate unless otherwise directed. Apply the tack coat in a uniform manner to avoid streaks and other irregular patterns. Apply the tack coat to all surfaces that will come in contact with the subsequent HMA placement, unless otherwise directed. Allow adequate time for emulsion to break completely before placing any material. Prevent splattering of tack coat when placed adjacent to curb, gutter, and structures. Do not dilute emulsified asphalts at the terminal, in the field, or at any other location before use.

## 4.7.2.2.

**Sampling.** The Engineer will obtain at least one sample of the tack coat binder per project in accordance with [Tex-500-C](#), Part III, and test it to verify compliance with Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions." The Engineer will notify the Contractor when the sampling will occur and will witness the collection of the sample from the asphalt distributor immediately before use.

For emulsions, the Engineer may test as often as necessary to ensure the residual of the emulsion is greater than or equal to the specification requirement in Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions."

- 4.7.3. **Lay-Down Operations.** Use the placement temperatures in Table 15 to establish the minimum placement temperature of the mixture delivered to the paver.

**Table 15**  
**Minimum Mixture Placement Temperature**

High-Temperature Binder Grade <sup>1</sup>	Minimum Placement Temperature (Before Entering Paver) <sup>2,3</sup>
PG 64	260°F
PG 70	270°F
PG 76	280°F

1. The high-temperature binder grade refers to the high-temperature grade of the virgin asphalt binder used to produce the mixture.
2. Minimum placement temperatures may be reduced 10°F if using a chemical WMA additive as a compaction aid.
3. When using WMA, the minimum placement temperature is 215°F.

- 4.7.3.1. **Thermal Profile.** Use a hand-held thermal camera or a thermal imaging system to obtain a continuous thermal profile in accordance with [Tex-244-F](#). Thermal profiles are not applicable in areas described in Section 3076.4.9.3.1.4., “Miscellaneous Areas.”
- 4.7.3.1.1. **Thermal Segregation.**
- 4.7.3.1.1.1. **Moderate.** Any areas that have a temperature differential greater than 25°F, but not exceeding 50°F, are deemed as moderate thermal segregation.
- 4.7.3.1.1.2. **Severe.** Any areas that have a temperature differential greater than 50°F are deemed as severe thermal segregation.
- 4.7.3.1.2. **Thermal Imaging System.** Review the output results when a thermal imaging system is used, and provide the automated report described in [Tex-244-F](#) to the Engineer daily unless otherwise directed. Modify the paving process as necessary to eliminate any recurring (moderate or severe) thermal segregation identified by the thermal imaging system. The Engineer may suspend paving operations if the Contractor cannot successfully modify the paving process to eliminate recurring severe thermal segregation. Density profiles are not required and not applicable when using a thermal imaging system. Provide the Engineer with electronic copies of all daily data files that can be used with the thermal imaging system software to generate temperature profile plots daily or upon completion of the project or as requested by the Engineer.
- 4.7.3.1.3. **Thermal Camera.** When using a thermal camera instead of the thermal imaging system, take immediate corrective action to eliminate recurring moderate thermal segregation when a hand-held thermal camera is used. Evaluate areas with moderate thermal segregation by performing density profiles in accordance with Section 3076.4.9.3.3.2., “Segregation (Density Profile).” Provide the Engineer with the thermal profile of every subplot within one working day of the completion of each lot. When requested by the Engineer, provide the thermal images generated using the thermal camera. Report the results of each thermal profile in accordance with Section 3076.4.2., “Reporting and Responsibilities.” The Engineer will use a hand-held thermal camera to obtain a thermal profile at least once per project. No production or placement payment adjustments greater than 1.000 will be paid for any subplot that contains severe thermal segregation. Suspend operations and take immediate corrective action to eliminate severe thermal segregation unless otherwise directed. Resume operations when the Engineer determines that subsequent production will meet the requirements of this Section. Evaluate areas with severe thermal segregation by performing density profiles in accordance with Section 3076.4.9.3.3.2., “Segregation (Density Profile).” Remove and replace the material in any areas that have both severe thermal segregation and a failing result for Segregation (Density Profile) unless otherwise directed. The subplot in question may receive a production and placement payment adjustment greater than 1.000, if applicable, when the defective material is successfully removed and replaced.
- 4.7.3.2. **Windrow Operations.** Operate windrow pickup equipment so that when hot-mix is placed in windrows, substantially all the mixture deposited on the roadbed is picked up and loaded into the paver.

4.7.3.3. **Hauling Equipment.** Use belly dumps, live bottom, or end dump trucks to haul and transfer mixture; however, with exception of paving miscellaneous areas, end dump trucks are only allowed when used in conjunction with an MTD with remixing capability or when a thermal imaging system is used unless otherwise allowed.

4.7.3.4. **Screed Heaters.** Turn off screed heaters to prevent overheating of the mat if the paver stops for more than 5 min. The Engineer may evaluate the suspect area in accordance with Section 3076.4.9.3.3.4., "Recovered Asphalt Dynamic Shear Rheometer (DSR)," if the screed heater remains on for more than 5 min. while the paver is stopped.

4.8. **Compaction.** Compact the pavement uniformly to contain between 3.8% and 8.5% in-place air voids. Take immediate corrective action to bring the operation within 3.8% and 8.5% when the in-place air voids exceed the range of these tolerances. The Engineer will allow paving to resume when the proposed corrective action is likely to yield between 3.8% and 8.5% in-place air voids.

Obtain cores in areas placed under Exempt Production, as directed, at locations determined by the Engineer. The Engineer may test these cores and suspend operations or require removal and replacement if the in-place air voids are less than 2.7% or more than 9.9%. Areas defined in Section 3076.4.9.3.1.4., "Miscellaneous Areas," are not subject to in-place air void determination.

Furnish the type, size, and number of rollers required for compaction as approved. Use additional rollers as required to remove any roller marks. Use only water or an approved release agent on rollers, tamps, and other compaction equipment unless otherwise directed.

Use the control strip method shown in [Tex-207-F](#), Part IV, on the first day of production to establish the rolling pattern that will produce the desired in-place air voids unless otherwise directed.

Use tamps to thoroughly compact the edges of the pavement along curbs, headers, and similar structures and in locations that will not allow thorough compaction with rollers. The Engineer may require rolling with a trench roller on widened areas, in trenches, and in other limited areas.

Complete all compaction operations before the pavement temperature drops below 160°F unless otherwise allowed. The Engineer may allow compaction with a light finish roller operated in static mode for pavement temperatures below 160°F.

Allow the compacted pavement to cool to 160°F or lower before opening to traffic unless otherwise directed. Sprinkle the finished mat with water or limewater, when directed, to expedite opening the roadway to traffic.

4.9. **Acceptance Plan.** Payment adjustments for the material will be in accordance with Article 3076.6., "Payment."

Sample and test the hot-mix on a lot and subplot basis. Suspend production until test results or other information indicates to the satisfaction of the Engineer that the next material produced or placed will result in payment factors of at least 1.000, if the production payment factor given in Section 3076.6.1., "Production Payment Adjustment Factors," for two consecutive lots or the placement pay factor given in Section 3076.6.2., "Placement Payment Adjustment Factors," for two consecutive lots is below 1.000.

4.9.1. **Referee Testing.** The Materials and Tests Division is the referee laboratory. The Contractor may request referee testing if a "remove and replace" condition is determined based on the Engineer's test results, or if the differences between Contractor and Engineer test results exceed the maximum allowable difference shown in Table 11 and the differences cannot be resolved. The Contractor may also request referee testing if the Engineer's test results require suspension of production and the Contractor's test results are within specification limits. Make the request within five working days after receiving test results and cores from the Engineer. Referee tests will be performed only on the subplot in question and only for the particular tests in question. Allow 10 working days from the time the referee laboratory receives the samples for test results to



be reported. The Department may require the Contractor to reimburse the Department for referee tests if more than three referee tests per project are required and the Engineer's test results are closer to the referee test results than the Contractor's test results.

The Materials and Tests Division will determine the laboratory-molded density based on the molded specific gravity and the maximum theoretical specific gravity of the referee sample. The in-place air voids will be determined based on the bulk specific gravity of the cores, as determined by the referee laboratory and the Engineer's average maximum theoretical specific gravity for the lot. With the exception of "remove and replace" conditions, referee test results are final and will establish payment adjustment factors for the subplot in question. The Contractor may decline referee testing and accept the Engineer's test results when the placement payment adjustment factor for any subplot results in a "remove and replace" condition. Placement sublots subject to be removed and replaced will be further evaluated in accordance with Section 3076.6.2.2., "Placement Sublots Subject to Removal and Replacement."

#### 4.9.2. **Production Acceptance.**

4.9.2.1. **Production Lot.** A production lot consists of four equal sublots. The default quantity for Lot 1 is 1,000 tons; however, when requested by the Contractor, the Engineer may increase the quantity for Lot 1 to no more than 4,000 tons. The Engineer will select subsequent lot sizes based on the anticipated daily production such that approximately three to four sublots are produced each day. The lot size will be between 1,000 tons and 4,000 tons. The Engineer may change the lot size before the Contractor begins any lot.

If the optimum asphalt binder content for JMF2 is more than 0.5% lower than the optimum asphalt binder content for JMF1, the Engineer may perform or require the Contractor to perform [Tex-226-F](#) on Lot 1 to confirm the indirect tensile strength does not exceed 200 psi. Take corrective action to bring the mixture within specification compliance if the indirect tensile strength exceeds 200 psi unless otherwise directed.

4.9.2.1.1. **Incomplete Production Lots.** If a lot is begun but cannot be completed, such as on the last day of production or in other circumstances deemed appropriate, the Engineer may close the lot. Adjust the payment for the incomplete lot in accordance with Section 3076.6.1., "Production Payment Adjustment Factors." Close all lots within five working days unless otherwise allowed.

#### 4.9.2.2. **Production Sampling.**

4.9.2.2.1. **Mixture Sampling.** Obtain hot-mix samples from trucks at the plant in accordance with [Tex-222-F](#). The sampler will split each sample into three equal portions in accordance with [Tex-200-F](#) and label these portions as "Contractor," "Engineer," and "Referee." The Engineer will perform or witness the sample splitting and take immediate possession of the samples labeled "Engineer" and "Referee." The Engineer will maintain the custody of the samples labeled "Engineer" and "Referee" until the Department's testing is completed.

4.9.2.2.1.1. **Random Sample.** At the beginning of the project, the Engineer will select random numbers for all production sublots. Determine sample locations in accordance with [Tex-225-F](#). Take one sample for each subplot at the randomly selected location. The Engineer will perform or witness the sampling of production sublots.

4.9.2.2.1.2. **Blind Sample.** For one subplot per lot, the Engineer will obtain and test a "blind" sample instead of the random sample collected by the Contractor. Test either the "blind" or the random sample; however, referee testing (if applicable) will be based on a comparison of results from the "blind" sample. The location of the Engineer's "blind" sample will not be disclosed to the Contractor. The Engineer's "blind" sample may be randomly selected in accordance with [Tex-225-F](#) for any subplot or selected at the discretion of the Engineer. The Engineer will use the Contractor's split sample for sublots not sampled by the Engineer.

4.9.2.2.2. **Informational Shear Bond Strength Testing.** Select one random subplot from Lot 2 or higher for shear bond strength testing. Obtain full depth cores in accordance with [Tex-249-F](#). Label the cores with the Control Section Job (CSJ), producer of the tack coat, mix type, shot rate, lot, and subplot number and provide to the

Engineer. The Engineer will ship the cores to the Materials and Tests Division or district laboratory for shear bond strength testing. Results from these tests will not be used for specification compliance.

- 4.9.2.2.3. **Asphalt Binder Sampling.** Obtain a 1-qt. sample of the asphalt binder witnessed by the Engineer for each lot of mixture produced. The Contractor will notify the Engineer when the sampling will occur. Obtain the sample at approximately the same time the mixture random sample is obtained. Sample from a port located immediately upstream from the mixing drum or pug mill and upstream from the introduction of any additives in accordance with [Tex-500-C](#), Part II. Label the can with the corresponding lot and subplot numbers, producer, producer facility location, grade, district, date sampled, and project information including highway and CSJ. The Engineer will retain these samples for one year. The Engineer may also obtain independent samples. If obtaining an independent asphalt binder sample and upon request of the Contractor, the Engineer will split a sample of the asphalt binder with the Contractor.

At least once per project, the Engineer will collect split samples of each binder grade and source used. The Engineer will submit one split sample to MTD to verify compliance with Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions" and will retain the other split sample for one year.

- 4.9.2.3. **Production Testing.** The Contractor and Engineer must perform production tests in accordance with Table 16. The Contractor has the option to verify the Engineer's test results on split samples provided by the Engineer. Determine compliance with operational tolerances listed in Table 11 for all sublots.

Take immediate corrective action if the Engineer's laboratory-molded density on any subplot is less than 95.0% or greater than 97.0% to bring the mixture within these tolerances. The Engineer may suspend operations if the Contractor's corrective actions do not produce acceptable results. The Engineer will allow production to resume when the proposed corrective action is likely to yield acceptable results.

The Engineer may allow alternate methods for determining the asphalt binder content and aggregate gradation if the aggregate mineralogy is such that [Tex-236-F](#), Part I does not yield reliable results. Provide evidence that results from [Tex-236-F](#), Part I are not reliable before requesting permission to use an alternate method unless otherwise directed. Use the applicable test procedure as directed if an alternate test method is allowed.

**Table 16**  
**Production and Placement Testing Frequency**

Description	Test Method	Minimum Contractor Testing Frequency	Minimum Engineer Testing Frequency
Individual % retained for #8 sieve and larger	<a href="#">Tex-200-F</a> or <a href="#">Tex-236-F</a>	1 per subplot	1 per 12 sublots <sup>1</sup>
Individual % retained for sieves smaller than #8 and larger than #200			
% passing the #200 sieve			
Laboratory-molded density	<a href="#">Tex-207-F</a>	N/A	1 per subplot <sup>1</sup>
Laboratory-molded bulk specific gravity			
In-place air voids			
VMA	<a href="#">Tex-204-F</a>	1 per subplot	1 per project
Segregation (density profile) <sup>2</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-207-F</a> , Part V		
Longitudinal joint density	<a href="#">Tex-207-F</a> , Part VII	When directed	1 per subplot <sup>1</sup>
Moisture content	<a href="#">Tex-212-F</a> , Part II	N/A	
Theoretical maximum specific (Rice) gravity	<a href="#">Tex-227-F</a>	1 per subplot	1 per lot <sup>1</sup>
Asphalt binder content	<a href="#">Tex-236-F</a>	N/A	1 per project
Hamburg Wheel test	<a href="#">Tex-242-F</a>	N/A	
Recycled Asphalt Shingles (RAS) <sup>3</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-217-F</a> , Part III	1 per subplot	
Thermal profile <sup>2</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-244-F</a>	1 per lot (sample only) <sup>4</sup>	
Asphalt binder sampling and testing	<a href="#">Tex-500-C</a> , Part II	N/A	
Tack coat sampling and testing	<a href="#">Tex-500-C</a> , Part III	1 per lot	
Boil test <sup>5</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-530-C</a>	1 per project (sample only)	
Shear Bond Strength Test <sup>6</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-249-F</a>		

1. For production defined in Section 3076.4.9.4., "Exempt Production," the Engineer will test one per day if 100 tons or more are produced. For Exempt Production, no testing is required when less than 100 tons are produced.
2. Not required when a thermal imaging system is used.
3. Testing performed by the Materials and Tests Division or designated laboratory.
4. Obtain witnessed by the Engineer. The Engineer will retain these samples for one year.
5. The Engineer may reduce or waive the sampling and testing requirements based on a satisfactory test history.
6. Testing performed by the Materials and Tests Division or District for informational purposes only.

4.9.2.4. **Operational Tolerances.** Control the production process within the operational tolerances listed in Table 11. When production is suspended, the Engineer will allow production to resume when test results or other information indicates the next mixture produced will be within the operational tolerances.

4.9.2.4.1. **Gradation.** Suspend operation and take corrective action if any aggregate is retained on the maximum sieve size shown in Table 8. A subplot is defined as out of tolerance if either the Engineer's or the Contractor's test results are out of operational tolerance. Suspend production when test results for gradation exceed the operational tolerances in Table 11 for three consecutive sublots on the same sieve or four consecutive sublots on any sieve unless otherwise directed. The consecutive sublots may be from more than one lot.

4.9.2.4.2. **Asphalt Binder Content.** A subplot is defined as out of operational tolerance if either the Engineer's or the Contractor's test results exceed the values listed in Table 11. No production or placement payment adjustments greater than 1.000 will be paid for any subplot that is out of operational tolerance for asphalt binder content. Suspend production and shipment of the mixture if the Engineer's or the Contractor's asphalt binder content deviates from the current JMF by more than 0.5% for any subplot.

4.9.2.4.3. **Voids in Mineral Aggregates (VMA).** The Engineer will determine the VMA for every subplot. For sublots when the Engineer does not determine asphalt binder content, the Engineer will use the asphalt binder content results from QC testing performed by the Contractor to determine VMA.

Take immediate corrective action if the VMA value for any subplot is less than the minimum VMA requirement for production listed in Table 8. Suspend production and shipment of the mixture if the Engineer's VMA results on two consecutive sublots are below the minimum VMA requirement for production listed in Table 8. No production or placement payment adjustments greater than 1.000 will be paid for any subplot that does not

meet the minimum VMA requirement for production listed in Table 8 based on the Engineer's VMA determination.

Suspend production and shipment of the mixture if the Engineer's VMA result is more than 0.5% below the minimum VMA requirement for production listed in Table 8. In addition to suspending production, the Engineer may require removal and replacement or may allow the subplot to be left in place without payment.

- 4.9.2.4.4. **Hamburg Wheel Test.** The Engineer may perform a Hamburg Wheel test at any time during production, including when the boil test indicates a change in quality from the materials submitted for JMF1. In addition to testing production samples, the Engineer may obtain cores and perform Hamburg Wheel tests on any areas of the roadway where rutting is observed. Suspend production until further Hamburg Wheel tests meet the specified values when the production or core samples fail the Hamburg Wheel test criteria in Table 10. Core samples, if taken, will be obtained from the center of the finished mat or other areas excluding the vehicle wheel paths. The Engineer may require up to the entire subplot of any mixture failing the Hamburg Wheel test to be removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense.

If the Department's or Department approved laboratory's Hamburg Wheel test results in a "remove and replace" condition, the Contractor may request that the Department confirm the results by re-testing the failing material. The Materials and Tests Division will perform the Hamburg Wheel tests and determine the final disposition of the material in question based on the Department's test results.

- 4.9.2.5. **Individual Loads of Hot-Mix.** The Engineer can reject individual truckloads of hot-mix. When a load of hot-mix is rejected for reasons other than temperature, contamination, or excessive uncoated particles, the Contractor may request that the rejected load be tested. Make this request within 4 hr. of rejection. The Engineer will sample and test the mixture. If test results are within the operational tolerances shown in Table 11, payment will be made for the load. If test results are not within operational tolerances, no payment will be made for the load.

4.9.3. **Placement Acceptance.**

- 4.9.3.1. **Placement Lot.** A placement lot consists of four placement sublots. A placement subplot consists of the area placed during a production subplot.

- 4.9.3.1.1. **Lot 1 Placement.** Placement payment adjustments greater than 1.000 for Lot 1 will be in accordance with Section 3076.6.2., "Placement Payment Adjustment Factors"; however, no placement adjustment less than 1.000 will be assessed for any subplot placed in Lot 1 when the in-place air voids are greater than or equal to 2.7% and less than or equal to 9.9%. Remove and replace any subplot with in-place air voids less than 2.7% or greater than 9.9%.

- 4.9.3.1.2. **Incomplete Placement Lots.** An incomplete placement lot consists of the area placed as described in Section 3076.4.9.2.1.1., "Incomplete Production Lots," excluding areas defined in Section 3076.4.9.3.1.4., "Miscellaneous Areas." Placement sampling is required if the random sample plan for production resulted in a sample being obtained from an incomplete production subplot.

- 4.9.3.1.3. **Shoulders, Ramps, Etc.** Shoulders, ramps, intersections, acceleration lanes, deceleration lanes, and turn lanes are subject to in-place air void determination and payment adjustments unless designated on the plans as not eligible for in-place air void determination. Intersections may be considered miscellaneous areas when determined by the Engineer.

- 4.9.3.1.4. **Miscellaneous Areas.** Miscellaneous areas include areas that typically involve significant handwork or discontinuous paving operations, such as temporary detours, driveways, mailbox turnouts, crossovers, gores, spot level-up areas, and other similar areas. Temporary detours are subject to in-place air void determination when shown on the plans. Miscellaneous areas also include level-ups and thin overlays when the layer thickness specified on the plans is less than the minimum untrimmed core height eligible for testing shown in Table 13. The specified layer thickness is based on the rate of 110 lb./sq. yd. for each inch of

pavement unless another rate is shown on the plans. When “level up” is listed as part of the item bid description code, a payment adjustment factor of 1.000 will be assigned for all placement sublots as described in Article 3076.6, “Payment.” Miscellaneous areas are not eligible for random placement sampling locations. Compact miscellaneous areas in accordance with Section 3076.4.8., “Compaction.” Miscellaneous areas are not subject to in-place air void determination, thermal profiles testing, segregation (density profiles), or longitudinal joint density evaluations.

#### 4.9.3.2.

**Placement Sampling.** The Engineer will select random numbers for all placement sublots at the beginning of the project. The Engineer will provide the Contractor with the placement random numbers immediately after the subplot is completed. Mark the roadway location at the completion of each subplot and record the station number. Determine one random sample location for each placement subplot in accordance with [Tex-225-F](#). Adjust the random sample location by no more than necessary to achieve a 2-ft. clearance if the location is within 2 ft. of a joint or pavement edge.

Shoulders, ramps, intersections, acceleration lanes, deceleration lanes, and turn lanes are always eligible for selection as a random sample location; however, if a random sample location falls on one of these areas and the area is designated on the plans as not subject to in-place air void determination, cores will not be taken for the subplot and a 1.000 pay factor will be assigned to that subplot.

Provide the equipment and means to obtain and trim roadway cores on site. On-site is defined as in close proximity to where the cores are taken. Obtain the cores within one working day of the time the placement subplot is completed unless otherwise approved. Obtain two 6-in. diameter cores side-by-side from within 1 ft. of the random location provided for the placement subplot. For Type D and Type F mixtures, 4-in. diameter cores are allowed. Mark the cores for identification, measure and record the untrimmed core height, and provide the information to the Engineer. The Engineer will witness the coring operation and measurement of the core thickness. Visually inspect each core and verify that the current paving layer is bonded to the underlying layer. Take corrective action if an adequate bond does not exist between the current and underlying layer to ensure that an adequate bond will be achieved during subsequent placement operations.

Trim the cores immediately after obtaining the cores from the roadway in accordance with [Tex-251-F](#) if the core heights meet the minimum untrimmed value listed in Table 13. Trim the cores on site in the presence of the Engineer. Use a permanent marker or paint pen to record the lot and subplot numbers on each core as well as the designation as Core A or B. The Engineer may require additional information to be marked on the core and may choose to sign or initial the core. The Engineer will take custody of the cores immediately after witnessing the trimming of the cores and will retain custody of the cores until the Department’s testing is completed. Before turning the trimmed cores over to the Engineer, the Contractor may wrap the trimmed cores or secure them in a manner that will reduce the risk of possible damage occurring during transport by the Engineer. After testing, the Engineer will return the cores to the Contractor.

The Engineer may have the cores transported back to the Department’s laboratory at the HMA plant via the Contractor’s haul truck or other designated vehicle. In such cases where the cores will be out of the Engineer’s possession during transport, the Engineer will use Department-provided security bags and the Roadway Core Custody protocol located at <http://www.txdot.gov/business/specifications.htm> to provide a secure means and process that protects the integrity of the cores during transport.

Decide whether to include the pair of cores in the air void determination for that subplot if the core height before trimming is less than the minimum untrimmed value shown in Table 13. Trim the cores as described above before delivering to the Engineer if electing to have the cores included in the air void determination. Deliver untrimmed cores to the Engineer and inform the Engineer of the decision to not have the cores included in air void determination if electing to not have the cores included in air void determination. The placement pay factor for the subplot will be 1.000 if cores will not be included in air void determination.

Instead of the Contractor trimming the cores on site immediately after coring, the Engineer and the Contractor may mutually agree to have the trimming operations performed at an alternate location such as a field laboratory or other similar location. In such cases, the Engineer will take possession of the cores

immediately after they are obtained from the roadway and will retain custody of the cores until testing is completed. Either the Department or Contractor representative may perform trimming of the cores. The Engineer will witness all trimming operations in cases where the Contractor representative performs the trimming operation.

Dry the core holes and tack the sides and bottom immediately after obtaining the cores. Fill the hole with the same type of mixture and properly compact the mixture. Repair core holes with other methods when approved.

4.9.3.3. **Placement Testing.** Perform placement tests in accordance with Table 16. After the Engineer returns the cores, the Contractor may test the cores to verify the Engineer's test results for in-place air voids. The allowable differences between the Contractor's and Engineer's test results are listed in Table 11.

4.9.3.3.1. **In-Place Air Voids.** The Engineer will measure in-place air voids in accordance with [Tex-207-F](#) and [Tex-227-F](#). Before drying to a constant weight, cores may be pre-dried using a CoreDry or similar vacuum device to remove excess moisture. The Engineer will average the values obtained for all sublots in the production lot to determine the theoretical maximum specific gravity. The Engineer will use the average air void content for in-place air voids.

The Engineer will use the vacuum method to seal the core if required by [Tex-207-F](#). The Engineer will use the test results from the unsealed core to determine the placement payment adjustment factor if the sealed core yields a higher specific gravity than the unsealed core. After determining the in-place air void content, the Engineer will return the cores and provide test results to the Contractor.

4.9.3.3.2. **Segregation (Density Profile).** Test for segregation using density profiles in accordance with [Tex-207-F](#), Part V when using a thermal camera instead of the thermal imaging system. Density profiles are not required and are not applicable when using a thermal imaging system. Density profiles are not applicable in areas described in Section 3076.4.9.3.1.4., "Miscellaneous Areas."

Perform a minimum of one density profile per subplot. Perform additional density profiles when any of the following conditions occur, unless otherwise approved:

- the paver stops due to lack of material being delivered to the paving operations and the temperature of the uncompacted mat before the initial break down rolling is less than the temperatures shown in Table 17;
- areas that are identified by either the Contractor or the Engineer with thermal segregation,;
- any visibly segregated areas that exist.

**Table 17**  
**Minimum Uncompacted Mat Temperature Requiring a Segregation Profile**

High-Temperature Binder Grade <sup>1</sup>	Minimum Temperature of the Uncompacted Mat Allowed Before Initial Break Down Rolling <sup>2,3,4</sup>
PG 64	<250°F
PG 70	<260°F
PG 76	<270°F

1. The high-temperature binder grade refers to the high-temperature grade of the virgin asphalt binder used to produce the mixture.
2. Segregation profiles are required in areas with moderate and severe thermal segregation as described in Section 3076.4.7.3.1.3.
3. Minimum uncompacted mat temperature requiring a segregation profile may be reduced 10°F if using a chemical WMA additive as a compaction aid.
4. When using WMA, the minimum uncompacted mat temperature requiring a segregation profile is 215°F.

Provide the Engineer with the density profile of every subplot in the lot within one working day of the completion of each lot. Report the results of each density profile in accordance with Section 3076.4.2., "Reporting and Responsibilities."

The density profile is considered failing if it exceeds the tolerances in Table 18. No production or placement payment adjustments greater than 1.000 will be paid for any subplot that contains a failing density profile. When a hand-held thermal camera is used instead of a thermal imaging system, the Engineer will measure the density profile at least once per project. The Engineer's density profile results will be used when available. The Engineer may require the Contractor to remove and replace the area in question if the area fails the density profile and has surface irregularities as defined in Section 3076.4.9.3.3.5., "Irregularities." The subplot in question may receive a production and placement payment adjustment greater than 1.000, if applicable, when the defective material is successfully removed and replaced.

Investigate density profile failures and take corrective actions during production and placement to eliminate the segregation. Suspend production if 2 consecutive density profiles fail unless otherwise approved. Resume production after the Engineer approves changes to production or placement methods.

**Table 18**  
**Segregation (Density Profile) Acceptance Criteria**

Mixture Type	Maximum Allowable Density Range (Highest to Lowest)	Maximum Allowable Density Range (Average to Lowest)
Type B	8.0 pcf	5.0 pcf
Type C, Type D & Type F	6.0 pcf	3.0 pcf

#### 4.9.3.3.3. Longitudinal Joint Density.

4.9.3.3.3.1. **Informational Tests.** Perform joint density evaluations while establishing the rolling pattern and verify that the joint density is no more than 3.0 pcf below the density taken at or near the center of the mat. Adjust the rolling pattern, if needed, to achieve the desired joint density. Perform additional joint density evaluations, at least once per subplot, unless otherwise directed.

4.9.3.3.3.2. **Record Tests.** Perform a joint density evaluation for each subplot at each pavement edge that is or will become a longitudinal joint. Joint density evaluations are not applicable in areas described in Section 3076.4.9.3.1.4., "Miscellaneous Areas." Determine the joint density in accordance with [Tex-207-F](#), Part VII. Record the joint density information and submit results on Department forms to the Engineer. The evaluation is considered failing if the joint density is more than 3.0 pcf below the density taken at the core random sample location and the correlated joint density is less than 90.0%. The Engineer will make independent joint density verification at least once per project and may make independent joint density verifications at the random sample locations. The Engineer's joint density test results will be used when available.

Provide the Engineer with the joint density of every subplot in the lot within one working day of the completion of each lot. Report the results of each joint density in accordance with Section 3076.4.2., "Reporting and Responsibilities."

Investigate joint density failures and take corrective actions during production and placement to improve the joint density. Suspend production if the evaluations on two consecutive sublots fail unless otherwise approved. Resume production after the Engineer approves changes to production or placement methods.

4.9.3.3.4. **Recovered Asphalt Dynamic Shear Rheometer (DSR).** The Engineer may take production samples or cores from suspect areas of the project to determine recovered asphalt properties. Asphalt binders with an aging ratio greater than 3.5 do not meet the requirements for recovered asphalt properties and may be deemed defective when tested and evaluated by the Materials and Tests Division. The aging ratio is the DSR value of the extracted binder divided by the DSR value of the original unaged binder. Obtain DSR values in accordance with AASHTO T 315 at the specified high temperature performance grade of the asphalt. The Engineer may require removal and replacement of the defective material at the Contractor's expense. The asphalt binder will be recovered for testing from production samples or cores in accordance with [Tex-211-F](#).

4.9.3.3.5. **Irregularities.** Identify and correct irregularities including segregation, rutting, raveling, flushing, fat spots, mat slippage, irregular color, irregular texture, roller marks, gouges, streaks, uncoated aggregate particles, or broken aggregate particles. The Engineer may also identify irregularities, and in such cases, the Engineer will promptly notify the Contractor. If the Engineer determines that the irregularity will adversely affect pavement performance, the Engineer may require the Contractor to remove and replace (at the Contractor's expense) areas of the pavement that contain irregularities. The Engineer may also require the Contractor to remove and replace (at the Contractor's expense) areas where the mixture does not bond to the existing pavement.

If irregularities are detected, the Engineer may require the Contractor to immediately suspend operations or may allow the Contractor to continue operations for no more than one day while the Contractor is taking appropriate corrective action.

4.9.4. **Exempt Production.** The Engineer may deem the mixture as exempt production for the following conditions:

- anticipated daily production is less than 500 tons;
- total production for the project is less than 5,000 tons;
- when mutually agreed between the Engineer and the Contractor; or
- when shown on the plans.

For exempt production, the Contractor is relieved of all production and placement sampling and testing requirements, except for coring operations when required by the Engineer. The production and placement pay factors are 1.000 if the specification requirements listed below are met, all other specification requirements are met, and the Engineer performs acceptance tests for production and placement listed in Table 16 when 100 tons or more per day are produced.

- produce, haul, place, and compact the mixture in compliance with the specification and as directed;
- control mixture production to yield a laboratory-molded density that is within  $\pm 1.0\%$  of the target laboratory-molded density as tested by the Engineer;
- compact the mixture in accordance with Section 3076.4.8., "Compaction;" and
- when a thermal imaging system is not used, the Engineer may perform segregation (density profiles) and thermal profiles in accordance with the specification.

4.9.5. **Ride Quality.** Measure ride quality in accordance with Item 585, "Ride Quality for Pavement Surfaces," unless otherwise shown on the plans.



---

## 5. MEASUREMENT

- 5.1. **Dense Graded Hot-Mix Asphalt.** Hot mix will be measured by the ton of composite hot-mix, which includes asphalt, aggregate, and additives. Measure the weight on scales in accordance with Item 520, "Weighing and Measuring Equipment."
- 5.2. **Tack Coat.** Tack coat will be measured at the applied temperature by strapping the tank before and after road application and determining the net volume in gallons from the calibrated distributor. The Engineer will witness all strapping operations for volume determination. All tack, including emulsions, will be measured by the gallon applied.

The Engineer may allow the use of a metering device to determine asphalt volume used and application rate if the device is accurate within 1.5% of the strapped volume.

---

## 6. PAYMENT

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under Section 3076.5.1, "Measurement," will be paid for at the unit bid price for "Dense Graded Hot-Mix Asphalt" of the mixture type, SAC, and binder specified. These prices are full compensation for surface preparation, materials, placement, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under Article 3076.5.2, "Measurement," will be paid for at the unit bid price for "Tack Coat" of the tack coat provided. These prices are full compensation for materials, placement, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals. Payment adjustments will be applied as determined in this Item; however, a payment adjustment factor of 1.000 will be assigned for all placement sublots for "level ups" only when "level up" is listed as part of the item bid description code. A payment adjustment factor of 1.000 will be assigned to all production and placement sublots when "exempt" is listed as part of the item bid description code, and all testing requirements are met.

Payment for each subplot, including applicable payment adjustments greater than 1.000, will only be paid for sublots when the Contractor supplies the Engineer with the required documentation for production and placement QC/QA, thermal profiles, segregation density profiles, and longitudinal joint densities in accordance with Section 3076.4.2., "Reporting and Responsibilities." When a thermal imaging system is used, documentation is not required for thermal profiles or segregation density profiles on individual sublots; however, the thermal imaging system automated reports described in [Tex-244-F](#) are required.

Trial batches will not be paid for unless they are included in pavement work approved by the Department.

Payment adjustment for ride quality will be determined in accordance with Item 585, "Ride Quality for Pavement Surfaces."

- 6.1. **Production Payment Adjustment Factors.** The production payment adjustment factor is based on the laboratory-molded density using the Engineer's test results. The bulk specific gravities of the samples from each subplot will be divided by the Engineer's maximum theoretical specific gravity for the subplot. The individual sample densities for the subplot will be averaged to determine the production payment adjustment factor in accordance with Table 19 for each subplot, using the deviation from the target laboratory-molded density defined in Table 9. The production payment adjustment factor for completed lots will be the average of the payment adjustment factors for the four sublots sampled within that lot.

**Table 19**  
**Production Payment Adjustment Factors for Laboratory-Molded Density<sup>1</sup>**

<b>Absolute Deviation from Target Laboratory-Molded Density</b>	<b>Production Payment Adjustment Factor (Target Laboratory-Molded Density)</b>
0.0	1.050
0.1	1.050
0.2	1.050
0.3	1.044
0.4	1.038
0.5	1.031
0.6	1.025
0.7	1.019
0.8	1.013
0.9	1.006
1.0	1.000
1.1	0.965
1.2	0.930
1.3	0.895
1.4	0.860
1.5	0.825
1.6	0.790
1.7	0.755
1.8	0.720
> 1.8	Remove and replace

1. If the Engineer's laboratory-molded density on any subplot is less than 95.0% or greater than 98.0%, take immediate corrective action to bring the mixture within these tolerances. The Engineer may suspend operations if the Contractor's corrective actions do not produce acceptable results. The Engineer will allow production to resume when the proposed corrective action is likely to yield acceptable results.

6.1.1. **Payment for Incomplete Production Lots.** Production payment adjustments for incomplete lots, described under Section 3076.4.9.2.1.1., "Incomplete Production Lots," will be calculated using the average production payment factors from all sublots sampled.

A production payment factor of 1.000 will be assigned to any lot when the random sampling plan did not result in collection of any samples within the first subplot.

6.1.2. **Production Sublots Subject to Removal and Replacement.** If after referee testing, the laboratory-molded density for any subplot results in a "remove and replace" condition as listed in Table 19, the Engineer may require removal and replacement or may allow the subplot to be left in place without payment. The Engineer may also accept the subplot in accordance with Section 3076.5.3.1., "Acceptance of Defective or Unauthorized Work." Replacement material meeting the requirements of this Item will be paid for in accordance with this Section.

6.2. **Placement Payment Adjustment Factors.** The placement payment adjustment factor is based on in-place air voids using the Engineer's test results. The bulk specific gravities of the cores from each subplot will be divided by the Engineer's average maximum theoretical specific gravity for the lot. The individual core densities for the subplot will be averaged to determine the placement payment adjustment factor in accordance with Table 20 for each subplot that requires in-place air void measurement. A placement payment adjustment factor of 1.000 will be assigned to the entire subplot when the random sample location falls in an area designated on the plans as not subject to in-place air void determination. A placement payment adjustment factor of 1.000 will be assigned to quantities placed in areas described in Section 3076.4.9.3.1.4., "Miscellaneous Areas." The placement payment adjustment factor for completed lots will be the average of the placement payment adjustment factors for up to four sublots within that lot.

**Table 20**  
**Placement Payment Adjustment Factors for In-Place Air Voids**

In-Place Air Voids	Placement Pay Adjustment Factor	In-Place Air Voids	Placement Pay Adjustment Factor
< 2.7	Remove and Replace	6.4	1.042
2.7	0.710	6.5	1.040
2.8	0.740	6.6	1.038
2.9	0.770	6.7	1.036
3.0	0.800	6.8	1.034
3.1	0.830	6.9	1.032
3.2	0.860	7.0	1.030
3.3	0.890	7.1	1.028
3.4	0.920	7.2	1.026
3.5	0.950	7.3	1.024
3.6	0.980	7.4	1.022
3.7	0.998	7.5	1.020
3.8	1.002	7.6	1.018
3.9	1.006	7.7	1.016
4.0	1.010	7.8	1.014
4.1	1.014	7.9	1.012
4.2	1.018	8.0	1.010
4.3	1.022	8.1	1.008
4.4	1.026	8.2	1.006
4.5	1.030	8.3	1.004
4.6	1.034	8.4	1.002
4.7	1.038	8.5	1.000
4.8	1.042	8.6	0.998
4.9	1.046	8.7	0.996
5.0	1.050	8.8	0.994
5.1	1.050	8.9	0.992
5.2	1.050	9.0	0.990
5.3	1.050	9.1	0.960
5.4	1.050	9.2	0.930
5.5	1.050	9.3	0.900
5.6	1.050	9.4	0.870
5.7	1.050	9.5	0.840
5.8	1.050	9.6	0.810
5.9	1.050	9.7	0.780
6.0	1.050	9.8	0.750
6.1	1.048	9.9	0.720
6.2	1.046	> 9.9	Remove and Replace
6.3	1.044		

## 6.2.1.

**Payment for Incomplete Placement Lots.** Payment adjustments for incomplete placement lots described under Section 3076.4.9.3.1.2., "Incomplete Placement Lots," will be calculated using the average of the placement payment factors from all sublots sampled and sublots where the random location falls in an area designated on the plans as not eligible for in-place air void determination.

If the random sampling plan results in production samples, but not in placement samples, the random core location and placement adjustment factor for the subplot will be determined by applying the placement random number to the length of the subplot placed.

If the random sampling plan results in placement samples, but not in production samples, no placement adjustment factor will apply for that subplot placed.

A placement payment adjustment factor of 1.000 will be assigned to any lot when the random sampling plan did not result in collection of any production samples.

- 6.2.2. **Placement Sublots Subject to Removal and Replacement.** If after referee testing, the placement payment adjustment factor for any subplot results in a “remove and replace” condition as listed in Table 20, the Engineer will choose the location of two cores to be taken within 3 ft. of the original failing core location. The Contractor will obtain the cores in the presence of the Engineer. The Engineer will take immediate possession of the untrimmed cores and submit the untrimmed cores to the Materials and Tests Division, where they will be trimmed if necessary and tested for bulk specific gravity within 10 working days of receipt.

The bulk specific gravity of the cores from each subplot will be divided by the Engineer’s average maximum theoretical specific gravity for the lot. The individual core densities for the subplot will be averaged to determine the new payment adjustment factor of the subplot in question. If the new payment adjustment factor is 0.700 or greater, the new payment adjustment factor will apply to that subplot. If the new payment adjustment factor is less than 0.700, no payment will be made for the subplot. Remove and replace the failing subplot, or the Engineer may allow the subplot to be left in place without payment. The Engineer may also accept the subplot in accordance with Section 3076.5.3.1., “Acceptance of Defective or Unauthorized Work.” Replacement material meeting the requirements of this Item will be paid for in accordance with this Section.

- 6.3. **Total Adjusted Pay Calculation.** Total adjusted pay (TAP) will be based on the applicable payment adjustment factors for production and placement for each lot.

$$TAP = (A+B)/2$$

where:

*A* = Bid price × production lot quantity × average payment adjustment factor for the production lot

*B* = Bid price × placement lot quantity × average payment adjustment factor for the placement lot + (bid price × quantity placed in miscellaneous areas × 1.000)

*Production lot quantity* = Quantity actually placed - quantity left in place without payment

*Placement lot quantity* = Quantity actually placed - quantity left in place without payment - quantity placed in miscellaneous areas

# Special Specification 3079

## Permeable Friction Course



### 1. DESCRIPTION

Construct a hot-mix asphalt (HMA) surface course composed of a compacted permeable mixture of aggregate, asphalt binder, and additives mixed hot in a mixing plant.

### 2. MATERIALS

Furnish uncontaminated materials of uniform quality that meet the requirements of the plans and specifications.

Notify the Engineer of all material sources and before changing any material source or formulation. The Engineer will verify that the specification requirements are met when the Contractor makes a source or formulation change, and may require a new laboratory mixture design, trial batch, or both. The Engineer may sample and test project materials at any time during the project to verify specification compliance in accordance with Item 6, "Control of Materials."

- 2.1. **Aggregate.** Furnish aggregates from sources that conform to the requirements in accordance with Table 1 and as specified in this Section. Aggregate requirements in this Section, including those shown in Table 1, may be modified or eliminated when shown on the plans. Additional aggregate requirements may be specified when shown on the plans. Provide aggregate stockpiles that meet the definitions in this Section for coarse aggregate. Do not use intermediate or fine aggregate in permeable friction course (PFC) mixtures. Supply aggregates that meet the definitions in [Tex-100-E](#) for crushed gravel or crushed stone. The Engineer will designate the plant or the quarry as the sampling location. Provide samples from materials produced for the project. The Engineer will establish the Surface Aggregate Classification (SAC) and perform Los Angeles abrasion, magnesium sulfate soundness, and Micro-Deval tests. Perform all other aggregate quality tests in accordance with Table 1. Document all test results on the mixture design report. The Engineer may perform tests on independent or split samples to verify Contractor test results. Stockpile aggregates for each source and type separately. Determine aggregate gradations for mixture design and production testing based on the washed sieve analysis given in [Tex-200-F](#), Part II.

- 2.1.1. **Coarse Aggregate.** Coarse aggregate stockpiles must have no more than 20% material passing the No. 8 sieve. Aggregates from sources listed in the Department's *Bituminous Rated Source Quality Catalog* (BRSQC) are preapproved for use. Use only the rated values for hot-mix listed in the BRSQC. Rated values for surface treatment (ST) do not apply to coarse aggregate sources used in hot-mix asphalt.

For sources not listed on the Department's BRSQC:

- build an individual stockpile for each material;
- request the Department test the stockpile for specification compliance;
- approved only when tested by the Engineer;
- once approved, do not add material to the stockpile unless otherwise approved; and
- allow 30 calendar days for the Engineer to sample, test, and report results.

Provide coarse aggregate with at least the minimum SAC shown on the plans. SAC requirements only apply to aggregates used on the surface of travel lanes, unless otherwise shown on the plans. SAC requirements apply to aggregates used on surfaces other than travel lanes when shown on the plans. The SAC for sources on the Department's *Aggregate Quality Monitoring Program* (AQMP) ([Tex-499-A](#)) is listed in the BRSQC.

2.1.1.1. **Blending Class A and Class B Aggregates.** To prevent crushing of the Class B aggregate when blending, Class B aggregate may be blended with a Class A aggregate to meet requirements for Class A materials if the Department's BRSQC rated source soundness magnesium (RSSM) rating for the Class B aggregate is less than the Class A aggregate or if the RSSM rating for the Class B aggregate is less than or equal to 10%. Use the rated values for hot mix asphaltic concrete (HMAC) published in the BRSQC. When blending Class A and B aggregates to meet a Class A requirement, ensure that at least 50% by weight, or volume if required, of all the aggregates used in the mixture design retained on the No. 4 sieve comes from the Class A aggregate source, unless otherwise shown on the plans. Blend by volume if the bulk specific gravities of the Class A and B aggregates differ by more than 0.300. Class B aggregate may be disallowed when shown on the plans.

The Engineer may perform tests at any time during production, when the Contractor blends Class A and B aggregates to meet a Class A requirement, to ensure that at least 50% by weight, or volume if required, of the material retained on the No. 4 sieve comes from the Class A aggregate source. The Engineer will use the Department's mix design template, when electing to verify conformance, to calculate the percent of Class A aggregate retained on the No. 4 sieve by inputting the bin percentages shown from readouts in the control room at the time of production and stockpile gradations measured at the time of production. The Engineer may determine the gradations based on either washed or dry sieve analysis from samples obtained from individual aggregate cold feed bins or aggregate stockpiles. The Engineer may perform spot checks using the gradations supplied by the Contractor on the mixture design report as an input for the template; however, a failing spot check will require confirmation with a stockpile gradation determined by the Engineer.

2.1.1.2. **Micro-Deval Abrasion.** The Engineer will perform a minimum of one Micro-Deval abrasion test in accordance with [Tex-461-A](#) for each coarse aggregate source used in the mixture design that has a Rated Source Soundness Magnesium (RSSM) loss value greater than 10 as listed in the BRSQC, unless otherwise directed. The Engineer will perform testing before the start of production and may perform additional testing at any time during production. The Engineer may obtain the coarse aggregate samples from each coarse aggregate source or may require the Contractor to obtain the samples. The Engineer may waive all Micro-Deval testing based on a satisfactory test history of the same aggregate source.

The Engineer will estimate the magnesium sulfate soundness loss for each coarse aggregate source, when tested, using the following formula:

$$Mg_{est.} = (RSSM)(MD_{act.}/RSMD)$$

where:

$Mg_{est.}$  = magnesium sulfate soundness loss

RSSM = Rated Source Soundness Magnesium

$MD_{act.}$  = actual Micro-Deval percent loss

RSMD = Rated Source Micro-Deval

When the estimated magnesium sulfate soundness loss is greater than the maximum magnesium sulfate soundness loss specified, the coarse aggregate source will not be allowed for use unless otherwise approved. The Engineer will consult the Soils and Aggregates Section of the Materials and Tests Division, and additional testing may be required before granting approval.

**Table 1**  
**Coarse Aggregate Quality Requirements**

Property	Test Method	Requirement
SAC	<a href="#">Tex-499-A</a> (AQMP)	As shown on the plans
Deleterious material, %, Max	<a href="#">Tex-217-F</a> , Part I	1.0
Decantation, %, Max	<a href="#">Tex-217-F</a> , Part II	1.5
Micro-Deval abrasion, %	<a href="#">Tex-461-A</a>	Note <sup>1</sup>
Los Angeles abrasion, %, Max	<a href="#">Tex-410-A</a>	30
Magnesium sulfate soundness, 5 cycles, %, Max	<a href="#">Tex-411-A</a>	20
Crushed face count, <sup>2</sup> %, Min	<a href="#">Tex-460-A</a> , Part I	95
Flat and elongated particles @ 5:1, %, Max	<a href="#">Tex-280-F</a>	10

1. Used to estimate the magnesium sulfate soundness loss in accordance with Section 3079.2.1.1.2., "Micro-Deval Abrasion."

2. Only applies to crushed gravel.

- 2.2. **Baghouse Fines.** Fines collected by the baghouse or other dust-collecting equipment may be reintroduced into the mixing drum.
- 2.3. **Asphalt Binder.** Furnish the type and grade of binder specified on the plans that meets the requirements of Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions."
- 2.3.1. **Performance-Graded (PG) Binder.** Provide an asphalt binder with a high-temperature grade of PG 76 and low-temperature grade as shown on the plans in accordance with Section 300.2.10., "Performance-Graded Binders," when PG binder is specified.
- 2.3.2. **Asphalt-Rubber (A-R) Binder.** Provide A-R binder that meets the Type I or Type II requirements of Section 300.2.9., "Asphalt-Rubber Binders," when A-R is specified unless otherwise shown on the plans. Use at least 15.0% by weight of Crumb Rubber Modifier (CRM) that meets the Grade B or Grade C requirements of Section 300.2.7., "Crumb Rubber Modifier," unless otherwise shown on the plans. Provide the Engineer the A-R binder blend design with the mix design (JMF1) submittal. Provide the Engineer with documentation such as the bill of lading showing the quantity of CRM used in the project unless otherwise directed.
- 2.4. **Tack Coat.** Furnish CSS-1H, SS-1H, EBL, or a PG binder with a minimum high-temperature grade of PG 58 for tack coat binder in accordance with Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions." Specialized tack coat materials listed on the Department's Tracking Resistant Asphalt Interlayer (TRAIL) MPL may be allowed or required when shown on the plans. Do not dilute emulsified asphalts at the terminal, in the field, or at any other location before use.
- 2.5. **Additives.** Provide the Engineer with documentation such as the bill of lading showing the quantity of additives used in the project unless otherwise directed.
- 2.5.1. **Fibers.** Provide cellulose or mineral fibers when PG binder is specified. Do not use fibers when A-R binder is specified. Submit written certification to the Engineer that the fibers proposed for use meet the requirements of DMS-9204, "Fiber Additives for Bituminous Mixtures." Fibers may be pre-blended into the binder at the asphalt supply terminal unless otherwise shown on the plans.
- 2.5.2. **Lime Mineral Filler.** Add lime as mineral filler at a rate of 1.0% by weight of the total dry aggregate in accordance with Item 301, "Asphalt Antistripping Agents," unless otherwise shown on the plans or waived by the Engineer based on Hamburg Wheel test results. Do not add lime directly into the mixing drum of any plant where lime is removed through the exhaust stream unless the plant has a baghouse or dust collection system that reintroduces the lime into the drum.
- 2.5.3. **Lime and Liquid Antistripping Agent.** When lime or a liquid antistripping agent is used, add in accordance with Item 301, "Asphalt Antistripping Agents." Do not add lime directly into the mixing drum of any plant where lime is removed through the exhaust stream unless the plant has a baghouse or dust collection system that reintroduces the lime into the drum. When the plans require lime to be added as an antistripping agent, lime added as mineral filler will count towards the total quantity of lime specified.
- 2.5.4. **Compaction Aid.** Compaction aid is defined as a Department-approved chemical warm mix additive denoted as "chemical additive" on the Department's materials producer list (MPL) that is used to facilitate mixing and compaction of HMA.
- Compaction aid is allowed for use on all projects. Compaction aid is required when shown on the plans or as required in Section 3079.4.7.1., "Weather Conditions."
- Warm mix foaming processes, denoted as "foaming process" on the Department-approved MPL, may be used to facilitate mixing and compaction of HMA; however warm mix foaming processes are not defined as a Compaction aid.
- 2.6. **Recycled Materials.** Recycled materials are not allowed for use.

---

**3. EQUIPMENT**

Provide required or necessary equipment in accordance with Item 320, "Equipment for Asphalt Concrete Pavement." When A-R binder is specified, equip the hot-mix plant with an in-line viscosity-measuring device located between the blending unit and the mixing drum. Provide a means to calibrate the asphalt mass flow meter on-site when a meter is used.

---

**4. CONSTRUCTION**

Produce, haul, place, and compact the specified paving mixture. In addition to tests required by the specification, Contractors may perform other QC tests as deemed necessary. At any time during the project, the Engineer may perform production and placement tests as deemed necessary in accordance with Item 5, "Control of the Work." Schedule and participate in a mandatory pre-paving meeting with the Engineer on or before the first day of paving unless otherwise shown on the plans.

- 4.1. **Certification.** Personnel certified by the Department-approved hot-mix asphalt certification program must conduct all mixture designs, sampling, and testing in accordance with Table 2. Supply the Engineer with a list of certified personnel and copies of their current certificates before beginning production and when personnel changes are made. Provide a mixture design developed and signed by a Level 2 certified specialist. Provide Level 1A certified specialists at the plant during production operations. Provide Level 1B certified specialists to conduct placement tests. Provide Level AGG101 certified specialists for aggregate testing.



**Table 2**  
**Test Methods, Test Responsibility, and Minimum Certification Levels**

Test Description	Test Method	Contractor	Engineer	Level <sup>1</sup>
<b>1. Aggregate Testing</b>				
Sampling	<a href="#">Tex-221-F</a>	✓	✓	1A/AGG101
Dry sieve	<a href="#">Tex-200-F</a> , Part I	✓	✓	1A/AGG101
Washed sieve	<a href="#">Tex-200-F</a> , Part II	✓	✓	1A/AGG101
Deleterious material	<a href="#">Tex-217-F</a> , Parts I & III	✓	✓	AGG101
Decantation	<a href="#">Tex-217-F</a> , Part II	✓	✓	AGG101
Los Angeles abrasion	<a href="#">Tex-410-A</a>		✓	Department
Magnesium sulfate soundness	<a href="#">Tex-411-A</a>		✓	Department
Micro-Deval abrasion	<a href="#">Tex-461-A</a>		✓	AGG101
Crushed face count	<a href="#">Tex-460-A</a>	✓	✓	AGG101
Flat and elongated particles	<a href="#">Tex-280-F</a>	✓	✓	AGG101
<b>2. Asphalt Binder &amp; Tack Coat Sampling</b>				
Asphalt binder sampling	<a href="#">Tex-500-C</a> , Part II	✓	✓	1A/1B
Tack coat sampling	<a href="#">Tex-500-C</a> , Part III	✓	✓	1A/1B
<b>3. Mix Design &amp; Verification</b>				
Design and JMF changes	<a href="#">Tex-204-F</a>	✓	✓	2
Mixing	<a href="#">Tex-205-F</a>	✓	✓	2
Molding (SGC)	<a href="#">Tex-241-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
Laboratory-molded density	<a href="#">Tex-207-F</a> , Parts I, VI, & VIII	✓	✓	1A
Rice gravity	<a href="#">Tex-227-F</a> , Part II	✓	✓	1A
Ignition oven correction factors <sup>2</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-236-F</a> , Part II	✓	✓	2
Drain-down	<a href="#">Tex-235-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
Hamburg Wheel test	<a href="#">Tex-242-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
Boil test <sup>4</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-530-C</a>	✓	✓	1A
Cantabro loss	<a href="#">Tex-245-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
<b>4. Production Testing</b>				
Control charts	<a href="#">Tex-233-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
Mixture sampling	<a href="#">Tex-222-F</a>	✓	✓	1A/1B
Gradation & asphalt binder content <sup>2</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-236-F</a> , Part I	✓	✓	1A
Moisture content	<a href="#">Tex-212-F</a> , Part II	✓	✓	1A/AGG101
Micro-Deval abrasion	<a href="#">Tex-461-A</a>		✓	AGG101
Drain-down	<a href="#">Tex-235-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
Boil test <sup>4</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-530-C</a>	✓	✓	1A
Abson recovery	<a href="#">Tex-211-F</a>		✓	Department
<b>5. Placement Testing</b>				
Control charts	<a href="#">Tex-233-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
Ride quality measurement	<a href="#">Tex-1001-S</a>	✓	✓	Note 3
Thermal profile	<a href="#">Tex-244-F</a>	✓	✓	1B
Water flow test	<a href="#">Tex-246-F</a>	✓	✓	1B
Shear bond strength test	<a href="#">Tex-249-F</a>		✓	Department

- Level 1A, 1B, AGG101, and 2 are certification levels provided by the Hot Mix Asphalt Center certification program.
- Refer to Section 3079.4.9.2.3., "Production Testing," for exceptions to using an ignition oven.
- Profiler and operator are required to be certified at the Texas A&M Transportation Institute facility when Surface Test Type B is specified.
- When shown on the plans.

- 4.2. **Reporting and Responsibilities.** Use Department-provided templates to record and calculate all test data, including mixture design, production and placement tests, control charts, and thermal profiles. Obtain the current version of the templates at <https://www.txdot.gov/inside-txdot/forms-publications/consultants-contractors/forms/site-manager.html> or from the Engineer. The Engineer and the Contractor will provide any available test results to the other party when requested. The maximum allowable time for the Contractor and Engineer to exchange test data is given in Table 3. The Engineer and the Contractor will immediately report to the other party any test result that requires suspension of production or placement or that fails to meet the specification requirements. Record and electronically submit all test results and pertinent information on Department-provided templates.

Subsequent sublots placed after test results are available to the Contractor, which require suspension of operations, may be considered unauthorized work. Unauthorized work will be accepted or rejected at the discretion of the Engineer in accordance with Article 5.3., "Conformity with Plans, Specifications, and Special Provisions."

**Table 3**  
**Reporting Schedule**

Description	Reported By	Reported To	To Be Reported Within
<b>Production Quality Control</b>			
Gradation <sup>1</sup>	Contractor	Engineer	1 working day of completion of the subplot
Asphalt binder content <sup>1</sup>			
Laboratory-molded density <sup>1</sup>			
Moisture content <sup>2</sup>			
Drain-down <sup>1</sup>			
Boil test <sup>4</sup>			
<b>Production Quality Assurance</b>			
Gradation <sup>2</sup>	Engineer	Contractor	1 working day of completion of the subplot
Asphalt binder content <sup>2</sup>			
Laboratory-molded density <sup>2</sup>			
Hamburg Wheel test <sup>3</sup>			
Boil test <sup>4</sup>			
Drain-down <sup>2</sup>			
Binder tests <sup>3</sup>			
<b>Placement Quality Control</b>			
Thermal profile <sup>1</sup>	Contractor	Engineer	1 working day of completion of the lot
Water flow <sup>1</sup>			
<b>Placement Quality Assurance</b>			
Thermal profile <sup>2</sup>	Engineer	Contractor	1 working day of completion of the lot
Aging ratio <sup>3</sup>			
Water flow <sup>2</sup>			

1. These tests are required on every subplot.
2. To be performed at the frequency in accordance with Table 9 or as shown on the plans.
3. To be reported as soon as the results become available.
4. When shown on the plans

Use the procedures described in [Tex-233-F](#) to plot the results of all production and placement testing, when directed. Update the control charts as soon as test results for each subplot become available. Make the control charts readily accessible at the field laboratory. The Engineer may suspend production for failure to update control charts.

- 4.3. **Quality Control Plan (QCP).** Develop and follow the QCP in detail. Obtain approval for changes to the QCP made during the project. The Engineer may suspend operations if the Contractor fails to comply with the QCP.

Submit a written QCP before the mandatory pre-paving meeting when directed. Receive approval of the QCP before pre-paving meeting. Include the following items in the QCP:

- 4.3.1. **Project Personnel.** For project personnel, include:
- a list of individuals responsible for QC with authority to take corrective action;
  - current contact information for each individual listed; and

- current copies of certification documents for individuals performing specified QC functions.

4.3.2. **Material Delivery and Storage.** For material delivery and storage, include:

- the sequence of material processing, delivery, and minimum quantities to assure continuous plant operations;
- aggregate stockpiling procedures to avoid contamination and segregation;
- frequency, type, and timing of aggregate stockpile testing to assure conformance of material requirements before mixture production; and
- procedure for monitoring the quality and variability of asphalt binder.

4.3.3. **Production.** For production, include:

- loader operation procedures to avoid contamination in cold bins;
- procedures for calibrating and controlling cold feeds;
- procedures to eliminate debris or oversized material;
- procedures for adding and verifying rates of each applicable mixture component (e.g., aggregate, asphalt binder, lime, liquid antistriper, compaction aid, foaming process, fibers);
- procedures for reporting job control test results; and
- procedures to avoid segregation and drain-down in the silo.

4.3.4. **Loading and Transporting.** For loading and transporting, include:

- type and application method for release agents; and
- truck loading procedures to avoid segregation.

4.3.5. **Placement and Compaction.** For placement and compaction, include:

- proposed agenda for mandatory pre-paving meeting, including date and location;
- proposed paving plan (e.g., production rate, paving widths, joint offsets, and lift thicknesses);
- type and application method for release agents in the paver and on rollers, shovels, lutes, and other utensils;
- procedures for the transfer of mixture into the paver, while avoiding physical and thermal segregation and preventing material spillage;
- process to balance production, delivery, paving, and compaction to achieve continuous placement operations and good ride quality;
- paver operations (e.g., speed, operation of wings, height of mixture in auger chamber) to avoid physical and thermal segregation and other surface irregularities; and
- procedures to construct quality longitudinal and transverse joints.

4.4. **Mixture Design.**

4.4.1. **Design Requirements.** Use the PFC design procedure provided in [Tex-204-E](#), unless otherwise shown on the plans. Design the mixture to meet the requirements in accordance with Tables 1, 4, 5, and 6. Use a Superpave Gyrotory Compactor (SGC) at 50 gyrations as the design number of gyrations (Ndesign).

The Engineer will provide the mixture design when shown on the plans. The Contractor may submit a new mixture design at any time during the project. The Engineer will verify and approve all mixture designs (JMF1) before the Contractor can begin production.

Provide the Engineer with a mixture design report using the Department-provided template. Include the following items in the report:

- the combined aggregate gradation, source, specific gravity, and percent of each material used;
- results of all applicable tests;
- the mixing and molding temperatures;
- the signature of the Level 2 person or persons that performed the design;

- the date the mixture design was performed; and
- a unique identification number for the mixture design.

**Table 4**  
**Master Gradation Limits (% Passing by Weight or Volume)**

Sieve Size	PG 76 Mixtures		A-R Mixtures		Test Procedure
	Fine (PFC-F)	Coarse (PFC-C)	Fine (PFCR-F)	Coarse (PFCR-C)	
3/4"	–	100.0 <sup>1</sup>	100.0 <sup>1</sup>	100.0 <sup>1</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-200-F</a>
1/2"	100.0 <sup>1</sup>	80.0–100.0	95.0–100.0	80.0–100.0	
3/8"	95.0–100.0	35.0–60.0	50.0–80.0	35.0–60.0	
#4	20.0–55.0	1.0–20.0	0.0–8.0	0.0–20.0	
#8	1.0–10.0	1.0–10.0	0.0–4.0	0.0–10.0	
#200	1.0–4.0	1.0–4.0	0.0–4.0	0.0–4.0	

1. Defined as maximum sieve size. No tolerance allowed.

**Table 5**  
**Mixture Design Properties**

Mix Property	PG 76 Mixtures		A-R Mixtures		Test Procedure
	Fine (PFC-F) Requirements	Coarse (PFC-C) Requirements	Fine (PFCR-F) Requirements	Coarse (PFCR-C) Requirements	
Design gyrations (N <sub>design</sub> )	50	50	50	50	<a href="#">Tex-241-F</a>
Lab-molded density, %	78.0 Max	82.0 Max	82.0 Max	82.0 Max	<a href="#">Tex-207-F</a>
Asphalt Binder Content, %	6.0–7.0	6.0–7.0	8.0–10.0	7.0–9.0	--
Hamburg Wheel test, <sup>1</sup> passes at 12.5 mm rut depth	10,000 Min <sup>2</sup>	Note 3	Note 3	Note 3	<a href="#">Tex-242-F</a>
Drain-down, %	0.10 Max	0.10 Max	0.10 Max	0.10 Max	<a href="#">Tex-235-F</a>
Fiber content, % by wt. of total PG 76 mixture	0.20–0.50	0.20–0.50	–	–	Calculated
Lime content, % by wt. of total aggregate	1.0 <sup>4</sup>	1.0 <sup>4</sup>	–	–	Calculated
CRM content, % by wt. of A-R binder	–	–	15.0 Min	15.0 Min	Calculated
Boil test <sup>5</sup>	–	–	–	–	<a href="#">Tex-530-C</a>
Cantabro loss, %	20.0 Max	20.0 Max	20.0 Max	20.0 Max	<a href="#">Tex-245-F</a>

1. Mold test specimens to N<sub>design</sub> at the optimum asphalt binder content.
2. May be decreased when shown on the plans.
3. No specification value is required unless otherwise shown on the plans.
4. Unless otherwise shown on the plans or waived by the Engineer based on Hamburg Wheel results.
5. When shown on the plans. Used to establish baseline for comparison to production results.

4.4.2. **Job-Mix Formula Approval.** The job-mix formula (JMF) is the combined aggregate gradation, N<sub>design</sub> level, and target asphalt percentage used to establish target values for hot-mix production. JMF1 is the original laboratory mixture design used to produce the trial batch. When a compaction aid or foaming process is used, JMF1 may be designed and submitted to the Engineer without including the compaction aid or foaming process. When a compaction aid or foaming process is used, document the compaction aid or foaming process used and recommended rate on the JMF1 submittal. The Engineer and the Contractor will verify JMF1 based on plant-produced mixture from the trial batch unless otherwise approved. The Engineer may accept an existing mixture design previously used on a Department project and may waive the trial batch to verify JMF1. The Department may require the Contractor to reimburse the Department for verification tests if more than two trial batches per design are required.

4.4.2.1. **Contractor's Responsibilities.**

- 4.4.2.1.1. **Providing Gyrotory Compactor.** Furnish an SGC calibrated in accordance with [Tex-241-F](#) for molding production samples. Locate the SGC at the Engineer's field laboratory or make the SGC available to the Engineer for use in molding production samples.
- 4.4.2.1.2. **Gyrotory Compactor Correlation Factors.** Use [Tex-206-F](#), Part II, to perform a gyrotory compactor correlation when the Engineer uses a different SGC. Apply the correlation factor to all subsequent production test results.
- 4.4.2.1.3. **Submitting JMF1.** Furnish a mix design report (JMF1) with representative samples of all component materials and request approval to produce the trial batch. Provide an additional 25 lb. of the design mixture if opting to have the Department perform the Hamburg Wheel test on the laboratory mixture when required in accordance with Table 5, and request that the Department perform the test.
- 4.4.2.1.4. **Supplying Aggregates.** Provide approximately 40 lb. of each aggregate stockpile unless otherwise directed.
- 4.4.2.1.5. **Supplying Asphalt.** Provide at least 1 gal. of the asphalt material and enough quantities of any additives proposed for use.
- 4.4.2.1.6. **Ignition Oven Correction Factors.** Determine the aggregate and asphalt correction factors from the ignition oven in accordance with [Tex-236-F](#), Part II. Provide correction factors that are not more than 12 mo. old. Note that the asphalt content correction factor takes into account the percent fibers in the mixture so that the fibers are excluded from the binder content determination. Provide the Engineer with split samples of the mixtures before the trial batch production, including all additives (except water), and blank samples used to determine the correction factors for the ignition oven used for quality assurance (QA) testing during production. Correction factors established from a previously approved mixture design may be used for the current mixture design if the mixture design and ignition oven are the same as previously used and the correction factors are not more than 12 mo. old, unless otherwise directed.
- 4.4.2.1.7. **Boil Test.** When shown on the plans, perform the test and retain the tested sample from [Tex-530-C](#) until completion of the project or as directed. Use this sample for comparison purposes during production. Add lime or liquid antistripping agent, as directed, if signs of stripping exist.
- 4.4.2.1.8. **Trial Batch Production.** Provide a plant-produced trial batch upon receiving conditional approval of JMF1 and authorization to produce a trial batch including the compaction aid or foaming process, if applicable, for verification testing of JMF1 and development of JMF2. Produce a trial batch mixture that meets the requirements in accordance with Table 6. The Engineer may accept test results from recent production of the same mixture instead of a new trial batch.
- 4.4.2.1.9. **Trial Batch Production Equipment.** Use only equipment and materials proposed for use on the project to produce the trial batch. Provide documentation to verify the calibration or accuracy of the asphalt mass flow meter to measure the binder content. Verify that asphalt mass flow meter meets the requirements of 0.4% accuracy, when required, in accordance with Item 520, "Weighing and Measuring Equipment." The Engineer may require that the accuracy of the mass flow meter be verified based on quantities used.
- 4.4.2.1.10. **Trial Batch Quantity.** Produce enough quantity of the trial batch to ensure that the mixture meets the specification requirements.
- 4.4.2.1.11. **Number of Trial Batches.** Produce trial batches as necessary to obtain a mixture that meets the specification requirements.
- 4.4.2.1.12. **Trial Batch Sampling.** Obtain a representative sample of the trial batch and split it into three equal portions in accordance with [Tex-222-F](#). Label these portions as "Contractor," "Engineer," and "Referee." Deliver samples to the appropriate laboratory as directed.
- 4.4.2.1.13. **Trial Batch Testing.** Test the trial batch to ensure the mixture produced using the proposed JMF1 meets the mixture requirements in accordance with Table 6. Ensure the trial batch mixture is also in compliance with the requirements in accordance with Table 5. Use a Department-approved laboratory listed on the MPL to perform

the Hamburg Wheel test on the trial batch mixture or request that the Department perform the Hamburg Wheel test. Provide an additional 25 lb. of the trial batch mixture if opting to have the Department perform the Hamburg Wheel test, if applicable, and request that the Department perform the test. The Engineer will be allowed 10 working days to provide the Contractor with Hamburg Wheel test results on the trial batch. Provide the Engineer with a copy of the trial batch test results.

- 4.4.2.1.14. **Development of JMF2.** Evaluate the trial batch test results, determine the target mixture proportions, and submit as JMF2 after the Engineer grants full approval of JMF1 based on results from the trial batch. The mixture produced using JMF2 must meet the requirements in accordance with Tables 4 and 5. Verify that JMF2 meets the operational tolerances in accordance with Table 6.
- 4.4.2.1.15. **Mixture Production.** Use JMF2 to produce Lot 1 after receiving approval for JMF2.
- 4.4.2.1.16. **Development of JMF3.** Evaluate the test results from Lot 1, determine the optimum mixture proportions, and submit as JMF3 for use in Lot 2.
- 4.4.2.1.17. **JMF Adjustments.** If JMF adjustments are necessary to achieve the specified requirements, make the adjustments before beginning a new lot. The adjusted JMF must:
- be provided to the Engineer in writing before the start of a new lot;
  - be numbered in sequence to the previous JMF;
  - meet the master gradation limits in accordance with Table 4; and
  - be within the operational tolerances of JMF2 in accordance with Table 6.
- 4.4.2.1.18. **Requesting Referee Testing.** Use referee testing, if needed, in accordance with Section 3079.4.9.1., "Referee Testing," to resolve testing differences with the Engineer.

**Table 6**  
**Operational Tolerances**

Test Description	Test Method	Allowable Difference between JMF2 and JMF1 Target <sup>1</sup>	Allowable Difference from Current JMF and JMF2 <sup>2</sup>	Allowable Difference between Contractor and Engineer <sup>3</sup>
Individual % retained for sieve sized larger than #200	<a href="#">Tex-200-F</a>	Must be Within Master Grading Limits in accordance with Table 4	±3.0 <sup>4</sup>	±5.0 <sup>4</sup>
% passing the #200 sieve				±2.0 <sup>4</sup>
Laboratory-molded density, %	<a href="#">Tex-207-F</a> , Part VIII	±1.0	±1.0	±1.0
Asphalt binder content, %	<a href="#">Tex-236-F</a> , Part I <sup>5</sup>	±0.3 <sup>6,7</sup>	±0.3 <sup>4,6,7</sup>	±0.3 <sup>6,7</sup>
Drain-down, %	<a href="#">Tex-235-F</a>	Note 8	Note 8	N/A
Boil test	<a href="#">Tex-530-C</a>	Note 9	Note 9	N/A

1. JMF1 is the approved laboratory mixture design used for producing the trial batch. JMF2 is the approved mixture design developed from the trial batch used to produce Lot 1.
2. Current JMF is JMF3 or higher. JMF3 is the approved mixture design used to produce Lot 2.
3. Contractor may request referee testing only when values exceed these tolerances.
4. Only applies to mixture produced for Lot 1 and higher. Aggregate gradation is not allowed to be outside the limits shown in Table 4.
5. Ensure the binder content determination excludes fibers.
6. May be obtained from asphalt mass flow meter readouts as determined by the Engineer.
7. Binder content is not allowed to be outside the limits in accordance with Table 5.
8. Verify that Table 5 requirements are met.
9. When shown on the plans.

4.4.2.2. **Engineer's Responsibilities.**

- 4.4.2.2.1. **Superpave Gyrotory Compactor.** The Engineer will use a Department SGC calibrated in accordance with [Tex-241-F](#) to mold samples for laboratory mixture design verification. For molding trial batch and production specimens, the Engineer will use the Contractor-provided SGC at the

field laboratory or provide and use a Department SGC at an alternate location.

4.4.2.2.2. **Conditional Approval of JMF1 and Authorizing Trial Batch.** The Engineer will review and verify conformance of the following information within two working days of receipt:

- the Contractor's mix design report (JMF1);
- the Contractor-provided Hamburg Wheel test results;
- all required materials including aggregates, asphalt, and additives; and
- the mixture specifications.

The Engineer will grant the Contractor conditional approval of JMF1 if the information provided on the paper copy of JMF1 indicates that the Contractor's mixture design meets the specifications. When the Contractor does not provide Hamburg Wheel test with laboratory mixture design, 10 working days are allowed for conditional approval of JMF1. The Engineer will base full approval of JMF1 on the test results on mixture from the trial batch.

Unless waived, the Engineer will determine the Micro-Deval abrasion loss in accordance with Section 3079.2.1.1.2., "Micro-Deval Abrasion." If the Engineer's test results are pending after two working days, conditional approval of JMF1 will still be granted within two working days of receiving JMF1. When the Engineer's test results become available, they will be used for specification compliance.

The Contractor is authorized to produce a trial batch after the Engineer grants conditional approval of JMF1.

4.4.2.2.3. **Hamburg Wheel Testing.** At the Contractor's request, the Department will perform the Hamburg Wheel test on the laboratory mixture in accordance with [Tex-242-F](#) to verify compliance with the Hamburg Wheel test requirement in accordance with Table 5. The Engineer will be allowed 10 working days to provide the Contractor with Hamburg Wheel test results on the laboratory mixture design.

4.4.2.2.4. **Ignition Oven Correction Factors.** The Engineer will use the split samples provided by the Contractor to determine the aggregate and asphalt correction factors for the ignition oven used for QA testing during production in accordance with [Tex-236-F](#), Part II. Provide correction factors that are not more than 12 mo. old. The Engineer will verify that the asphalt content correction factor takes into account the percent fibers in the mixture so that the fibers are excluded from the binder content determination.

4.4.2.2.5. **Testing the Trial Batch.** Within one full working day, the Engineer will sample and test the trial batch to ensure that the mixture meets the requirements in accordance with Table 6. If the Contractor requests the option to have the Department perform the Hamburg Wheel test on the trial batch mixture, the Engineer will mold samples in accordance with [Tex-242-F](#) to verify compliance with the Hamburg Wheel test requirement in accordance with Table 5.

The Engineer will have the option to perform [Tex-530-C](#) on the trial batch when shown on the plans. These results may be retained and used for comparison purposes during production.

4.4.2.2.6. **Full Approval of JMF1.** The Engineer will grant full approval of JMF1 and authorize the Contractor to proceed with developing JMF2 if the Engineer's results for the trial batch meet the requirements in accordance with Table 5.

The Engineer will notify the Contractor that an additional trial batch is required if the trial batch does not meet these requirements.

4.4.2.2.7. **Approval of JMF2.** The Engineer will approve JMF2 within one working day if the mixture meets the requirements in accordance with Tables 4, 5, and 6.

- 4.4.2.2.8. **Approval of Lot 1 Production.** The Engineer will authorize the Contractor to proceed with Lot 1 production (using JMF2).
- 4.4.2.2.9. **Approval of JMF3 and Subsequent JMF Changes.** JMF3 and subsequent JMF changes are approved if they meet the master grading limits in accordance with Table 4, the asphalt binder content in accordance with Table 5, and are within the operational tolerances of JMF2 in accordance with Table 6.
- 4.4.2.2.10. **Binder Content Adjustments.** For JMF2 and above, the Engineer may require the Contractor to adjust the target binder content by no more than 0.3% from the current JMF.
- 4.5. **Production Operations.** Perform a new trial batch when the plant or plant location is changed. Take corrective action and receive approval to proceed after any production suspension for noncompliance to the specification.
- 4.5.1. **Storage and Heating of Materials.** Do not heat the asphalt binder above the temperatures specified in Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions," or outside the manufacturer's recommended values. Provide the Engineer with daily records of asphalt binder and hot-mix asphalt discharge temperatures (in legible and discernible increments) in accordance with Item 320, "Equipment for Asphalt Concrete Pavement," unless otherwise directed. Do not store mixture for a period long enough to affect the quality of the mixture, nor in any case longer than 12 hr. unless otherwise approved.
- 4.5.2. **Mixing and Discharge of Materials.** Notify the Engineer of the target discharge temperature and produce the mixture within 25°F of the target. Monitor the temperature of the material in the truck before shipping to ensure that it does not exceed the maximum production temperatures in accordance with Table 7. The Department will not pay for or allow placement of any mixture produced above the maximum production temperatures in accordance with Table 7.

**Table 7**  
**Maximum Production Temperature**

High-Temperature Binder Grade <sup>1</sup>	Maximum Production Temperature
PG 76	345°F
A-R Binder	345°F

1. The high-temperature binder grade refers to the high-temperature grade of the virgin asphalt binder used to produce the mixture.

Control the mixing time and temperature so that substantially all moisture is removed from the mixture before discharging from the plant. Determine the moisture content, if requested, by oven-drying in accordance with [Tex-212-F](#), Part II, and verify that the mixture contains no more than 0.2% of moisture by weight. Obtain the sample immediately after discharging the mixture into the truck and perform the test promptly.

- 4.6. **Hauling Operations.** Clean all truck beds before use to ensure that mixture is not contaminated. Use a release agent, when necessary, shown on the Department's MPL to coat the inside bed of the truck. Do not use diesel or any release agent not shown on the Department's MPL.

Use equipment for hauling as defined in Section 3079.4.7.3.3., "Hauling Equipment." Use other hauling equipment only when allowed.

- 4.7. **Placement Operations.** Collect haul tickets from each load of mixture delivered to the project and provide the Department's copy to the Engineer approximately every hour or as directed. Use a hand-held thermal camera or infrared thermometer, when a thermal imaging system is not used, to measure and record the internal temperature of the mixture as discharged from the truck or Material Transfer Device (MTD) before or as the mix enters the paver and an approximate station number or GPS coordinates on each ticket. Calculate the daily yield and cumulative yield for the specified lift and provide to the Engineer at the end of paving operations for each day unless otherwise directed. The Engineer may suspend production if the Contractor fails to produce and provide haul tickets and yield calculations by the end of paving operations for each day.

Prepare the surface by removing raised pavement markers and objectionable material such as moisture, dirt, sand, leaves, and other loose impediments from the surface before placing mixture. Remove vegetation from



pavement edges. Place the mixture to meet the typical section requirements and produce a smooth, finished surface with a uniform appearance and texture. Offset longitudinal joints of successive courses of hot-mix by at least 6 in. Place mixture so that longitudinal joints on the surface course coincide within 6-in. of lane lines and are not placed in the wheel path, or as directed. Ensure that all finished surfaces will drain properly.

#### 4.7.1. **Weather Conditions.**

- 4.7.1.1. **When Using a Thermal Imaging System.** The Contractor may pave any time the roadway is dry and the roadway surface temperature is at least 60°F unless otherwise approved or as shown on the plans; however, the Engineer may restrict the Contractor from paving if the ambient temperature is likely to drop below 32°F within 12 hr. of paving. Place mixtures when weather conditions and moisture conditions of the roadway surface are suitable as determined by the Engineer. Provide output data from the thermal imaging system to demonstrate to the Engineer that no recurring severe thermal segregation exists in accordance with Section 3079.4.7.3.1.2., "Thermal Imaging System."

Produce mixture with a target discharge temperature higher than 300°F and with a compaction aid to facilitate compaction when the air temperature is 70°F and falling.

- 4.7.1.1.1. **When Not Using a Thermal Imaging System.** When using a thermal camera instead of the thermal imaging system, place mixture when the roadway surface temperature is at or above 70°F unless otherwise approved or as shown on the plans. Measure the roadway surface temperature with a hand-held thermal camera or infrared thermometer. Place mixtures only when weather conditions and moisture conditions of the roadway surface are suitable as determined by the Engineer. The Engineer may restrict the Contractor from paving if the air temperature is 60°F and falling.

Produce mixture with a target discharge temperature higher than 300°F and with a compaction aid to facilitate compaction when the air temperature is 70°F and falling.

#### 4.7.2. **Tack Coat.**

- 4.7.2.1. **Application.** Clean the surface before placing the tack coat. The Engineer will set the rate between 0.04 and 0.10 gal. of residual asphalt per square yard of surface area. Apply a uniform tack coat at the specified rate unless otherwise directed. Apply the tack coat in a uniform manner to avoid streaks and other irregular patterns. Apply adequate overlap of the tack coat in the longitudinal direction during the placement of the mat to ensure bond of adjacent PFC mats, unless otherwise directed. Unless otherwise directed, avoid tacking the vertical faces of adjacent PFC mats in the longitudinal direction to avoid restricting lateral drainage. Apply tack coat to all transverse joints. Allow adequate time for emulsion to break completely before placing any material. Do not dilute emulsified asphalts at the terminal, in the field, or at any other location before use.

- 4.7.2.2. **Sampling.** The Engineer will obtain at least one sample of the tack coat binder per project in accordance with [Tex-500-C](#), Part III, and test it to verify compliance with Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions." The Engineer will notify the Contractor when the sampling will occur and will witness the collection of the sample from the asphalt distributor immediately before use. Label the can with the corresponding lot and subplot numbers, producer, producer facility, grade, district, date sampled, and project information including highway and CSJ. For emulsions, the Engineer may test as often as necessary to ensure the residual of the emulsion is greater than or equal to the specification requirement in Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions."

- 4.7.3. **Lay-Down Operations.** Use the placement temperature in accordance with Table 8 to establish the minimum placement temperature of the mixture delivered to the paving operation.

**Table 8**  
**Minimum Mixture Placement Temperature**

High-Temperature Binder Grade <sup>1</sup>	Minimum Placement Temperature (Before Entering Paving Operation) <sup>2,3</sup>
PG 76	280°F
A-R Binder	280°F

1. The high-temperature binder grade refers to the high-temperature grade of the virgin asphalt binder used to produce the mixture.
2. The mixture temperature must be measured using a hand-held thermal camera or infrared thermometer nearest to the point of entry of the paving operation.
3. Minimum placement temperatures may be reduced 10°F if using a compaction aid.

4.7.3.1. **Thermal Profile.** Use a hand-held thermal camera or a thermal imaging system to obtain a continuous thermal profile in accordance with [Tex-244-F](#). Thermal profiles are not applicable in areas described in Section 3079.4.9.3.2., "Miscellaneous Areas."

4.7.3.1.1. **Thermal Segregation.**

4.7.3.1.1.1. **Moderate.** Any areas that have a temperature differential greater than 25°F, but not exceeding 50°F.

4.7.3.1.1.2. **Severe.** Any areas that have a temperature differential greater than 50°F.

4.7.3.1.2. **Thermal Imaging System.** Review the output results when a thermal imaging system is used, and provide the report described in [Tex-244-F](#) to the Engineer daily. Modify the paving process as necessary to eliminate any recurring (moderate or severe) thermal segregation identified by the thermal imaging system.-

The Engineer may suspend subsequent paving operations if the Contractor cannot successfully modify the paving process to eliminate recurring severe or moderate thermal segregation.

Provide the Engineer with electronic copies of all daily data files that can be used with the thermal imaging system software to generate temperature profile plots daily or as requested by the Engineer.

4.7.3.1.2.1. **Thermal Camera.** When using a thermal camera instead of the thermal imaging system, take immediate corrective action to eliminate recurring moderate thermal segregation when a hand-held thermal camera is used. Provide the Engineer with the thermal profile of every subplot within one working day of the completion of each lot. When requested by the Engineer, provide the electronic files generated using the thermal camera. Report the results of each thermal profile in accordance with Section 3079.4.2., "Reporting and Responsibilities." The Engineer will use a hand-held thermal camera to obtain a thermal profile at least once per project. Suspend operations and take immediate corrective action to eliminate severe thermal segregation unless otherwise directed. Resume operations when the Engineer determines that subsequent production will meet the requirements of this Section.

4.7.3.2. **Windrow Operations.** Operate windrow pickup equipment so that when hot-mix is placed in windrows, substantially all the mixture deposited on the roadbed is picked up and loaded into the paver.

4.7.3.3. **Hauling Equipment.** Use belly dumps, live bottom, or end dump trucks to haul and transfer mixture; however, with exception of paving miscellaneous areas, end dump trucks are only allowed when used in conjunction with an MTD with remixing capability or when a thermal imaging system is used unless otherwise allowed.

4.7.3.4. **Screed Heaters.** Turn off screed heaters to prevent overheating of the mat if the paver stops for more than 5 min. The Engineer may evaluate the suspect area in accordance with Section 3079.4.9.3.3., "Recovered Asphalt Dynamic Shear Rheometer (DSR)," if the screed heater remains on for more than 5 min. while the paver is stopped.

4.8. **Compaction.** Roll the freshly placed PFC with as many steel-wheeled rollers as necessary, operated in static mode, to seat the mixture without excessive breakage of the aggregate and to provide a smooth surface and uniform texture. Do not use pneumatic rollers. Moisten the roller drums thoroughly with a soap and water solution to prevent adhesion. Use only water or an approved release agent on rollers, tamps, and

other compaction equipment unless otherwise directed.

Use [Tex-246-F](#) to test and verify that the compacted mixture has adequate permeability. Measure the water flow once per subplot at locations directed by the Engineer. The water flow rate must be less than 20 sec. Investigate the cause of the water flow rate test failures and take corrective actions during production and placement to ensure the water flow rate is less than 20 sec. Suspend production if two consecutive water flow rate tests fail unless otherwise approved. Resume production after the Engineer approves changes to production or placement methods.

Complete all compaction operations before the pavement temperature drops below 180°F unless otherwise allowed. The Engineer may allow compaction with a light finish roller operated in static mode for pavement temperatures below 180°F.

Allow the compacted pavement to cool to 160°F or lower before opening to traffic unless otherwise directed. Sprinkle the finished mat with water or limewater, when directed, to expedite opening the roadway to traffic.

- 4.9. **Acceptance Plan.** Sample and test the hot-mix on a lot and subplot basis.
- 4.9.3. **Referee Testing.** The Materials and Tests Division is the referee laboratory. The Contractor may request referee testing if the differences between Contractor and Engineer test results exceed the operational tolerances in accordance with Table 6 and the differences cannot be resolved. The Contractor may also request referee testing if the Engineer's test results require suspension of production and the Contractor's test results are within specification limits. Make the request within five working days after receiving test results and cores from the Engineer. Referee tests will be performed only on the subplot in question and only for the particular tests in question. Allow 10 working days from the time the referee laboratory receives the samples for test results to be reported. The Department may require the Contractor to reimburse the Department for referee tests if more than three referee tests per project are required and the Engineer's test results are closer to the referee test results than the Contractor's test results.
- 4.9.4. **Production Acceptance.**
- 4.9.4.1. **Production Lot.** A production lot consists of four equal sublots. The default quantity for Lot 1 is 1,000 ton; however, when requested by the Contractor, the Engineer may increase the quantity for Lot 1 to no more than 2,000 ton. The Engineer will select subsequent lot sizes based on the anticipated daily production such that approximately three to four sublots are produced each day. The lot size will be between 1,000 ton and 4,000 ton. The Engineer may change the lot size before the Contractor begins any lot.
- 4.9.4.1.1. **Incomplete Production Lots.** If a lot is begun but cannot be completed, such as on the last day of production or in other circumstances deemed appropriate, the Engineer may close the lot. Close all lots within five working days unless otherwise allowed.
- 4.9.4.2. **Production Sampling.**
- 4.9.4.2.1. **Mixture Sampling.** Obtain hot-mix samples from trucks at the plant in accordance with [Tex-222-F](#). The sampler will split each sample into three equal portions in accordance with [Tex-200-F](#) and label these portions as "Contractor," "Engineer," and "Referee." The Engineer will perform or witness the sample splitting and take immediate possession of the samples labeled "Engineer" and "Referee." The Engineer will maintain the custody of the samples labeled "Engineer" and "Referee" until the Department's testing is completed.
- 4.9.4.2.1.1. **Random Sample.** At the beginning of the project, the Engineer will select random numbers for all production sublots. Determine sample locations in accordance with [Tex-225-F](#). Take one sample for each subplot at the randomly selected location. The Engineer will perform or witness the sampling of production sublots.
- 4.9.4.2.1.2. **Blind Sample.** For one subplot per lot, the Engineer will obtain and test a "blind" sample instead of the random sample collected by the Contractor. Test either the "blind" or the random sample; however, referee testing (if applicable) will be based on a comparison of results from the "blind" sample. The location of the Engineer's "blind" sample will not be disclosed to the Contractor. The Engineer's "blind" sample may be randomly selected in accordance with [Tex-225-F](#) for any subplot or selected at the discretion of the Engineer. The

Engineer will use the Contractor's split sample for sublots not sampled by the Engineer.

- 4.9.4.2.2. **Informational Shear Bond Strength Testing.** Select one random subplot from Lot 2 or higher for shear bond strength testing. Obtain full depth cores in accordance with [Tex-249-F](#). Label the cores with the Control Section Job (CSJ), producer of the tack coat, mix type, shot rate, lot, and subplot number and provide to the Engineer. The Engineer will ship the cores to the Materials and Tests Division or district laboratory for shear bond strength testing. Results from these tests will not be used for specification compliance.
- 4.9.4.2.3. **Informational Hamburg and Overlay Testing.** Select one random subplot from Lot 2 or higher for Hamburg and Overlay testing during the first week of production. Obtain and provide the Engineer with approximately 90 lb. of mixture, sampled in accordance with [Tex-222-F](#), in sealed containers, boxes, or bags labeled with the Control-Section-Job (CSJ), mixture type, lot, and subplot number. The Engineer will ship the mixture to the Materials and Tests Division for Hamburg and Overlay testing. Results from these tests will not be used for specification compliance.
- 4.9.4.2.4. **Asphalt Binder Sampling.** Obtain a 1 qt. (1 gal. for A-R binder) sample of the asphalt binder witness by the Engineer for each lot of mixture produced. The Contractor will notify the Engineer when the sampling will occur. Obtain the sample at approximately the same time the mixture random sample is obtained. Sample from a port located immediately upstream from the mixing drum or pug mill and upstream from the introduction of any additives in accordance with [Tex-500-C](#), Part II. Label the can with the corresponding lot and subplot numbers, producer, producer facility, grade, district, date sampled, and project information including highway and CSJ. The Engineer will retain these samples for one year. The Engineer may also obtain independent samples. If obtaining an independent asphalt binder sample and upon request of the Contractor, the Engineer will split a sample of the asphalt binder with the Contractor

At least once per project, the Engineer will collect split samples of each binder grade and source used. The Engineer will submit one split sample to the Materials and Tests Division to verify compliance with Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions" and will retain the other split sample for one year.

- 4.9.4.3. **Production Testing.** The Contractor and Engineer must perform production tests in accordance with Table 9. The Contractor has the option to verify the Engineer's test results on split samples provided by the Engineer. Determine compliance with operational tolerances in accordance with Table 6 for all sublots.

At any time during production, the Engineer may require the Contractor to verify the following based on quantities used:

- lime content (within  $\pm 0.1\%$  of JMF), when PG binder is specified;
- fiber content (within  $\pm 0.03\%$  of JMF), when PG binder is specified; and
- CRM content (within  $\pm 1.5\%$  of JMF), when A-R binder is specified.

Maintain the in-line measuring device when A-R binder is specified to verify the A-R binder viscosity between 2,500 and 4,000 centipoise at 350°F unless otherwise approved. Record A-R binder viscosity at least once per hour and provide the Engineer with a daily summary unless otherwise directed.

If the aggregate mineralogy is such that [Tex-236-F](#), Part I does not yield reliable results, the Engineer may allow alternate methods for determining the asphalt content and aggregate gradation. The Engineer will require the Contractor to provide evidence that results from [Tex-236-F](#), Part I are not reliable before permitting an alternate method unless otherwise allowed. Use the applicable test procedure as directed if an alternate test method is allowed.

**Table 9**  
**Production and Placement Testing Frequency**

Description	Test Method	Minimum Contractor Testing Frequency	Minimum Engineer Testing Frequency
Individual % retained for sieve sized larger than #200	<a href="#">Tex-200-F</a>	1 per subplot	1 per 12 sublots
% passing the #200 sieve			
Laboratory-molded density, %	<a href="#">Tex-207-F</a> , Part VIII	1 per subplot	1 per lot
Asphalt binder content <sup>1</sup> , %	<a href="#">Tex-236-F</a> , Part I <sup>2</sup>	1 per subplot	1 per lot
Drain-down, %	<a href="#">Tex-235-F</a>	1 per subplot	1 per 12 sublots
Boil test <sup>3</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-530-C</a>	1 per project	1 per project
Moisture content	<a href="#">Tex-212-F</a> , Part II	When directed	1 per project
Cantabro loss, %	<a href="#">Tex-245-F</a>	1 per project (sample only)	1 per project
Overlay test	<a href="#">Tex-248-F</a>	1 per project (sample only)	1 per project <sup>4,9</sup>
Hamburg Wheel test	<a href="#">Tex-242-F</a>	1 per project (sample only)	1 per project <sup>4,9</sup>
Water flow test	<a href="#">Tex-246-F</a>	1 per subplot	1 per project
Asphalt binder sampling	<a href="#">Tex-500-C</a> , Part II	1 per lot (sample only) <sup>5</sup>	1 per project
Tack coat sampling and testing	<a href="#">Tex-500-C</a> , Part III	N/A	1 per project
Thermal profile	<a href="#">Tex-244-F</a>	1 per subplot, <sup>6,7,8</sup>	1 per project <sup>7</sup>

1. May be obtained from t mass flow meter readouts as determined by the Engineer.
2. Ensure the binder content determination excludes fibers.
3. When shown on the plans.
4. Testing performed by the Materials and Tests Division on sample obtained from Lot 2 or higher.
5. Obtain samples witness by the Engineer. The Engineer will retain these samples for one year.
6. To be performed in the presence of the Engineer when using the thermal camera, unless otherwise approved.
7. Not required when a thermal imaging system is used.
8. When using the thermal imaging system, the test report must include the temperature measurements taken in accordance with Tex-244-F.
9. Testing performed by the Materials and Tests Division for informational purposes only.

4.9.4.4. **Operational Tolerances.** Control the production process within the operational tolerances in accordance with Table 6. Suspend production and placement operations when production or placement test results exceed the tolerances in accordance with Table 6 unless otherwise allowed. When production is suspended, the Engineer will allow production to resume when test results or other information indicates the next mixture produced will be within the operational tolerances.

4.9.4.5. **Individual Loads of Hot-Mix.** The Engineer can reject individual truckloads of hot-mix. When a load of hot-mix is rejected for reasons other than temperature, contamination, or excessive uncoated particles, the Contractor may request that the rejected load be tested. Make this request within 4 hr. of rejection. The Engineer will sample and test the mixture. If test results are within the operational tolerances in accordance with Table 6, payment will be made for the load. If test results are not within operational tolerances, no payment will be made for the load.

4.9.5. **Placement Acceptance.**

4.9.5.1. **Placement Lot.** A placement lot consists of four placement sublots. A placement subplot consists of the area placed during a production subplot.

4.9.5.2. **Miscellaneous Areas.** Miscellaneous areas include areas that typically involve significant handwork or discontinuous paving operations such as driveways, mailbox turnouts, crossovers, gores, spot level-up

areas, and other similar areas. The specified layer thickness is based on the rate of 90 lb. per square yard for each inch of pavement unless another rate is shown on the plans. Miscellaneous areas are not subject to thermal profiles testing.

4.9.5.3. **Recovered Asphalt Dynamic Shear Rheometer (DSR).** The Engineer may take production samples or cores from suspect areas of the project to determine recovered asphalt properties. Asphalt binders with an aging ratio greater than 3.5 do not meet the requirements for recovered asphalt properties and may be deemed defective when tested and evaluated by the Materials and Tests Division. The aging ratio is the DSR value of the extracted binder divided by the DSR value of the original unaged binder. Obtain DSR values in accordance with AASHTO T 315 at the specified high temperature performance grade of the asphalt. The Engineer may require removal and replacement of the defective material at the Contractor's expense. The asphalt binder will be recovered for testing from production samples or cores in accordance with [Tex-211-F](#).

4.9.5.4. **Irregularities.** Identify and correct irregularities, including segregation, rutting, raveling, flushing, fat spots, mat slippage, irregular color, irregular texture, roller marks, tears, gouges, streaks, uncoated aggregate particles, or broken aggregate particles. The Engineer may also identify irregularities, and in such cases, the Engineer will promptly notify the Contractor. If the Engineer determines that the irregularity will adversely affect pavement performance, the Engineer may require the Contractor to remove and replace (at the Contractor's expense) areas of the pavement that contain irregularities. The Engineer may also require the Contractor to remove and replace (at the Contractor's expense) areas where the mixture does not bond to the existing pavement.

If irregularities are detected, the Engineer may require the Contractor to immediately suspend operations or may allow the Contractor to continue operations for no more than one day while the Contractor is taking appropriate corrective action.

4.9.6. **Exempt Production.** When the anticipated daily production is less than 100 ton, all QC and QA sampling and testing are waived. The Engineer may deem the mixture as exempt production for the following conditions:

- anticipated daily production is more than 100 ton but less than 250 ton;
- total production for the project is less than 2,500 ton;
- when mutually agreed between the Engineer and the Contractor; or
- when shown on the plans.

For exempt production, the Contractor is relieved of all production and placement sampling and testing requirements. All other specification requirements apply, and the Engineer will perform acceptance tests for production and placement in accordance with Table 9.

For exempt production:

- produce, haul, place, and compact the mixture as directed by the Engineer; and
- control mixture production to yield a laboratory-molded density that is within  $\pm 1.0\%$  of the target density as tested by the Engineer.

4.9.7. **Ride Quality.** Measure ride quality in accordance with Item 585, "Ride Quality for Pavement Surfaces," unless otherwise shown on the plans.

---

## 5. MEASUREMENT

5.1. **PFC Hot-Mix Asphalt.** Permeable friction course (PFC) hot-mix will be measured by the ton of composite mixture which includes asphalt, aggregate, and additives. Measure the weight on scales in accordance with Item 520, "Weighing and Measuring Equipment."

5.2. **Tack Coat.** Tack coat will be measured at the applied temperature by strapping the tank before and after road application and determining the net volume in gallons from the calibrated distributor. The Engineer will witness all strapping operations for volume determination. All tack, including emulsions, will be measured by the gallon applied.

The Engineer may allow the use of a metering device to determine asphalt volume used and application rate if the device is accurate to within 1.5% of the strapped volume.

---

**6. PAYMENT**

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under Section 3079.5.1., "PFC Hot-Mix Asphalt," will be paid for at the unit bid price for "Permeable friction course Hot Mix Asphalt" of the mixture type, SAC, and binder specified. These prices are full compensation for surface preparation, materials, placement, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under Section 3079.5.2., "Tack Coat," will be paid for at the unit bid price for "Tack Coat" of the tack coat provided. These prices are full compensation for materials, placement, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.

Trial batches will not be paid for unless they are included in pavement work approved by the Department.

Payment adjustment for ride quality will be determined in accordance with Item 585, "Ride Quality for Pavement Surfaces."

# Special Specification 3081

## Thin Overlay Mixtures



### 1. DESCRIPTION

Construct a thin surface course composed of a compacted mixture of aggregate and asphalt binder mixed hot in a mixing plant. Produce a thin overlay mixture (TOM) with a minimum lift thickness of 1/2 in. for a Type F mixture and 3/4 in. for a Type C mixture.

### 2. MATERIALS

Furnish uncontaminated materials of uniform quality that meet the requirements of the plans and specifications.

Notify the Engineer of all material sources and before changing any material source or formulation. The Engineer will verify that the specification requirements are met when the Contractor makes a source or formulation change, and may require a new laboratory mixture design, trial batch, or both. The Engineer may sample and test project materials at any time during the project to verify specification compliance in accordance with Item 6, "Control of Materials."

2.1. **Aggregate.** Furnish aggregates from sources that conform to the requirements in accordance with Table 1 and as specified in this Section. Aggregate requirements in this Section, including those shown in Table 1, may be modified or eliminated when shown on the plans. Additional aggregate requirements may be specified when shown on the plans. Provide aggregate stockpiles that meet the definitions in this Section for coarse, intermediate, or fine aggregate. Do not use reclaimed asphalt pavement (RAP) or recycled asphalt shingles (RAS). Supply aggregates that meet the definitions in accordance with [Tex-100-E](#) for crushed gravel or crushed stone. The Engineer will designate the plant or the quarry as the sampling location. Provide samples from materials produced for the project. The Engineer will establish the Surface Aggregate Classification (SAC) and perform Los Angeles abrasion, magnesium sulfate soundness, and Micro-Deval tests. Perform all other aggregate quality tests in accordance with Table 1. Document all test results on the mixture design report. The Engineer may perform tests on independent or split samples to verify Contractor test results. Stockpile aggregates for each source and type separately. Determine aggregate gradations for mixture design and production testing based on the washed sieve analysis in accordance with [Tex-200-F](#), Part II.

2.1.1. **Coarse Aggregate.** Coarse aggregate stockpiles must have no more than 20% material passing the No. 8 sieve. Aggregates from sources listed in the Department's *Bituminous Rated Source Quality Catalog* (BRSQC) are preapproved for use. Use only the rated values for hot-mix listed in the BRSQC. Rated values for surface treatment (ST) do not apply to coarse aggregate sources used in hot-mix asphalt.

For sources not listed on the Department's BRSQC:

- build an individual stockpile for each material;
- request the Department test the stockpile for specification compliance;
- approved only when tested by the Engineer;
- once approved, do not add material to the stockpile unless otherwise approved; and
- allow 30 calendar days for the Engineer to sample, test, and report results.

2.1.1.1. **Blending Class A and Class B Aggregates.** Class B aggregate meeting all other requirements in blending Class A and B aggregates to meet a Class A requirement, ensure that at least 50% by weight, or volume if required, of all aggregates used in the mixture design retained on the No. 8 sieve comes from the Class A



aggregate source, unless otherwise shown on the plans. Blend by volume if the bulk specific gravities of the Class A and B aggregates differ by more than 0.300. Class B aggregate may be disallowed when shown on the plans.

The Engineer may perform tests at any time during production, when the Contractor blends Class A and B aggregates to meet a Class A requirement, to ensure that at least 50% by weight, or volume if required, of the material retained on the No. 8 sieve comes from the Class A aggregate source. The Engineer will use the Department's mix design template, when electing to verify conformance, to calculate the percent of Class A aggregate retained on the No. 8 sieve by inputting the bin percentages shown from readouts in the control room at the time of production and stockpile gradations measured at the time of production. The Engineer may determine the gradations based on either washed or dry sieve analysis from samples obtained from individual aggregate cold feed bins or aggregate stockpiles. The Engineer may perform spot checks using the gradations supplied by the Contractor on the mixture design report as an input for the template; however, a failing spot check will require confirmation with a stockpile gradation determined by the Engineer.

- 2.1.1.2. **Micro-Deval Abrasion.** The Engineer will perform a minimum of one Micro-Deval abrasion test in accordance with [Tex-461-A](#) for each coarse aggregate source used in the mixture design that has a Rated Source Soundness Magnesium (RSSM) loss value greater than 15 as listed in the BRSQC, unless otherwise directed. The Engineer will perform testing before the start of production and may perform additional testing at any time during production. The Engineer may obtain the coarse aggregate samples from each coarse aggregate source or may require the Contractor to obtain the samples. The Engineer may waive all Micro-Deval testing based on a satisfactory test history of the same aggregate source.

The Engineer will estimate the magnesium sulfate soundness loss for each coarse aggregate source, when tested, using the following formula:

$$Mg_{est.} = (RSSM)(MD_{act.}/RSMD)$$

where:

$Mg_{est}$  = magnesium sulfate soundness loss

RSSM = Rated Source Soundness Magnesium

$MD_{act}$  = actual Micro-Deval percent loss

RSMD = Rated Source Micro-Deval

When the estimated magnesium sulfate soundness loss is greater than the maximum magnesium sulfate soundness loss specified, the coarse aggregate source will not be allowed for use unless otherwise approved. The Engineer will consult the Soils and Aggregates Section of the Materials and Tests Division, and additional testing may be required before granting approval.

- 2.1.2. **Intermediate Aggregate.** Aggregates not meeting the definition of coarse or fine aggregate will be defined as intermediate aggregate. Supply intermediate aggregates, when used that are free from organic impurities. The Engineer may test the intermediate aggregate in accordance with [Tex-408-A](#) to verify the material is free from organic impurities. Supply intermediate aggregate from coarse aggregate sources, when used that meet the requirements in accordance with Table 1 unless otherwise approved.

If 10% or more of the stockpile is retained on the No. 4 sieve, verify that it meets the requirements in accordance with Table 1 for crushed face count ([Tex-460-A](#)) and flat and elongated particles ([Tex-280-F](#)).

- 2.1.3. **Fine Aggregate.** Fine aggregates consist of manufactured sands and screenings. Natural sands are not allowed in any mixture. Fine aggregate stockpiles must meet the fine aggregate properties in accordance with Table 1 and the gradation requirements in accordance with Table 2. Supply fine aggregates that are free from organic impurities. The Engineer may test the fine aggregate in accordance with [Tex-408-A](#) to verify the material is free from organic impurities. Use fine aggregate from coarse aggregate sources that meet the requirements in accordance with Table 1 unless otherwise approved.

If 10% or more of the stockpile is retained on the No. 4 sieve, verify that it meets the requirements in accordance with Table 1 for crushed face count ([Tex-460-A](#)) and flat and elongated particles ([Tex-280-F](#)).

**Table 1**  
**Aggregate Quality Requirements**

Property	Test Method	Requirement
<b>Coarse Aggregate</b>		
SAC	<a href="#">Tex-499-A</a>	A <sup>1</sup>
Deleterious material, %, Max	<a href="#">Tex-217-F</a> , Part I	1.5
Decantation, %, Max	<a href="#">Tex-217-F</a> , Part II	1.5
Micro-Deval abrasion, %	<a href="#">Tex-461-A</a>	Note <sup>f</sup>
Los Angeles abrasion, %, Max	<a href="#">Tex-410-A</a>	30
Magnesium sulfate soundness, 5 cycles, %, Max	<a href="#">Tex-411-A</a>	20
Crushed face count, <sup>3</sup> %, Min	<a href="#">Tex-460-A</a> , Part I	95
Flat and elongated particles @ 5:1, %, Max	<a href="#">Tex-280-F</a>	10
<b>Fine Aggregate</b>		
Linear shrinkage, %, Max	<a href="#">Tex-107-E</a>	3
Sand equivalent, %, Min	<a href="#">Tex-203-F</a>	45

1. Surface Aggregate Classification of "A" is required unless otherwise shown on the plans.
2. Used to estimate the magnesium sulfate soundness loss in accordance with Section 3081.2.1.1.2., "Micro-Deval Abrasion."
3. Only applies to crushed gravel.

**Table 2**  
**Gradation Requirements for Fine Aggregate**

Sieve Size	% Passing by Weight or Volume
3/8"	100
#8	70-100
#200	0-30

- 2.2. **Mineral Filler.** Mineral filler consists of finely divided mineral matter such as agricultural lime, crusher fines, or hydrated lime. Mineral filler is allowed unless otherwise shown on the plans. Fly ash is not permitted unless otherwise shown on the plans. Use no more than 2% hydrated lime unless otherwise shown on the plans. Test all mineral fillers except hydrated lime and fly ash in accordance with [Tex-107-E](#) to ensure specification compliance. The plans may require or disallow specific mineral fillers. Provide mineral filler, when used, that:
- is sufficiently dry, free-flowing, and free from clumps and foreign matter as determined by the Engineer;
  - does not exceed 3% linear shrinkage when tested in accordance with [Tex-107-E](#); and
  - meets the gradation requirements in Table 3, unless otherwise shown on the plans.

**Table 3**  
**Gradation Requirements for Mineral Filler**

Sieve Size	% Passing by Weight or Volume
#8	100
#200	55-100

- 2.3. **Baghouse Fines.** Fines collected by the baghouse or other dust-collecting equipment may be reintroduced into the mixing drum.
- 2.4. **Asphalt Binder.** Furnish performance-graded (PG) asphalt binder with a high temperature grade of PG 76 unless otherwise shown in the plans and a low temperature grade as shown on the plans, in accordance with Section 300.2.10., "Performance-Graded Binders."
- 2.5. **Tack Coat.** Furnish CSS-1H, SS-1H, EBL, or a PG binder with a minimum high-temperature grade of PG 58 for tack coat binder in accordance with Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions." Specialized tack coat materials listed on the Department's Tracking Resistant Asphalt Interlayer (TRAIL) MPL may be allowed or required when shown on the plans. Do not dilute emulsified asphalts at the terminal, in the field, or at any other location before use.

- 2.6. **Additives.** Provide the Engineer with documentation such as the bill of lading showing the quantity of additives used in the project unless otherwise directed.
- 2.6.1. **Lime and Liquid Antistripping Agent.** When lime or a liquid antistripping agent is used, add in accordance with Item 301, "Asphalt Antistripping Agents." Use no more than 1% hydrated lime when using crushed gravel. Do not add lime directly into the mixing drum of any plant where lime is removed through the exhaust stream unless the plant has a baghouse or dust collection system that reintroduces the lime into the drum.
- 2.6.2. **Compaction Aid.** Compaction Aid is defined as a department-approved chemical warm mix additive denoted as "chemical additive" on the Department's materials producer list (MPL) that is used to facilitate mixing and compaction of HMA.
- Compaction Aid is allowed for use on all projects. Compaction aid is required when shown on the plans or as required in Section 3081.4.7.1., "Weather Conditions."
- Warm mix foaming processes, denoted as "foaming process" on the Department-approved MPL, may be used to facilitate mixing and compaction of HMA; however warm mix foaming processes are not defined as a Compaction Aid.
- 2.7. **Recycled Materials.** Recycled materials are not allowed for use.

---

### 3. EQUIPMENT

Provide required or necessary equipment in accordance with Item 320, "Equipment for Asphalt Concrete Pavement."

---

### 4. CONSTRUCTION

Produce, haul, place, and compact the specified paving mixture. In addition to tests required by the specification, Contractors may perform other QC tests as deemed necessary. At any time during the project, the Engineer may perform production and placement tests as deemed necessary in accordance with Item 5, "Control of the Work." Schedule and participate in a mandatory pre-paving meeting with the Engineer on or before the first day of paving unless otherwise shown on the plans.

- 4.1. **Certification.** Personnel certified by the Department-approved hot-mix asphalt certification program must conduct all mixture designs, sampling, and testing in accordance with Table 4. Supply the Engineer with a list of certified personnel and copies of their current certificates before beginning production and when personnel changes are made. Provide a mixture design developed and signed by a Level 2 certified specialist. Provide Level 1A certified specialists at the plant during production operations. Provide Level 1B certified specialists to conduct placement tests. Provide AGG101 certified specialists for aggregate testing.

**Table 4**  
**Test Methods, Test Responsibility, and Minimum Certification Levels**

Test Description	Test Method	Contractor	Engineer	Level <sup>1</sup>
<b>1. Aggregate Testing</b>				
Sampling	<a href="#">Tex-221-F</a>	✓	✓	1A/AGG101
Dry sieve	<a href="#">Tex-200-F</a> , Part I	✓	✓	1A/AGG101
Washed sieve	<a href="#">Tex-200-F</a> , Part II	✓	✓	1A/AGG101
Deleterious material	<a href="#">Tex-217-F</a> , Part I	✓	✓	AGG101
Decantation	<a href="#">Tex-217-F</a> , Part II	✓	✓	AGG101
Los Angeles abrasion	<a href="#">Tex-410-A</a>		✓	Department
Magnesium sulfate soundness	<a href="#">Tex-411-A</a>		✓	Department
Micro-Deval abrasion	<a href="#">Tex-461-A</a>		✓	AGG101
Crushed face count	<a href="#">Tex-460-A</a>	✓	✓	AGG101
Flat and elongated particles	<a href="#">Tex-280-F</a>	✓	✓	AGG101
Sand equivalent	<a href="#">Tex-203-F</a>	✓	✓	AGG101
Organic impurities	<a href="#">Tex-408-A</a>	✓	✓	AGG101
Methylene blue test	<a href="#">Tex-252-F</a>		✓	Department
<b>2. Asphalt Binder &amp; Tack Coat Sampling</b>				
Asphalt binder sampling	<a href="#">Tex-500-C</a> , Part II	✓	✓	1A/1B
Tack coat sampling	<a href="#">Tex-500-C</a> , Part III	✓	✓	1A/1B
<b>3. Mix Design &amp; Verification</b>				
Design and JMF changes	<a href="#">Tex-204-F</a>	✓	✓	2
Mixing	<a href="#">Tex-205-F</a>	✓	✓	2
Molding (TGC)	<a href="#">Tex-206-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
Molding (SGC)	<a href="#">Tex-241-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
Laboratory-molded density	<a href="#">Tex-207-F</a> , Parts I & VI	✓	✓	1A
Rice gravity	<a href="#">Tex-227-F</a> , Part II	✓	✓	1A
Drain-down	<a href="#">Tex-235-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
Ignition oven correction factors <sup>2</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-236-F</a> , Part II	✓	✓	2
Indirect tensile strength	<a href="#">Tex-226-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
Overlay test	<a href="#">Tex-248-F</a>		✓	Department
Hamburg Wheel test	<a href="#">Tex-242-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
Boil test <sup>4</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-530-C</a>	✓	✓	1A
<b>4. Production Testing</b>				
Selecting production random numbers	<a href="#">Tex-225-F</a> , Part I		✓	1A
Mixture sampling	<a href="#">Tex-222-F</a>	✓	✓	1A/1B
Molding (TGC)	<a href="#">Tex-206-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
Molding (SGC)	<a href="#">Tex-241-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
Laboratory-molded density	<a href="#">Tex-207-F</a> , Parts I & VI	✓	✓	1A
Rice gravity	<a href="#">Tex-227-F</a> , Part II	✓	✓	1A
Gradation & asphalt binder content <sup>2</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-236-F</a> , Part I	✓	✓	1A
Drain-down	<a href="#">Tex-235-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
Control charts	<a href="#">Tex-233-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
Moisture content	<a href="#">Tex-212-F</a> , Part II	✓	✓	1A/AGG101
Hamburg Wheel test	<a href="#">Tex-242-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
Overlay test	<a href="#">Tex-248-F</a>	✓	✓	Department
Micro-Deval abrasion	<a href="#">Tex-461-A</a>		✓	AGG101
Boil test <sup>4</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-530-C</a>	✓	✓	1A
Abson recovery	<a href="#">Tex-211-F</a>		✓	Department
<b>5. Placement Testing</b>				
Establish rolling pattern	<a href="#">Tex-207-F</a> , Part IV	✓		1B
In-place density (nuclear method)	<a href="#">Tex-207-F</a> , Part III	✓		1B
Control charts	<a href="#">Tex-233-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
Ride quality measurement	<a href="#">Tex-1001-S</a>	✓	✓	Note 3
Thermal profile	<a href="#">Tex-244-F</a>	✓	✓	1B
Water flow test	<a href="#">Tex-246-F</a>	✓	✓	1B

- Level 1A, 1B, AGG101, and 2 are certification levels provided by the Hot Mix Asphalt Center certification program.
- Refer to Section 3081.4.9.2.3., "Production Testing," for exceptions to using an ignition oven.
- Profiler and operator are required to be certified at the Texas A&M Transportation Institute facility when Surface Test Type B is specified.
- When shown on the plans.

4.2.

**Reporting and Responsibilities.** Use Department-provided templates to record and calculate all test data, including mixture design, production and placement QC/QA, control charts, and thermal profiles. Obtain the current version of the templates at <https://www.txdot.gov/inside-txdot/forms-publications/consultants-contractors/forms/site-manager.html> or from the Engineer. The Engineer and the Contractor will provide any available test results to the other party when requested. The maximum allowable time for the Contractor and Engineer to exchange test data is as given in Table 5 unless otherwise approved. The Engineer and the Contractor will immediately report to the other party any test result that requires suspension of production or placement or that fails to meet the specification requirements. Record and electronically submit all test results and pertinent information on Department-provided templates.

Subsequent sublots placed after test results are available to the Contractor, which require suspension of operations, may be considered unauthorized work. Unauthorized work will be accepted or rejected at the discretion of the Engineer in accordance with Section 5.3., "Conformity with Plans, Specifications, and Special Provisions."

**Table 5**  
**Reporting Schedule**

Description	Reported By	Reported To	To Be Reported Within
<b>Production Quality Control</b>			
Gradation <sup>1</sup>	Contractor	Engineer	1 working day of completion of the subplot
Asphalt binder content <sup>1</sup>			
Laboratory-molded density <sup>2</sup>			
Moisture content <sup>3</sup>			
Boil test <sup>5</sup>			
<b>Production Quality Assurance</b>			
Gradation <sup>3</sup>	Engineer	Contractor	1 working day of completion of the subplot
Asphalt binder content <sup>3</sup>			
Laboratory-molded density <sup>1</sup>			
Hamburg Wheel test <sup>4</sup>			
Overlay test <sup>4</sup>			
Boil test <sup>5</sup>			
Binder tests <sup>4</sup>			
<b>Placement Quality Control</b>			
Thermal profile <sup>1</sup>	Contractor	Engineer	1 working day of completion of the lot
Water flow <sup>1</sup>			
<b>Placement Quality Assurance</b>			
Thermal profile <sup>3</sup>	Engineer	Contractor	1 working day of completion of the lot
Aging ratio <sup>4</sup>			
Water flow			

1. These tests are required on every subplot.
2. Optional test. When performed on split samples, report the results as soon as they become available.
3. To be performed at the frequency specified and in accordance with Table 13 or as shown on the plans.
4. To be reported as soon as the results become available.
5. When shown on the plans.

Use the procedures described in [Tex-233-E](#) to plot the results of all quality control (QC) and quality assurance (QA) testing. Update the control charts as soon as test results for each subplot become available. Make the control charts readily accessible at the field laboratory. The Engineer may suspend production for failure to update control charts.

4.3.

**Quality Control Plan (QCP).** Develop and follow the QCP in detail. Obtain approval for changes to the QCP made during the project. The Engineer may suspend operations if the Contractor fails to comply with the QCP.

Submit a written QCP before the mandatory pre-paving meeting. Receive approval of the QCP before pre-paving meeting. Include the following items in the QCP:

- 4.3.1. **Project Personnel.** For project personnel, include:
- a list of individuals responsible for QC with authority to take corrective action;
  - current contact information for each individual listed; and
  - current copies of certification documents for individuals performing specified QC functions.
- 4.3.2. **Material Delivery and Storage.** For material delivery and storage, include:
- the sequence of material processing, delivery, and minimum quantities to assure continuous plant operations;
  - aggregate stockpiling procedures to avoid contamination and segregation;
  - frequency, type, and timing of aggregate stockpile testing to assure conformance of material requirements before mixture production; and
  - procedure for monitoring the quality and variability of asphalt binder.
- 4.3.3. **Production.** For production, include:
- loader operation procedures to avoid contamination in cold bins;
  - procedures for calibrating and controlling cold feeds;
  - procedures to eliminate debris or oversized material;
  - procedures for adding and verifying rates of each applicable mixture component (e.g., aggregate, asphalt binder, lime, liquid antistripping, compaction aid, foaming process);
  - procedures for reporting job control test results; and
  - procedures to avoid segregation and drain-down in the silo.
- 4.3.4. **Loading and Transporting.** For loading and transporting, include:
- type and application method for release agents; and
  - truck loading procedures to avoid segregation.
- 4.3.5. **Placement and Compaction.** For placement and compaction, include:
- proposed agenda for mandatory pre-paving meeting, including date and location;
  - proposed paving plan (e.g., production rate, paving widths, joint offsets, and lift thicknesses);
  - type and application method for release agents in the paver and on rollers, shovels, lutes, and other utensils;
  - procedures for the transfer of mixture into the paver, while avoiding physical and thermal segregation and preventing material spillage;
  - process to balance production, delivery, paving, and compaction to achieve continuous placement operations and good ride quality;
  - paver operations (e.g., speed, operation of wings, height of mixture in auger chamber) to avoid physical and thermal segregation and other surface irregularities; and
  - procedures to construct quality longitudinal and transverse joints.
- 4.4. **Mixture Design.**
- 4.4.1. **Design Requirements.** The Contractor may design the mixture using a Texas Gyrotory Compactor (TGC) or a Superpave Gyrotory Compactor (SGC) unless otherwise shown on the plans. Use the typical weight design example given in [Tex-204-F](#), Part I, when using a TGC. Use the Superpave mixture design procedure provided in [Tex-204-F](#), Part IV, when using a SGC. Design the mixture to meet the requirements in accordance with Tables 1, 2, 3, 6, and 7.
- 4.4.1.1. **Target Laboratory-Molded Density When the TGC Is Used.** Design the mixture at a 97.5% target laboratory-molded density or in accordance with Table 7.

## 4.4.1.2.

**Design Number of Gyration (Ndesign) When the SGC Is Used.** Design the mixture at 50 gyrations (Ndesign). Use a target laboratory-molded density of 96.0% to design the mixture; however, adjustments can be made to the Ndesign value as noted in Table 7. The Ndesign level may be reduced to no less than 35 gyrations at the Contractor's discretion.

Use an approved laboratory from the Department's MPL to perform the Hamburg Wheel test, and the Department will perform the Overlay test and provide results with the mixture design, or provide the laboratory mixture and request that the Department perform the Hamburg Wheel test and Overlay test. The Engineer will be allowed 10 working days to provide the Contractor with Hamburg Wheel test and Overlay test results on the laboratory mixture design.

The Engineer will provide the mixture design when shown on the plans. The Contractor may submit a new mixture design at any time during the project. The Engineer will verify and approve all mixture designs (JMF 1) before the Contractor can begin production.

Provide the Engineer with a mixture design report using the Department-provided template. Include the following items in the report:

- the combined aggregate gradation, source, specific gravity, and percent of each material used;
- the target laboratory-molded density (or Ndesign level when using the SGC);
- results of all applicable tests;
- the mixing and molding temperatures;
- the signature of the Level 2 person or persons that performed the design;
- the date the mixture design was performed; and
- a unique identification number for the mixture design.

**Table 6**  
**Master Gradation Limits (% Passing by Weight or Volume) and Volumetric Requirements**

Sieve Size	Coarse (TOM-C)	Fine (TOM-F)
1/2"	100.0 <sup>1</sup>	100.0 <sup>1</sup>
3/8"	95.0–100.0	98.0–100.0
#4	40.0–60.0	70.0–95.0
#8	17.0–27.0	40.0–65.0
#16	5.0–27.0	20.0–45.0
#30	5.0–27.0	10.0–35.0
#50	5.0–27.0	10.0–20.0
#200	5.0–9.0	2.0–12.0
<b>Asphalt Binder Content,<sup>2</sup> % Min</b>		
-	6.0	6.5
<b>Design VMA,<sup>3</sup> % Min</b>		
-	16.0	16.5
<b>Production (Plant-Produced) VMA,<sup>3</sup> % Min</b>		
-	15.5	16.0

1. Defined as maximum sieve size. No tolerance allowed.
2. Unless otherwise shown on the plans or approved by the Engineer.
3. Voids in Mineral Aggregates (VMA).

**Table 7**  
**Mixture Design Properties**

Mixture Property	Test Method	Requirement
Target laboratory-molded density, % (TGC)	<a href="#">Tex-207-F</a>	97.5 <sup>1</sup>
Design gyrations (Ndesign for SGC)	<a href="#">Tex-241-F</a>	50 <sup>2</sup>
Hamburg Wheel test, passes at 12.5 mm rut depth for PG 76 mixtures	<a href="#">Tex-242-F</a>	20,000 Min
Overlay test, Critical Fracture Energy, lb.-in/sq. in	<a href="#">Tex-248-F</a>	1.5 Min
Overlay test, Crack Progression Rate	<a href="#">Tex-248-F</a>	0.40 Max
Drain-down, %	<a href="#">Tex-235-F</a>	0.20 Max

1. Unless otherwise shown on the plans or approved by the Engineer. Laboratory-molded density requirement using the TGC may be waived when approved by the Engineer.

2. May be adjusted within the range of 35–100 gyrations when shown on the plans or specification or when mutually agreed between the Engineer and Contractor. Laboratory-molded density requirement using the SGC may be waived when approved by the Engineer.

- 4.4.1 **Job-Mix Formula Approval.** The job-mix formula (JMF) is the combined aggregate gradation, target laboratory-molded density (or Ndesign level), and target asphalt percentage used to establish target values for hot-mix production. JMF1 is the original laboratory mixture design used to produce the trial batch. When a compaction aid or foaming process is used, JMF1 may be designed and submitted to the Engineer without including the compaction aid or foaming process. When a compaction aid or foaming process is used, document the compaction aid or foaming process used and recommended rate on the JMF1 submittal. The Engineer and the Contractor will verify JMF1 based on plant-produced mixture from the trial batch unless otherwise approved. The Engineer may accept an existing mixture design previously used on a Department project and may waive the trial batch to verify JMF1. The Department may require the Contractor to reimburse the Department for verification tests if more than two trial batches per design are required.
- 4.4.2.1. **Contractor's Responsibilities.**
- 4.4.2.1.1. **Providing Gyrotory Compactor.** Use a TGC calibrated in accordance with [Tex-914-K](#) when electing or required to design the mixture in accordance with [Tex-204-E](#), Part I, for molding production samples. Furnish an SGC calibrated in accordance with [Tex-241-F](#) when electing or required to design the mixture in accordance with [Tex-204-F](#), Part IV, for molding production samples. Locate the SGC if used, at the Engineer's field laboratory or make the SGC available to the Engineer for use in molding production samples.
- 4.4.2.1.2. **Gyrotory Compactor Correlation Factors.** Use [Tex-206-F](#), Part II, to perform a gyrotory compactor correlation when the Engineer uses a different gyrotory compactor. Apply the correlation factor to all subsequent production test results.
- 4.4.2.1.3. **Submitting JMF1.** Furnish a mix design report (JMF1) with representative samples of all component materials and request approval to produce the trial batch. Provide approximately 25 lb. of the design mixture if opting to have the Department perform the Hamburg Wheel test on the laboratory mixture, and request that the Department perform the test. Provide approximately 60 lb. of the design mixture to perform the Overlay test.
- 4.4.2.1.4. **Supplying Aggregates.** Provide approximately 40 lb. of each aggregate stockpile unless otherwise directed.
- 4.4.2.1.5. **Supplying Asphalt.** Provide at least 1 gal. of the asphalt material and enough quantities of any additives proposed for use.
- 4.4.2.1.6. **Ignition Oven Correction Factors.** Determine the aggregate and asphalt correction factors from the ignition oven in accordance with [Tex-236-F](#), Part II. Provide correction factors that are not more than 12 mo. old. Provide the Engineer with split samples of the mixtures before the trial batch production, including all additives (except water), and blank samples used to determine the correction factors for the ignition oven used for QA testing during production. Correction factors established from a previously approved mixture design may be used for the current mixture design if the mixture design and ignition oven are the same as previously used and the correction factors are not more than 12 mo. old, unless otherwise directed.
- 4.4.2.1.7. **Boil Test.** When shown on the plans, perform the test and retain the tested sample from [Tex-530-C](#) until completion of the project or as directed. Use this sample for comparison purposes during production.
- 4.4.2.1.8. **Trial Batch Production.** Provide a plant-produced trial batch upon receiving conditional approval of JMF1 and authorization to produce a trial batch, including the compaction aid or foaming process, if applicable, for verification testing of JMF1 and development of JMF2. Produce a trial batch mixture that meets the requirements in accordance with Table 8. The Engineer may accept test results from recent production of the same mixture instead of a new trial batch.



- 4.4.2.1.9. **Trial Batch Production Equipment.** Use only equipment and materials proposed for use on the project to produce the trial batch.
- 4.4.2.1.10. **Trial Batch Quantity.** Produce enough quantity of the trial batch to ensure that the mixture meets the specification requirements.
- 4.4.2.1.11. **Number of Trial Batches.** Produce trial batches as necessary to obtain a mixture that meets the specification requirements.
- 4.4.2.1.12. **Trial Batch Sampling.** Obtain a representative sample of the trial batch and split it into three equal portions in accordance with [Tex-222-F](#). Label these portions as “Contractor,” “Engineer,” and “Referee.” Deliver samples to the appropriate laboratory as directed.
- 4.4.2.1.13. **Trial Batch Testing.** Test the trial batch to ensure the mixture produced using the proposed JMF1 meets the mixture requirements in accordance with Table 8. Ensure the trial batch mixture is also in compliance with the requirements in accordance with Tables 6 and 7. Use a Department-approved laboratory listed on the MPL to perform the Hamburg Wheel test on the trial batch mixture or request that the Department perform the Hamburg Wheel test. Provide approximately 25 lb. of the trial batch mixture if opting to have the Department perform the Hamburg Wheel test, and request that the Department perform the test. Obtain and provide approximately 60 lb. of trial batch mixture in sealed containers, boxes, or bags labeled with the CSJ, mixture type, lot, and subplot number in accordance with [Tex-222-F](#) for the Overlay test. The Engineer will be allowed 10 working days to provide the Contractor with Hamburg Wheel test and Overlay test results on the trial batch. Provide the Engineer with a copy of the trial batch test results.
- 4.4.2.1.14. **Development of JMF2.** Evaluate the trial batch test results after the Engineer grants full approval of JMF 1 based on results from the trial batch, determine the optimum mixture proportions, and submit as JMF 2. Adjust the asphalt binder content or gradation to achieve the specified target laboratory-molded density. The mixture produced using JMF2 must meet the requirements in accordance with Tables 6 and 7. Verify that JMF2 meets the operation tolerances of JMF 1 in accordance with Table 8.
- 4.4.2.1.15. **Mixture Production.** Use JMF2 to produce Lot 1 after receiving approval for JMF2 and a passing result from the Department’s or a Department-approved laboratory’s Hamburg Wheel test and the Department’s Overlay test on the trial batch. If desired, proceed to Lot 1 production, once JMF2 is approved, at the Contractor’s risk without receiving the results from either the Department’s Hamburg Wheel test or Overlay test on the trial batch.
- Notify the Engineer if electing to proceed without Hamburg Wheel test and Overlay test results from the trial batch. Note that the Engineer may require up to the entire subplot of any mixture failing the Hamburg Wheel test or Overlay test to be removed and replaced at the Contractor’s expense.
- 4.4.2.1.16. **Development of JMF3.** Evaluate the test results from Lot 1, determine the optimum mixture proportions, and submit as JMF3 for use in Lot 2.
- 4.4.2.1.17. **JMF Adjustments.** If JMF adjustments are necessary to achieve the specified requirements, make the adjustments before beginning a new lot. The adjusted JMF must:
- be provided to the Engineer in writing before the start of a new lot;
  - be numbered in sequence to the previous JMF;
  - meet the master gradation limits in accordance with Table 6; and
  - be within the operational tolerances of JMF2 in accordance with Table 8.
- 4.4.2.1.18. **Requesting Referee Testing.** Use referee testing, if needed, in accordance with Section 3081.4.9.1., “Referee Testing,” to resolve testing differences with the Engineer.

**Table 8**  
**Operational Tolerances**

Description	Test Method	Allowable Difference between JMF2 and JMF1 Target <sup>1</sup>	Allowable Difference from Current JMF and JMF2 <sup>2</sup>	Allowable Difference between Contractor and Engineer <sup>3</sup>
Individual % retained for #8 sieve and larger	<a href="#">Tex-200-F</a> or <a href="#">Tex-236-F</a>	Must be Within Master Grading Limits in accordance with Table 6	±3.0 <sup>4,5</sup>	±5.0
Individual % retained for sieves smaller than #8 and larger than #200			±3.0 <sup>4,5</sup>	±3.0
% passing the #200 sieve			±2.0 <sup>4,5</sup>	±1.6
Asphalt binder content, % <sup>6</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-236-F</a>	±0.3	±0.3 <sup>5</sup>	±0.3
Laboratory-molded density, %	<a href="#">Tex-207-F</a>	±1.0	±1.0	±1.0
Laboratory-molded bulk specific gravity		N/A	N/A	±0.020
VMA, % Min	<a href="#">Tex-204-F</a>	Note 7	Note 7	N/A
Theoretical Max specific (Rice) gravity	<a href="#">Tex-227-F</a>	N/A	N/A	±0.020
Drain-down, %	<a href="#">Tex-235-F</a>	Note 8	Note 8	N/A

1. JMF1 is the approved laboratory mixture design used for producing the trial batch. JMF2 is the approved mixture design developed from the trial batch used to produce Lot 1.
2. Current JMF is JMF3 or higher. JMF3 is the approved mix design used to produce Lot 2.
3. Contractor may request referee testing only when values exceed these tolerances.
4. When within these tolerances, mixture production gradations may fall outside the master grading limits; however, the % passing the #200 will be considered out of tolerance when outside the master grading limits.
5. Only applies to mixture produced for Lot 1 and higher.
6. Binder content is not allowed to be outside the limits in accordance with Table 6. May be obtained from asphalt meter readouts as determined by the Engineer.
7. Verify that Table 6 requirements are met.
8. Verify that Table 7 requirements are met.

#### 4.4.2.2. **Engineer's Responsibilities.**

4.4.2.2.1. **Gyrotory Compactor.** For mixtures designed in accordance with [Tex-204-F](#), Part I, the Engineer will use a Department TGC, calibrated in accordance with [Tex-914-K](#), to mold samples for trial batch and production testing.

For mixtures designed in accordance with [Tex-204-F](#), Part IV, the Engineer will use a Department SGC, calibrated in accordance with [Tex-241-F](#), to mold samples for laboratory mixture design verification. For molding trial batch and production specimens, the Engineer will use the Contractor-provided SGC at the field laboratory or provide and use a Department SGC at an alternate location.

4.4.2.2.2. **Conditional Approval of JMF1 and Authorizing Trial Batch.** The Engineer will review and verify conformance of the following information within two working days of receipt

- the Contractor's mix design report (JMF1);
- the Department-provided Overlay test results;
- the Contractor-provided Hamburg Wheel test results;
- all required materials including aggregates, asphalt, and additives; and
- the mixture specifications.

The Engineer will grant the Contractor conditional approval of JMF1 if the information provided on the paper copy of JMF1 indicates that the Contractor's mixture design meets the specifications. When the Contractor does not provide Hamburg Wheel test and department provided Overlay test results with laboratory mixture design, 10 working days are allowed for conditional approval of JMF1. The Engineer will base full approval of JMF1 on test results on mixture from the trial batch.

Unless waived, the Engineer will determine the Micro-Deval abrasion loss in accordance with

Section 3081.2.1.1., "Micro-Deval Abrasion." If the Engineer's test results are pending after two working days, conditional approval of JMF1 will still be granted within two working days of receiving JMF1. When the Engineer's test results become available, they will be used for specification compliance.

The Contractor is authorized to produce a trial batch after the Engineer grants conditional approval of JMF1.

4.4.2.2.3. **Hamburg Wheel and Overlay Testing of JMF1.** If the Contractor requests the option to have the Department perform the Hamburg Wheel test on the laboratory mixture, the Engineer will mold samples in accordance with [Tex-242-F](#) to verify compliance with the Hamburg Wheel test requirement in Table 7. The Engineer will perform the Overlay test and mold samples in accordance with [Tex-248-F](#) to verify compliance with the Overlay test requirements in Table 7. The Engineer will be allowed 10 working days to provide the Contractor with Hamburg Wheel and Overlay test results on the laboratory mixture design.

4.4.2.2.4. **Ignition Oven Correction Factors.** The Engineer will use the split samples provided by the Contractor to determine the aggregate and asphalt correction factors for the ignition oven used for QA testing during production in accordance with [Tex-236-F](#), Part II. Provide correction factors that are not more than 12 mo. old.

4.4.2.2.5. **Testing the Trial Batch.** Within one full working day, the Engineer will sample and test the trial batch to ensure that the mixture meets the requirements in accordance with Table 8. The Engineer will mold samples in accordance with [Tex-242-F](#) if the Contractor requests the option to have the Department perform the Hamburg Wheel test on the trial batch mixture to verify compliance with Hamburg Wheel test requirements in Table 7. The Engineer will mold samples for the Overlay test in accordance with [Tex-248-F](#) to verify compliance with the Overlay test requirement in Table 7.

The Engineer will have the option to perform [Tex-530-C](#) on the trial batch when shown on the plans. These results may be retained and used for comparison purposes during production.

4.4.2.2.6. **Full Approval of JMF1.** The Engineer will grant full approval of JMF1 and authorize the Contractor to proceed with developing JMF2 if the Engineer's results for the trial batch meet the requirements in accordance with Tables 6 and 7. The Engineer will notify the Contractor that an additional trial batch is required if the trial batch does not meet these requirements.

4.4.2.2.7. **Approval of JMF2.** The Engineer will approve JMF2 within one working day if the mixture meets the requirements in accordance with Table 6, 7, and 8.

4.4.2.2.8. **Approval of Lot 1 Production.** The Engineer will authorize the Contractor to proceed with Lot 1 production (using JMF2) as soon as a passing result is achieved from the Department's or a Department-approved laboratory's Hamburg Wheel test and the Department's Overlay test on the trial batch. The Contractor may proceed at its own risk with Lot 1 production without the results from the Hamburg Wheel test or Overlay test on the trial batch.

If the Department's or Department-approved laboratory's sample from the trial batch fails the Hamburg Wheel test or Overlay test, the Engineer will suspend production until further Hamburg Wheel tests or Overlay tests meet the specified values. The Engineer may require up to the entire subplot of any mixture failing the Hamburg Wheel test or Overlay test to be removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense.

4.4.2.2.9. **Approval of JMF3 and Subsequent JMF Changes.** JMF3 and subsequent JMF changes are approved if they meet the master grading limits and asphalt binder content shown in Table 6 and are within the operational tolerances of JMF2 shown in accordance with Table 8.

4.5. **Production Operations.** Perform a new trial batch when the plant or plant location is changed. Take corrective action and receive approval to proceed after any production suspension for noncompliance to the specification.

4.5.1. **Storage and Heating of Materials.** Do not heat the asphalt binder above the temperatures specified in Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions," or outside the manufacturer's recommended values. Provide the Engineer with daily records of asphalt binder and hot-mix asphalt discharge temperatures (in legible and discernible increments) in accordance with Item 320, "Equipment for Asphalt Concrete Pavement," unless otherwise directed. Do not store mixture for a period long enough to affect the quality of the mixture, nor in any case longer than 12 hr. unless otherwise approved.

4.5.2. **Mixing and Discharge of Materials.** Notify the Engineer of the target discharge temperature and produce the mixture within 25°F of the target. Monitor the temperature of the material in the truck before shipping to ensure that it does not exceed the maximum production temperatures in accordance with Table 9. The Department will not pay for or allow placement of any mixture produced above the maximum production temperatures listed in Table 9.

**Table 9  
Maximum Production Temperature**

High-Temperature Binder Grade <sup>1</sup>	Max Production Temperature
PG 76	345°F

1. The high-temperature binder grade refers to the high-temperature grade of the virgin asphalt binder used to produce the mixture.

Control the mixing time and temperature so that substantially all moisture is removed from the mixture before discharging from the plant. Determine the moisture content, if requested, by oven-drying in accordance with [Tex-212-F](#), Part II, and verify that the mixture contains no more than 0.2% of moisture by weight. Obtain the sample immediately after discharging the mixture into the truck and perform the test promptly.

4.6. **Hauling Operations.** Clean all truck beds before use to ensure that mixture is not contaminated. Use a release agent shown on the Department's MPL to coat the inside bed of the truck when necessary. Do not use diesel or any release agent not shown on the Department's MPL.

Use equipment for hauling as defined in Section 3081.4.7.3.3., "Hauling Equipment." Use other hauling equipment only when allowed.

4.7. **Placement Operations.** Collect haul tickets from each load of mixture delivered to the project and provide the Department's copy to the Engineer approximately every hour, or as directed. Use a hand-held thermal camera or infrared thermometer, when a thermal imaging system is not used, to measure and record the internal temperature of the mixture as discharged from the truck or Material Transfer Device (MTD) before or as the mix enters the paver and an approximate station number or GPS coordinates on each ticket. Calculate the daily yield and cumulative yield for the specified lift and provide to the Engineer at the end of paving operations for each day unless otherwise directed. The Engineer may suspend production if the Contractor fails to produce and provide haul tickets and yield calculations by the end of paving operations for each day.

Prepare the surface by removing raised pavement markers and objectionable material such as moisture, dirt, sand, leaves, and other loose impediments from the surface before placing mixture. Remove vegetation from pavement edges. Place the mixture to meet the typical section requirements and produce a smooth, finished surface with a uniform appearance and texture. Place mixture so that longitudinal joints on the surface course coincide within 6-in. of lane lines and are not placed in the wheel path, or as directed, and offset longitudinal joints of successive courses of hot-mix by at least 6-in. Ensure that all finished surfaces will drain properly. Place the mixture at the rate or thickness shown on the plans. The Engineer will use the guidelines in Table 10 to determine the compacted lift thickness. The thickness determined is based on the rate of 110–115 lb. per square inch. for each inch of pavement unless otherwise shown on the plans.

**Table 10**  
**Compacted Lift Thickness**

Mixture Type	Compacted Lift Thickness <sup>1</sup>	
	Min (in.)	Max (in.)
TOM-C	0.75	1.25
TOM-F	0.5	1.00

1. Compacted target lift thickness will be specified on the plans.

4.7.1. **Weather Conditions.**

4.7.1.1. **When Using a Thermal Imaging System.** The Contractor may pave any time the roadway is dry and the roadway surface temperature is at least 60°F unless otherwise approved or as shown on the plans; however, the Engineer may restrict the Contractor from paving surface mixtures if the ambient temperature is likely to drop below 32°F within 12 hr. of paving. Place mixtures only when weather conditions and moisture conditions of the roadway surface are suitable as determined by the Engineer. Provide output data from the thermal imaging system to demonstrate to the Engineer that no recurring severe thermal segregation exists in accordance with Section 3081.4.7.3.1.2., "Thermal Imaging System."

Produce mixture with a target discharge temperature higher than 300°F and with a compaction aid to facilitate compaction when the air temperature is 70°F and falling

4.7.1.2. **When Not Using a Thermal Imaging System.** When using a thermal camera instead the thermal imaging system, place mixture when the roadway surface temperature is at or above 70°F unless otherwise approved or as shown on the plans. Measure the roadway surface temperature with a hand-held thermal camera or infrared thermometer. Place mixtures only when weather conditions and moisture conditions of the roadway surface are suitable as determined by the Engineer. The Engineer may restrict the Contractor from paving if the air temperature is 70°F and falling.

Produce mixture with a target discharge temperature higher than 300°F and with a compaction aid to facilitate compaction when the air temperature is 70°F and falling.

4.7.2. **Tack Coat.**

4.7.2.1. **Application.** Clean the surface before placing the tack coat. The Engineer will set the rate between 0.04 and 0.10 gal. of residual asphalt per square yard of surface area, unless otherwise specified on the plans. Apply a uniform tack coat at the specified rate unless otherwise directed. Apply the tack coat in a uniform manner to avoid streaks and other irregular patterns. Apply the tack coat to all surfaces that will come in contact with the subsequent HMA placement unless otherwise directed. Apply adequate overlap of the tack coat in the longitudinal direction during placement of the mat to ensure bond of adjacent mats, unless otherwise directed. Allow adequate time for emulsion to break completely before placing any material. Prevent splattering of tack coat when placed adjacent to curb, gutter, and structures. The Engineer may suspend paving operations until there is adequate coverage. Do not dilute emulsified asphalts at the terminal, in the field, or at any other location before use.

4.7.2.2. **Sampling.** The Engineer will obtain at least one sample of the tack coat binder per project in accordance with [Tex-500-C](#), Part III, and test it to verify compliance with Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions." The Engineer will notify the Contractor when the sampling will occur and will witness the collection of the sample from the asphalt distributor immediately before use. Label the can with the corresponding lot and subplot numbers, producer, producer facility, grade, district, date sampled, and project information including highway and CSJ. For emulsions, the Engineer may test as often as necessary to ensure the residual of the emulsion is greater than or equal to the specification requirement in Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions."

4.7.3. **Lay-Down Operations.** Use the placement temperatures in accordance with Table 11 to establish the minimum placement temperature of mixture delivered to the paving operation.

**Table 11  
Minimum Mixture Placement Temperature**

High-Temperature Binder Grade <sup>1</sup>	Min Placement Temperature (Before Entering Paving Operation) <sup>2,3</sup>
PG 76	280°F

1. The high-temperature binder grade refers to the high-temperature grade of the virgin asphalt binder used to produce the mixture.
2. The mixture temperature must be measured using a hand-held thermal camera or infrared thermometer nearest to the point of entry of the paving operation.
3. Minimum placement temperatures may be reduced 10°F if using a compaction aid.

4.7.3.1. **Thermal Profile.** Use a hand-held thermal camera or a thermal imaging system to obtain a continuous thermal profile in accordance with [Tex-244-F](#).

4.7.3.1.1. **Thermal Segregation.**

4.7.3.1.1.1. **Moderate.** Any areas that have a temperature differential greater than 25°F, but not exceeding 50°F.

4.7.3.1.1.2. **Severe.** Any areas that have a temperature differential greater than 50°F.

4.7.3.1.2. **Thermal Imaging System.** Review the output results when a thermal imaging system is used, and provide the report described in accordance with [Tex-244-F](#) to the Engineer daily. Modify the paving process as necessary to eliminate any recurring (moderate or severe) thermal segregation identified by the thermal imaging system.

The Engineer may suspend subsequent paving operations if the Contractor cannot successfully modify the paving process to eliminate recurring severe or moderate thermal segregation.

Provide the Engineer with electronic copies of all daily data files that can be used with the thermal imaging system software to generate temperature profile plots daily or as requested by the Engineer.

4.7.3.1.3. **Thermal Camera.** When using a thermal camera instead of the thermal imaging system, take immediate corrective action to eliminate recurring moderate thermal segregation when a hand-held thermal camera is used. Evaluate areas with moderate thermal segregation by performing water flow testing in accordance with [Tex-246-F](#) and verify the water flow is greater than 120 sec. Provide the Engineer with the thermal profile of every subplot within one working day of the completion of each lot. When requested by the Engineer, provide the electronic files generated using the thermal camera. Report the results of each thermal profile in accordance with Section 3081.4.2., "Reporting and Responsibilities." The Engineer will use a hand-held thermal camera to obtain a thermal profile at least once per project, unless the thermal imaging system is used. Suspend operations and take immediate corrective action to eliminate severe thermal segregation unless otherwise directed. Resume operations when the Engineer determines that subsequent production will meet the requirements of this Section. Evaluate areas with severe thermal segregation by performing water flow testing in accordance with [Tex-246-F](#) and verify the water flow is greater than 120 sec. Remove and replace the material in any areas that have both severe thermal segregation and a failing result for water flow test unless otherwise directed.

4.7.3.2. **Windrow Operations.** Operate windrow pickup equipment so that when hot-mix is placed in windrows, substantially all the mixture deposited on the roadbed is picked up and loaded into the paver.

4.7.3.3. **Hauling Equipment.** Use belly dumps, live bottom, or end dump trucks to haul and transfer mixture. End dump trucks are only allowed when used in conjunction with an MTD with remixing capability unless otherwise allowed.

4.7.3.4. **Screed Heaters.** Turn off screed heaters to prevent overheating of the mat if the paver stops for more than 5 min. The Engineer may evaluate the suspect area in accordance with Section 3081.4.9.3.1.1., "Recovered Asphalt Dynamic Shear Rheometer (DSR)," if the screed heater remains on for more than 5 min. while the paver is stopped.

4.8.

**Compaction.** Roll the freshly placed mixture with as many steel-wheeled rollers as necessary to ensure adequate compaction without excessive breakage of the aggregate and to provide a smooth surface and uniform texture. Operate each roller in static mode for TOM-F mixtures only. Do not use pneumatic-tire rollers. Use the control strip method given in accordance with [Tex-207-F](#), Part IV, to establish the rolling pattern. Thoroughly moisten the roller drums with a soap and water solution to prevent adhesion. Use only water or an approved release agent on rollers, tamps, and other compaction equipment unless otherwise directed.

Use tamps to thoroughly compact the edges of the pavement along curbs, headers, and similar structures and in locations that will not allow thorough compaction with rollers. The Engineer may require rolling with a trench roller on widened areas, in trenches, and in other limited areas.

Use [Tex-246-F](#) to measure water flow to verify the mixture is adequately compacted. Measure the water flow once per subplot at locations directed by the Engineer. Take additional water flow measurements when the minimum temperature of the uncompacted mat is below the temperature requirements in accordance with Table 12.

**Table 12**  
**Minimum Uncompacted Mat Temperature Requiring Additional Water Flow Measurements**

High-Temperature Binder Grade <sup>1</sup>	Min Temperature of the Uncompacted Mat Allowed Before Initial Break Down Rolling <sup>2,3</sup>
PG 76	<270°F

1. The high-temperature binder grade refers to the high-temperature grade of the virgin asphalt binder used to produce the mixture.
2. The surface of the uncompacted mat must be measured using a hand-held thermometer or infrared thermometer.
3. Minimum uncompacted mat temperature requiring a water flow measurement may be reduced 10°F if using a compaction aid.

Use [Tex-246-F](#) to measure water flow to verify the mixture is adequately compacted at confined longitudinal joints as directed by the Engineer.

The water flow rate should be greater than 120 sec. Investigate the cause of the water flow rate test failures and take corrective actions during production and placement to ensure the water flow rate is greater than 120 sec. Suspend production if two consecutive water flow rate tests fail unless otherwise approved. Resume production after the Engineer approves changes to production or placement methods.

Complete all compaction operations before the pavement temperature drops below 180°F unless otherwise allowed. The Engineer may allow compaction with a light finish roller operated in static mode for pavement temperatures below 180°F when approved.

Allow the compacted pavement to cool to 160°F or lower before opening to traffic unless otherwise directed. Sprinkle the finished mat with water or limewater, when directed, to expedite opening the roadway to traffic.

4.9.

**Acceptance Plan.** Sample and test the hot-mix asphalt on a lot and subplot basis.

4.9.1.

**Referee Testing.** The Materials and Tests Division is the referee laboratory. The Contractor may request referee testing if the differences between Contractor and Engineer test results exceed the maximum allowable difference in accordance with Table 8 and the differences cannot be resolved. The Contractor may also request referee testing if the Engineer's test results require suspension of production and the Contractor's test results are within specification limits. Make the request within five working days after receiving test results from the Engineer. Referee tests will be performed only on the subplot in question and only for the particular tests in question. Allow 10 working days from the time the referee laboratory receives the samples for test results to be reported. The Department may require the Contractor to reimburse the Department for referee tests if more than three referee tests per project are required and the Engineer's test results are closer to the referee test results than the Contractor's test results.

The Materials and Tests Division will determine the laboratory-molded density based on the molded specific gravity and the maximum theoretical specific gravity of the referee sample.

#### 4.9.2. **Production Acceptance.**

4.9.2.1. **Production Lot.** A production lot consists of four equal sublots. The default quantity for Lot 1 is 500 ton; however, when requested by the Contractor, the Engineer may increase the quantity for Lot 1 to no more than 2,000 ton. The Engineer will select subsequent lot sizes based on the anticipated daily production such that approximately three to four sublots are produced each day. The lot size will be between 500 ton and 2,000 ton. The Engineer may change the lot size before the Contractor begins any lot.

4.9.2.1.1. **Incomplete Production Lots.** If a lot is begun but cannot be completed, such as on the last day of production or in other circumstances deemed appropriate, the Engineer may close the lot. Close all lots within five working days unless otherwise allowed.

#### 4.9.2.2. **Production Sampling.**

4.9.2.2.1. **Mixture Sampling.** Obtain hot-mix samples from trucks at the plant in accordance with [Tex-222-F](#). The sampler will split each sample into three equal portions in accordance with [Tex-200-F](#) and label these portions as “Contractor,” “Engineer,” and “Referee.” The Engineer will perform or witness the sample splitting and take immediate possession of the samples labeled “Engineer” and “Referee.” The Engineer will maintain the custody of the samples labeled “Engineer” and “Referee” until the Department’s testing is completed.

4.9.2.2.1.1. **Random Sample.** At the beginning of the project, the Engineer will select random numbers for all production sublots. Determine sample locations in accordance with [Tex-225-F](#). Take one sample for each subplot at the randomly selected location. The Engineer will perform or witness the sampling of production sublots.

4.9.2.2.1.2. **Blind Sample.** For one subplot per lot, the Engineer will obtain and test a “blind” sample instead of the random sample collected by the Contractor. Test either the “blind” or the random sample; however, referee testing (if applicable) will be based on a comparison of results from the “blind” sample. The location of the Engineer’s “blind” sample will not be disclosed to the Contractor. The Engineer’s “blind” sample may be randomly selected in accordance with [Tex-225-F](#) for any subplot or selected at the discretion of the Engineer. The Engineer will use the Contractor’s split sample for sublots not sampled by the Engineer.

4.9.2.2.2. **Informational Methylene Blue Testing.** During the project and at random, obtain and provide the Engineer with approximately 50 lb. of each fine aggregate and approximately 20 lb. of all mineral fillers used to produce the mixture. Label the samples with the Control Section Job (CSJ), mixture type, and approximate lot and subplot number corresponding to when the sample was taken. The Engineer will ship the samples to the Materials and Tests Division for Methylene Blue testing in accordance with [Tex-252-F](#). Results from these tests will not be used for specification compliance.

4.9.2.2.3. **Asphalt Binder Sampling.** Obtain a 1-qt. sample of the asphalt binder witnessed by the Engineer for each lot of mixture produced. The Contractor will notify the Engineer when the sampling will occur. Obtain the sample at approximately the same time the mixture random sample is obtained. Sample from a port located immediately upstream from the mixing drum or pug mill and upstream from the introduction of any additives in accordance with [Tex-500-C](#), Part II. Label the can with the corresponding lot and subplot numbers, producer, producer facility location, grade, district, date sampled, and project information including highway and CSJ. The Engineer will retain these samples for one year. The Engineer may also obtain independent samples. If obtaining an independent asphalt binder sample and upon request of the Contractor, the Engineer will split a sample of the asphalt binder with the Contractor.

At least once per project, the Engineer will collect split samples of each binder grade and source used. The Engineer will submit one split sample to the Materials and Tests Division to verify compliance with Item 300, “Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions,” and will retain the other split sample for 1 yr.

4.9.2.3. **Production Testing.** The Contractor and Engineer must perform production tests in accordance with Table 13. The Contractor has the option to verify the Engineer’s test results on split samples provided by the Engineer. Determine compliance with operational tolerances listed in accordance with Table 8 for all sublots. Take immediate corrective action if the Engineer’s laboratory-molded density on any subplot is less than 95.0% or greater than 98.0% when using the SGC or less than 96.5% or greater than 98.5% when using the TGC, to bring



the mixture within these tolerances. The Engineer may suspend operations if the Contractor's corrective actions do not produce acceptable results. The Engineer will allow production to resume when the proposed corrective action is likely to yield acceptable results.

The Engineer may allow alternate methods for determining the asphalt binder content and aggregate gradation if the aggregate mineralogy is such that [Tex-236-F](#), Part I does not yield reliable results. Provide evidence that results from [Tex-236-F](#), Part I are not reliable before requesting permission to use an alternate method unless otherwise directed. Use the applicable test procedure as directed if an alternate test method is allowed.

**Table 13**  
**Production and Placement Testing Frequency**

Description	Test Method	Min Contractor Testing	Min Engineer Testing
Individual % retained for #8 sieve and larger	<a href="#">Tex-200-F</a> or <a href="#">Tex-236-F</a>	1 per subplot	1 per 12 sublots <sup>1</sup>
Individual % retained for sieves smaller than #8 and larger than #200			
% passing the #200 sieve			
Laboratory-molded density	<a href="#">Tex-207-F</a>	N/A	1 per subplot <sup>1</sup>
Laboratory-molded bulk specific gravity			
VMA			
Moisture content	<a href="#">Tex-212-F</a> , Part II	When directed	
Theoretical maximum specific (Rice) gravity	<a href="#">Tex-227-F</a> , Part II	N/A	1 per subplot <sup>1</sup>
Asphalt binder content <sup>2</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-236-F</a> , Part I	1 per subplot	1 per lot <sup>1</sup>
Overlay test <sup>3</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-248-F</a>	N/A	1 per project
Hamburg Wheel test	<a href="#">Tex-242-F</a>	N/A	1 per project
Thermal profile	<a href="#">Tex-244-F</a>	1 per subplot <sup>4,5,6</sup>	1 per project <sup>5</sup>
Asphalt binder sampling and testing	<a href="#">Tex-500-C</a> , Part II	1 per lot (sample only) <sup>7</sup>	1 per project
Tack coat sampling and testing	<a href="#">Tex-500-C</a> , Part III	N/A	1 per project
Boil test <sup>8</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-530-C</a>	1 per subplot <sup>9</sup>	1 per project
Water flow	<a href="#">Tex-246-F</a>		
Methylene blue test <sup>10</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-252-F</a>	1 per project (sample only)	1 per project

1. For production defined in Section 3081.4.9.4., "Exempt Production," the Engineer will test one per day if 100 ton or more are produced. For Exempt Production, no testing is required with less than 100 ton are produced.
2. May be obtained from asphalt flow meter readout as determined by the Engineer.
3. Testing performed by the Materials and Tests Division on sample obtained from Lot 2 or higher.
4. To be performed in the presence of the Engineer when a thermal camera is used, unless otherwise approved.
5. Not required when a thermal imaging system is used.
6. When using the thermal imaging system, the test report must include the temperature measurements taken in accordance with [Tex-244-F](#).
7. Obtain samples witnessed by the Engineer. The Engineer will retain these samples for 1 yr.
8. When shown on the plans.
9. To be performed in the presence of the Engineer, unless otherwise directed.
10. Testing performed by the Materials and Tests Division for informational purposes only.

4.9.2.4. **Operational Tolerances.** Control the production process within the operational tolerances in accordance with Table 8. When production is suspended, the Engineer will allow production to resume when test results or other information indicates the next mixture produced will be within the operational tolerances.

4.9.2.4.1. **Gradation.** Suspend operation and take corrective action if any aggregate is retained on the maximum sieve size in accordance with Table 6. A subplot is defined as out of tolerance if either the Engineer's or the Contractor's test results are out of operational tolerance. Suspend production when test results for gradation exceed the operational tolerances in accordance with Table 8 for three consecutive sublots on the same sieve or four consecutive sublots on any sieve unless otherwise directed. The consecutive sublots may be from more than one lot.

4.9.2.4.2. **Asphalt Binder Content.** A subplot is defined as out of operational tolerance if either the Engineer's or the Contractor's test results exceed the values in accordance with Table 8. Suspend production when two or

more sublots within a lot are out of operational tolerance or below the minimum asphalt binder content specified in accordance with Table 6 unless otherwise directed. Suspend production and shipment of mixture if the Engineer's or Contractor's asphalt binder content deviates from the current JMF by more than 0.5% for any subplot or is less than the minimum asphalt content allowed in accordance with Table 6.

- 4.9.2.4.3. **Voids in Mineral Aggregates (VMA).** The Engineer will determine the VMA for every subplot. For sublots when the Engineer does not determine asphalt binder content, the Engineer will use the asphalt binder content results from QC testing performed by the Contractor to determine VMA.

Take immediate corrective action if the VMA value for any subplot is less than the minimum VMA requirement for production in accordance with Table 6. Suspend production and shipment of the mixture if the Engineer's VMA results on two consecutive sublots are below the minimum VMA requirement for production in accordance with Table 6.

Suspend production and shipment of the mixture if the Engineer's VMA result is more than 0.5% below the minimum VMA requirement for production in accordance with Table 6. In addition to suspending production, the Engineer may require removal and replacement or may allow the subplot to be left in place without payment.

- 4.9.2.4.4. **Hamburg Wheel.** The Engineer may perform a Hamburg Wheel on plant produced mixture at any time during production. In addition to testing production samples, the Engineer may obtain cores and perform the Hamburg Wheel test on any area of the roadway where rutting is observed. Suspend production until further Hamburg Wheel meet the specified values when the production or core samples fail to meet the Hamburg Wheel criteria in accordance with Table 7. Core samples, if taken, will be obtained from the center of the finished mat or other areas excluding the vehicle wheel paths. The Engineer may require up to the entire subplot of any mixture failing the Hamburg Wheel to be removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense.

If the Department's or Department-approved laboratory's Hamburg Wheel test results in a "remove and replace" condition, the Contractor may request that the Department confirm the results by re-testing the failing material. The Materials and Tests Division will perform the Hamburg Wheel and determine the final disposition of the material in question based on the Department's test results.

- 4.9.2.5. **Individual Loads of Hot-Mix.** The Engineer can reject individual truckloads of hot-mix. When a load of hot-mix is rejected for reasons other than temperature, contamination, or excessive uncoated particles, the Contractor may request that the rejected load be tested. Make this request within 4 hr. of rejection. The Engineer will sample and test the mixture. If test results are within the operational tolerances in accordance with Table 8, payment will be made for the load. If test results are not within operational tolerances, no payment will be made for the load.

- 4.9.3. **Placement Acceptance.**

- 4.9.3.1. **Placement Lot.** A placement lot consists of four placement sublots. A placement subplot consists of the area placed during a production subplot.

- 4.9.3.1.1. **Recovered Asphalt Dynamic Shear Rheometer (DSR).** The Engineer may take production samples or cores from suspect areas of the project to determine recovered asphalt properties. Asphalt binders with an aging ratio greater than 3.5 do not meet the requirements for recovered asphalt properties and may be deemed defective when tested and evaluated by the Materials and Tests Division. The aging ratio is the DSR value of the extracted binder divided by the DSR value of the original unaged binder. Obtain DSR values in accordance with AASHTO T 315 at the specified high temperature performance grade of the asphalt. The Engineer may require removal and replacement of the defective material at the Contractor's expense. The asphalt binder will be recovered for testing from production samples or cores in accordance with [Tex-211-F](#).

- 4.9.3.1.2. **Irregularities.** Identify and correct irregularities including segregation, rutting, raveling, flushing, fat spots, mat slippage, irregular color, irregular texture, roller marks, tears, gouges, streaks, uncoated aggregate particles, or broken aggregate particles. The Engineer may also identify irregularities, and in such cases, the Engineer will promptly notify the Contractor. The Engineer may require the Contractor to remove and replace (at the

Contractor's expense) areas of the pavement that contain irregularities if the Engineer determines that the irregularity will adversely affect pavement performance. The Engineer may also require the Contractor to remove and replace (at the Contractor's expense) areas where the mixture does not bond to the existing pavement.

The Engineer may require the Contractor to immediately suspend operations if irregularities are detected or may allow the Contractor to continue operations for no more than one day while the Contractor is taking appropriate corrective action.

4.9.4. **Exempt Production.** When the anticipated daily production is less than 100 ton, all QC and QA sampling and testing are waived. The Engineer may deem the mixture as exempt production for the following conditions:

- anticipated daily production is more than 100 ton but less than 250 ton;
- total production for the project is less than 2,500 ton;
- when mutually agreed between the Engineer and the Contractor; or
- when shown on the plans.

For exempt production, the Contractor is relieved of all production and placement sampling and testing requirements. All other specification requirements apply, and the Engineer will perform acceptance tests for production and placement in accordance with Table 13.

For exempt production:

- produce, haul, place, and compact the mixture as directed by the Engineer; and
- control mixture production to yield a laboratory-molded density that is within  $\pm 1.0\%$  of the target density as tested by the Engineer.

4.9.5. **Ride Quality.** Measure ride quality in accordance with Item 585, "Ride Quality for Pavement Surfaces," unless otherwise shown on the plans.

## 5. MEASUREMENT

5.1. **TOM Hot-Mix Asphalt.** TOM hot-mix will be measured by the ton of composite mixture, which includes asphalt, aggregate, and additives. Measure the weight on scales in accordance with Item 520, "Weighing and Measuring Equipment."

5.2. **Tack Coat.** Tack coat will be measured at the applied temperature by strapping the tank before and after road application and determining the net volume in gallons from the calibrated distributor. The Engineer will witness all strapping operations for volume determination. All tack, including emulsions, will be measured by the gallon applied.

The Engineer may allow the use of a metering device to determine asphalt volume used and application rate if the device is accurate within 1.5% of the strapped volume.

## 6. PAYMENT

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under Section 3081.5.1., "TOM Hot-Mix Asphalt," will be paid for at the unit bid price for "Thin Overlay Mixture" of the mixture type, SAC, and binder specified. These prices are full compensation for surface preparation, removing pavement marking and markers, materials, placement, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under Section 3081.5.2., "Tack Coat," will be paid for at the unit bid price for "Tack Coat" of the tack coat provided. These prices are full compensation for materials, placement, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.

Trial batches will not be paid for unless they are included in pavement work approved by the Department.

Payment adjustment for ride quality will be determined in accordance with Item 585, "Ride Quality for Pavement Surfaces."

# Special Specification 3082

## Thin Bonded Friction Courses



### 1. DESCRIPTION

Construct a hot-mix asphalt (HMA) surface course composed of a warm spray-applied polymer modified emulsion membrane followed immediately with a compacted permeable mixture of aggregate, asphalt binder, and additives mixed hot in a mixing plant.

### 2. MATERIALS

Furnish uncontaminated materials of uniform quality that meet the requirements of the plans and specifications.

Notify the Engineer of all material sources and before changing any material source or formulation. The Engineer will verify that the specification requirements are met when the Contractor makes a source or formulation change, and may require a new laboratory mixture design, trial batch, or both. The Engineer may sample and test project materials at any time during the project to verify specification compliance in accordance with Item 6, "Control of Materials."

- 2.1. **Aggregate.** Furnish aggregates from sources that conform to the requirements shown in Table 1 and as specified in this Section. Aggregate requirements in this Section, including those shown in Table 1, may be modified or eliminated when shown on the plans. Additional aggregate requirements may be specified when shown on the plans. Provide aggregate stockpiles that meet the definitions in this Section for coarse or fine aggregate. Do not use intermediate or fine aggregate in PFC mixtures. Supply aggregates that meet the definitions in [Tex-100-E](#) for crushed gravel or crushed stone. The Engineer will designate the plant or the quarry as the sampling location. Provide samples from materials produced for the project. The Engineer will establish the Surface Aggregate Classification (SAC) and perform Los Angeles abrasion, magnesium sulfate soundness, and Micro-Deval tests. Perform all other aggregate quality tests listed in accordance with Table 1. Document all test results on the mixture design report. The Engineer may perform tests on independent or split samples to verify Contractor test results. Stockpile aggregates for each source and type separately. Determine aggregate gradations for mixture design and production testing based on the washed sieve analysis given in [Tex-200-F](#), Part II.

- 2.1.1. **Coarse Aggregate.** Coarse aggregate stockpiles must have no more than 20% material passing the No. 8 sieve. Aggregates from sources listed in the Department's *Bituminous Rated Source Quality Catalog* (BRSQC) are preapproved for use. Use only the rated values for hot-mix listed in the BRSQC. Rated values for surface treatment (ST) do not apply to coarse aggregate sources used in hot-mix asphalt.

For sources not listed on the Department's BRSQC:

- build an individual stockpile for each material;
- request the Department test the stockpile for specification compliance;
- approved only when tested by the Engineer;
- once approved, do not add material to the stockpile unless otherwise approved; and
- allow 30 calendar days for the Engineer to sample, test, and report results.

Provide coarse aggregate with at least the minimum SAC shown on the plans. SAC requirements only apply to aggregates used on the surface of travel lanes, unless otherwise shown on the plans. SAC requirements apply to aggregates used on surfaces other than travel lanes when shown on the plans. The SAC for sources on the Department's *Aggregate Quality Monitoring Program* (AQMP) ([Tex-499-A](#)) is listed in the BRSQC.

- 2.1.1.1. **Blending Class A and Class B Aggregates.** To prevent crushing of the Class B aggregate when blending, Class B aggregate may be blended with a Class A aggregate to meet requirements for Class A materials if the Department's BRSQC rated source soundness magnesium (RSSM) rating for the Class B aggregate is less than the Class A aggregate or if the RSSM rating for the Class B aggregate is less than or equal to 10%. Use the rated values for hot mix asphaltic concrete (HMAC) published in the BRSQC. When blending Class A and B aggregates to meet a Class A requirement, ensure that at least 50% by weight, or volume if required, of all the aggregates used in the mixture design retained on the No. 4 sieve comes from the Class A aggregate source, unless otherwise shown on the plans. Blend by volume if the bulk specific gravities of the Class A and B aggregates differ by more than 0.300. Class B aggregate may be disallowed when shown on the plans.

The Engineer may perform tests at any time during production, when the Contractor blends Class A and B aggregates to meet a Class A requirement, to ensure that at least 50% by weight, or volume if required, of the material retained on the No. 4 sieve comes from the Class A aggregate source. The Engineer will use the Department's mix design template, when electing to verify conformance, to calculate the percent of Class A aggregate retained on the No. 4 sieve by inputting the bin percentages shown from readouts in the control room at the time of production and stockpile gradations measured at the time of production. The Engineer may determine the gradations based on either washed or dry sieve analysis from samples obtained from individual aggregate cold feed bins or aggregate stockpiles. The Engineer may perform spot checks using the gradations supplied by the Contractor on the mixture design report as an input for the template; however, a failing spot check will require confirmation with a stockpile gradation determined by the Engineer.

- 2.1.1.2. **Micro-Deval Abrasion.** The Engineer will perform a minimum of one Micro-Deval abrasion test in accordance with [Tex-461-A](#) for each coarse aggregate source used in the mixture design that has a Rated Source Soundness Magnesium (RSSM) loss value greater than 15 as listed in the BRSQC, unless otherwise directed. The Engineer will perform testing before the start of production and may perform additional testing at any time during production. The Engineer may obtain the coarse aggregate samples from each coarse aggregate source or may require the Contractor to obtain the samples. The Engineer may waive all Micro-Deval testing based on a satisfactory test history of the same aggregate source.

The Engineer will estimate the magnesium sulfate soundness loss for each coarse aggregate source, when tested, using the following formula:

$$Mg_{est.} = (RSSM)(MD_{act.}/RSMD)$$

where:

$Mg_{est.}$  = magnesium sulfate soundness loss

RSSM = Rated Source Soundness Magnesium

$MD_{act.}$  = actual Micro-Deval percent loss

RSMD = Rated Source Micro-Deval

When the estimated magnesium sulfate soundness loss is greater than the maximum magnesium sulfate soundness loss specified, the coarse aggregate source will not be allowed for use unless otherwise approved. The Engineer will consult the Soils and Aggregates Section of the Materials and Tests Division, and additional testing may be required before granting approval.

- 2.1.2. **Fine Aggregate.** Fine aggregates consist of manufactured sands and screenings. Fine aggregate stockpiles must meet the fine aggregate properties in accordance with Table 1 and the gradation requirements in accordance with Table 2. Supply fine aggregates that are free from organic impurities. The Engineer may test the fine aggregate in accordance with [Tex-408-A](#) to verify the material is free from organic impurities. Do not use field sand or other uncrushed fine aggregate. Use fine aggregate from coarse aggregate sources that meet the requirements shown in accordance with Table 1 unless otherwise approved.

**Table 1**  
**Coarse Aggregate Quality Requirements**

Property	Test Method	Requirement
SAC	<a href="#">Tex-499-A (AQMP)</a>	As shown on the plans
Deleterious material, %, Max	<a href="#">Tex-217-E, Part I</a>	1.0
Decantation, %, Max	<a href="#">Tex-217-E, Part II</a>	1.5
Micro-Deval abrasion, %	<a href="#">Tex-461-A</a>	Note <sup>1</sup>
Los Angeles abrasion, %, Max	<a href="#">Tex-410-A</a>	30
Magnesium sulfate soundness, 5 cycles, %, Max	<a href="#">Tex-411-A</a>	20
Crushed face count <sup>2</sup> , %, Min	<a href="#">Tex-460-A, Part I</a>	95
Flat and elongated particles @ 5:1, %, Max	<a href="#">Tex-280-F</a>	10
Fine Aggregate Properties		
Sand Equivalent, %, Min	<a href="#">Tex-203-F</a>	45
Methylene Blue, mg/g, Max	<a href="#">Tex-252-F</a>	10.0

- Used to estimate the magnesium sulfate soundness loss in accordance with section 3082.2.1.1.2., "Micro-Deval Abrasion."
- Only applies to crushed gravel.

**Table 2**  
**Gradation Requirements for Fine Aggregate**

Sieve Size	% Passing by Weight or Volume
3/8"	100
#8	70–100
#200	0–30

- 2.2. **Mineral Filler.** Mineral filler consists of finely divided mineral matter such as agricultural lime, crusher fines, or hydrated lime. Fly ash is not allowed unless otherwise shown on the plans. Mineral filler is allowed unless otherwise shown on the plans. Use no more than 2% hydrated lime, unless otherwise shown on the plans. Test all mineral fillers except hydrated lime and fly ash in accordance with [Tex-252-F](#) to ensure specification compliance. The plans may require or disallow specific mineral fillers. Provide mineral filler, when used, that:
- is sufficiently dry, free-flowing, and free from clumps and foreign matter as determined by the Engineer;
  - does not exceed 3% linear shrinkage when tested in accordance with [Tex-107-E](#); and
  - meets the gradation requirements in accordance with Table 3, unless otherwise shown on the plans.

**Table 3**  
**Gradation Requirements for Mineral Filler**

Sieve Size	% Passing by Weight or Volume
#8	100
#200	55–100

- 2.3. **Baghouse Fines.** Fines collected by the baghouse or other dust-collecting equipment may be reintroduced into the mixing drum.
- 2.4. **Asphalt Binder.** Furnish the type and grade of binder specified on the plans that meets the requirements of Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions."
- 2.4.1. **Performance-Graded (PG) Binder.** Provide an asphalt binder with a high-temperature grade of PG 76 and low-temperature grade as shown on the plans in accordance with Section 300.2.10., "Performance-Graded Binders," when PG binder is specified.
- 2.4.2. **Asphalt-Rubber (A-R) Binder.** Provide A-R binder that meets the Type I or Type II requirements of Section 300.2.9., "Asphalt-Rubber Binders," when A-R is specified unless otherwise shown on the plans. Use at least 15.0% by weight of Crumb Rubber Modifier (CRM) that meets the Grade B or Grade C requirements of Section 300.2.7., "Crumb Rubber Modifier," unless otherwise shown on the plans. Provide the Engineer the A-R binder blend design with the mix design (JMF1) submittal. Provide the Engineer with documentation such as the bill of lading showing the quantity of CRM used in the project unless otherwise directed.
- 2.5. **Membrane.** Provide a smooth and homogeneous polymer modified emulsion meeting the requirements in accordance with Table 4.

**Table 4**  
**Polymer Modified Emulsion Requirements**

Test on Emulsion	Test Method	Min	Max
Viscosity @ 77°F, SSF	T 72	20	100
Storage Stability, <sup>1</sup> %	T 59		1
Demulsibility (for anionic emulsions), 35 mL of 0.02 N CaCl <sub>2</sub> , %	T 59	55	
Demulsibility (for cationic emulsions), 35 mL 0.8% Sodium dioctyl sulfosuccinate, %	T 59	55	
Sieve Test, <sup>2</sup> %	T 59		0.05
Distillation Test: <sup>3</sup>			
Residue by distillation, % by wt.	T 59	63	0.5
Oil portion of distillate, % by vol.			
Test on Residue from Distillation	Test Method	Min	Max
Elastic Recovery @ 50°F, 50 mm/min., %	<a href="#">Tex-539-C</a>	60	
Penetration @ 77°F, 100 g, 5 sec, 0.1 mm	T 49	100	150

1. After standing undisturbed for 24 hr., the surface must be smooth, must not exhibit a white or milky colored substance, and must be a homogeneous color throughout.
2. May be required by the Engineer only when the emulsion cannot be easily applied in the field.
3. The temperature on the lower thermometer should be brought slowly to 350°F ±10°F and maintained at this temperature for 20 min. The total distillation should be complete in 60 ±5 min. from the first application of heat.

2.6. **Additives.** Provide the Engineer with documentation such as the bill of lading showing the quantity of additives used in the project unless otherwise directed.

2.6.1. **Fibers.** Provide cellulose or mineral fibers when PG binder is specified. Do not use fibers when A-R binder is specified. Submit written certification to the Engineer that the fibers proposed for use meet the requirements of DMS-9204, "Fiber Additives for Bituminous Mixtures." Fibers may be pre-blended into the binder at the asphalt supply terminal unless otherwise shown on the plans.

2.6.2. **Lime Mineral Filler.** Add lime as mineral filler at a rate of 1.0% by weight of the total dry aggregate in accordance with Item 301, "Asphalt Antistripping Agents," unless otherwise shown on the plans or waived by the Engineer based on Hamburg Wheel test results. Do not add lime directly into the mixing drum of any plant where lime is removed through the exhaust stream unless the plant has a baghouse or dust collection system that reintroduces the lime into the drum.

2.6.3. **Lime and Liquid Antistripping Agent.** When lime or a liquid antistripping agent is used, add in accordance with Item 301, "Asphalt Antistripping Agents." Do not add lime directly into the mixing drum of any plant where lime is removed through the exhaust stream unless the plant has a baghouse or dust collection system that reintroduces the lime into the drum. Lime added as mineral filler will count towards the total quantity of lime specified when the plans require lime to be added as an antistripping agent.

2.6.4. **Compaction Aid.** Compaction Aid is defined as a Department-approved chemical warm mix additive denoted as "chemical additive" on the Department's material producer list (MPL) that is used to facilitate mixing and compaction of HMA.

Compaction aid is allowed for use on all projects. Compaction aid is required when shown on the plans or as required in Section 3082.4.7.1., "Weather Conditions."

Warm mix foaming processes, denoted as "foaming process" on the Department-approved MPL, may be used to facilitate mixing and compaction of HMA; however warm mix processes are not defined as a Compaction Aid.

2.7. **Recycled Materials.** Recycled materials are not allowed for use.



---

### 3. EQUIPMENT

Provide required or necessary equipment in accordance with Item 320, "Equipment for Asphalt Concrete Pavement." When A-R binder is specified, equip the hot-mix plant with an in-line viscosity-measuring device located between the blending unit and the mixing drum. Provide a means to calibrate the asphalt mass flow meter on-site when a meter is used.

3.1. **Placement Equipment.** Provide a paver that meets all the requirements listed below.

3.1.1. **Paver.** Furnish a paver that will spray the membrane, apply the PFC mixture, and level the surface of the mat in a single pass. Configure the paver so that the mixture is placed no more than 5 sec. after the membrane is applied. Ensure the paver does not support the weight of any portion of hauling equipment other than the connection. Provide loading equipment that does not transmit vibrations or other motions to the paver that adversely affects the finished pavement quality. Equip the paver with an automatic dual longitudinal-grade control system and an automatic transverse-grade control system.

3.1.1.1. **Tractor Unit.** Supply a tractor unit that can push or propel vehicles, dumping directly into the finishing machine to obtain the desired lines and grades to eliminate any hand finishing. Equip the unit with a hitch to maintain contact between the hauling equipment's rear wheels and the finishing machine's pusher rollers while mixture is unloaded.

3.1.1.2. **Membrane Storage Tank and Distribution System.** Equip the paver with an insulated storage tank with a minimum capacity of 900 gal. Provide a metered mechanical pressure sprayer on the paver to apply a uniform membrane at the specified rate. Locate the spray bar on the paver so that the membrane is applied immediately in front of the screed unit. Provide a read-out device on the paver to monitor the membrane application rate.

Furnish a volumetric calibration and strap stick for the tank in accordance with [Tex-922-K](#), Part I, unless otherwise directed. Calibrate the tank within the previous 5 yr. of the date first used on the project. The Engineer may verify calibration accuracy in accordance with [Tex-922-K](#), Part II.

3.1.1.3. **Screed.** Provide a variable width vibratory screed that meets Item 320, "Equipment for Asphalt Concrete Pavement."

3.1.2. **Material Transfer Device (MTD).** Provide the specified type of MTD when shown on the plans. Ensure MTDs provide a continuous, uniform mixture flow to the asphalt paver.

3.1.3. **Rollers.** Provide steel-wheel rollers meeting the requirements of Item 210, "Rolling," except provide rollers weighing a minimum of 10 ton for each roller required. Operate rollers in static (non-vibrating) mode unless otherwise allowed.

---

### 4. CONSTRUCTION

Produce, haul, place, and compact the specified paving mixture. In addition to tests required by the specification, Contractors may perform other QC tests as deemed necessary. At any time during the project, the Engineer may perform production and placement tests as deemed necessary in accordance with Item 5, "Control of the Work." Schedule and participate in a mandatory pre-paving meeting with the Engineer on or before the first day of paving unless otherwise shown on the plans.

4.1. **Certification.** Personnel certified by the Department-approved hot-mix asphalt certification program must conduct all mixture designs, sampling, and testing in accordance with Table 5. Supply the Engineer with a list of certified personnel and copies of their current certificates before beginning production and when personnel changes are made. Provide a mixture design developed and signed by a Level 2 certified specialist. Provide Level 1A certified specialists at the plant during production operations. Provide Level 1B certified specialists to conduct placement tests. Provide AGG101 certified specialists for aggregate testing.

**Table 5**  
**Test Methods, Test Responsibility, and Minimum Certification Levels**

Test Description	Test Method	Contractor	Engineer	Level <sup>1</sup>
<b>1. Aggregate Testing</b>				
Sampling	<a href="#">Tex-221-F</a>	✓	✓	1A/AGG101
Dry sieve	<a href="#">Tex-200-F</a> , Part I	✓	✓	1A/AGG101
Washed sieve	<a href="#">Tex-200-F</a> , Part II	✓	✓	1A/AGG101
Deleterious material	<a href="#">Tex-217-F</a> , Parts I & III	✓	✓	AGG101
Decantation	<a href="#">Tex-217-F</a> , Part II	✓	✓	AGG101
Los Angeles abrasion	<a href="#">Tex-410-A</a>		✓	Department
Magnesium sulfate soundness	<a href="#">Tex-411-A</a>		✓	Department
Micro-Deval abrasion	<a href="#">Tex-461-A</a>		✓	AGG101
Crushed face count	<a href="#">Tex-460-A</a>	✓	✓	AGG101
Flat and elongated particles	<a href="#">Tex-280-F</a>	✓	✓	AGG101
Methylene blue test	<a href="#">Tex-252-F</a>		✓	Department
<b>2. Asphalt Binder &amp; Tack Coat Sampling</b>				
Asphalt binder sampling	<a href="#">Tex-500-C</a> , Part II	✓	✓	1A/1B
Membrane sampling	<a href="#">Tex-500-C</a> , Part III	✓	✓	1A/1B
<b>3. Mix Design &amp; Verification</b>				
Design and JMF changes	<a href="#">Tex-204-F</a>	✓	✓	2
Mixing	<a href="#">Tex-205-F</a>	✓	✓	2
Molding (SGC)	<a href="#">Tex-241-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
Laboratory-molded density	<a href="#">Tex-207-F</a> , Parts I, VI, & VIII	✓	✓	1A
Rice gravity	<a href="#">Tex-227-F</a> , Part II	✓	✓	1A
Ignition oven correction factors <sup>2</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-236-F</a> , Part II	✓	✓	2
Drain-down	<a href="#">Tex-235-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
Hamburg Wheel test	<a href="#">Tex-242-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
Boil test <sup>4</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-530-C</a>	✓	✓	1A
Cantabro loss	<a href="#">Tex-245-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
<b>4. Production Testing</b>				
Control charts	<a href="#">Tex-233-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
Mixture sampling	<a href="#">Tex-222-F</a>	✓	✓	1A/1B
Gradation & asphalt binder content <sup>2</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-236-F</a> , Part I	✓	✓	1A
Moisture content	<a href="#">Tex-212-F</a> , Part II	✓	✓	1A/AGG101
Micro-Deval abrasion	<a href="#">Tex-461-A</a>		✓	AGG101
Drain-down	<a href="#">Tex-235-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
Boil test <sup>4</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-530-C</a>	✓	✓	1A
Abson recovery	<a href="#">Tex-211-F</a>		✓	Department
<b>5. Placement Testing</b>				
Control charts	<a href="#">Tex-233-F</a>	✓	✓	1A
Ride quality measurement	<a href="#">Tex-1001-S</a>	✓	✓	Note 3
Thermal profile	<a href="#">Tex-244-F</a>	✓	✓	1B
Water flow test	<a href="#">Tex-246-F</a>	✓	✓	1B

1. Level 1A, 1B, AGG101, and 2 are certification levels provided by the Hot Mix Asphalt Center certification program.
2. Refer to Section 3082.4.5., "Production Operations," for exceptions to using an ignition oven.
3. Profiler and operator are required to be certified at the Texas A&M Transportation Institute facility when Surface Test Type B is specified.
4. When shown on the plans.

4.2.

**Reporting and Responsibilities.** Use Department-provided templates to record and calculate all test data, including mixture design, production and placement tests, control charts, and thermal profiles. Obtain the current version of the templates at <https://www.txdot.gov/inside-txdot/forms-publications/consultants-contractors/forms/site-manager.html> or from the Engineer. The Engineer and the Contractor will provide any available test results to the other party when requested. The Contractor and Engineer must exchange test data within the maximum allowable time in accordance with Table 6 unless otherwise approved. The Engineer and the

Contractor will immediately report to the other party any test result that requires suspension of production or placement or that fails to meet the specification requirements. Record and electronically submit all test results and pertinent information on Department-provided templates.

Subsequent sublots placed after test results are available to the Contractor, which require suspension of operations, may be considered unauthorized work. Unauthorized work will be accepted or rejected at the discretion of the Engineer in accordance with Section 5.3., "Conformity with Plans, Specifications, and Special Provisions."

**Table 6**  
**Reporting Schedule**

Description	Reported By	Reported To	To Be Reported Within
<b><i>Production Quality Control</i></b>			
Gradation <sup>1</sup>	Contractor	Engineer	1 working day of completion of the subplot
Asphalt binder content <sup>1</sup>			
Laboratory-molded density <sup>1</sup>			
Moisture content <sup>2</sup>			
Drain-down <sup>1</sup>			
Boil test <sup>4</sup>			
<b><i>Production Quality Assurance</i></b>			
Gradation <sup>2</sup>	Engineer	Contractor	1 working day of completion of the subplot
Asphalt binder content <sup>2</sup>			
Laboratory-molded density <sup>2</sup>			
Hamburg Wheel test <sup>3</sup>			
Boil test <sup>4</sup>			
Drain-down <sup>2</sup>			
Binder tests <sup>3</sup>			
<b><i>Placement Quality Control</i></b>			
Thermal profile <sup>1</sup>	Contractor	Engineer	1 working day of completion of the lot
Water flow <sup>1</sup>			
Membrane application rate <sup>2</sup>			
<b><i>Placement Quality Assurance</i></b>			
Thermal profile <sup>2</sup>	Engineer	Contractor	1 working day of completion of the lot
Aging ratio <sup>3</sup>			
Water flow <sup>2</sup>			
Membrane application rate <sup>2</sup>			

1. These tests are required on every subplot.
2. To be performed at the frequency in accordance with Table 14 or as shown on the plans.
3. To be reported as soon as the results become available.
4. When shown on the plans

Use the procedures described in [Tex-233-F](#), when directed, to plot the results of all production and placement testing. Update the control charts as soon as test results for each subplot become available. Make the control charts readily accessible at the field laboratory. The Engineer may suspend production for failure to update control charts.

- 4.3. **Quality Control Plan (QCP).** Develop and follow the QCP in detail. Obtain approval for changes to the QCP made during the project. The Engineer may suspend operations if the Contractor fails to comply with the QCP.

Submit a written QCP before the mandatory pre-paving meeting, when directed. Receive approval of the QCP before pre-paving meeting. Include the following items in the QCP:

- 4.3.1. **Project Personnel.** For project personnel, include:
- a list of individuals responsible for QC with authority to take corrective action;
  - current contact information for each individual listed; and
  - current copies of certification documents for individuals performing specified QC functions.
- 4.3.2. **Material Delivery and Storage.** For material delivery and storage, include:
- the sequence of material processing, delivery, and minimum quantities to assure continuous plant

operations;

- aggregate stockpiling procedures to avoid contamination and segregation;
- frequency, type, and timing of aggregate stockpile testing to assure conformance of material requirements before mixture production; and
- procedure for monitoring the quality and variability of asphalt binder.

4.3.3. **Production.** For production, include:

- loader operation procedures to avoid contamination in cold bins;
- procedures for calibrating and controlling cold feeds;
- procedures to eliminate debris or oversized material;
- procedures for adding and verifying rates of each applicable mixture component (e.g., aggregate, asphalt binder, lime, liquid antistripping, compaction aid, foaming process, fibers);
- procedures for reporting job control test results; and
- procedures to avoid segregation and drain-down in the silo.

4.3.4. **Loading and Transporting.** For loading and transporting, include:

- type and application method for release agents; and
- truck loading procedures to avoid segregation.

4.3.5. **Placement and Compaction.** For placement and compaction, include:

- proposed agenda for mandatory pre-paving meeting, including date and location;
- proposed paving plan (e.g., production rate, paving widths, joint offsets, and lift thicknesses);
- type and application method for release agents in the paver and on rollers, shovels, lutes, and other utensils;
- procedures for the transfer of mixture into the paver while avoiding physical and thermal segregation and preventing material spillage;
- process to balance production, delivery, paving, and compaction to achieve continuous placement operations and good ride quality;
- paver operations (e.g., speed, operation of wings, height of mixture in auger chamber) to avoid physical and thermal segregation and other surface irregularities; and
- procedures to construct quality longitudinal and transverse joints.

4.4. **Mixture Design.**

4.4.1. **Design Requirements.** Use the design procedure provided in [Tex-204-F](#), unless otherwise shown on the plans. Design the mixture to meet the requirements in accordance with Tables 1, 2, 3, 7, 8, and 9. Use a Superpave Gyration Compactor (SGC) at 50 gyrations as the design number of gyrations (Ndesign).

The Engineer will provide the mixture design when shown on the plans. The Contractor may submit a new mixture design at any time during the project. The Engineer will verify and approve all mixture designs (JMF1) before the Contractor can begin production.

Provide the Engineer with a mixture design report using the Department-provided template. Include the following items in the report:

- the combined aggregate gradation, source, specific gravity, and percent of each material used;
- the membrane application rate based on design volumetrics;
- results of all applicable tests;
- the mixing and molding temperatures;
- the signature of the Level 2 person or persons that performed the design;
- the date the mixture design was performed; and
- a unique identification number for the mixture design.

**Table 7**  
**Master Gradation Limits (% Passing by Weight or Volume)**  
**and Laboratory Mixture Design Properties**

Sieve Size	Permeable Friction Course		Thin Bonded Friction Course		
	Fine (PFC-F)	Coarse (PFC-C and PFCR-C)	Type A	Type B	Type C
3/4"	–	100.0 <sup>1</sup>	–	–	100 <sup>1</sup>
1/2"	100.0 <sup>1</sup>	80.0–100.0	–	100 <sup>1</sup>	75–100
3/8"	95.0–100.0	35.0–60.0	100 <sup>1</sup>	75–100	55–80
#4	20.0–55.0	1.0–20.0	35–55	22–36	22–36
#8	1.0–10.0	1.0–10.0	19–30	19–30	19–30
#16	–	–	14–25	14–24	14–24
#50	–	–	7–14	7–14	7–14
#200	1.0–4.0	1.0–4.0	4–6	4–6	4–6

1. Defined as maximum sieve size. No tolerance allowed.

**Table 8**  
**Mixture Design Properties**

Mixture Property	Test Method	PG 76 Mixtures		A-R Mixtures	Thin Bonded Friction Course		
		Fine (PFC-F)	Coarse (PFC-C)	Coarse (PFCR-C)	Type A	Type B	Type C
Asphalt binder content, %	–	6.0–7.0	6.0–7.0	7.0–9.0	5.0–5.8	4.8–5.6	4.8–5.6
Film thickness, microns	–	–	–	–	9.0 Min	9.0 Min	9.0 Min
Design gyrations (Ndesign)	<a href="#">Tex-241-F</a>	50	50	50	50	50	50
Laboratory-molded density, %	<a href="#">Tex-207-F</a>	78.0 Max	82.0 Max	82.0 Max	92.0 Max	92.0 Max	92.0 Max
Hamburg Wheel test, <sup>1</sup> passes at 12.5 mm rut depth	<a href="#">Tex-242-F</a>	10,000 Min	Note 2	Note 2	Note 2	Note 2	Note 2
Drain-down, %	<a href="#">Tex-235-F</a>	0.10 Max	0.10 Max	0.10 Max	0.10 Max	0.10 Max	0.10 Max
Fiber content, % by wt. of total PG 76 mixture	Calculated	0.20–0.50	0.20–0.50	–	–	–	–
Lime content, % by wt. of total aggregate	Calculated	1.0 <sup>3</sup>	1.0 <sup>3</sup>	–	Note 4	Note 4	Note 4
CRM content, % by wt. of A-R binder	Calculated	–	–	15.0 Min	–	–	–
Boil test <sup>5</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-530-C</a>	–	–	–	–	–	–
Cantabro loss, %	<a href="#">Tex-245-F</a>	20.0 Max	20.0 Max	20.0 Max	20.0 Max	20.0 Max	20.0 Max

1. Mold test specimens to Ndesign at the optimum asphalt binder content.
2. No specification value is required unless otherwise shown on the plans.
3. Unless otherwise shown on the plans or waived by the Engineer based on Hamburg Wheel results.
4. Lime may be required when shown on the plans.
5. When shown on the plans. Used to establish baseline for comparison to production results.

4.4.2. **Job-Mix Formula Approval.** The job-mix formula (JMF) is the combined aggregate gradation, Ndesign level, and target asphalt percentage used to establish target values for hot-mix production. JMF1 is the original laboratory mixture design used to produce the trial batch. When a compaction aid or foaming process is used, JMF1 may be designed and submitted to the Engineer without including the compaction aid or foaming process. When a compaction aid or foaming process is used, document the compaction aid or foaming process used and recommended rate on the JMF1 submittal. The Engineer and the Contractor will verify JMF1 based on plant-produced mixture from the trial batch unless otherwise approved. The Engineer may accept an existing mixture design previously used on a Department project and may waive the trial batch to verify JMF1. The Department may require the Contractor to reimburse the Department for verification tests if more than two trial batches per design are required.

4.4.2.1. **Contractor's Responsibilities.**

4.4.2.1.1. **Providing Superpave Gyratory Compactor.** Furnish an SGC calibrated in accordance with [Tex-241-F](#) for molding production samples. Locate the SGC at the Engineer's field laboratory or make the SGC available to the Engineer for use in molding production samples.

4.4.2.1.2. **Gyratory Compactor Correlation Factors.** Use [Tex-206-F](#), Part II, to perform a gyratory compactor

correlation when the Engineer uses a different SGC. Apply the correlation factor to all subsequent production test results.

- 4.4.2.1.3. **Submitting JMF1.** Furnish a mix design report (JMF1) with representative samples of all component materials and request approval to produce the trial batch. Provide an additional 25 lb. of the design mixture if opting to have the Department perform the Hamburg Wheel test on the laboratory mixture when required in accordance with Table 8, and request that the Department perform the test.
- 4.4.2.1.4. **Supplying Aggregates.** Provide approximately 40 lb. of each aggregate stockpile unless otherwise directed.
- 4.4.2.1.5. **Supplying Asphalt.** Provide at least 1 gal. of the asphalt material and enough quantities of any additives proposed for use.
- 4.4.2.1.6. **Ignition Oven Correction Factors.** Determine the aggregate and asphalt correction factors from the ignition oven in accordance with [Tex-236-F](#), Part II. Provide correction factors that are not more than 12 mo. old. Note that the asphalt content correction factor takes into account the percent fibers in the mixture so that the fibers are excluded from the binder content determination. Provide the Engineer with split samples of the mixtures before the trial batch production, including all additives (except water), and blank samples used to determine the correction factors for the ignition oven used for quality assurance testing during production. Correction factors established from a previously approved mixture design may be used for the current mixture design if the mixture design and ignition oven are the same as previously used and the correction factors are not more than 12 mo. old, unless otherwise directed.
- 4.4.2.1.7. **Boil Test.** When shown on the plans, perform the test and retain the tested sample from [Tex-530-C](#) until completion of the project or as directed. Use this sample for comparison purposes during production. Add lime or liquid antistripping agent as directed if signs of stripping exist.
- 4.4.2.1.8. **Trial Batch Production.** Provide a plant-produced trial batch upon receiving conditional approval of JMF1 and authorization to produce a trial batch, including the compaction aid or foaming process, if applicable, for verification testing of JMF1 and development of JMF2. Produce a trial batch mixture that meets the requirements in accordance with Table 9. The Engineer may accept test results from recent production of the same mixture instead of a new trial batch.
- 4.4.2.1.9. **Trial Batch Production Equipment.** Use only equipment and materials proposed for use on the project to produce the trial batch. Provide documentation to verify the calibration or accuracy of the asphalt mass flow meter to measure the binder content. Verify that asphalt mass flow meter meets the requirements of 0.4 % accuracy, when required, in accordance with Item 520, "Weighing and Measuring Equipment." The Engineer may require that the accuracy of the mass flow meter be verified based on quantities used.
- 4.4.2.1.10. **Trial Batch Quantity.** Produce enough quantity of the trial batch to ensure that the mixture meets the specification requirements.
- 4.4.2.1.11. **Number of Trial Batches.** Produce trial batches as necessary to obtain a mixture that meets the specification requirements.
- 4.4.2.1.12. **Trial Batch Sampling.** Obtain a representative sample of the trial batch and split it into three equal portions in accordance with [Tex-222-F](#). Label these portions as "Contractor," "Engineer," and "Referee." Deliver samples to the appropriate laboratory as directed.
- 4.4.2.1.13. **Trial Batch Testing.** Test the trial batch to ensure the mixture produced using the proposed JMF1 meets the mixture requirements in accordance with Table 9. Ensure the trial batch mixture is also in compliance with the requirements in accordance with Tables 7 and 8. Use a Department-approved laboratory listed on the MPL to perform the Hamburg Wheel test on the trial batch mixture or request that the Department perform the Hamburg Wheel test. The Engineer will be allowed 10 working days to provide the Contractor with Hamburg Wheel test results on the trial batch. Provide the Engineer with a copy of the trial batch test results.
- 4.4.2.1.14. **Development of JMF2.** Evaluate the trial batch test results, determine the target mixture proportions, and

submit as JMF2 after the Engineer grants full approval of JMF1 based on results from the trial batch. Verify that JMF2 meets the mixture requirements in accordance with Table 9.

4.4.2.1.15. **Mixture Production.** After receiving approval for JMF2, use JMF2 to produce Lot 1.

4.4.2.1.16. **Development of JMF3.** Evaluate the test results from Lot 1, determine the optimum mixture proportions, and submit as JMF3 for use in Lot 2.

4.4.2.1.17. **JMF Adjustments.** If JMF adjustments are necessary to achieve the specified requirements, make the adjustments before beginning a new lot. The adjusted JMF must:

- be provided to the Engineer in writing before the start of a new lot;
- be numbered in sequence to the previous JMF;
- meet the master gradation limits in accordance with Table 7
- meet the binder content limits in accordance with Table 8; and
- be within the operational tolerances of JMF2 in accordance with Table 9.

4.4.2.1.18. **Requesting Referee Testing.** Use referee testing, if needed, in accordance with Section 3082.4.9.1., "Referee Testing," to resolve testing differences with the Engineer.

**Table 9**  
**Operational Tolerances**

Test Description	Test Method	Allowable Difference between JMF2 and JMF1 Target <sup>1</sup>	Allowable Difference from Current JMF and JMF2 <sup>2</sup>	Allowable Difference between Contractor and Engineer <sup>3</sup>
Individual % retained for sieve sized larger than #200	<a href="#">Tex-200-F</a>	Must be Within Master Grading Limits in accordance with Table 7	$\pm 3.0^4$	$\pm 5.0^4$
% passing the #200 sieve			$\pm 2.0^4$	$\pm 3.0^4$
Laboratory-molded density, %	<a href="#">Tex-207-F</a> , Part VIII	$\pm 1.0$	$\pm 1.0$	$\pm 1.0$
Asphalt binder content, %	<a href="#">Tex-236-F</a> , Part I <sup>5</sup>	$\pm 0.3^{6,7}$	$\pm 0.3^{4,6,7}$	$\pm 0.3^{6,7}$
Drain-down, %	<a href="#">Tex-235-F</a>	Note 8	Note 8	N/A
Boil test	<a href="#">Tex-530-C</a>	Note 9	Note 9	N/A
Membrane application rate	<a href="#">Tex-247-F</a>	$\pm 0.02$	$\pm 0.02$	N/A

1. JMF1 is the approved laboratory mixture design used for producing the trial batch. JMF2 is the approved mixture design developed from the trial batch used to produce Lot 1.
2. Current JMF is JMF3 or higher. JMF3 is the approved mixture design used to produce Lot 2.
3. Contractor may request referee testing only when values exceed these tolerances.
4. Only applies to mixture produced for Lot 1 and higher. Aggregate gradation is not allowed to be outside the limits in accordance with Table 7.
5. Ensure the binder content determination excludes fibers.
6. May be obtained from asphalt mass flow meter readouts as determined by the Engineer.
7. Binder content is not allowed to be outside the limits shown in Table 8.
8. Verify that Table 8 requirements are met.
9. When shown on the plans.

4.4.2.2. **Engineer's Responsibilities.**

4.4.2.2.1. **Superpave Gyratory Compactor.** The Engineer will use a Department SGC calibrated in accordance with [Tex-241-F](#) to mold samples for laboratory mixture design verification. For molding trial batch and production specimens, the Engineer will use the Contractor-provided SGC at the field laboratory or provide and use a Department SGC at an alternate location.

4.4.2.2.2. **Conditional Approval of JMF1 and Authorizing Trial Batch.** The Engineer will review and verify conformance of the following information within two working days of receipt:

- the Contractor's mix design report (JMF1);
- the Contractor-provided Hamburg Wheel test results, if applicable;
- all required materials including aggregates, asphalt, and additives; and
- the mixture specifications.

The Engineer will grant the Contractor conditional approval of JMF1 if the information provided on the paper copy of JMF1 indicates that the Contractor's mixture design meets the specifications. When the Contractor does not provide Hamburg Wheel test with laboratory mixture design, 10 working days are allowed for conditional approval of JMF1. The Engineer will base full approval of JMF1 on the test results on mixture from the trial batch.

Unless waived, the Engineer will determine the Micro-Deval abrasion loss in accordance with

Section 3082.2.1.1.2., "Micro-Deval Abrasion." If the Engineer's test results are pending after two working days, conditional approval of JMF1 will still be granted within two working days of receiving JMF1. When the Engineer's test results become available, they will be used for specification compliance.

The Contractor is authorized to produce a trial batch after the Engineer grants conditional approval of JMF1.

4.4.2.2.3. **Hamburg Wheel Testing.** At the Contractor's request, the Department will perform the Hamburg Wheel test on the laboratory mixture in accordance with [Tex-242-F](#) to verify compliance with the Hamburg Wheel test requirement in accordance with Table 8. The Engineer will be allowed 10 working days to provide the Contractor with Hamburg Wheel results on the laboratory mixture design.

4.4.2.2.4. **Ignition Oven Correction Factors.** The Engineer will use the split samples provided by the Contractor to determine the aggregate and asphalt correction factors for the ignition oven used for quality assurance testing during production in accordance with [Tex-236-F](#), Part II. Provide correction factors that are not more than 12 mo. old. The Engineer will verify that the asphalt content correction factor takes into account the percent fibers in the mixture so that the fibers are excluded from the binder content determination.

4.4.2.2.5. **Testing the Trial Batch.** The Engineer will sample and test the trial batch within one full working day to ensure that the mixture meets the requirements in accordance with Table 9. If the Contractor requests the option to have the Department perform the Hamburg Wheel test on the trial batch mixture, the Engineer will mold samples in accordance with [Tex-242-F](#) to verify compliance with the Hamburg Wheel test requirement in accordance with Table 8.

The Engineer will have the option to perform [Tex-530-C](#) on the trial batch when shown on the plans. These results may be retained and used for comparison purposes during production.

4.4.2.2.6. **Full Approval of JMF1.** The Engineer will grant full approval of JMF1 and authorize the Contractor to proceed with developing JMF2 if the Engineer's results for the trial batch meet the requirements in accordance with Tables 7 and 8.

The Engineer will notify the Contractor that an additional trial batch is required if the trial batch does not meet these requirements.

4.4.2.2.7. **Approval of JMF2.** The Engineer will approve JMF2 within one working day if the mixture meets the requirements in accordance with Tables 7, 8, and 9.

4.4.2.2.8. **Approval of Lot 1 Production.** The Engineer will authorize the Contractor to proceed with Lot 1 production (using JMF2).

4.4.2.2.9. **Approval of JMF3 and Subsequent JMF Changes.** JMF3 and subsequent JMF changes are approved if they meet the master grading and asphalt binder content shown in accordance with Tables 7 and 8 and are within the operational tolerances of JMF2 in accordance with Table 9.



- 4.4.2.2.10. **Binder Content Adjustments.** For JMF2 and above, the Engineer may require the Contractor to adjust the target binder content by no more than 0.3% from the current JMF.
- 4.5. **Production Operations.** Perform a new trial batch when the plant or plant location is changed. Take corrective action and receive approval to proceed after any production suspension for noncompliance to the specification.
- 4.5.1. **Storage and Heating of Materials.** Do not heat the asphalt binder above the temperatures specified in Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions," or outside the manufacturer's recommended values. Provide the Engineer with daily records of asphalt binder and hot-mix asphalt discharge temperatures (in legible and discernible increments) in accordance with Item 320, "Equipment for Asphalt Concrete Pavement," unless otherwise directed. Do not store mixture for a period long enough to affect the quality of the mixture, nor in any case longer than 12 hr. unless otherwise approved.
- 4.5.2. **Mixing and Discharge of Materials.** Notify the Engineer of the target discharge temperature and produce the mixture within 25°F of the target. Monitor the temperature of the material in the truck before shipping to ensure that it does not exceed the maximum production temperatures in accordance with Table 10. The Department will not pay for or allow placement of any mixture produced above the maximum production temperatures in accordance with Table 10.

**Table 10**  
**Maximum Production Temperature**

High-Temperature Binder Grade <sup>1</sup>	Max Production Temperature
PG 76	345°F
A-R Binder	345°F

1. The high-temperature binder grade refers to the high-temperature grade of the virgin asphalt binder used to produce the mixture.

Control the mixing time and temperature so that substantially all moisture is removed from the mixture before discharging from the plant. Determine the moisture content, if requested, by oven-drying in accordance with [Tex-212-F](#), Part II, and verify that the mixture contains no more than 0.2% of moisture by weight. Obtain the sample immediately after discharging the mixture into the truck and perform the test promptly.

- 4.6. **Hauling Operations.** Clean all truck beds before use to ensure that mixture is not contaminated. Use a release agent shown on the Department's MPL to coat the inside bed of the truck when necessary. Do not use diesel or any release agent not shown on the Department's MPL.
- Use equipment for hauling as defined in Section 3082.4.7.3.2., "Hauling Equipment." Use other hauling equipment only when allowed.
- 4.7. **Placement Operations.** Collect haul tickets from each load of mixture delivered to the project and provide the Department's copy to the Engineer approximately every hour, or as directed. Use a hand-held thermal camera or infrared thermometer, when a thermal imaging system is not used, to measure and record the internal temperature of the mixture as discharged from the truck or Material Transfer Device (MTD) before or as the mix enters the paver and an approximate station number or GPS coordinates on each ticket. Calculate the daily yield and cumulative yield for the specified lift and provide to the Engineer at the end of paving operations for each day unless otherwise directed. The Engineer may suspend production if the Contractor fails to produce and provide haul tickets and yield calculations by the end of paving operations for each day.

Prepare the surface by removing raised pavement markers and objectionable material such as moisture, dirt, sand, leaves, and other loose impediments from the surface before placing mixture. Remove vegetation from pavement edges. Do not allow any loose mixture onto the prepared surface before application of the membrane. Place the mixture to meet the typical section requirements and produce a smooth, finished surface with a uniform appearance and texture. Offset longitudinal joints of successive courses of hot-mix by at least 6 in. Place mixture so that longitudinal joints on the surface course coincide within 6-in. of lane lines and are not placed in the wheel path, or as directed, and offset longitudinal joints of successive courses of hot-mix by at least 6-in. Ensure that all finished surfaces will drain properly.

4.7.1. **Weather Conditions.**

4.7.1.1. **When Using a Thermal Imaging System.** The Contractor may pave any time the roadway is dry and the roadway surface temperature is at least 60°F unless otherwise approved or as shown on the plans; however, the Engineer may restrict the Contractor from paving if the ambient temperature is likely to drop below 32°F within 12 hr. of paving. Place mixtures when weather conditions and moisture conditions of the roadway surface are suitable as determined by the Engineer. Provide output data from the thermal imaging system to demonstrate to the Engineer that no recurring severe thermal segregation exists in accordance with Section 3082.4.7.3.1.2., "Thermal Imaging System."

Produce mixture with a target discharge temperature higher than 300°F and with a compaction aid to facilitate compaction when the air temperature is 70°F and falling.

4.7.1.2. **When Not Using a Thermal Imaging System.** When using a thermal camera instead of the thermal imaging system, place mixture when the roadway surface temperature is at or above 70°F unless otherwise approved or as shown on the plans. Measure the roadway surface temperature with a hand-held thermal camera or infrared thermometer. Place mixtures only when weather conditions and moisture conditions of the roadway surface are suitable as determined by the Engineer. The Engineer may restrict the Contractor from paving if the air temperature is 60°F and falling.

Produce mixture with a target discharge temperature higher than 300°F and with a compaction aid to facilitate compaction when the air temperature is 70°F and falling.

4.7.2. **Application of Membrane.** Apply the membrane at the rates in accordance with Table 11 unless otherwise directed. Spray the membrane using a metered mechanical pressure spray bar at a temperature of 140°F to 180°F. Monitor the membrane application rate and make adjustments to the rate when directed. Verify that the spray bar is capable of applying the membrane at a uniform rate across the entire paving width. Apply adequate overlap of the tack coat in the longitudinal direction during placement of the mat to ensure bond of adjacent mats, unless otherwise directed. Unless otherwise directed, avoid tacking the vertical faces of adjacent PFC mats in the longitudinal direction to avoid restricting lateral drainage. Apply tack coat to all transverse joints. Do not let the wheels or other parts of the paving machine contact the freshly applied membrane. Do not dilute the membrane at the terminal, in the field, or at any other location before use. Do not allow any loose mixture onto the prepared surface before application of the membrane.

**Table 11**  
**Membrane Application Rate Limits, (Gal. per square yard)**

Mix Type	Lift Thickness	Membrane Rate
Permeable Friction Course	1-1/2 in.	0.30–0.33
	1-1/4 in.	0.27–0.30
	1 in.	0.25–0.28
	3/4 in.	0.22–0.25
Thin Bonded Friction Course	3/4 in.	0.17–0.27
	5/8 in.	0.16–0.24
	1/2 in.	0.14–0.20

4.7.2.1. **Non-uniform Application of Membrane.** Stop application if it is not uniform due to streaking, ridging, pooling, or flowing off the roadway surface. Verify equipment condition including plugged nozzles on the spray bar, operating procedures, application temperature, and material properties. Determine and correct the cause of non-uniform application.

4.7.2.2. **Test Strips.** The Engineer may perform independent tests to confirm Contractor compliance and may require testing differences or failing results to be resolved before resuming production.

The Engineer may cease operations and require construction of test strips at the Contractor's expense if any of the following occurs:

- non-uniformity of application continues after corrective action;
- in three consecutive shots, application rate differs by more than 0.03 gal. per square yard from the rate

- directed; or
- any shot differs by more than 0.05 gal. per square yard from the rate directed.

The Engineer will approve the test strip location. The Engineer may require additional test strips until the membrane application meets specification requirements.

- 4.7.3. **Lay-Down Operations.** Use the placement temperature in accordance with Table 12 to establish the minimum placement temperature of the mixture delivered to the paving operation.

**Table 12**  
**Min Mixture Placement Temperature**

High-Temperature Binder Grade <sup>1</sup>	Min Placement Temperature (Before Entering Paving Operation) <sup>2,3</sup>
PG 76	280°F
A-R Binder	280°F

1. The high-temperature binder grade refers to the high-temperature grade of the virgin asphalt binder used to produce the mixture.
2. The mixture temperature must be measured using a hand-held thermal camera or infrared thermometer nearest to the point of entry of the paving operation.
3. Minimum placement temperatures may be reduced 10°F if using a compaction aid.

- 4.7.3.1. **Thermal Profile.** Use a hand-held thermal camera or a thermal imaging system to obtain a continuous thermal profile in accordance with [Tex-244-F](#). Thermal profiles are not applicable in areas described in Section 3082.4.9.8., "Miscellaneous Areas."

- 4.7.3.1.1. **Thermal Segregation.**

- 4.7.3.1.1.1. **Moderate.** Any areas that have a temperature differential greater than 25°F, but not exceeding 50°F.

- 4.7.3.1.1.2. **Severe.** Any areas that have a temperature differential greater than 50°F.

- 4.7.3.1.2. **Thermal Imaging System.** Review the output results when a thermal imaging system is used, and provide the report described in [Tex-244-F](#) to the Engineer daily unless otherwise directed. Modify the paving process as necessary to eliminate any recurring (moderate or severe) thermal segregation identified by the thermal imaging system.

The Engineer may suspend subsequent paving operations if the Contractor cannot successfully modify the paving process to eliminate recurring severe or moderate thermal segregation.

Provide the Engineer with electronic copies of all daily data files that can be used with the thermal imaging system software to generate temperature profile plots daily or as requested by the Engineer.

- 4.7.3.1.3. **Thermal Camera.** When using the thermal camera instead of the thermal imaging system, take immediate corrective action to eliminate recurring moderate thermal segregation when a hand-held thermal camera is used. Provide the Engineer with the thermal profile of every subplot within one working day of the completion of each lot. When requested by the Engineer, provide the electronic files generated using the thermal camera. Report the results of each thermal profile in accordance with Section 3082.4.2., "Reporting and Responsibilities." The Engineer will use a hand-held thermal camera to obtain a thermal profile at least once per project unless the thermal imaging system is used. Suspend operations and take immediate corrective action to eliminate severe thermal segregation unless otherwise directed. Resume operations when the Engineer determines that subsequent production will meet the requirements of this Section.

- 4.7.3.2. **Hauling Equipment.** Use live bottom or end dump trucks to haul and transfer mixture; however, with exception of paving miscellaneous areas, end dump trucks are only allowed when used in conjunction with an MTD with remixing capability or when a thermal imaging system is used unless otherwise allowed.

- 4.7.3.3. **Screed Heaters.** Turn off screed heaters to prevent overheating of the mat if the paver stops for more than 5 min. The Engineer may evaluate the suspect area in accordance with Section 3082.4.9.9., "Recovered

Asphalt Dynamic Shear Rheometer (DSR),” if the screed heater remains on for more than 5 min. while the paver is stopped.

- 4.8. **Compaction.** Roll the freshly placed mixture with as many steel-wheeled rollers as necessary, operated in static mode, to seat the mixture without excessive breakage of the aggregate and to provide a smooth surface and uniform texture. Do not use pneumatic rollers. Use the control strip method given in [Tex-207-F](#), Part IV, to establish the rolling pattern. Moisten the roller drums thoroughly with a soap and water solution to prevent adhesion. Use only water or an approved release agent on rollers, tamps, and other compaction equipment unless otherwise directed.

For PFC mixtures, use [Tex-246-F](#) to test and verify that the compacted mixture has adequate permeability. Measure the water flow once per subplot at locations directed by the Engineer. The water flow rate should be less than 20 sec. Investigate the cause of the water flow rate test failures and take corrective actions during production and placement to ensure the water flow rate is less than 20 sec. Suspend production if two consecutive water flow rate tests fail unless otherwise approved. Resume production after the Engineer approves changes to production or placement methods.

Complete all compaction operations before the pavement temperature drops below 180°F unless otherwise allowed. The Engineer may allow compaction with a light finish roller operated in static mode for pavement temperatures below 180°F.

Allow the compacted pavement to cool to 160°F or lower before opening to traffic unless otherwise directed. Sprinkle the finished mat with water or limewater, when directed, to expedite opening the roadway to traffic.

- 4.9. **Acceptance Plan.** Sample and test the hot-mix on a lot and subplot basis.
- 4.9.1. **Referee Testing.** The Materials and Tests Division is the referee laboratory. The Contractor may request referee testing if the differences between Contractor and Engineer test results exceed the operational tolerances in accordance with Table 9 and the differences cannot be resolved. The Contractor may also request referee testing if the Engineer’s test results require suspension of production and the Contractor’s test results are within specification limits. Make the request within five working days after receiving test results and cores from the Engineer. Referee tests will be performed only on the subplot in question and only for the particular tests in question. Allow 10 working days from the time the referee laboratory receives the samples for test results to be reported. The Department may require the Contractor to reimburse the Department for referee tests if more than three referee tests per project are required and the Engineer’s test results are closer to the referee test results than the Contractor’s test results.
- 4.9.2. **Production Acceptance.**
- 4.9.2.1. **Production Lot.** A production lot consists of four equal sublots. The default quantity for Lot 1 is 1,000 ton; however, when requested by the Contractor, the Engineer may increase the quantity for Lot 1 to no more than 2,000 ton. The Engineer will select subsequent lot sizes based on the anticipated daily production such that approximately three to four sublots are produced each day. The lot size will be between 1,000 ton and 4,000 ton. The Engineer may change the lot size before the Contractor begins any lot.
- 4.9.2.1.1. **Incomplete Production Lots.** If a lot is begun but cannot be completed, such as on the last day of production or in other circumstances deemed appropriate, the Engineer may close the lot. Close all lots within five working days unless otherwise allowed.
- 4.9.2.2. **Production Sampling.**
- 4.9.2.2.1. **Mixture Sampling.** Obtain hot-mix samples from trucks at the plant in accordance with [Tex-222-F](#). The sampler will split each sample into three equal portions in accordance with [Tex-200-F](#) and label these portions as “Contractor,” “Engineer,” and “Referee.” The Engineer will perform or witness the sample splitting and take immediate possession of the samples labeled “Engineer” and “Referee.” The Engineer will maintain the custody of the samples labeled “Engineer” and “Referee” until the Department’s testing is completed.

- 4.9.2.2.1.1. **Random Sample.** At the beginning of the project, the Engineer will select random numbers for all production sublots. Determine sample locations in accordance with [Tex-225-F](#). Take one sample for each subplot at the randomly selected location. The Engineer will perform or witness the sampling of production sublots.
- 4.9.2.2.1.2. **Blind Sample.** For one subplot per lot, the Engineer will obtain and test a “blind” sample instead of the random sample collected by the Contractor. Test either the “blind” or the random sample; however, referee testing (if applicable) will be based on a comparison of results from the “blind” sample. The location of the Engineer’s “blind” sample will not be disclosed to the Contractor. The Engineer’s “blind” sample may be randomly selected in accordance with [Tex-225-F](#) for any subplot or selected at the discretion of the Engineer. The Engineer will use the Contractor’s split sample for sublots not sampled by the Engineer.
- 4.9.2.2.2. **Informational Hamburg and Overlay Testing.** Select one random subplot from Lot 2 or higher for Hamburg and Overlay testing during the first week of production. Obtain and provide the Engineer with approximately 90 lb. of mixture, sampled in accordance with [Tex-222-F](#), in sealed containers, boxes, or bags labeled with the Control-Section-Job (CSJ), mixture type, lot, and subplot number. The Engineer will ship the mixture to the Materials and Tests Division for Hamburg and Overlay testing. Results from these tests will not be used for specification compliance.
- 4.9.2.2.3. **Asphalt Binder Sampling.** Obtain a 1-qt. (1 gal. for A-R binder) sample of the asphalt binder witness by the Engineer for each lot of mixture produced. The Contractor will notify the Engineer when the sampling will occur. Obtain the sample at approximately the same time the mixture random sample is obtained. Sample from a port located immediately upstream from the mixing drum or pug mill and upstream from the introduction of any additives in accordance with [Tex-500-C](#), Part II. Label the can with the corresponding lot and subplot numbers, producer, producer facility, grade, district, date sampled, and project information including highway and CSJ. The Engineer will retain these samples for one year. The Engineer may also obtain independent samples. If obtaining an independent asphalt binder sample and upon request of the Contractor, the Engineer will split a sample of the asphalt binder with the Contractor.

At least once per project, the Engineer will collect split samples of each binder grade and source used. The Engineer will submit one split sample to the Materials and Tests Division to verify compliance with Item 300, “Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions” and will retain the other split sample for 1 yr.

- 4.9.2.3. **Membrane Sampling.** The Engineer will obtain a 1-qt. sample of the polymer modified emulsion for each lot of mixture produced in accordance with [Tex-500-C](#), Part III. The Engineer will notify the Contractor when the sampling will occur and will witness the collection of the sample. Obtain the sample at approximately the same time the mixture random sample is obtained. Label the can with the corresponding lot and subplot numbers, producer, producer facility, grade, district, date sampled, and project information including highway and CSJ. The Engineer will retain these samples for two months.

At least once per project, the Engineer will collect split samples of the polymer modified emulsion. The Engineer will submit one split sample to the Materials and Tests Division to verify compliance with Item 300, “Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions” and will retain the other split sample for two months. The Engineer may test as often as necessary to ensure the residual of the emulsion is greater than or equal to the specification requirement in Item 300, “Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions.”

- 4.9.2. **Production Testing.** The Contractor and Engineer must perform production tests in accordance with Table 13. The Contractor has the option to verify the Engineer’s test results on split samples provided by the Engineer. Determine compliance with operational tolerances in accordance with Table 9 for all sublots.

At any time during production, the Engineer may require the Contractor to verify the following based on quantities used:

- lime content (within  $\pm 0.1\%$  of JMF), when PG binder is specified;
- fiber content (within  $\pm 0.03\%$  of JMF), when PG binder is specified; and
- CRM content (within  $\pm 1.5\%$  of JMF), when A-R binder is specified.

Maintain the in-line measuring device when A-R binder is specified to verify the A-R binder viscosity between

2,500 and 4,000 centipoise at 350°F unless otherwise approved. Record A-R binder viscosity at least once per hour and provide the Engineer with a daily summary unless otherwise directed.

If the aggregate mineralogy is such that [Tex-236-F](#) Part I does not yield reliable results, the Engineer may allow alternate methods for determining the asphalt content and aggregate gradation. The Engineer will require the Contractor to provide evidence that results from [Tex-236-F](#), Part I are not reliable before permitting an alternate method unless otherwise allowed. Use the applicable test procedure as directed if an alternate test method is allowed.

**Table 13**  
**Production and Placement Testing Frequency**

Description	Test Method	Min Contractor Testing Frequency	Min Engineer Testing Frequency
Individual % retained for sieve sized larger than #200	<a href="#">Tex-200-F</a>	1 per subplot	1 per 12 sublots
% passing the #200 sieve			
Laboratory-molded density, %	<a href="#">Tex-207-E</a> , Part VIII	1 per subplot	1 per lot
Asphalt binder content <sup>1</sup> , %	<a href="#">Tex-236-F</a> , Part I <sup>2</sup>	1 per subplot	1 per lot
Drain-down, %	<a href="#">Tex-235-F</a>	1 per subplot	1 per 12 sublots
Boil test <sup>3</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-530-C</a>	1 per project	1 per project
Membrane application rate	<a href="#">Tex-247-F</a>	1 per lot	1 per 12 sublots
Moisture content	<a href="#">Tex-212-F</a> , Part II	When directed	1 per project
Cantabro loss, %	<a href="#">Tex-245-F</a>	1 per project (sample only)	1 per project
Overlay test	<a href="#">Tex-248-F</a>	1 per project (sample only) <sup>10</sup>	1 per project <sup>4</sup>
Hamburg Wheel test	<a href="#">Tex-242-F</a>	1 per project (sample only) <sup>10</sup>	1 per project <sup>4</sup>
Water flow test <sup>5</sup>	<a href="#">Tex-246-F</a>	1 per subplot	1 per project
Asphalt binder sampling	<a href="#">Tex-500-C</a> , Part II	1 per lot (sample only) <sup>6</sup>	1 per project
Membrane sampling and testing	<a href="#">Tex-500-C</a> , Part III	N/A	1 per project
Thermal profile	<a href="#">Tex-244-F</a>	1 per subplot <sup>7,8,9</sup>	1 per project <sup>8</sup>

1. May be obtained from asphalt mass flow meter readouts as determined by the Engineer.
2. Ensure the binder content determination excludes fibers.
3. When shown on the plans.
4. When required according to mixture type and requirements in accordance with Table 8.
5. Only required for PFC mixtures.
6. Obtain samples witness by the Engineer. The Engineer will retain these samples for 1 yr.
7. To be performed in the presence of the Engineer when using the thermal camera, unless otherwise approved.
8. Not required when a thermal imaging system is used.
9. When using the thermal imaging system, the test report must include the temperature measurements taken in accordance with [Tex-244-F](#).
10. Testing performed by the Materials and Tests Division for informational purposes only.

#### 4.9.3.

**Operational Tolerances.** Control the production process within the operational tolerances in accordance with Table 9. Suspend production and placement operations when production or placement test results exceed the tolerances in accordance with Table 9 unless otherwise allowed. The Engineer will allow suspended production to resume when test results or other information indicates the next mixture produced will be within the operational tolerances.

- 4.9.4. **Individual Loads of Hot-Mix.** The Engineer can reject individual truckloads of hot-mix. When a load of hot-mix is rejected for reasons other than temperature, contamination, or excessive uncoated particles, the Contractor may request that the rejected load be tested. Make this request within 4 hr. of rejection. The Engineer will sample and test the mixture. If test results are within the operational tolerances in accordance with Table 9, payment will be made for the load. If test results are not within operational tolerances, no payment will be made for the load.
- 4.9.5. **Placement Acceptance.**
- 4.9.6. **Placement Lot.** A placement lot consists of four placement sublots. A placement subplot consists of the area placed during a production subplot.
- 4.9.7. **Miscellaneous Areas.** Miscellaneous areas include areas that typically involve significant handwork or discontinuous paving operations such as driveways, mailbox turnouts, crossovers, gores, spot level-up areas, and other similar areas. The specified layer thickness is based on the rate of 90 lb. per square yard for each inch of pavement unless another rate is shown on the plans. Miscellaneous areas are not subject to thermal profiles testing.
- 4.9.8. **Recovered Asphalt Dynamic Shear Rheometer (DSR).** The Engineer may take production samples or cores from suspect areas of the project to determine recovered asphalt properties. Asphalt binders with an aging ratio greater than 3.5 do not meet the requirements for recovered asphalt properties and may be deemed defective when tested and evaluated by the Materials and Tests Division. The aging ratio is the DSR value of the extracted binder divided by the DSR value of the original unaged binder. Obtain DSR values in accordance with AASHTO T 315 at the specified high temperature performance grade of the asphalt. The Engineer may require removal and replacement of the defective material at the Contractor's expense. The asphalt binder will be recovered for testing from production samples or cores in accordance with [Tex-211-F](#).
- 4.9.9. **Irregularities.** Identify and correct irregularities including segregation, rutting, raveling, flushing, fat spots, mat slippage, irregular color, irregular texture, roller marks, tears, gouges, streaks, uncoated aggregate particles, or broken aggregate particles. The Engineer may also identify irregularities, and in such cases, the Engineer will promptly notify the Contractor. If the Engineer determines that the irregularity will adversely affect pavement performance, the Engineer may require the Contractor to remove and replace (at the Contractor's expense) areas of the pavement that contain irregularities. The Engineer may also require the Contractor to remove and replace (at the Contractor's expense) areas where the mixture does not bond to the existing pavement.
- If irregularities are detected, the Engineer may require the Contractor to immediately suspend operations or may allow the Contractor to continue operations for no more than one day while the Contractor is taking appropriate corrective action.
- 4.9.10. **Exempt Production.** When the anticipated daily production is less than 100 ton, all QC and QA sampling and testing are waived. The Engineer may deem the mixture as exempt production for the following conditions:
- anticipated daily production is more than 100 ton but less than 250 ton;
  - total production for the project is less than 2,500 ton;
  - when mutually agreed between the Engineer and the Contractor; or
  - when shown on the plans.
- For exempt production, the Contractor is relieved of all production and placement sampling and testing requirements. All other specification requirements apply, and the Engineer will perform acceptance tests for production and placement in accordance with Table 13.
- For exempt production:
- produce, haul, place, and compact the mixture as directed by the Engineer; and
  - control mixture production to yield a laboratory-molded density that is within  $\pm 1.0\%$  of the target density as tested by the Engineer.

- 4.9.11. **Ride Quality.** Measure ride quality in accordance with Item 585, "Ride Quality for Pavement Surfaces," unless otherwise shown on the plans.

---

## 5. MEASUREMENT

- 5.1. **PFC Hot-Mix Asphalt.** Permeable friction course (PFC) hot-mix will be measured by the ton of composite mixture, which includes asphalt, aggregate, and additives. Measure the weight on scales in accordance with Item 520, "Weighing and Measuring Equipment."
- 5.2. **TBFC Hot-Mix Asphalt.** Thin bonded friction course (TBFC) hot-mix will be measured by the ton of composite mixture, which includes asphalt, aggregate, and additives. Measure the weight on scales in accordance with Item 520, "Weighing and Measuring Equipment."
- 5.3. **Membrane.** Membrane material will be measured by volume. Membrane material will be measured at the applied temperature by strapping the tank before and after road application and determining the net volume in gallons from the distributor's calibrated strap stick. The Engineer will witness all operations for volume determination. All membrane will be measured by the gallon applied, in the accepted membrane.

---

## 6. PAYMENT

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under Section 3082.5.1., "PFC Hot-Mix Asphalt," will be paid for at the unit bid price for "Permeable friction course" of the mixture type, SAC, and binder specified. These prices are full compensation for surface preparation, removing pavement marking and markers, materials, placement, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under Section 3082.5.2., "TBFC Hot-Mix Asphalt," will be paid for at the unit bid price for "Thin bonded friction course" of the mixture type, SAC, and binder specified. These prices are full compensation for surface preparation, removing pavement marking and markers, materials, placement, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under Section 3082.5.3., "Membrane," will be paid for at the unit bid price for "Membrane" of the membrane material provided. These prices are full compensation for materials, placement, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.

Trial batches will not be paid for unless they are included in pavement work approved by the Department.

Payment adjustment for ride quality will be determined in accordance with Item 585, "Ride Quality for Pavement Surfaces."



---

# Special Specification 3096

## Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions

---



---

### 1. DESCRIPTION

Provide asphalt cements, cutback and emulsified asphalts, performance-graded asphalt binders, and other miscellaneous asphalt materials as specified on the plans.

---

### 2. MATERIALS

Provide asphalt materials that meet the stated requirements when tested in conformance with the referenced Department, AASHTO, and ASTM test methods. Use asphalt containing recycled materials only if the recycled components meet the requirements of Article 6.9., "Recycled Materials." Provide asphalt materials that the Department has preapproved for use in accordance with [Tex-545-C](#), "Asphalt Binder Quality Program."

Inform the Department of all additives or modifiers included in the asphalt binder as part of the facility quality plan, as required by [Tex-545-C](#), "Asphalt Binder Quality Program," and provide that information to Department personnel. The Department reserves the right to prohibit the use of any asphalt additive or modifier.

Limit the use of polyphosphoric acid to no more than 0.5% by weight of the asphalt binder.

The use of re-refined engine oil bottoms is prohibited.

Acronyms used in this Item are defined in Table 1.

**Table 1**  
**Acronyms**

Acronym	Definition
Test Procedure Designations	
Tex T or R D	Department AASHTO ASTM
Polymer Modifier Designations	
P SBR or L SBS TR	polymer-modified styrene-butadiene rubber (latex) styrene-butadiene-styrene block co-polymer tire rubber (from ambient temperature grinding of truck and passenger tires)
AC	asphalt cement
AE	asphalt emulsion
AE-P	asphalt emulsion prime
A-R	asphalt-rubber
C	cationic
EAP&T	emulsified asphalt prime and tack
EBL	emulsified bonding layer
FDR	full depth reclamation
H-suffix	harder residue (lower penetration)
HF	high float
HY	high yield
MC	medium-curing
MS	medium-setting
PCE	prime, cure, and erosion control
PG	performance grade
RC	rapid-curing
RS	rapid-setting
S-suffix	stockpile usage
SCM	special cutback material
SS	slow-setting
SY	standard yield
TRAIL	tracking resistant asphalt interlayer

2.1.

**Asphalt Cement.** Provide asphalt cement that is homogeneous, water-free, and nonfoaming when heated to 347°F, and meets the requirements in Table 2.

**Table 2**  
**Asphalt Cement**

Property	Test Procedure	Viscosity Grade									
		AC-0.6		AC-1.5		AC-3		AC-5		AC-10	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Viscosity 140°F, poise 275°F, poise	T 202	40	80	100	200	250	350	400	600	800	1,200
		0.4	–	0.7	–	1.1	–	1.4	–	1.9	–
Penetration, 77°F, 100g, 5 sec.	T 49	350	–	250	–	210	–	135	–	85	–
Flash point, C.O.C., °F	T 48	425	–	425	–	425	–	425	–	450	–
Solubility in trichloroethylene, %	T 44	99.0	–	99.0	–	99.0	–	99.0	–	99.0	–
Spot test	<a href="#">Tex-509-C</a>	Neg.		Neg.		Neg.		Neg.		Neg.	
Tests on residue from RTFOT:											
Viscosity, 140°F, poise	T 240 T 202	–	180	–	450	–	900	–	1,500	–	3,000
Ductility, <sup>1</sup> 77°F 5 cm/min., cm	T 51	100	–	100	–	100	–	100	–	100	–

1. If AC-0.6 or AC-1.5 ductility at 77°F is less than 100 cm, material is acceptable if ductility at 60°F is more than 100 cm.

- 2.2. **Polymer-Modified Asphalt Cement.** Provide polymer-modified asphalt cement that is smooth, homogeneous, and meets the requirements Table 3. Supply samples of the base asphalt cement and polymer additives if requested.

Table 3  
Polymer-Modified Asphalt Cement

Property	Test Procedure	Polymer-Modified Viscosity Grade											
		AC-12-5TR		NT-HA <sup>1</sup>		AC-15P		AC-20XP		AC-10-2TR		AC-20-5TR	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Polymer		TR		-		SBS		SBS		TR		TR	
Polymer content, % (solids basis)	<a href="#">Tex-533-C</a> or <a href="#">Tex-553-C</a>	5.0	-	-	-	3.0	-	-	-	2.0	-	5.0	-
Dynamic shear, G*/sinδ, 82°C, 10 rad/s, kPa	T 315			1.0	-								
Dynamic shear, G*/sinδ, 64°C, 10 rad/s, kPa	T 315	-	-	-	-	-	-	1.0	-	-	-	1.0	-
Dynamic shear, G*/sinδ, 58°C, 10 rad/s, kPa	T 315	1.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1.0	-	-	-
Viscosity 140°F, poise	T 202	1,200	-			1,500	-	2,000	-	1,000	-	2,000	-
275°F, poise	T 202			-	4,000	-	8.0	-	-	-	8.0	-	10.0
Penetration, 77°F, 100 g, 5 sec.	T 49	110	150	-	25	100	150	75	115	95	130	75	115
Ductility, 5cm/min., 39.2°F, cm	T 51					-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Elastic recovery, 50°F, %	<a href="#">Tex-539-C</a>	55	-			55	-	55	-	30	-	55	-
Softening point, °F	T 53	113	-	170	-	-	-	120	-	110	-	120	-
Polymer separation, 5 hr.	<a href="#">Tex-540-C</a>	None				None		None		None		None	
Flash point, C.O.C., °F	T 48	425	-	425	-	425	-	425	-	425	-	425	-
Tests on residue from RTFOT aging and pressure aging:	T 240 and R 28												
Creep stiffness S, -18°C, MPa	T 313	-	300	-	-	-	300	-	300	-	300	-	300
m-value, -18°C		0.300	-	-	-	0.300	-	0.300	-	0.300	-	0.300	-

1. Non-Tracking Hot Applied Tack Coat - TRAIL product

- 2.3. **Cutback Asphalt.** Provide cutback asphalt that meets the requirements of Tables 4, 5, and 6, for the specified type and grade. Supply samples of the base asphalt cement and polymer additives if requested.

**Table 4**  
**Rapid-Curing Cutback Asphalt**

Property	Test Procedure	Type-Grade					
		RC-250		RC-800		RC-3000	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Kinematic viscosity, 140°F, cSt	T 201	250	400	800	1,600	3,000	6,000
Water, %	D95	–	0.2	–	0.2	–	0.2
Flash point, T.O.C., °F	T 79	80	–	80	–	80	–
Distillation test:	T 78						
Distillate, percentage by volume of total distillate to 680°F							
to 437°F		40	75	35	70	20	55
to 500°F		65	90	55	85	45	75
to 600°F		85	–	80	–	70	–
Residue from distillation, volume %		70	–	75	–	82	–
Tests on distillation residue:							
Viscosity, 140°F, poise	T 202	600	2,400	600	2,400	600	2,400
Ductility, 5 cm/min., 77°F, cm	T 51	100	–	100	–	100	–
Solubility in trichloroethylene, %	T 44	99.0	–	99.0	–	99.0	–
Spot test	<a href="#">Tex-509-C</a>	Neg.		Neg.		Neg.	

**Table 5**  
**Medium-Curing Cutback Asphalt**

Property	Test Procedure	Type-Grade							
		MC-30		MC-250		MC-800		MC-3000	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Kinematic viscosity, 140°F, cSt	T 201	30	60	250	500	800	1,600	3,000	6,000
Water, %	D95	–	0.2	–	0.2	–	0.2	–	0.2
Flash point, T.O.C., °F	T 79	95	–	122	–	140	–	149	–
Distillation test:	T 78								
Distillate, percentage by volume of total distillate to 680°F									
to 437°F		–	35	–	20	–	–	–	–
to 500°F		30	75	5	55	–	40	–	15
to 600°F		75	95	60	90	45	85	15	75
Residue from distillation, volume %		50	–	67	–	75	–	80	–
Tests on distillation residue:									
Viscosity, 140°F, poise	T 202	300	1,200	300	1,200	300	1,200	300	1,200
Ductility, 5 cm/min., 77°F, cm	T 51	100	–	100	–	100	–	100	–
Solubility in trichloroethylene, %	T 44	99.0	–	99.0	–	99.0	–	99.0	–
Spot test	<a href="#">Tex-509-C</a>	Neg.		Neg.		Neg.		Neg.	

**Table 6**  
**Special-Use Cutback Asphalt**

Property	Test Procedure	Type-Grade					
		MC-2400L		SCM I		SCM II	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Kinematic viscosity, 140°F, cSt	T 201	2,400	4,800	500	1,000	1,000	2,000
Water, %	D95	–	0.2	–	0.2	–	0.2
Flash point, T.O.C., °F	T 79	150	–	175	–	175	–
Distillation test:	T 78						
Distillate, percentage by volume of total distillate to 680°F							
to 437°F		–	–	–	–	–	–
to 500°F		–	35	–	0.5	–	0.5
to 600°F		35	80	20	60	15	50
Residue from distillation, volume %		78	–	76	–	82	–
Tests on distillation residue:							
Polymer		SBR		–		–	
Polymer content, % (solids basis)	<a href="#">Tex-533-C</a>	2.0	–	–	–	–	–
Penetration, 100 g, 5 sec., 77°F	T 49	150	300	180	–	180	–
Ductility, 5 cm/min., 39.2°F, cm	T 51	50	–	–	–	–	–
Solubility in trichloroethylene, %	T 44	99.0	–	99.0	–	99.0	–

- 2.4. **Emulsified Asphalt.** Provide emulsified asphalt that is homogeneous, does not separate after thorough mixing, and meets the requirements for the specified type and grade in Tables 7, 8, 9, 10, and 10A-C.

**Table 7**  
**Emulsified Asphalt**

Property	Test Procedure	Type-Grade									
		Rapid-Setting		Medium-Setting				Slow-Setting			
		HFRS-2		MS-2		AES-300		SS-1		SS-1H	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol 77°F, sec. 122°F, sec.	T 72	-	-	-	-	75	400	20	100	20	100
Sieve test, %	T 59	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1
Miscibility	T 59	-		-		-		Pass		Pass	
Cement mixing, %	T 59	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	2.0	-	2.0
Coating ability and water resistance: Dry aggregate/after spray Wet aggregate/after spray	T 59	-		-		Good/Fair Fair/Fair		-		-	
Demulsibility, 35 mL of 0.02 N CaCl <sub>2</sub> , %	T 59	50	-	-	30	-	-	-	-	-	-
Storage stability, 1 day, %	T 59	-	1	-	1	-	1	-	1	-	1
Freezing test, 3 cycles <sup>1</sup>	T 59	-		Pass		-		Pass		Pass	
Distillation test: Residue by distillation, % by wt. Oil distillate, % by volume of emulsion	T 59	65	-	65	-	65	-	60	-	60	-
		-	0.5	-	0.5	-	5	-	0.5	-	0.5
Tests on residue from distillation: Penetration, 77°F, 100 g, 5 sec. Solubility in trichloroethylene, % Ductility, 77°F, 5 cm/min., cm Float test, 140°F, sec.	T 49 T 44 T 51 T 50	100 97.5 100 1,200	140 - - -	120 97.5 100 -	160 - - -	300 97.5 - 1,200	- - - -	120 97.5 100 -	160 - - -	70 97.5 80 -	100 - - -

1. Applies only when the Engineer designates material for winter use.

**Table 8**  
**Cationic Emulsified Asphalt**

Property	Test Procedure	Type-Grade											
		Rapid-Setting		Medium-Setting				Slow-Setting					
		CRS-2		CRS-2H		CMS-2		CMS-2S		CSS-1		CSS-1H	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol 77°F, sec. 122°F, sec.	T 72	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	20	100	20	100
Sieve test, %	T 59	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1
Cement mixing, %	T 59	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	2.0	-	2.0
Coating ability and water resistance: Dry aggregate/after spray Wet aggregate/after spray	T 59	-		-		Good/Fair Fair/Fair		Good/Fair Fair/Fair		-		-	
Demulsibility, 35 mL of 0.8% Sodium dioctyl sulfosuccinate, %	T 59	70	-	70	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Storage stability, 1 day, %	T 59	-	1	-	1	-	1	-	1	-	1	-	1
Particle charge	T 59	Positive		Positive		Positive		Positive		Positive		Positive	
Distillation test: Residue by distillation, % by wt. Oil distillate, % by volume of emulsion	T 59	65	-	65	-	65	-	65	-	60	-	60	-
		-	0.5	-	0.5	-	7	-	5	-	0.5	-	0.5
Tests on residue from distillation: Penetration, 77°F, 100 g, 5 sec. Solubility in trichloroethylene, % Ductility, 77°F, 5 cm/min., cm	T 49 T 44 T 51	120 97.5 100	160 - -	70 97.5 80	110 - -	120 97.5 100	200 - -	300 97.5 -	- - -	120 97.5 100	160 - -	70 97.5 80	110 - -

**Table 9**  
**Polymer-Modified Emulsified Asphalt**

Property	Test Procedure	Type-Grade									
		Rapid-Setting		Medium-Setting				Slow-Setting			
		HFRS-2P		AES-150P		AES-300P		AES-300S		SS-1P	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol 77°F, sec. 122°F, sec.	T 72	-	-	75	400	75	400	75	400	30	100
Sieve test, %	T 59	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1
Miscibility	T 59	-		-		-		-		Pass	
Coating ability and water resistance: Dry aggregate/after spray Wet aggregate/after spray	T 59	-		Good/Fair Fair/Fair		Good/Fair Fair/Fair		Good/Fair Fair/Fair		-	
Demulsibility, 35 mL of 0.02 N CaCl <sub>2</sub> , %	T 59	50	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Storage stability, 1 day, %	T 59	-	1	-	1	-	1	-	1	-	1
Breaking index, g	<a href="#">Tex-542-C</a>	-	-								
Distillation test: <sup>1</sup> Residue by distillation, % by wt. Oil distillate, % by volume of emulsion	T 59	65	-	65	-	65	-	65	-	60	-
		-	0.5	-	3	-	5	-	7	-	0.5
Tests on residue from distillation: Polymer content, wt. % (solids basis)	<a href="#">Tex-533-C</a>	3.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	3.0	-
Penetration, 77°F, 100 g, 5 sec.	T 49	90	140	150	300	300	-	300	-	100	140
Solubility in trichloroethylene, %	T 44	97.0	-	97.0	-	97.0	-	97.0	-	97.0	-
Viscosity, 140°F, poise	T 202	1,500	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,300	-
Float test, 140°F, sec	T 50	1,200	-	1,200	-	1,200	-	1,200	-	-	-
Ductility, <sup>2</sup> 39.2°F, 5 cm/min., cm	T 51	50	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	50	-
Elastic recovery, 250°F, %	<a href="#">Tex-539-C</a>	55	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Tests on RTFO curing of distillation residue Elastic recovery, 50°F, %	T 240 <a href="#">Tex-536-C</a>	-	-	50	-	50	-	30	-	-	-

1. Exception to T 59: Bring the temperature on the lower thermometer slowly to 350°F ±10°F. Maintain at this temperature for 20 min. Complete total distillation in 60 min. (±5 min.) from the first application of heat.

2. HFRS-2P must meet one of either the ductility or elastic recovery requirements.

**Table 10**  
**Polymer-Modified Cationic Emulsified Asphalt**

Property	Test Procedure	Type-Grade											
		Rapid-Setting						Medium-Setting				Slow-Setting	
		CRS-2P		CHFRS-2P		CRS-2TR		CMS-1P <sup>3</sup>		CMS-2P <sup>3</sup>		CSS 1P	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol 77°F, sec. 122°F, sec.	T 72	-	-	-	-	-	-	10	100	-	-	20	100
		150	400	100	400	150	500	-	-	50	400	-	-
Sieve test, %	T 59	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1
Demulsibility, 35 ml of 0.8% sodium dioctyl sulfosuccinate, %	T 59	70	-	60	-	40	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Storage stability, 1 day, %	T 59	-	1	-	1	-	1	-	1	-	1	-	1
Breaking index, g	<a href="#">Tex-542-C</a>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Particle charge	T 59	Positive		Positive		Positive		Positive		Positive		Positive	
Distillation test <sup>1</sup> :	T 59												
Residue by distillation, % by weight		65	-	65	-	65	-	30	-	60	-	62	-
Oil distillate, % by volume of emulsion		-	0.5	-	0.5	-	3	-	0.5	-	0.5	-	0.5
Tests on residue from distillation:													
Polymer content, wt. % (solids basis)	<a href="#">Tex-533-C</a>	3.0	-	3.0	-	5.0 <sup>7</sup>	-	-	-	-	-	3.0	-
Penetration, 77°F, 100 g, 5 sec.	T 49	90	150	80	130	90	150	30	-	30	-	55	90
Viscosity, 140°F, poise	T 202	1,300	-	1,300	-	1,000	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Solubility in trichloroethylene, %	T 44	97.0	-	95.0	-	98	-	-	-	-	-	97.0	-
Softening point, °F	T 53	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	135	-
Ductility, 77°F, 5 cm/min., cm	T 51	-	-	-	-	40	-	-	-	-	-	70	-
Float test, 140°F, sec.	T 50	-	-	1,800	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Ductility, <sup>2</sup> 39.2°F, 5 cm/min., cm	T 51	50	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Elastic recovery, <sup>2</sup> 50°F, %	<a href="#">Tex-539-C</a>	55	-	55	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Tests on residue from evaporative recovery:	R 78, Procedure B												
Nonrecoverable creep compliance of residue, 3.2 kPa, 52°C, kPa <sup>-1</sup>	T 350	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	2.0	-	4.0	-	-
Tests on rejuvenating agent:													
Viscosity, 140°F, cSt	T 201	-	-	-	-	-	-	50	175	50	175	-	-
Flash point, C.O.C., °F	T 48	-	-	-	-	-	-	380	-	380	-	-	-
Saturates, % by weight	D 2007	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	30	-	30	-	-
Solubility in n-pentane, % by weight	D 2007	-	-	-	-	-	-	99	-	99	-	-	-
Tests on rejuvenating agent after RTFO	T 240												
Weight Change, %		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	6.5	-	6.5	-	-
Viscosity Ratio		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	3.0	-	3.0	-	-
Tests on latex <sup>4</sup> :													
Tensile strength, die C dumbbell, psi	D 412 <sup>5</sup>	-	-	-	-	-	-	800	-	800	-	-	-
Change in mass after immersion in rejuvenating agent, %	D 471	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	40 <sup>6</sup>	-	40 <sup>6</sup>	-	-

- Exception to T 59: Bring the temperature on the lower thermometer slowly to 350°F (±0°F). Maintain at this temperature for 20 min. Complete total distillation in 60 min. (±5 min.) from the first application of heat.
- CRS-2P must meet one of either the ductility or elastic recovery requirements.
- With all precertification samples of CMS-1P or CMS-2P, submit certified test reports showing that the rejuvenating agent and latex meet the stated requirements. Submit samples of these raw materials if requested by the Engineer.
- Preparation of latex specimens: use any substrate and recovery method which produces specimens of uniform dimensions and which delivers enough material to achieve desired residual thickness.
- Cut samples for tensile strength determination using a crosshead speed of 20 in. per minute.
- Specimen must remain intact after exposure and removal of excess rejuvenating agent.
- Modifier type is tire rubber.



**Table 10A**  
**Non-Tracking Tack Coat Emulsion<sup>1</sup>**

Property	Test Procedure	NT-HRE		NT-RRE		NT-SRE	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol 77° F, sec.	T 72	15	–	15	–	10	100
Storage stability, 1 Day, %	T 59	–	1	–	1	–	1
Settlement, 5-day, %	T 59	–	5	–	5	–	5
Sieve test, %	T 59	–	0.30	–	0.30	–	0.1
Distillation test: <sup>2</sup> Residue by distillation, % by wt. Oil distillate, by volume of emulsion	T 59	50	–	58	–	50	–
Test on residue from distillation: Penetration, 77°F, 100 g, 5 sec. Solubility in trichloroethylene, % Softening point, °F Dynamic shear, G*/sin(δ), 82°C, 10 rad/s, kPa	T 49 T 44 T 53 T 315	– 97.5 150 1.0	20 – – –	15 97.5 – –	45 – – –	40 97.5 – –	90 – – –

1. Due to the hardness of the residue, these emulsions should be heated to 120-140°F before thoroughly mixing as the emulsion is being prepared for testing.
2. Exception to T 59: Bring the temperature on the lower thermometer slowly to 350°F ± 10°F. Maintain at this temperature for 20 min. Complete total distillation in 60 ± 5 min. from first application of heat.

**Table 10B**  
**Spray Applied Underseal Membrane Polymer-Modified Emulsions (EBL)**

Property	Test Procedure	Min	Max
Viscosity @ 77°F, SSF	T 72	20	100
Storage Stability <sup>1</sup> , %	T 59	–	1
Demulsibility <sup>2</sup> Anionic emulsions – 35 mL of 0.02 N CaCl <sub>2</sub> , % Cationic emulsions – 35 mL of 0.8% sodium dioctyl sulfosuccinate, %	T 59	55	–
Sieve Test <sup>3</sup> , %	T 59	–	0.05
Distillation Test <sup>4</sup> Residue by distillation, % by wt. Oil portion of distillate, % by vol.	T 59	63	0.5
Test on Residue from Distillation Elastic Recovery @ 50°F, 50 mm/min., % Penetration @ 77°F, 100 g, 5 sec., 0.1 mm	<a href="#">Tex-539-C</a> T 49	60 80	– 130

1. After standing undisturbed for 24 hr., the surface must be smooth, must not exhibit a white or milky colored substance, and must be a homogeneous color throughout.
2. Material must meet demulsibility test for emulsions.
3. May be required by the Engineer only when the emulsion cannot be easily applied in the field.
4. The temperature on the lower thermometer should be brought slowly to 350°F ± 10°F and maintained at this temperature for 20 min. The total distillation should be completed in 60 ± 5 min. from the first application of heat.

**Table 10C**  
**Full-Depth Reclamation Emulsion (FDR EM)**

Property	Test Procedure	Standard Yield (SY)		High Yield (HY)	
		Min	Max	Min	Max
Sieve test, %	T 59	–	0.1	–	0.1
Viscosity Saybolt Furol @ 77°F, sec.	T 59	20	100	20	100
Distillation test <sup>1</sup> : Residue by distillation, % by wt. Oil portion of distillate, % by vol.	T 59	60	–	63	–
Test on residue from distillation: Penetration @ 77°F, dmm	T 49	55	95	120	–
Test on rejuvenating agent: BWOA, % <sup>2</sup> Viscosity @ 140°F, cSt Flash Point, COC, °F Solubility in n-pentane, % by wt.	*** T 201 T 48 D2007	– – – –	– – – –	2 50 380 99	– 175 – –

1. The temperature on the lower thermometer should be brought slowly to 350°F ± 10°F and maintained at this temperature for 20 min. The total distillation should be completed in 60 ± 5 min. from the first application of heat.
2. BWOA = By weight of asphalt. Provide a manufacturer's certificate of analysis (COA) with the percent of rejuvenator added.

2.5.

**Specialty Emulsions.** Provide specialty emulsion that is either asphalt-based or resin-based and meets the requirements of Table 11 or Table 11A.

**Table 11**  
**Specialty Emulsions**

Property	Test Procedure	Type-Grade					
		Medium-Setting				Slow-Setting	
		AE-P		EAP&T		PCE <sup>1</sup>	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol 77°F, sec. 122°F, sec.	T 72	–	–	–	–	10	100
Sieve test, %	T 59	–	0.1	–	0.1	–	0.1
Miscibility <sup>2</sup>	T 59	–	–	Pass	–	Pass	–
Demulsibility, 35 mL of 0.10 N CaCl <sub>2</sub> , %	T 59	–	70	–	–	–	–
Storage stability, 1 day, %	T 59	–	1	–	1	–	–
Particle size, <sup>5</sup> % by volume < 2.5 μm	<a href="#">Tex-238-F<sup>3</sup></a>	–	–	90	–	90	–
Asphalt emulsion distillation to 500°F followed by Cutback asphalt distillation of residue to 680°F: Residue after both distillations, % by wt. Total oil distillate from both distillations, % by volume of emulsion	T 59 & T 78	40	–	–	–	–	–
		25	40	–	–	–	–
Residue by distillation, % by wt.	T 59	–	–	60	–	–	–
Residue by evaporation, <sup>4</sup> % by wt.	T 59	–	–	–	–	60	–
Tests on residue after all distillations:							
Viscosity, 140°F, poise	T 202	–	–	800	–	–	–
Kinematic viscosity, <sup>5</sup> 140°F, cSt	T 201	–	–	–	–	100	350
Flash point C.O.C., °F	T 48	–	–	–	–	400	–
Solubility in trichloroethylene, %	T 44	97.5	–	–	–	–	–
Float test, 122°F, sec.	T 50	50	200	–	–	–	–

1. Supply with each shipment of PCE:

- a copy of a lab report from an approved analytical lab, signed by a lab official, indicating the PCE formulation does not meet any characteristics of a Resource Conservation Recovery Act (RCRA) hazardous waste;
- a certification from the producer that the formulation supplied does not differ from the one tested and that no listed RCRA hazardous wastes or Polychlorinated Biphenyls (PCBs) have been mixed with the product; and
- a Safety Data Sheet.

2. Exception to T 59: In dilution, use 350 mL of distilled or deionized water and a 1,000-mL beaker.
3. Use [Tex-238-F](#), beginning at "Particle Size Analysis by Laser Diffraction," with distilled or deionized water as a medium and no dispersant, or use another approved method.
4. Exception to T 59: Leave sample in the oven until foaming ceases, then cool and weigh.
5. PCE must meet either the kinematic viscosity requirement or the particle size requirement.

**Table 11A**  
**Hard Residue Surface Sealant**

Property	Test Procedure	Min	Max
Viscosity, Krebs unit, 77°F, Krebs units	D 562	45	75
Softening point, °F	<a href="#">Tex-505-C</a> <sup>1</sup>	250	–
Uniformity	D 2939	Pass <sup>2</sup>	
Resistance to heat	D 2939	Pass <sup>3</sup>	
Resistance to water	D 2939	Pass <sup>4</sup>	
Wet flow, mm	D 2939	–	0
Resistance to Kerosene (optional) <sup>5</sup>	D 2939	Pass <sup>6</sup>	
Ultraviolet exposure, UVA-340, 0.77 W/m <sup>2</sup> , 50°C chamber, 8 hr. UV lamp, 5 min. spray, 3 hr. 55 min. condensation, 1,000 hr. total exposure <sup>7</sup>	G 154	Pass <sup>8</sup>	
Abrasion loss, 1.6 mm thickness, liquid only, %	ISSA TB-100	–	1.0
Residue by evaporation, % by weight	D 2939	33	–
Tests on residue from evaporation: Penetration, 77°F, 100 g, 5 sec. Flash point, Cleveland open cup, °F	T 49 T 48	15 500	30
Tests on base asphalt before emulsification Solubility in trichloroethylene, %	T 44	98	–

1. Cure the emulsion in the softening point ring in a 200°F ± 5°F oven for 2 hr.
2. Product must be homogenous and show no separation or coagulation that cannot be overcome by moderate stirring.
3. No sagging or slippage of film beyond the initial reference line.
4. No blistering or re-emulsification.
5. Recommended for airport applications or where fuel resistance is desired.
6. No absorption of Kerosene into the clay tile past the sealer film. Note sealer surface condition and loss of adhesion.
7. Other exposure cycles with similar levels of irradiation and conditions may be used with Department approval.
8. No cracking, chipping, surface distortion, or loss of adhesion. No color fading or lightening.

2.6.

**Recycling Agent.** Recycling agent and emulsified recycling agent must meet the requirements in Table 12. Additionally, recycling agent and residue from emulsified recycling agent, when added in the specified proportions to the recycled asphalt, must meet the properties specified on the plans.

**Table 12**  
**Recycling Agent and Emulsified Recycling Agent**

Property	Test Procedure	Recycling Agent		Emulsified Recycling Agent (ARA-1)		Polymer Modified Emulsified Recycling Agent (ARA-1P)	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol, 77°F, sec.	T 72	–	–	15	100	15	110
Sieve test, %	T 59	–	–	–	0.1	–	0.1
Miscibility <sup>1</sup>	T 59	–		No coagulation			
Residue by evaporation, <sup>2</sup> % by wt.	T 59	–	–	60	–	–	–
Distillation test: Residue by distillation, % by wt. Oil distillate, % by volume of emulsion	T 59					60 –	65 2
Penetration of Distillation Residue at 39.2°F, 100 g, 5 sec.	T 49					110	190
Tests on recycling agent or residue from evaporation: Flash point, C.O.C., °F Kinematic viscosity, 140°F, cSt 275°F, cSt	T 48 T 201	400 75 –	– 200 10.0	400 75 –	– 200 10.0	400	–

- Exception to T 59: Use 0.02 N CaCl<sub>2</sub> solution in place of water.
- Exception to T 59: Maintain sample at 300°F until foaming ceases, then cool and weigh.

2.7. **Crumb Rubber Modifier.** Crumb rubber modifier (CRM) consists of automobile and truck tires processed by ambient temperature grinding.

CRM must be:

- free from contaminants including fabric, metal, and mineral and other nonrubber substances;
- free-flowing; and
- nonfoaming when added to hot asphalt binder.

Ensure rubber gradation meets the requirements of the grades in Table 13 when tested in accordance with [Tex-200-F](#), Part I, using a 50-g sample.

**Table 13**  
**CRM Gradations**

Sieve Size (% Passing)	Grade A		Grade B		Grade C		Grade D	Grade E
	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max		
#8	100	–	–	–	–	–	As shown on the plans	As approved
#10	95	100	100	–	–	–		
#16	–	–	70	100	100	–		
#30	–	–	25	60	90	100		
#40	–	–	–	–	45	100		
#50	0	10	–	–	–	–		
#200	–	–	0	5	–	–		

2.8. **Crack Sealer.** Provide polymer-modified asphalt-emulsion crack sealer meeting the requirements of Table 14. Provide rubber-asphalt crack sealer meeting the requirements of Table 15.

**Table 14**  
**Polymer-Modified Asphalt-Emulsion Crack Sealer**

Property	Test Procedure	Min	Max
Rotational viscosity, 77°F, cP	D 2196, Method A	10,000	25,000
Sieve test, %	T 59	–	0.1
Storage stability, 1 day, %	T 59	–	1
Evaporation	<a href="#">Tex-543-C</a>		
Residue by evaporation, % by wt.		65	–
Tests on residue from evaporation:			
Penetration, 77°F, 100 g, 5 sec.	T 49	35	75
Softening point, °F	T 53	140	–
Ductility, 39.2°F, 5 cm/min., cm	T 51	100	–

**Table 15**  
**Rubber-Asphalt Crack Sealer**

Property	Test Procedure	Class A		Class B	
		Min	Max	Min	Max
CRM content, Grade A or B, % by wt.	<a href="#">Tex-544-C</a>	22	26	–	–
CRM content, Grade B, % by wt.	<a href="#">Tex-544-C</a>	–	–	13	17
Virgin rubber content, <sup>1</sup> % by wt.		–	–	2	–
Flash point, <sup>2</sup> C.O.C., °F	T 48	400	–	400	–
Penetration, <sup>3</sup> 77°F, 150 g, 5 sec.	T 49	30	50	30	50
Penetration, <sup>3</sup> 32°F, 200 g, 60 sec.	T 49	12	–	12	–
Softening point, °F	T 53	–	–	170	–
Bond Test, non-immersed, 0.5 in specimen, 50% extension, 20°F <sup>4</sup>	D5329	–	–	–	Pass

1. Provide certification that the Min % virgin rubber was added.
2. Agitate the sealing compound with a 3/8- to 1/2 in. (9.5- to 12.7 mm) wide, square-end metal spatula to bring the material on the bottom of the cup to the surface (i.e., turn the material over) before passing the test flame over the cup. Start at one side of the thermometer, move around to the other, and then return to the starting point using 8 to 10 rapid circular strokes. Accomplish agitation in 3 to 4 sec. Pass the test flame over the cup immediately after stirring is completed.
3. Exception to T 49: Substitute the cone specified in D 217 for the penetration needle.
4. Allow no crack in the crack sealing materials or break in the bond between the sealer and the mortar blocks over 1/4 in. deep for any specimen after completion of the test.

- 2.9. **Asphalt-Rubber Binders.** Provide asphalt-rubber (A-R) binders that are mixtures of asphalt binder and CRM, which have been reacted at elevated temperatures. Provide A-R binders meeting D6114 and containing a minimum of 15% CRM by weight. Provide Types I or II, containing CRM Grade C, for use in hot-mixed aggregate mixtures. Provide Types II or III, containing CRM Grade B, for use in surface treatment binder. Ensure binder properties meet the requirements of Table 16.

**Table 16**  
**A-R Binders**

Property	Test Procedure	Binder Type					
		Type I		Type II		Type III	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Apparent viscosity, 347°F, cP	D2196, Method A	1,500	5,000	1,500	5,000	1,500	5,000
Penetration, 77°F, 100 g, 5 sec.	T 49	25	75	25	75	50	100
Penetration, 39.2°F, 200 g, 60 sec.	T 49	10	–	15	–	25	–
Softening point, °F	T 53	135	–	130	–	125	–
Resilience, 77°F, %	D5329	25	–	20	–	10	–
Flash point, C.O.C., °F	T 48	450	–	450	–	450	–
Tests on residue from Thin-Film Oven Test:	T 179						
Retained penetration ratio, 39.2°F, 200 g, 60 sec., % of original	T 49	75	–	75	–	75	–

- 2.10. **Performance-Graded Binders.** Provide PG binders that are smooth and homogeneous, show no separation when tested in accordance with [Tex-540-C](#), and meet the requirements of Table 17.

Separation testing is not required if:

- a modifier is introduced separately at the mix plant either by injection in the asphalt line or mixer,
- the binder is blended on site in continuously agitated tanks, or
- binder acceptance is based on field samples taken from an in-line sampling port at the hot-mix plant after the addition of modifiers.

**Table 17**  
**Performance-Graded Binders**

Property and Test Method	Performance Grade																	
	PG 58			PG 64				PG 70				PG 76				PG 82		
	-22	-28	-34	-16	-22	-28	-34	-16	-22	-28	-34	-16	-22	-28	-34	-16	-22	-28
Average 7-day max pavement design temperature, °C <sup>1</sup>	58			64				70				76				82		
Min pavement design temperature, °C <sup>1</sup>	-22	-28	-34	-16	-22	-28	-34	-16	-22	-28	-34	-16	-22	-28	-34	-16	-22	-28
<b>Original Binder</b>																		
Flash point, T 48, Min, °C	230																	
Viscosity, T 316 <sup>2,3</sup> : Max, 3.0 Pa s, test temperature, °C	135																	
Dynamic shear, T 315 <sup>4</sup> : G*/sin(δ), Min, 1.00 kPa, Max, 2.00 kPa <sup>7</sup> , Test temperature @ 10 rad/sec., °C	58			64				70				76				82		
Elastic recovery, D6084, 50°F, % Min <sup>8</sup>	-	-	30	-	-	30	50	-	30	50	60	30	50	60	70	50	60	70
<b>Rolling Thin-Film Oven (Tex-506-C)</b>																		
Mass change, T 240, Max, %	1.0																	
Dynamic shear, T 315: G*/sin(δ), Min, 2.20 kPa, Max, 5.00 kPa <sup>7</sup> , Test temperature @ 10 rad/sec., °C	58			64				70				76				82		
MSCR, T350, Recovery, 0.1 kPa, High Temperature, % Min <sup>8</sup>	-	-	20	-	-	20	30	-	20	30	40	20	30	40	50	30	40	50
<b>Pressure Aging Vessel (PAV) Residue (R 28)</b>																		
PAV aging temperature, °C	100																	
Dynamic shear, T 315: G*/sin(δ), Max, 5,000 kPa Test temperature @ 10 rad/sec., °C	25	22	19	28	25	22	19	28	25	22	19	28	25	22	19	28	25	22
Creep stiffness, T 313 <sup>5,6</sup> : S, max, 300 MPa, m-value, Min, 0.300 Test temperature @ 60 sec., °C	-12	-18	-24	-6	-12	-18	-24	-6	-12	-18	-24	-6	-12	-18	-24	-6	-12	-18
Direct tension, T 314 <sup>6</sup> : Failure strain, min, 1.0% Test temperature @ 1.0 mm/min., °C	-12	-18	-24	-6	-12	-18	-24	-6	-12	-18	-24	-6	-12	-18	-24	-6	-12	-18

- Pavement temperatures are estimated from air temperatures and using an algorithm contained in a Department-supplied computer program, may be provided by the Department, or by following the procedures outlined in AASHTO MP 2 and PP 28.
- This requirement may be waived at the Department's discretion if the supplier warrants that the asphalt binder can be adequately pumped, mixed, and compacted at temperatures that meet all applicable safety, environmental, and constructability requirements. At test temperatures where the binder is a Newtonian fluid, any suitable standard means of viscosity measurement may be used, including capillary (T 201 or T 202) or rotational viscometry (T 316).
- Viscosity at 135°C is an indicator of mixing and compaction temperatures that can be expected in the lab and field. High values may indicate high mixing and compaction temperatures. Additionally, significant variation can occur from batch to batch. Contractors should be aware that variation could significantly impact their mixing and compaction operations. Contractors are therefore responsible for addressing any constructability issues that may arise.
- For quality control of unmodified asphalt binder production, measurement of the viscosity of the original asphalt binder may be substituted for dynamic shear measurements of G\*/sin(δ) at test temperatures where the asphalt is a Newtonian fluid. Any suitable standard means of viscosity measurement may be used, including capillary (T 201 or T 202) or rotational viscometry (T 316).
- Silicone beam molds, as described in AASHTO TP 1-93, are acceptable for use.
- If creep stiffness is below 300 MPa, direct tension test is not required. If creep stiffness is between 300 and 600 MPa, the direct tension failure strain requirement can be used instead of the creep stiffness requirement. The m value requirement must be satisfied in both cases.
- Maximum values for unaged and RTFO aged dynamic shear apply only to materials used as substitute binders, as described in Item 340, "Dense-Graded Hot-Mix Asphalt (Small Quantity)", Item 341, "Dense-Graded Hot-Mix Asphalt, and Item 344, "Superpave Mixtures."
- Elastic Recovery (ASTM D6084) is not required unless MSCR (AASHTO T 350) is less than the minimum % recovery. Elastic Recovery must be used for the acceptance criteria in this instance.

### 3. EQUIPMENT

Provide all equipment necessary to transport, store, sample, heat, apply, and incorporate asphalts, oils, and emulsions.

## 4. CONSTRUCTION

**Typical Material Use.** Use materials shown in Table 18, unless otherwise determined by the Engineer.

**Table 18**  
**Typical Material Use**

Material Application	Typically Used Materials
Hot-mixed, hot-laid asphalt mixtures	PG binders, A-R binders Types I and II
Surface treatment	AC-5, AC-10, AC-15P, AC-20XP, AC-10-2TR, AC-20-5TR, HFRS-2, MS-2, CRS-2, CRS-2H, CRS-2TR, CMS-2P HFRS-2P, CRS-2P, CHFRS-2P, A-R binders Types II and III
Surface treatment (cool weather)	AC12-5TR, RC-250, RC-800, RC-3000, MC-250, MC-800, MC-3000, MC-2400L, CMS-2P
Precoating	AC-5, AC-10, PG 64-22, SS-1, SS-1H, CSS-1, CSS-1H
Tack coat	PG Binders, SS-1H, CSS-1H, EAP&T, TRAIL, EBL
Fog seal	SS-1, SS-1H, CSS-1, CSS-1H, CMS-1P
Hot-mixed, cold-laid asphalt mixtures	AC-0.6, AC-1.5, AC-3, AES-300, AES-300P, CMS-2, CMS-2S
Patching mix	MC-800, SCM I, SCM II, AES-300S
Recycling	AC-0.6, AC-1.5, AC-3, AES-150P, AES-300P, recycling agent, emulsified recycling agent
Crack sealing	SS-1P, polymer mod AE crack sealant, rubber asphalt crack sealers (Class A, Class B)
Microsurfacing	CSS-1P
Prime	MC-30, AE-P, EAP&T, PCE
Curing membrane	SS-1, SS-1H, CSS-1, CSS-1H, PCE
Erosion control	SS-1, SS-1H, CSS-1, CSS-1H, PCE
FDR -Foaming	PG 64-22, FDR EM-SY, FDR EM-HY

- 4.1. **Storage and Application Temperatures.** Use storage and application temperatures in accordance with Table 19. Store and apply materials at the lowest temperature yielding satisfactory results. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for any agitation requirements in storage. Manufacturer's instructions regarding recommended application and storage temperatures supersede those of Table 19.



**Table19**  
**Storage and Application Temperatures**

Type-Grade	Application		Storage Max (°F)
	Recommended Range (°F)	Max Allowable (°F)	
AC-0.6, AC-1.5, AC-3	200–300	350	350
AC-5, AC-10	275–350	350	350
AC-15P, AC-20-5TR, AC12-5TR and AC10-2TR	300–375	375	360
RC-250	125–180	200	200
RC-800	170–230	260	260
RC-3000	215–275	285	285
MC-30, AE-P	70–150	175	175
MC-250	125–210	240	240
MC-800, SCM I, SCM II	175–260	275	275
MC-3000, MC-2400L	225–275	290	290
HFRS-2, MS-2, CRS-2, CRS-2H, HFRS-2P, CRS-2P, CMS-2, CMS-2S, AES-300, AES-300S, AES-150P, AES-300P, CRS-2TR	120–160	180	180
SS-1, SS-1H, CSS-1, CSS-1H, PCE, EAP&T, SS-1P, RS-1P, CRS-1P, CSS-1P, recycling agent, emulsified recycling agent, polymer mod AE crack sealant	50–130	140	140
PG binders	275–350	350	350
Rubber asphalt crack sealers (Class A, Class B)	350–375	400	–
A-R binders Types I, II, and III	325–425	425	425

## 5. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

The work performed, materials furnished, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals will not be measured or paid for directly but is subsidiary or is included in payment for other pertinent items.

# Special Specification 4006

## Sound Walls



### 1. DESCRIPTION

Furnish the materials for and construct a sound wall as shown on the plans and required by this specification.

### 2. MATERIALS

Use materials conforming to the pertinent requirements of the following Standard Specification Items:

Item 420, "Concrete Substructures"  
 Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete"  
 Item 425, "Precast Prestressed Concrete Structural Members"  
 Item 426, "Post-Tensioning"  
 Item 427, "Surface Finishes For Concrete"  
 Item 440, "Reinforcement for Concrete"  
 Item 441, "Steel Structures"  
 Item 442, "Metal for Structures"  
 Item 445, "Galvanizing"  
 Item 446, "Field Cleaning and Painting Steel"  
 Item 449, "Anchor Bolts"  
 DMS – 4640 "Chemical Admixtures for Concrete"  
 DMS – 6100 "Epoxies and Adhesives"  
 DMS – 6310 "Joint Sealants and Fillers"

Unless otherwise shown on the plans, construct sound wall panels of concrete. Concrete or steel sound wall posts are allowed. For precast and cast-in-place components, use Class "F" concrete with  $f_c = 4000$  psi minimum. For prestressed components, use Class "H" concrete with  $f_c = 5000$  psi minimum.

Use Galvanized anchor bolts, nuts and washers. Galvanize or paint exposed steel components with the protection system shown on the plans.

Use approved joint fillers, grout, and other incidental materials as shown on the plans.

### 3. GENERAL

3.1. Options. Furnish any proprietary sound wall system meeting the requirements of this specification and complying with the design criteria shown on the plans. Construct sound wall systems that have drilled shafts with the same spacing, diameter, length and reinforcing steel as shown on the plans. Provide for the use of these systems in accordance with Article 7.3.

3.2. Working Drawings. Prior to fabricating, prepare and submit working drawings and design calculations for the proposed sound wall system for approval. Submit drawings on 11 in. x 17 in. size sheets. Submit 7 sets of casting drawings for precast segments and shop drawings for each detail of the plans requiring the use of structural steel, 7 sets of construction drawings and 2 sets of design calculations. Upon completing construction, submit 1 set of reproducible as-built drawings.

On casting drawings, include all information necessary for precasting wall elements. Ensure casting drawings reflect the shape and dimension of precast components, the size, quantity and details of the

reinforcing steel, the quantity, type, size and details of connection and lifting hardware, the size and location of drain openings, and any necessary additional details.

On construction drawings, include a numbered wall component layout reflecting field-verified horizontal and vertical alignment of the wall. Also include on these drawings all information needed to erect the wall, including the proposed drilled shaft elevations and lengths, limits of riprap, the type, details, and construction procedure for connecting the wall to the drilled shafts, details necessary to account for change of grade, existing and proposed utilities, and any necessary additional details.

Ensure design calculations include a summary of design parameters used, including material types, strength values, allowable stresses, assumed loads and load combinations. Submit calculations covering the range of heights and loading conditions on the project.

Submit only drawings and design calculations bearing the seal of a Professional Engineer who is licensed in the State of Texas.

#### **4. CONSTRUCTION METHODS**

Construct sound walls conforming to the design and details shown on the plans and to the pertinent requirements of the following Items:

Item 424, "Precast Concrete Structural Members (Fabrication)"  
 Item 429, "Concrete Structure Repair"  
 Item 447, "Structural Bolting"  
 Item 448, "Structural Field Welding"

Set posts plumb and firm to the line and grade shown on the plans.

Do not exceed a horizontal alignment tolerance of 3/4 in. from post to post. Do not exceed 1/2 in. per 10 ft. of wall height for the overall vertical tolerance of the wall (plumb from top to bottom).

#### **5. MEASUREMENT**

Sound walls will be measured by the foot along the alignment of the sound wall. Length will be measured from center to center of posts.

#### **6. PAYMENT**

The work performed and material furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided for under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Sound Wall," of the height specified. This price is full compensation for furnishing, designing, and installing sound wall materials including anchorage into the drilled shaft; for sound wall preparation, hauling and erection; and for labor, tools, equipment and incidentals.

---

# Special Specification 4021

## Thermal Integrity Profiler (TIP) Testing of Drilled Shafts

---



### 1. DESCRIPTION

Perform the nondestructive testing (NDT) method termed Thermal Integrity Profiler (TIP) testing by obtaining records of the heat generated by curing cement (hydration energy) to assess the quality of drilled shafts. TIP measurements that are colder than normal indicate necks, inclusions, or poor-quality concrete, while warmer than normal measurements are indicative of bulges. Variations of temperatures between tubes reveal cage eccentricity. Furnish all materials, equipment, and labor necessary to conduct TIP testing on production drilled shafts. The TIP testing must meet the requirements of ASTM D 7949, except as noted below.

---

### 2. EQUIPMENT

Supply all materials and equipment required to perform TIP tests. Equipment to perform the test must have the following minimum requirements:

- 2.1. **Probe or Wire Option.** A computer based TIP data acquisition system for (a) display of signals during data acquisition (probe option only), or (b) to monitor temperature versus time after casting (wire option only).
- 2.2. **Probe Only Option.** Thermal probe with four infrared sensors equally spaced at 90° around the perimeter that read temperatures of the tube wall to within 1°F accuracy. The probes must be less than 1-1/4 in. in diameter and must freely descend through the full depth of properly installed access tubes in the drilled shafts; one depth encoder sensor to determine probe depths; and ability to collect data at user specified depth increment.
- 2.3. **Wire only option.** Ability to collect data at user defined time intervals (typically 15 to 60 min.).

---

### 3. TESTING PROCEDURE

Conform to testing procedures in ASTM D 7949 specification.

---

### 4. TEST RESULT REPORTING

Submit a written report within five working days of completion of testing. The report must present results of TIP tests by including:

- 4.1. **Graphical Displays.** Provide graphical displays of all temperature measurements (probes or wires) versus depth.
- 4.2. **Significant Temperature Deviations.** Report indication of unusual temperatures, particularly significantly cooler local deviations of the average at any depth from the overall average over the entire length, in either probe or thermal wire measurements.
- 4.3. **Overall Average Temperature.** This temperature is proportional to the average radius computed from the actual total concrete volume installed (assuming a consistent concrete mix throughout). Radius at any point can then be determined from the temperature at that point compared to the overall average temperature.
- 4.4. **Temperature Variation.** Report variations in temperature between tubes (at each depth) which in turn correspond to variations in cage alignment. Where concrete volume is known, report the cage alignment or offset from center.

- 4.5. **Shaft Specific Information.** Report shaft specific construction information (e.g. elevations of the top of shaft, bottom of casing, bottom of shaft, etc.) when available. These values should be noted on all pertinent graphical displays.

---

**5. MEASUREMENT**

This Item measured by each successful test that is approved by the Engineer. Quantities of TIP testing must be shown on the plans.

---

**6. PAYMENT**

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for each "Thermal Integrity Profiler (TIP) Testing of Drilled Shaft" of size and type specified. This price is full compensation for material, equipment, labor, work, tools, and incidentals.

# Special Specification 6001

## Portable Changeable Message Sign



### 1. DESCRIPTION

Furnish, operate, and maintain portable trailer mounted changeable message sign (PCMS) units.

### 2. MATERIALS

Furnish new or used material in accordance with the requirements of this Item and the details shown on the plans. Provide a self-contained PCMS unit with the following:

- Sign controller
- Changeable Message Sign
- Trailer
- Power source

Paint the exterior surfaces of the power supply housing, supports, trailer, and sign with Federal Orange No. 22246 or Federal Yellow No. 13538 of Federal Standard 595C, except paint the sign face assembly flat black.

- 2.1. **Sign Controller.** Provide a controller with permanent storage of a minimum of 75 pre-programmed messages. Provide an external input device for random programming and storage of a minimum of 75 additional messages. Provide a controller capable of displaying up to 3 messages sequentially. Provide a controller with adjustable display rates. Enclose sign controller equipment in a lockable enclosure.
- 2.2. **Changeable Message Sign.** Provide a sign capable of being elevated to at least 7 ft. above the roadway surface from the bottom of the sign. Provide a sign capable of being rotated 360° and secured against movement in any position.
- Provide a sign with 3 separate lines of text and 8 characters per line minimum. Provide a minimum 18 in. character height. Provide a 5 × 7 character pixel matrix. Provide a message legibility distance of 600 ft. for nighttime conditions and 800 ft. for normal daylight conditions. Provide for manual and automatic dimming light sources.
- The following are descriptions for 3 screen types of PCMS:
- **Character Modular Matrix.** This screen type comprises of character blocks.
  - **Continuous Line Matrix.** This screen type uses proportionally spaced fonts for each line of text.
  - **Full Matrix.** This screen type uses proportionally spaced fonts, varies the height of characters, and displays simple graphics on the entire sign.
- 2.3. **Trailer.** Provide a 2 wheel trailer with square top fenders, 4 leveling jacks, and trailer lights. Do not exceed an overall trailer width of 96 in. Shock mount the electronics and sign assembly.
- 2.4. **Power Source.** Provide a diesel generator, solar powered power source, or both. Provide a backup power source as necessary.
- 2.5. **Cellular Telephone.** When shown on the plans, provide a cellular telephone connection to communicate with the PCMS unit remotely.

---

**3. CONSTRUCTION**

Place or relocate PCMS units as shown on the plans or as directed. The plans will show the number of PCMS units needed, for how many days, and for which construction phases.

Maintain the PCMS units in good working condition. Repair damaged or malfunctioning PCMS units as soon as possible. PCMS units will remain the property of the Contractor.

---

**4. MEASUREMENT**

This Item will be measured by each PCMS or by the day used. All PCMS units must be set up on a work area and operational before a calendar day can be considered measurable. When measurement by the day is specified, a day will be measured for each PCMS set up and operational on the worksite.

---

**5. PAYMENT**

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Portable Changeable Message Sign." This price is full compensation for PCMS units; set up; relocating; removing; replacement parts; batteries (when required); fuel, oil, and oil filters (when required); cellular telephone charges (when required); software; and equipment, materials, tools, labor, and incidentals.

# Special Specification 6005

## Testing, Training, Documentation, Final Acceptance, and Warranty



### 1. DESCRIPTION

Perform or furnish testing, training, documentation, final acceptance, and warranty on the applicable equipment or systems.

### 2. TESTING

Unless otherwise shown on the plans, perform the following tests on the applicable equipment or systems.

- 2.1. **Test Procedures Documentation.** Provide 5 copies of the test procedures and blank data forms 60 days prior to testing for each test required on this project. Include the sequence of the tests in the procedures. The Engineer will approve test procedures prior to submission of equipment for tests. Conduct all tests in accordance with the approved test procedures.

Record test data on the data forms, as well as quantitative results. Ensure the data forms are signed by an authorized representative (company official) of the equipment manufacturer. Submit 1 copy of the completed and signed data forms for acceptance or rejection of the test or equipment.

- 2.2. **Design Approval Test.** Conduct a Design Approval Test on randomly selected units from the prototype design manufacturing run. If only 1 design prototype is manufactured, perform this test on that unit. If supplying multiple types of the equipment, provide and test a sample of each type.

Certification from an independent testing laboratory of a successfully completed Design Approval Test is acceptable. Ensure that the testing by this laboratory is performed in accordance with the requirements of this specification. Failure of independent tests to comply with the requirements of this specification will be grounds for rejection of any certification.

Notify the Engineer 10 working days before conducting this testing. The Department may witness all the tests. Perform the following tests:

- 2.2.1. **Power Service Transients.** The equipment must meet the performance requirements, specified in the parent specification, when subjected to the power service transients as specified in Section 2.2.7.2, "Transient Tests (Power Service)" of the NEMA TS 2 standard, latest edition.

- 2.2.2. **Temperature and Condensation.** The equipment must meet the performance requirements, specified in the parent specification, when subjected to the following conditions in the order specified below:

- Stabilize the equipment at -30°F and test as specified in Sections 2.2.7.3., "Low-Temperature Low-Voltage Tests" and 2.2.7.4., "Low-Temperature High-Voltage Tests" of the NEMA TS 2 standard, latest edition.
- Allow the equipment to warm up to room temperature in an atmosphere having relative humidity of at least 40%. Operate the equipment for 2 hr., while wet, without degradation or failure.
- Stabilize the equipment at 165°F and test as specified in Sections 2.2.7.5., "High-Temperature High Voltage Tests" and 2.2.7.6, "High-Temperature Low-Voltage Tests" of the NEMA TS 2 standard, latest edition.



- 2.2.3. **Relative Humidity.** The equipment must meet the performance requirements, specified in the parent specification, within 30 min. of being subjected to a temperature of 165°F and a relative humidity of 18% for 48 hr.
- 2.2.4. **Vibration.** The equipment must show no degradation of mechanical structure, soldered components, or plug-in components and must operate in accordance with the manufacturer's equipment specifications after being subjected to the vibration tests as described in Section 2.2.8, "Vibration Test," of the NEMA TS 2 standard, latest edition.
- 2.2.5. **Power Interruption.** The equipment must meet the performance requirements, specified in the parent specification, when subjected to nominal input voltage variations as specified in Section 2.2.10, "Power Interruption Test," of the NEMA TS 2 standard, latest edition.
- 2.3. **Demonstration Test.** Conduct a Demonstration Test on applicable equipment at an approved Contractor facility. Notify the Engineer 10 working days before conducting this testing. The Department may witness all the tests. Perform the following tests:
- 2.3.1. **Examination of Product.** Examine each unit carefully to verify that the materials, design, construction, markings and workmanship comply with the requirements of the parent specification.
- 2.3.2. **Continuity Tests.** Check the wiring to determine conformance with the requirements of the appropriate paragraphs in the parent specification.
- 2.3.3. **Operational Test.** Operate each unit for at least 15 min. to permit equipment temperature stabilization and an adequate number of performance characteristics to ensure compliance with the requirements of the parent specification.
- 2.4. **Stand-Alone Tests.** Conduct a Stand-Alone Test for each unit after installation. The test must exercise all stand-alone (non-network) functional operations. Notify the Engineer 5 working days before conducting this test. The Department may witness all the tests.
- 2.5. **System Integration Test.** Conduct a System Integration Test on the complete functional system. Demonstrate all control and monitor functions for each system component for 72 hr. Supply 2 copies of the System Operations manual before the System Integration Test. Notify the Engineer 10 working days before conducting this testing. The Department may witness all the tests.
- 2.6. **Final Acceptance Test.** Conduct a Final Acceptance Test on the complete functional system. Demonstrate all control, monitor, and communication requirements for 90 days. The Engineer will furnish a Letter of Approval stating the first day of the Final Acceptance Test. The completion of the Final Acceptance Test occurs when system downtime due to mechanical, electrical, or other malfunctions to equipment furnished or installed does not exceed 72 hr. and any individual points of failure identified during the test period have operated free of defects as required in Section 2.7.5., "Consequences of Final Acceptance Test Failure."
- 2.7. **Consequences of Test Failure.** If a unit fails a test, submit a report describing the nature of the failure and the actions taken to remedy the situation prior to modification or replacement of the unit. If a unit requires modification, correct the fault and then repeat the test until successfully completed. Correct minor discrepancies within 30 days of written notice to the Engineer. If a unit requires replacement, provide a new unit and then repeat the test until successfully completed. Major discrepancies that will substantially delay receipt and acceptance of the unit will be sufficient cause for rejection of the unit.
- If a failure pattern develops in similar units within the system, implement corrective measures, including modification or replacement of units, to all similar units within the system as directed. Perform the corrective measures without additional cost or extension of the contract period.
- 2.7.1. **Consequences of Design Approval Test Failure.** If the equipment fails the Design Approval Test, correct the fault and then repeat the Design Approval Test until successfully completed.

- 2.7.2. **Consequences of Demonstration Test Failure.** If the equipment fails the Demonstration Test, correct the fault and then repeat the Demonstration Test until successfully completed.
- 2.7.3. **Consequences of Stand-Alone Test Failure.** If the equipment fails the Stand-Alone Test, correct the fault and then repeat the Demonstration Test until successfully completed.
- 2.7.4. **Consequence of System Integration Test Failure.** If the equipment fails the System Integration Test, correct the fault and then repeat the Systems Integration Test until successfully completed.
- 2.7.5. **Consequences of Final Acceptance Test Failure.** If a defect within the system is detected during the Final Acceptance Test, document and correct the source of failure. Once corrective measures are taken, monitor the point of failure until a consecutive 30 day period free of defects is achieved.

If after completion of the initial test period, the system downtime exceeds 72 hr. or individual points of failure have not operated for 30 consecutive days free of defects, extend the test period by an amount of time equal to the greater of the downtime in excess of 72 hr. or the number of days required to complete the performance requirement of the individual point of failure.

---

### 3. TRAINING

When required on the plans, provide a minimum of 24 hr. of instruction to 10 designated personnel in the operation and maintenance procedures of equipment or systems installed. Provide the training during installation, testing, and integration. Provide the training through practical demonstrations, seminars, and other related technical procedures.

Furnish a training session agenda, a complete set of training material (manuals and schematics), and the names and qualifications of proposed instructors for approval 60 days before the training. Provide a training location. Provide 1 copy of the course material for each person. Provide training in the following areas of interest and as shown on the plans:

- The "Hands-on" operation for each type of equipment.
- Explanation of all system commands, their function and usage.
- Required preventative maintenance procedures.
- All equipment servicing procedures.
- System "troubleshooting"/problem identification procedures.

---

### 4. DOCUMENTATION

Provide "as-built" documentation for the entire system and all of its individual components. Supply one (1) 11 in. x 17 in. reproducible copy of the wiring diagrams. Supply three (3) copies of the following in a manual for each equipment component:

- Complete and accurate schematic diagrams.
- Complete and accurate cabinet, enclosure, and building wiring diagrams.
- Complete installation procedures.
- Complete performance specifications (functional, electrical, mechanical and environmental) on the unit.
- Complete parts list including names of vendors for parts not identified by universal part numbers such as JEDEC, RETMA, or EIA.
- Pictorial of component layout on circuit board.
- Complete maintenance and trouble-shooting procedures.
- Complete stage-by-stage explanation of circuit theory and operation.
- Complete and detailed system operations manuals.

Furnish additional information as shown on the plans.

---

**5. FINAL ACCEPTANCE**

Final acceptance is made when all work is complete, the system has successfully completed all test requirements, and the Engineer, in writing, accepts all work for the work locations in the Contract in accordance with Article 5.12., "Final Acceptance." Final acceptance relieves the Contractor from further Contract responsibilities.

---

**6. WARRANTY**

Guarantee equipment furnished and installed to perform according to the manufacturer's published specifications. Warrant equipment against defects or failure in design, materials, and workmanship in accordance with the manufacturer's standard warranty. Supply equipment with no less than 95% of the manufacturer's warranty remaining on the date that equipment invoices are submitted for final payment. Any equipment with less than 95% warranty remaining will be rejected.

The Contractor will warrant or guarantee all such electronic, electrical, and mechanical equipment, materials, technical data, and products furnished and installed for a period of 1 yr. after final acceptance of the project by the Department. The Contractor's warranty or guarantee must provide for the "on-site" repair or replacement, at the Contractor's option, within 2 working days and at no cost to the Department.

Once the Contractor's warranty or guarantee expires, assign to the Department any manufacturer's standard warranty or guarantee coverage still remaining on all such electronic, electrical, and mechanical equipment, materials, technical data, and products furnished for and installed on the project. Repair or replace defective equipment, at the manufacturer's option, at no cost to the Department.

---

**7. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**

The work performed, materials furnished, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals will not be measured or paid for directly but will be considered subsidiary to bid items of the Contract.

# Special Specification 6006

## Electronic Components



### 1. DESCRIPTION

Use electronic components to manufacture electronic equipment.

### 2. MATERIALS AND CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Use electronic components that comply with Electronic Industries Association (EIA) and Joint Electronic Device Engineering Council (JEDEC) Specifications. Provide industry standard electronic components available from several manufacturers. When special monolithic integrated circuits are necessary for cost-effective designs, waiving the multi-source requirements will be as directed.

Design the electronic circuitry to ensure an adjustment range from normal adjustment settings of variable components. Provide a range of adjustment to compensate for composite variations in the associated circuitry due to changes in part values during the normal or specified life of the device. Ensure the range of adjustment can compensate for variations in replacement parts within the specified tolerances. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, design the components to be under operating conditions 24 hr. a day for 10 yr. Derate electronic components by 20% with regard to ambient temperature, applied voltage, and power dissipation.

On electronic components weighing more than 2 oz., use supports other than the component's pins or electrical connectors. Solder electronic components of 2 or more leads in place. Mark the circuit reference symbol next to the component.

Meet the above requirements and satisfy the following specific requirements for the different components:

- 2.1. **Capacitors.** Provide industrial grade capacitors. Insulate the capacitors. Mark capacitors with their capacitance value, working voltage, and polarity.

Provide capacitor encasements resistant to cracking, peeling, and discoloration due to humidity and changes in temperature. Provide electrolytic capacitors capable of operating at least 185°F. Do not use electrolytic capacitors of less than 1.0 microfarad.

Use a clamp or fastener to support a capacitor to avoid damage by shock or vibration. Use a capacitor with a specific ripple or AC voltage rating, if possibly subjected to a ripple voltage in excess of 10% of the actual DC voltage across the capacitor. Use an aluminum electrolytic capacitor only when continually energized.

- 2.2. **Diodes.** If low forward drop is required in logic circuit applications, furnish justification for use of Germanium diodes prior to incorporation in the design. Mark diodes with the JEDEC part number, using an industry approved color code or clearly legible printing. Indicate the diode polarity on the diode case by the use of the diode symbol, by the 360° band on the cathode end, or by the shape of case.

- 2.3. **Indicators.** Use solid-state (LED) indicators with a useful life at least 25,000 hr.

- 2.4. **Integrated Circuits.** Print the manufacturer's part number and any information required to install the integrated circuit assembly upon the package. Test integrated circuits with at least 1 test from each group below:

- 2.4.1. **Group 1:**
- Stabilization Bake
  - Temperature Cycling
  - Power Burn-in
- 2.4.2. **Group 2:**
- Functional test with the device at the manufacturer's maximum specified temperature
  - Static and dynamic test per manufacturer's data sheet
- 2.5. **Potentiometers and Rheostats.** Use industrial grade potentiometers. Use potentiometers with a power rating at least 100% greater than the maximum power requirements of the circuit.
- 2.6. **Printed Circuit Boards.**
- 2.6.1. **Design, Fabrication and Mounting.** Use NEMA Grade G-10 glass epoxy or equivalent for printed circuit boards (refer to NEMA Publications No. L1 1-1982, Industrial Laminated Thermosetting Products). Provide a nominal thickness of 1/32 in. for circuit boards not exceeding 2 in. in any dimension. Provide a nominal thickness of 1/16 in. for circuit boards exceeding 2 in. in any dimension.
- Coat the printed circuit board assembly with a protective coating to combat mildew, moisture, and fungus. Plate the through holes that carry electrical connections from one side of the board to the other. Use 1 oz. per square foot of copper to plate through holes. Use non-corrosive material for electrical mating surfaces.
- Design and fabricate printed circuit boards and the mounting of parts and assemblies in accordance with MIL-STD-275 (latest revision) except as follows:
- Mount semiconductor devices on spacers or transipads if the device dissipates more than 250 mW or if the case temperature will rise 20°F above ambient.
  - Remove residual flux from the printed circuit board.
  - Provide a resistance between any 2 isolated, independent conductor paths of at least 100 megohms when a 500 VDC potential is applied.
- Mark operating circuit components mounted on the circuit boards. Reference the identifying characters to their respective components in the schematic diagram and in the parts list.
- 2.6.2. **Soldering.** Hand solder in accordance with MIL-STD-55110. Use of automatic flow soldering is acceptable.
- 2.7. **Relays.** Install diodes across the coils for transient suppression in DC relays. Provide replaceable relays that do not require special tools for replacement.
- 2.8. **Resistors.** Use fixed composition insulated resistors in accordance with the performance requirements of MIL-R-11. Provide industrial grade resistors with a 15-yr. design life. Mark with their resistance value, using EIA color codes or industry approved marking technique.
- Use resistors with a 10% tolerance or better and a resistance variation of no more than 5% over the temperature range 0°F to 165°F. Do not use resistors with a power rating greater than 2 W unless special ventilation or heat sinking is provided. Insulate these resistors from the printed circuit board.
- 2.9. **Transistors.** Use JEDEC registered transistors. Mark the JEDEC part number on the case. Designate the emitter or collector by use of an industry approved marking technique.
- 2.10. **Transformers.** Mark transformers with the manufacturer's part number on the case or frame, using a Radio-Electronics-Television Manufacturers Association (RETMA) color code or numbered in a manner to facilitate proper installation.

2.11. **Switches.** Derate switch contacts 50% from their maximum current ratings.

---

**3. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**

The work performed, materials furnished, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals will not be measured or paid for directly, but will be subsidiary to the bid items of the Contract.

# Special Specification 6007

## Intelligent Transportation System (ITS) Fiber Optic Cable



### 1. DESCRIPTION

Furnish, install, relocate and remove Intelligent Transportation System (ITS) fiber optic cable, fiber patch panels and splice enclosures as shown on the plans.

### 2. MATERIALS

- 2.1. **General Requirements.** Provide, assemble, fabricate and install materials that are new, corrosion resistant, and in accordance with the details shown on the plans and in these Specifications.

Furnish, install, splice, and test all new fiber optic cable. Provide all splicing kits, fiber optic cable caps, connectors, moisture or water sealants, terminators, splice trays, fiber optic jumpers, pig tails, fiber patch panels, fiber interconnect housing, and accessories necessary to complete the fiber optic network. Provide all equipment necessary for installation, splicing, and testing.

- 2.2. **Cable Requirements.** Furnish all-dielectric, dry-filled, gel-free, loose tube fiber optic cable, with low water peak, suitable for underground conduit environments or aerial applications.

Furnish self-supporting, all-dielectric, dry-filled, gel-free, loose tube fiber optic cable, with low water peak suitable for aerial applications when not lashing to strand cable.

All fiber optic cable furnished must have a design life of 20 yr. when installed to the manufacturer's specifications.

Splice fiber optic cables in ground boxes, field cabinets, or buildings. Terminate fiber optic cables in field cabinets and buildings that comply with the details shown on the plans and in this Specification.

Provide all fiber optic cable from the same manufacturer and the manufacturer is International Organization for Standardization (ISO) 9001 certified. Ensure the cables meet or exceed United States Department of Agriculture Rural Utilities Service (RUS) CFR 1755.900, American National Standards Institute/Insulated Cable Engineers Association (ANSI/ICEA) S-87-640, and Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Alliance (TIA/EIA)-492-CAAB standard.

- 2.3. **Optical Requirements.**

- 2.3.1. **Optical Fiber.** Provide ITU G.652 single mode fiber optic cable with a core diameter of  $8.3 \pm 0.7$  microns and a cladding diameter of  $125 \pm 0.7$  microns. Provide optical fiber made of glass consisting of a silica core surrounded by concentric silica cladding, free of imperfections and inclusions.

- 2.3.2. **Core/Clad Concentricity.** Provide an offset between the center of the core and cladding less than 0.5 microns.

- 2.3.3. **Mode Field Diameter.** Provide single mode fiber optic cable with the effective area or Mode Field Diameter of the fiber must be  $9.2 \pm 0.4 \mu\text{m}$  at 1310 nm and  $10.5 \pm 1.0 \mu\text{m}$  at 1550 nm.

- 2.3.4. **Primary Coating.** Provide fiber with a coating diameter of  $250 \pm 15$  microns.

- 2.3.5. **Attenuation.** Provide single mode fiber optic cable with nominal attenuation of 0.35 dB/km maximum at a wavelength of 1310 nm and nominal attenuation of 0.25 dB/km maximum at a wavelength of 1550 nm.
- Attenuation at water peak must be less than 0.35 dB/km at 1383 nm.
- 2.3.6. **Bandwidth and Dispersion.** Provide single mode fiber optic cable with a maximum dispersion of:
- 3.2 ps/nm-km at a wavelength of 1310 nm, and
  - 18 ps/nm-km at a wavelength of 1550 nm.
- Zero dispersion wavelength must be between 1300 nm and 1324 nm and the zero dispersion slope at the zero dispersion wavelength must be less than 0.092 ps/(nm<sup>2</sup> · km).
- The cutoff wavelength must be less than 1260 nm for single mode fibers specified to operate at 1310 nm. The cutoff wavelength must be less than 1480 for single mode fibers specified to operate only at 1550 nm or higher.
- The macrobend attenuation per 100 turns must not exceed 0.05 dB at 1310 nm and 1550 nm.
- 2.3.7. **Mechanical Requirements(Tensile Strength).** Provide a cable withstanding a pulling tension of 600 lbf without increasing attenuation by more than 0.8 dB/mi when installing in underground conduit systems in accordance with EIA-455-33A. Conduct an impact test in accordance with TIA/EIA-455-25C (FOTP-25) and a compression load test in accordance with TIA/EIA-455-41A (FOTP-41).
- For all-dielectric self-supporting cable (ADSS) and other self-supporting cables, meet tensile strength requirements in accordance with Section 25, Loading of Grades B and C, of National Electric Safety Code (NESC), for the maximum span and sag information as shown in the plans for aerial construction.
- 2.3.8. **Bend Radius.** Provide a cable withstanding a minimum bending radius of 10 times its outer diameter during operation, and 20 times its outer diameter during installation, removal and reinstallation without changing optical fiber characteristics. Test the cable in accordance with EIA-455-33A.
- 2.3.9. **Buffering.** Use a buffering tube or jacket with an outer diameter of 1.0 to 3.0 mm containing 12 individual fiber strands. The fibers must not adhere to the inside of the buffer tube.
- 2.3.10. **Color Coding.** Provide fiber and buffer tubes with a color coating applied to it by the manufacturer. Coating must not affect the optical characteristics of the fiber. Provide color configuration in accordance with TIA/EIA-598 as follows:
- |             |            |              |
|-------------|------------|--------------|
| ■ 1. Blue   | ■ 5. Slate | ■ 9. Yellow  |
| ■ 2. Orange | ■ 6. White | ■ 10. Violet |
| ■ 3. Green  | ■ 7. Red   | ■ 11. Rose   |
| ■ 4. Brown  | ■ 8. Black | ■ 12. Aqua   |

---

### 3. EQUIPMENT

- 3.1. **Cable Type.** Provide cables with a reverse oscillation or planetary stranding structure.

Jacket construction and group configuration should separate at splice points to cut and splice 1 set of fibers while the others remain continuous. All cable jackets must have a ripcord to aid in the removal of the outer jacket. Submit cable designs for approval.

Strand loose buffer tubes around a dielectric central anti-buckling strength member. Provide dielectric aramid or fiber glass strength members with specified strength for the cable. Provide cable with a water-blocking material, which is non-hygroscopic, non-nutritive to fungus, non-conductive, non-toxic, and homogeneous. The water blocking material must comply with TIA/EIA-455-81B and 455-82B as well as TIA/EIA-455-98.



Ensure a polyethylene inner jacket is applied over the cable core, and that the entire cable is enclosed with a polyethylene outer jacket. Ensure the outer jacket contains black carbon to provide UV protection for the cable. Ensure each cable is marked with the manufacturer's name, the date of manufacture (month/year), the fiber count (example 48F SM), and sequential length markings at maximum 2 ft. increments, measured in U.S. units.

For aerial installation, provide standard fiber optic cable lashed to steel messenger cable or ADSS in accordance with the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE) 1222 Standard for Testing and Performance for All-Dielectric Self-Supporting (ADSS) Fiber Optic Cable for Use on Electric Utility Power Lines, or most current version. Provide ADSS cable in accordance with the maximum span distance, weather load rating, and allowable sag as shown on the plans. "Figure 8" self-supporting cable with integrated messenger cable within the outer jacket for aerial installation is acceptable.

3.1.1. **Cable Size.** Furnish cables with a maximum diameter not exceeding 19 mm.

3.1.2. **Environmental Requirements.** Provide cable that functions in a temperature range from -40°F to 158°F.

3.2. **Fiber Optic Accessories.**

3.2.1. **Splice Enclosures.** Furnish and install 1 of 3 types of underground splice enclosures at locations shown on the plans to accommodate the cables being spliced at that point. The types are as follows:

- Type 1: 4 cable entry ports total – 2 ports to accommodate backbone fiber of up to 144 fibers and 2 ports for drop cables of up to 48 fibers,
- Type 2: 6 cable entry ports total – 4 to accommodate backbone or arterial cables of up to 144 fibers and 2 ports for drop cables of up to 48 fibers, and
- Type 3: 8 cable entry ports total – 4 to accommodate backbone or arterial cables of up to 144 fibers and 4 ports for drop cables of up to 48 fibers.

Provide the end cap of the canister splice closure with re-enterable quick-seal cable entry ports to accommodate additional branch cables or backbone cables. Provide fiber optic splice enclosures with strain relief, splice organizers, and splice trays from the same manufacturer as the splice enclosure. Select the appropriate splice enclosure type based on the number of splices called for in the plans. Suspend all splice closures off floor of the ground box and secure to cable rack assembly on side wall of ground box.

For end of reel splicing, use a fiber optic splice enclosure sized to accommodate full cable splice in one enclosure. Fiber optic splice enclosure must be of the same manufacturer as other supplied on a project. Splice enclosure and fusion splicing required for end of reel will be incidental to the fiber optic cable.

Comply with the Telcordia Technologies' GR-711-CORE standard and all applicable NEC requirements.

Contain all optical fiber splices within a splice enclosure, providing storage for fiber splices, nonspliced fiber, and buffer tubes. Provide sufficient space inside the enclosure to prevent microbending of buffer tubes when coiled.

Ensure that the splice enclosure maintains the mechanical and environmental integrity of the fiber optic cable, encases the sheath opening in the cable, and organizes and stores optical fiber. Ensure all hinges and latching devices are stainless steel or of a non-corrosive material designed for harsh environments. Ensure that the enclosure is airtight and prevents water intrusion. Ensure that splice enclosures allow re-entry and are hermetically sealed to protect internal components from environmental hazards and foreign material such as moisture, dust, insects, and UV light.

3.2.2. **Field Rack Mount Splice Enclosures.** Provide a 19 in. EIA rack mounted splice enclosure module to hold spliced fibers as shown in the plans inside field equipment cabinets or buildings.

Splice or terminate fibers inside rack mounted fiber optic splice enclosures. Provide an enclosed unit designed to house a minimum of 4 cables, sized to accommodate at a minimum the cables shown on the plans plus future expansion.

Provide splice enclosures containing mounting brackets with a minimum of 4 cable clamps. Install cable according to manufacturer recommendations for the cable distribution panel.

3.2.3. **Fiber Patch Panels.** Provide fiber patch panels that are compatible with the fiber optic cable being terminated and color coded to match the optical fiber color scheme. Coil and protect a maintenance loop of at least 5 ft. of buffer tube inside the rack mount enclosure, patch panel, or splice tray. Allow for future splices in the event of a damaged splice or pigtail.

3.2.3.1. **Cabinet.** Terminate or splice fibers inside the compact and modular fiber patch panel in the cabinet. Provide fiber patch panel for installation inside a 19 in. EIA rack and sized appropriately to accommodate the fiber terminations shown on the plans or as directed by the Engineer. Provide each patch panel housing with pre-assembled compact modular snap-in simplex connector panel modules, each module having a minimum of 6 fiber termination/connection capabilities. Provide modules with a removable cover having 6 pre-connectorized fiber pigtails, interconnection sleeves, and dust caps installed by the manufacturer. Provide a 12 fiber or greater fusion splice tray capability housing, each tray holding 12 fusion splices as shown in the plans. Stack splice trays on a rack to permit access to individual trays without disturbing other trays. Locate splice trays in a rack within a pull-out shelf. Protect the housing with doors capable of pivoting up or down. Document the function of each terminated/spliced fiber, along with the designation of each connector on labels or charts located either on the inside or outside of the housing door. Provide labels or charts that are UV resistant design for harsh environments and used inside field equipment cabinets. Use permanent marker or method of identification that will withstand harsh environments. Provide each housing with strain relief. Terminate single mode fiber optic cable with SC connectors to the patch panels, unless otherwise shown on the plans.

Install the fiber patch panel as an integral unit as shown on the plans.

3.2.3.2. **Building.** Provide a fiber patch panel with a modular design allowing interchangeability of connector panel module housing and splice housing within the rack, as shown on the plans.

Provide the number of single mode fibers, connector panel module housings, and splice housings for the patch panel unit in the building as shown on the plans.

Provide a fiber patch panel unit, installed at a height less than 7 ft., capable of housing 8 connector panel module housings or 8 splice housings. Protect the housing with doors capable of pivoting up or down and sliding into the unit.

Provide 12 snap-in simplex connector panel modules with each connector panel module housing, each module having 6 fiber termination/connector capabilities. Use a pre-assembled compact modular unit with a removable cover for the snap-in simplex connector panel module having 6 pre-connectorized fiber pigtails, interconnection sleeves, and dust caps installed by the manufacturer. Provide each connector panel module housing with a jumper routing shelf, storing up to 5 ft. (minimum) of cable slack for each termination within the housing. Provide the fiber distribution unit with strain relief.

Provide splice enclosure with 24 fusion splice tray capabilities, each splice tray holding 12 or more fusion splices. Stack splice trays on a rack to permit access to individual trays without disturbing other trays. Locate the rack on a pull-out shelf.

Document the function of each terminated/spliced fiber, along with the designation of each connector on labels or charts located either on the inside or outside of the housing door. Provide labels or charts that are UV resistant design for harsh environments and used inside field equipment cabinets. Use permanent marker or method of identification that will withstand harsh environments. Also provide documentation of the function of each terminated or spliced fiber along with the designation of each connector on charts or

diagrams matching the fiber patch panel configuration and locate inside cabinet document drawer. Provide documentation at the conclusion of fiber terminations and splicing.

Allow terminations only in the fiber interconnect housings placed in the cabinets as shown on the plans or as directed.

3.2.4. **Splice Trays.** Use splice tray and fan-out tubing kit for handling each fiber. Provide a splice tray and 12 fiber fan-out tubing with each housing for use with the 250 microns coated fiber. The fan-out will occur within the splice tray (no splicing of the fiber required). Allow each tube to fan out each fiber for ease of connectorization. Label all fibers in splice tray on a log sheet securing it to the inside or outside of the splice tray. Provide UV resistant log sheet suitable for harsh environments, located inside field cabinets or splice enclosures. Provide fan-out tubing with 3 layers of protection consisting of fluoropolymer inner tube, a dielectric strength member, and a 2.9 mm minimum outer protective PVC orange jacketing.

3.2.5. **Jumpers.** Provide fiber optic jumper cables to cross connect the fiber patch panel to the fiber optic transmission equipment as shown on the plans or as directed. Match the core size, type, and attenuation from the cable to the simplex jumper. Use yellow jumpers and provide strain relief on the connectors. Provide fiber with a 900 micron polymer buffer, Kevlar strength member, and a PVC jacket with a maximum outer jacket of 2.4 mm in diameter.

Provide 5 ft. long jumpers, unless otherwise shown on the plans. On the patch panel end of each jumper, provide an SC connector. On the opposite end of the jumper, provide a connector that is suitable to be connected to the fiber optic transmission equipment selected. When providing jumpers for existing equipment, provide connectors suitable to be connected to patch panels and fiber optic transmission equipment in use. All jumpers must have factory terminated connectors. Field terminations of connectors is prohibited.

3.2.6. **Fiber Optic Cable Storage Device.** Furnish fiber optic cable storage device designed to store slack fiber optic cable by means of looping back from device to device on an aerial run. Furnish storage devices that are non-conductive and resistant to fading when exposed to UV sources and changes in weather. Ensure storage devices have a captive design such that fiber-optic cable will be supported when installed in the aerial rack apparatus and the minimum bending radius will not be violated. Provide stainless steel attachment hardware for securing storage devices to messenger cable and black UV resistant tie-wraps for securing fiber-optic cable to storage device. Provide tie-wraps that do not damage fiber when securing to storage device. Ensure storage devices are stackable so multiple cable configurations are possible. Ensure cable storage devices furnished are compatible with the type of aerial cable furnished and installed. Aerial cable storage devices will be considered incidental to the installation of the fiber optic cable.

---

## 4. CONSTRUCTION

Install fiber optic cable in accordance with United States Department of Agriculture Rural Utilities Service CFR 1755.900 specifications for underground and aerial plant construction without changing the optical and mechanical characteristics of the cables.

Utilize available machinery, jacking equipment, cable pulling machinery with appropriate tension monitors, splicing and testing equipment, and other miscellaneous tools to install cable, splice fibers, attach connectors and mount hardware in cabinets employed with the above "Mechanical Requirements." Do not jerk the cable during installation. Adhere to the maximum pulling tensions of 600 lbf and bending radius of 20 times the cable diameter or as specified by the manufacturer, whichever is greater.

Use installation techniques and fixtures that provide for ease of maintenance and easy access to all components for testing and measurements. Take all precautions necessary to ensure the cable is not damaged during transport, storage, or installation. Protect as necessary the cables to prevent damage if being pulled over or around obstructions along the ground.

Where plans call for removal of existing cable to salvage or reuse elsewhere, take care to prevent damaging the existing cable during removal adhering to all of the requirements for installation that pertain to removal.

- 4.1. **Packaging, Shipping, and Receiving.** Ensure the completed cable is packaged for shipment on reels. Ensure the cable is wrapped in weather and temperature resistant covering. Ensure both ends of the cable are sealed to prevent the ingress of moisture.

Securely fasten each end of the cable to the reel to prevent the cable from coming loose during transit. Provide 6 ft. of accessible cable length on each end of the cable for testing. Ensure that the complete outer jacket marking is visible on these 6 ft. of cable length. Provide each cable reel with a durable weatherproof label or tag showing the Manufacturer's name, the cable type, the actual length of cable on the reel, the Contractor's name, the contract number, and the reel number. Include a shipping record in a weatherproof envelope showing the above information and also include the date of manufacture, cable characteristics (size, attenuation, bandwidth, etc.), factory test results, cable identification number and any other pertinent information. Ensure that all cable delivered has been manufactured within 6 mo. of the delivery date. Ensure that the minimum hub diameter of the reel is at least 30 times the diameter of the cable. Provide the cable in one continuous length per reel with no factory splices in the fiber. Provide a copy of the transmission loss test results as required by the TIA/EIA-455-61 standard, as well as results from factory tests performed prior to shipping.

- 4.2. **Installation in Conduit.** Install fiber optic cable in conduits in a method that does not alter the optical properties of the cable. If required, relocate existing cable to allow new fiber optic cable routing in conduits.

When pulling the cable, do not exceed the installation bending radius. Use rollers, wheels, or guides that have radii greater than the bending radius. Use a lubricating compound to minimize friction. Use fuse links and breaks to ensure that the cable tensile strength is not exceeded. Measure the pulling tension with a mechanical device and mechanism to ensure the maximum allowable pulling tension of 600 lbf is not exceeded at any time during installation.

Provide a single 1/C #14 XHHW insulated tracer wire in conduit runs where fiber optic cable is installed. Provide cable that is UL listed solid copper wire with orange color low density polyethylene insulation suitable for conduit installation and with a voltage rating of 600V. When more than one fiber optic cable is installed through a conduit run, only one tracer wire is required. Fuse or join tracer wires used in backbone, arterial, and drop runs, so that you have one continuous tracer wire. Terminate tracer wire at fiber optic test markers or equipment cabinets as identified in the plans for access to conduct a continuity test. Tracer wire will be paid for under Item 620, "Electrical Conductors."

Provide flat pull cord with a minimum tensile strength of 1,250 lb. in each conduit containing fiber optic cable. A traceable pull cord, with a metallic conducting material integral to the pull cord, may be substituted for a 1/C #14 tracer wire only with approval from the Department.

Seal conduit ends with a 2 part urethane after installation of fiber optic cable.

- 4.3. **Cable Installation between Pull Boxes and Cabinets or Buildings.** Do not break or splice a second fiber optic cable to complete a run when pulling the cable from the nearest ground box to a cabinet or building. Pull sufficient length of cable in the ground box to reach the designated cabinet or building. Pull the cable through the cabinet to coil, splice, or terminate the cable in the cabinet or building. Do not bend the cable beyond its minimum bend radius of 20 times the diameter.

Coil and tie cable inside cabinet, building, or boxes for future splicing or termination as shown in the plans. Cut off and remove the first 10 ft. of pulled or blown fiber stored. This work is incidental to this Item. Coat the open end of the coiled cable with protective coating and provide a dust cap.

- 4.4. **Aerial Installation.** Use pole attachment hardware and roller guides with safety clips to install aerial run cable. Maintain maximum allowable pulling tension of 600 lb. ft. during the pulling process for aerial run cable by using a mechanical device. Do not allow cable to contact the ground or other obstructions between poles during installation. Do not use a motorized vehicle to generate cable pulling forces. Use a cable suspension

clamp when attaching cable tangent to a pole. Select and place cable blocks and corner blocks so as not to exceed the cable's minimum bending radius. Do not pull cable across cable hangers. Store 100 ft. of fiber-optic cable slack, for future use, on all cable runs that are continuous without splices or where specified on the plans. Store spare fiber optic cable on fiber-optic cable storage racks of the type compatible with the aerial cable furnished. Locate spare cable storage in the middle of spans between termination points. Do not store spare fiber-optic cable over roadways, driveways or railroads.

Install standard cable on timber poles by lashing to steel messenger cable. Provide steel messenger cable in accordance with Item 625, "Zinc Coated Steel Wire Strand." Install all-dielectric self-supporting cable (ADSS) cable on timber poles using clinching clamp with cable hanger. Install aerial run cable in accordance with these specifications and as shown on the plans.

Locate aerial fiber in accordance with the NESC, Section 23, with respect to vertical clearances over the ground, between conductors carried on different supporting structures, and required separation distance of the cable from bridges, buildings, and other structures.

- 4.5. **Blowing Fiber Installation.** Use either the high-air speed blowing (HASB) method or the piston method. When using the HASB method, ensure that the volume of air passing through the conduit does not exceed 600 cu. ft. per min. or the conduit manufacturer's recommended air volume, whichever is more restrictive. When using the piston method, ensure that the volume of air passing through the conduit does not exceed 300 cu. ft. per min. or the conduit manufacturer's recommended air volume, whichever is more restrictive.

- 4.6. **Slack Cable.** Pull and store excess cable slack inside ITS ground boxes as shown on the plans. The following are minimum required lengths of slack cable, unless otherwise directed:

- ground boxes (No Splice) - 25 ft.,
- ground boxes (With Splice) - 100 ft.,
- future splice point - 100 ft., and
- cabinets - 25 ft.

Note that the slack is to be equally distributed on either side of the splice enclosure and secured to cable storage racks within the ground boxes.

Provide proper storage of slack cable, both long term and short term. Neatly bind cables to be spliced together from conduit to splice enclosure with tape. Do not over bind by pinching cable or fiber. Ground and bond the armor when installing armored fiber optic cable. Meet NEC and NESC requirements for grounding and bonding when using armored cable.

- 4.7. **Removal, Relocation and Reinstallation of Fiber Optic Cable.** Remove fiber optic cable from conduit as shown on plans. Use care in removing existing fiber optic cables so as not to damage them. Provide cable removal and reinstallation procedures that meet the minimum bending radius and tensile loading requirements during removal and reinstallation so that optical and mechanical characteristics of the existing cables are not degraded. Use entry guide chutes to guide the cable out of and in to existing or proposed conduit, utilizing lubricating compound where possible to minimize cable-to-conduit friction. Use corner rollers (wheels) with a radius not less than the minimum installation bending radius of cable. Dispose of removed fiber optic cable unless plans show for it to be re-used (relocated/re-installed) or salvaged and delivered to the Department. See plans for details. Test each optical fiber in the cable for performance and for loss at existing terminations or splices prior to cutting and removal. Retest following removal and following re-installation to ensure the removal and reinstallation has not affected the optical properties of the cable. Any fiber optic cable damaged by the contractor that is to be re-used shall be replaced by the contractor at no cost to the Department with new fiber optic cable meeting the approval of the Engineer. The Engineer reserves the right to reject the fiber based on the test results.

Maintain the integrity of existing cables, conduit, junction boxes and ground boxes contiguous to the section of cables to be removed. Replace or repair any cables, conduit, junction boxes or ground boxes damaged during work at the Contractor's expense. The replacement or repair method must be approved by the Engineer, prior to implementation.

- 4.8. **Splicing Requirements.** Fusion splice fibers as shown on the plans, in accordance with TIA/EIA-568 and TIA/EIA-758.

Use fusion splicing equipment recommended by the cable manufacturer. Clean, calibrate, and adjust the fusion splicing equipment at the start of each shift. Use splice enclosures, organizers, cable end preparation tools, and procedures compatible with the cable furnished. Employ local injection and detection techniques and auto fusion time control power monitoring to ensure proper alignment during fusion splicing.

When approaching end of shift or end of day, complete all splicing at the location. Package each spliced fiber in a protective sleeve or housing. Re-coat bare fiber with a protective 8 RTV, gel or similar substance, prior to application of the sleeve or housing.

Perform splices with losses no greater than 0.10 dB. Use an Optical Time Domain Reflectometer (OTDR) to test splices in accordance with Section 4.13.1.1. Record splice losses on a tabular form and submit for approval.

- 4.9. **Termination Requirements.** Provide matching connectors with 900 micron buffer fiber pigtails of sufficient length and splice the corresponding optical fibers in cabinets where the optical fibers are to be connected to terminal equipment. Buffer, strengthen, and protect pre-terminated fiber assemblies (pigtails) with dielectric aramid yarn and outer PVC jacket to reduce mishandling that can damage the fiber or connection. Pigtails must be duplex stranding with a yellow PVC outer jacket. Fiber optic pigtails must be factory terminated with SC connectors, unless otherwise shown on the plans. When providing pigtails for existing equipment, provide connectors suitable to be connected to patch panels and fiber optic transmission equipment in use.

Connectors must meet the TIA/EIA-568 and TIA/EIA-758 standards and be tested in accordance to the Telcordia/Bellcore GR-326-CORE standard. When tested according to TIA/EIA-455-171 (FOTP-171), ensure that the connectors test to an average insertion loss of less than or equal to 0.4 dB and a maximum loss of less than or equal to 0.75 dB for any mated connector. Maintain this loss characteristic for a minimum of 500 disconnections and reconnections with periodic cleanings per EIA-455-21A (FOTP-21). Qualify and accept connectors by the connector-to-connector mating using similar fibers. Ensure that the connector operating range is -40°F to 167°F. Provide connectors with a yellow color body or boot.

Test connections at the patch panel and splices made between cables to pigtails with the OTDR to verify acceptable losses.

Remove 5 ft. of unused optical fibers at the ends of the system from the buffer tube(s) and place coiled fibers into a splice tray. Clean the water blocking compound from all optical fibers destined for splice tray usage.

Install cable tags at all splice points identifying key features of each cable such as cable name or origin and destination and fiber count. Ensure tags are self-laminating or water resistant. Print the information onto the tags electronically or write neatly using a permanent marker. Locate tags just prior to entrance into splice enclosure.

- 4.10. **Mechanical Components.** Provide stainless steel external screws, nuts and locking washers. Do not use self-tapping screws unless approved. Provide corrosion resistant material parts and materials resistant to fungus growth and moisture deterioration.

- 4.11. **Experience Requirements.**

- 4.11.1. **Installing Fiber Optic Cable.** The Contractor or designated subcontractor involved in the installation of the fiber optic cable must meet the experience requirements in accordance with the following:

- minimum of 3 yr. of continuous existence offering services in the installation of fiber optic cable through an outdoor conduit system or aerial and terminating in ground boxes, field cabinets or enclosures or buildings, and

- completed a minimum of 3 projects where the personnel pulled a minimum of 5 mi. in length of fiber optic cable through an outdoor conduit system of aerial for each project. The completed fiber optic cable systems must have been in continuous satisfactory operation for a minimum of 1 yr.

4.11.2. **Splicing and Testing of Fiber Optic Cable.** The Contractor or designated subcontractor involved in the splicing and testing of fiber optic cable must meet the experience requirements in accordance with the following:

4.11.2.1. **Minimum Experience.** 3 yr. continuous existence offering services in the fields of fusion splicing and testing of fiber optic cable installed through a conduit system and terminating in ground boxes, field cabinets or enclosures or buildings. Experience must include all of the following:

- termination of a minimum of 48 fibers within a fiber distribution frame,
- OTDR testing and measurement of end to end attenuation of single mode and multimode fibers,
- system troubleshooting and maintenance,
- training of personnel in system maintenance,
- use of water-tight splice enclosures, and
- fusion splicing of fiber optic cable which meet the tolerable decibel (dB) losses within the range of 0.05 dB – 0.10 dB for single mode.

4.11.2.2. **Completed Projects.** A minimum of 3 completed projects where the personnel performed fiber optic cable splicing and terminations, system testing, system troubleshooting and maintenance during the course of the project and provided training on system maintenance. Each project must have consisted of a minimum 5 mi. of fiber optic cable installed, measured by project length not linear feet of fiber installed. The completed fiber optic cable systems must have been in continuous satisfactory operation for a minimum of 1 yr.

4.12. **Documentation Requirements.** Provide a minimum of 2 complete sets of fiber optic equipment submittal literature documenting compliance with the requirements of this Item including operation and maintenance manuals in hard copy format, bound, as well as an electronic version in Adobe PDF format on a CD/DVD or removable flash drive that includes the following:

- fiber optic cable literature consisting of manufacturer specification and cut sheets,
- fiber optic equipment literature consisting of manufacturer specification and cut sheets for splice enclosures, patch panels, splice trays, jumpers, cable storage devices, and fiber optic labeling devices,
- complete factory performance data documenting conformance with the performance and testing standards referenced in this Item, including pre-installation test results of the cable system,
- installation, splicing, terminating and testing plan and procedures,
- documentation of final terminated or spliced fibers, function, and equipment designation,
- OTDR calibration certificate,
- post-installation, post termination, subsystem, and final end-to-end test results,
- loss budget calculation and documentation,
- complete parts list including names of vendors,
- complete maintenance and trouble-shooting procedures, and
- proof of minimum experience and completed projects.

4.12.1. **Installation Practice.** Submit for approval electronic copy of the Contractors Installation Practices 30 working days prior to installation. Submit installation practices and procedures and a list of installation, splicing and test equipment used. Provide detailed field quality control procedures and corrective action procedures.

4.12.2. **Manufacturer's Certification.** Accompany each reel of fiber optic cable with the manufacturer's test data showing the conformance to the requirements in this Item.

4.12.3. **Test Procedures.** Submit test procedures and data forms for the pre-installation, post-installation, subsystem, final end to end test, and loss budget calculations for approval. Test procedures will require

approval before performing tests. Submit 1 copy data forms containing data and quantitative results, as well as an authorized signature. Submit a copy of the OTDR results as a hard copy or electronic copy in PDF format including all OTDR traces and clearly identifying each event (fusion splice, jumper, connector, etc.) with the measured loss identified.

- 4.13. **Testing.** Perform tests in accordance with testing requirements in this Item, USDA RUS CFR 1755.900, and TIA/EIA-455-61 test specifications. For all tests, provide test forms to be used that compare measured results with threshold values.

4.13.1. **Test Methods.**

- 4.13.1.1. **Optical Time Domain Reflectometer (OTDR) Tests.** Use the OTDR to measure fiber optic cable for overall attenuation (signal loss dB/km), fiber cable length, and identify fiber optic cable anomalies such as breaks. Perform the following 4 OTDR tests:

- pre-Installation test (Acceptance test),
- post installation test,
- post termination test, and
- final end to end test.

OTDR Settings:

- generate a file name for each OTDR scan. The file name must indicate the location or direction the test was run from, as well as the fiber number being tested,
- set the "A" cursor at the beginning of the fiber trace and set the "B" cursor at the end of the fiber trace. The distance to cursor "B" indicates the length of the fiber cable segment being measured,
- match the index of refraction to the index of the factory report,
- set the loss indicator to dB/km for the acceptance test,
- the reflectance is automatically set internally by the OTDR,
- set the pulse width at a medium range. Change the pulse width to a slow pulse width when an anomaly occurs on the fiber trace so that it can be examined closely,
- set the average at medium speed. Change the average to slow when an anomaly appears on the fiber trace to allow for closer examination of the anomaly, and
- set wavelength at 2 windows for single mode cable: 1310 nm and 1550 nm.

Provide the current OTDR calibration certificate for the device used, showing the unit has been calibrated within the last year. Show all settings on test result fiber scans.

- 4.13.1.2. **Pre-installation Tests.** Test and record the fiber optic cable at the site storage area prior to installation.

Conduct bi-directional OTDR tests for each fiber strand. Test each optical fiber in the cable from one end with an OTDR compatible with wavelength and fiber type. Check testing for length, point discontinuity, and approximate attenuation. Record each measurement by color, location, and type of fiber measured. Perform a measurement from the opposite end of that fiber in case a measurement cannot be made from one end. Wait for notification if loss per kilometer exceeds manufacturer's test data by more than 0.5 dB/km or point discontinuity greater than 0.05 dB.

Perform this test within 5 days from receipt of the fiber optic cable. Test overall attenuation (dB/km), total cable length, anomalies, and cable problems. Test cable at both wavelengths (1310 nm and 1550 nm for single mode cable). Verify that the cable markings on the outer jacket are within 1% of the total cable length.

Compare factory test results with test results and return to manufacturer if test results are not identical to factory test results. If identical, document the test results. Deliver documentation for future reference.

- 4.13.1.3. **Post-installation Tests.** Re-test and re-record each optical fiber in the cable after installation, before termination, for loss characteristics. Test both directions of operations of the fiber.



Immediately perform the post installation test after the fiber optic cable has been installed. Test cable for overall attenuation, cable segment length, and evidence of damage or microbend with the OTDR. Replace any cable segment that is damaged during the test and document test results. Submit test results for approval.

Use the same OTDR settings for Post-Installation Tests as the Pre-Installation Tests.

4.13.1.4. **Post Termination Tests.** Perform the post termination test after the cable is terminated or spliced, including termination of fiber cable to fiber cable or fiber cable to fiber pigtail and fiber cable to patch panels. Check attenuation, fusion or termination point problems, and overall fiber cable segment. Determine if the attenuation and quality of the termination complies with these Specifications; if not, re-terminate the fiber and re-test until the Specification requirements are met. Test the fiber segment for attenuation and anomalies after termination acceptance. Document and submit test results after fiber segment acceptance.

4.13.1.5. **Subsystem Tests.** Perform network subsystem tests after integration to the fiber optic network. Test the capability of the fiber optic cable to transmit video and digital information from node to node. A node is defined as a communication cabinet, hub cabinet, surveillance cabinet, or hub building where network hub switches are located. Complete and submit approved data forms for approval.

Correct and substitute components in the subsystem if the subsystem tests fail and repeat the tests. Components may include: cable, jumper, patch panel module, or connector.

Prepare and submit a report if a component was modified as result of the subsystem test failure. Describe in the report the failure and action taken to remedy the situation.

4.13.1.6. **Final End-to-End Test.** Perform final end to end Test after fiber cable segments of the system are terminated using the OTDR and an optical Power Meter and Light Source (PMLS).

Perform the Part 1 of the final end to end test using OTDR:

- measure the overall fiber cable system length,
- measure the overall system attenuation, and
- check for anomalies.

Perform the Part 2 of the final end to end test using a PMLS:

- measure the absolute power of the fiber optic signal across all links, and
- check for anomalies.

Document and submit results after test acceptance.

4.13.2. **Loss Budget Calculation and Documentation.** Calculate the total loss budget of the system according to the following calculations and compare the actual loss in each segment of the system to the calculated budget. Submit the results for each section of fiber optic cable in tabular format reporting if the total loss is within the limits of these Specifications by noting "pass" or "fail" for each segment of fiber. A segment of fiber is defined as one that terminates at each end. Use the following calculations to determine the loss budget for each segment:

- splice loss budget = number of splices x 0.1 dB/splice,
- connector loss budget = number of connectors x 0.75 dB/connector,
- length loss budget = length of fiber optic cable (measured by OTDR) x 0.35 dB/km for 1310 nm wavelength or 0.25 dB/km for 1550 nm wavelength, and
- total Loss Budget = splice loss budget + connector loss budget + length loss budget.

Provide loss budget calculation equations on test form to be submitted as part of the documentation requirements. Provide threshold calculations described above along with measured results.

- 4.14. **Training.** Conduct a BISC or IMSA certified training class (minimum of 16 hr.) for up to 10 representatives designated by the Department on procedures of installation, operations, testing, maintenance and repair of all equipment specified within this specification. Submit to the Engineer for approval, 10 copies of the training material at least 30 days before the training begins. Conduct training within the local area unless otherwise authorized by the Engineer Include the following training material:
- NESC, NEC, and ANSI/TIA 590 code compliance,
  - fiber optic cable pulling and installation techniques,
  - use of installation tools,
  - splicing and terminating equipment and test instruments,
  - trouble shooting procedures, and
  - methods of recording installation and test data.
- 4.15. **Warranty.** Provide a warranty for all materials furnished in this Item. Ensure that the fiber optic cable, the splice enclosures, splice centers, and cable markers have a minimum of a 2 yr. manufacturer's warranty and that 95% of that warranty remains at the date of final acceptance by the Engineer. If the manufacturer's warranties for the components are for a longer period, those longer period warranties will apply. Guarantee that the materials and equipment furnished and installed for this project performs according to the manufacturer's specifications.

Ensure that the manufacturer's warranties for off-the-shelf equipment consisting of splice enclosures, splice trays, connectors, fiber jumper cables, and fiber patch panels are fully transferable from the Contractor to the Department. Ensure that these warranties require the manufacturer to furnish replacements for any off-the-shelf part or equipment found to be defective during the warranty period at no cost to the Department within 10 calendar days of notification by the Department.

Ensure that the manufacturer's warranty for fiber optic cable is fully transferable from the Contractor to the Department. Ensure that the warranty requires the manufacturer to furnish replacement fiber optic cable found to be defective during the warranty period at no cost to the Department within 45 calendar days of notification by the Department.

---

## 5. MEASUREMENT

Fiber optic cable installed, relocated and removed will be measured by the linear foot. Fiber optic splice enclosures, rack mounted splice enclosures and fiber optic patch panels will be measured by each unit installed. Splicing of Fiber Optic Cables will be measured by each fusion splice performed.

---

## 6. PAYMENT

### 6.1. Furnish and Install.

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Fiber Optic Cable" of the various types, and number of fibers specified. This price is full compensation for furnishing and installing all cable; for pulling through conduit or duct; aerial installation; terminating; testing; and for materials, equipment, labor, tools, documentation, warranty, training and incidentals.

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Fiber Optic Splice Enclosure" of the various types and "Rack Mounted Splice Enclosure." This price is full compensation for furnishing and installing all enclosures whether aerial, underground, in cabinet or in building; and for materials, equipment, labor, tools, documentation, warranty, training and incidentals.

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Fiber Optic Fusion Splice" for each fusion splice

shown on the plans and performed. This price is full compensation for splicing; testing; and for materials, equipment, labor, tools, documentation, warranty, training and incidentals.

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Fiber Patch Panel" of the various types and sizes specified. This price is full compensation for furnishing and installing all patch panels and terminating fibers on the panel as shown on the plans; and for materials, equipment, labor, tools, documentation, warranty, training and incidentals.

Conduit will be paid for under Item 618, "Conduit" and Special Specification 6016, "ITS Multi-Duct Conduit."

Electrical conductors will be paid for under Item 620, "Electrical Conductors."

- 6.2. **Install Only.** The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit bid price for "Fiber Optic Cable (Install Only)" of the various types, and number of fibers specified. This price is full compensation for installing fiber optic cable furnished by the Department; for pulling through conduit or duct; aerial installation; terminating; testing; and for materials, equipment, labor, tools, documentation, warranty, training and incidentals.

Conduit will be paid for under Item 618, "Conduit" and Special Specification 6016, "ITS Multi-Duct Conduit."

Electrical conductors will be paid for under Item 620, "Electrical Conductors."

- 6.3. **Relocate.** The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Relocate Fiber Optic Cable." This price is full compensation for relocating all cable, regardless of cable size; for pulling through conduit or duct; aerial installation; terminating; testing; and for materials, equipment, labor, tools, documentation, and incidentals.

- 6.4. **Remove.** The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Remove Fiber Optic Cable". This price is full compensation for removing all cable for salvage, regardless of cable size; testing; returning to the Department; and for materials, equipment, labor, tools, documentation, and incidentals.

# Special Specification 6008

## Intelligent Transportation System (ITS) Ground Mounted Cabinet



### 1. DESCRIPTION

Furnish, fabricate, deliver, install, and test Intelligent Transportation System (ITS) ground mounted cabinets of the various types and sizes at locations shown on the plans, or as directed.

1.1. **ITS Ground Mounted Cabinet Application.** Provide ITS ground mounted cabinet to house ITS field equipment as shown on the plans, or as directed. ITS equipment applications inside the cabinet may include, but are not limited to:

- radar vehicle sensing device (RVSD),
- wireless Ethernet radio,
- closed circuit television (CCTV) field equipment,
- bluetooth reader,
- automatic vehicle identification (AVI),
- loop detection equipment,
- dynamic message sign (DMS) equipment,
- DMS controller,
- lane control signal (LCS) controller units,
- drop/insert multiplexor/demultiplexor,
- data fiber optic transceivers,
- modular fiber distribution housing,
- substrate data multiplexor distribution panel,
- ramp meter control panel,
- fiber optic video transmitter,
- fiber optic splice trays,
- CCTV color video compression system (CVCS),
- solar power assembly,
- Environmental Sensor Station (ESS),
- highway advisory radio (HAR),
- terminal servers,
- surge arrestors,
- hardened ethernet switches, and
- codecs.

Provide each cabinet complete with all internal components, back and side panels, terminal strips, harnesses, and connectors. Provide all mounting hardware necessary to provide for installation of equipment as described in this Specification. Typically, an ITS ground mounted cabinet may contain, but is not limited to the following:

- 19-in. EIA racks,
- adjustable shelves,
- fan and thermostat assemblies,
- cabinet lights,
- power distribution panel, (as required on the plans or as directed),
- right or left side panel (as required on the plans or as directed),

- surge protection,
- terminal strips,
- interconnect harnesses with connectors,
- laptop shelf and slide out drawer with telescoping drawer guides “door open” connection to back panel,
- ITS equipment hardware (as listed in Article 2.1), and
- all necessary installation and mounting hardware.

Ensure all cabinets are identical in size, shape and quality for each type as provisioned in the plans or as directed. Equip and configure the cabinet set-up as defined in this Specification and as detailed in the ITS ground mounted cabinet standards.

Submit details of the cabinet design and equipment layout for each cabinet to the Engineer for review and approval prior to fabrication.

Ensure the equipment, design, and construction use industry standard techniques with a minimum number of different parts, subassemblies, circuits, cards, and modules to maximize standardization and commonality.

Design equipment for ease of maintenance. Component parts must be readily accessible for inspection and maintenance. Tools and test instruments required for maintenance by maintenance personnel must be simple hand held tools, basic meters and oscilloscopes.

## 2. MATERIALS

Provide new materials that comply with the details shown on the plans, the requirements of this Item, and the pertinent requirements of the following Items:

- Item 421, “Hydraulic Cement Concrete”
- Item 440, “Reinforcing Steel”
- Item 449, “Anchor Bolts”
- Item 618, “Conduits”
- Item 620, “Electrical Conductors”
- Item 656, “Foundations for Traffic Control Devices,” and
- Item 740, “Graffiti Removal and Anti-Graffiti Coating”.

### 2.1. Electrical Requirements.

2.1.1. **Primary Input Power Interruption.** Use material that meets all the requirements in Section 2.1.4., “Power Interruption” of the National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) Standard TS2 for Traffic Control System, or most current version.

2.1.2. **Power Service Transients.** Use material that meets all the requirements in Section 2.1.6., “Transients” of the National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) Standard TS 2 for Traffic Control System, or most current version.

2.1.3. **Power Service Protection.** Ensure that equipment contains readily accessible, manually resettable or replaceable circuit protection devices (such as circuit breakers or fuses) for equipment and power source protection. Provide circuit breakers or fuses sized such that no wire, component, connector, PC board or assembly is subjected to sustained current in excess of their respective design limits upon failure of any single circuit element or wiring.

2.1.4. **Power Distribution Panel.** Provide cabinets with a 120 VAC +/- 5 VAC power distribution panel. Provide the following components on the panel:

2.1.4.1. **Duplex Receptacles.** Provide two 120 VAC NEMA Type 5-15R duplex receptacles, or as shown on the plans, protected by a circuit breaker. Permanently label duplex receptacles “For Internal ITS Equipment

Only.” Install duplex receptacles in an isolated location and provide a clear 1/8 in. thick removable cover made from transparent thermoplastic material to cover the duplex receptacles. Ensure this cover is installed as not to interfere with the functional operation within the cabinet and allows enough space to plug in AC adapters and any necessary equipment. Submit alternative cover material for approval as part of the documentation submittal requirement.

- 2.1.4.2. **Ground Fault Circuit Interrupter (GFCI) Duplex Receptacles.** Provide at least one 120 VAC NEMA Type 5-15R GFCI duplex receptacle, or as shown on the plans, protected by a circuit breaker. This GFCI duplex receptacle is intended for maintenance personnel and is not to be used to serve equipment inside the cabinet. Permanently label GFCI duplex receptacles “For Personnel Use.” Install GFCI duplex receptacles in a readily accessible location.

Provide a 120 VAC, rack mountable outlet strip with 6 NEMA Type 5-15R receptacles with surge suppression. Plug outlet strip into GFCI duplex receptacle and label for personnel use.

**Circuit Breakers.** Determine the ampere rating, quantity, and configuration for main, accessory, spare, and equipment circuit breakers to support ITS equipment loads as shown on the plans. Provide Underwriters Laboratories (UL) 489 listed circuit breakers capable of operating in accordance with Section 2, “Environmental Standards and Test Procedures” of NEMA TS2-2003, or most current version. Provide circuit breakers with an interrupt capacity of 5,000 A. and insulation resistance of 100 megohms at 500 VDC. Provide minimum ampere rating for the following circuit types:

- 2.1.4.2.1. **Main Breaker.** Size the main circuit breaker such that the load of all branch circuits is less than the main circuit breaker ampere rating in accordance with the most current version of the National Electrical Code (NEC).
- 2.1.4.2.2. **Accessory Breaker.** Minimum 15 A. Size accessory circuit breaker to protect lighting, door switches, fans, and GFCI duplex receptacle in accordance with the most current version of the NEC.
- 2.1.4.2.3. **Equipment Breakers.** Minimum 15 A. Size equipment breaker to protect ITS equipment and duplex receptacles in accordance with the most current version of the NEC.
- 2.1.4.2.4. **Spare Equipment Breaker.** Minimum 20 A. Provide one spare equipment breaker for future use.

Furnish breakers, which are in addition to any auxiliary fuses, with the electronic equipment to protect component parts. Provide 3-terminal lightning arrestor to protect the load side of all circuit breakers. Connect the arrestor into the circuit with size 8 AWG or larger stranded copper conductors. Connect arrestor to the line filter as recommended by the manufacturer.

- 2.1.4.3. **Power Line Surge Protection.** Provide and install power line surge protection devices that meet the requirements of Article 2.4.1.

- 2.1.4.4. **Power Cable Input Junction Terminals.** Provide power distribution blocks suitable for use as a power feed and junction points for 2 and 3 wire circuits. Accommodate up to No. 4 AWG conductors on the line side of each circuit. Provide appropriate sized lugs at the junction terminals for conductors larger than a No. 4 AWG when shown on the plans.

Electrically isolate the AC neutral and equipment ground wiring from the line wiring by an insulation resistance of at least 10 megohms when measured at the AC neutral. Color code the AC neutral and equipment grounding wiring white and green respectively in accordance with the most current version of the NEC.

Utilize the back panel to distribute and properly interconnect all cabinet wiring related to the specific complement of equipment called out on the plans. Each item of equipment including any furnished by the Department must have the cable harness properly terminated at terminal boards on the back panel. Ensure all functions available at the equipment connector are carried in the connector cable harness to the terminal blocks from the power distribution panel mounted on the left side panel of the cabinet.

- 2.1.5. **Right Side Panel.** When shown on the plans, for a required ITS application, provide fully wired loop input distribution panel to be mounted on the lower right inside wall when facing the front inside of the door opening of the cabinet. Provide a detailed layout for approval by the Engineer. Provide a panel with the following:
- 2.1.5.1. **Power Distribution.** If any 115 VAC power is needed on the right side panel, it will be obtained from the power distribution terminal board located on the left side panel, which is fed from the equipment circuit breaker located on the left side panel.
- 2.1.5.2. **Loop Surge Protection.** Mount surge protection for incoming loop pairs on the right side panel.
- 2.1.6. **Back Panel.** When shown on the plans, for a required ITS application, provide cabinet with a fully wired equipment panel to be mounted on the lower rear inside wall of the cabinet. Provide a detailed layout for approval by the Engineer. Panel to include detector terminal boards to accommodate equipment shown on the plans or as directed.
- 2.1.7. **Alternative Power Option.** When shown on the plans, accommodate renewable electrical power source for the design load specified in accordance with "ITS Solar Power System" Specification. Renewable electrical power source may, or may not, be integrated with public utility electrical services, as shown on the plans or as directed. Accommodate solar system components including batteries and solar charge controller.
- 2.1.8. **Wiring.** Ensure all cabinet wiring identified by the use of insulated pre-printed sleeving slipped over the wire before attachment of the lug or making the connection. Supply enough text on wire markers in plain words or abbreviations with sufficient level of detail so that a translating sheet will not be required to identify the type and size of wire.

Cut all wires to the proper length before assembly. Ensure no wires are doubled back to take up slack. Ensure harnesses to connectors are covered with braided cable sleeves. Secure cables with nylon cable clamps.

Provide service loops to facilitate removal and replacement of assemblies, panels, and modules. Use insulated parts and wire rated for at least 600 V. Color-code harnesses and wiring.

Route and bundle all wiring containing line voltage AC separately or shield from all low voltage, i.e., control circuits. Cover all conductors and live terminals or parts, which could be hazardous to maintenance personnel, with suitable insulating material.

Provide AC internal cabinet wiring identified in accordance with the most current version of the NEC. Provide white insulated conductors for AC common. Provide green insulated conductors for equipment ground. Provide any color different from the foregoing on other conductors in accordance with the most current version of the NEC. For equipment that requires grounding, provide ground conductors and do not use conduit for grounding. Provide No. 22 AWG or larger stranded conductors for internal cabinet wiring. Provide conductors that are UL-listed THHN in accordance with the most current version of the NEC. Ensure the insulation has at least a thickness of 10 mm. Ensure all wiring containing line voltage is at least size No. 14 AWG. No strands of any conductor may be trimmed to "fit" the wiring into the breaker or terminal block.

- 2.1.9. **Terminal Strips.** Provide terminal strips located on the back panel that are accessible to the extent that it is not necessary to remove the electronic equipment from the cabinet to make an inspection or connection.

Ensure terminal blocks are 2 position, multiple pole barrier type.

Provide shorting bars in each of the positions provided, along with an integral marking strip.

Arrange terminal blocks such that they will not upset the entrance, training and connection of incoming field conductors.

Identify all terminals with legends permanently affixed and attached to the terminal blocks.

Ensure not more than 3 conductors are brought to any 1 terminal screw.

Ensure no electrically energized components or connectors extend beyond the protection afforded by the barriers.

Locate all terminal blocks below the shelves.

Ensure terminals used for field connections are secure conductors by means of a No. 10-32 nickel or cadmium plated brass binder head screw.

Ensure terminals used for interwiring connections, but not for field connections, are secure conductors by means of a No. 5-32 nickel plated brass binder head screw.

Terminate all connections to and from the electronic equipment to an interwiring- type block. These blocks will act as intermediate connection points for all electronic equipment input and output.

Provide termination panels that are used to distribute and properly interconnect all cabinet wiring related to the specific complement of equipment as shown on the plans. Provide properly terminated cable harnesses for each item, including any furnished by the Department. Provide all functions available at the equipment terminals that are carried in the connector cable harness.

2.1.10. **Cabinet Internal Grounding.** The cabinet internal ground consists of at least 1 ground bus-bar permanently affixed to the cabinet and connected to the grounding electrode.

Use bare stranded No. 4 AWG copper wire between bus-bars and between the bus-bar and grounding electrode.

Ensure each copper ground bus-bar has at least 14 connection points, each capable of securing bare conductor ranging in size from No 4 AWG to No 14 AWG.

Return AC neutral and equipment ground wiring to these bus-bars.

2.1.11. **Door Switch.** Provide a door switch meeting the following requirements:

- momentary, pin-type door switch,
- installed in the cabinet or on the door,
- connected to a terminal so that the equipment installed in the cabinet can confirm input is connected to logic ground when the cabinet door is open, and
- engage cabinet light when the door is opened.

Provide 2 momentary, pin-type door switches for each door provided with the cabinet. Wire 1 switch to turn on the cabinet lights when the door is open, and off when the door is closed. Wire the other in parallel to a terminal block to detect a cabinet intrusion condition.

2.2. **Mechanical Requirements.**

2.2.1. **Size and Construction.** Provide ITS ground mounted cabinets meeting the configuration types detailed in the ITS Ground Mounted Cabinet standards.



**Table 1**  
**Minimum Cabinet Dimensions**

	Depth (in.)	Width (in.)	Height (in.)
<b>Type 4</b>	<b>30</b>	<b>24</b>	<b>66</b>
<b>Type 5</b>	<b>26</b>	<b>44</b>	<b>54</b>
<b>Type 6</b>	<b>26</b>	<b>44</b>	<b>66</b>

Determine the suitability of the listed cabinet configuration types for the equipment at each field location identified on the plans or as directed.

- 2.2.2. **Ventilation.** Provide the cabinet with vent openings to allow cooling of electronic components.

Locate louvered air intake vent openings on the lower portion of the cabinet doors and cover fully inside with a commercially available disposable 3 layer graded pleated type filter with a minimum size of 16 in. (high) x 16 in. (wide) and a thickness of 1 in. For Type 5 cabinet, provide 2 filters for each door. Securely mount so that any air entering the cabinet must pass through the filter. Ensure the cabinet opening for intake of air is large enough to accommodate filter size. Screen the exhaust to prevent entry of insects. Provide the screen openings no larger than 0.0125-sq. in.

Vent and cool the cabinet by thermostatically controlled electric fans. Provide adjustable thermostat with an adjustment range of 70 to 110°F. Provide a press-to-test switch to test the operation of the fan.

Provide at least 4 commercially available fans with a capacity of at least 110 cfm each. Provide the total free air opening of the vent large enough to prevent excessive back-pressure on the fan.

- 2.2.3. **Lighting.** Provide minimum 15 W fluorescent light fixtures above each door inside the cabinet, each with clear shatter proof lens. NEMA TS2 rated light-emitting diode (LED) fixtures are acceptable instead of fluorescent light fixtures. Determine the appropriate number of fixtures to achieve at least 1000 lumens to illuminate the equipment. Position the fixtures to provide illumination to the face of the equipment in the cabinet and not into a technician's eyes.

- 2.2.4. **Exterior Finish.** Provide cabinets with a smooth aluminum finish and the exterior in its unpainted natural color.

When shown on the plans or as directed, provide cabinets with an anti-graffiti coating in accordance with Item 740 "Graffiti Removal and Anti-Graffiti Coating."

- 2.2.5. **Serial Number.** Provide the cabinets with a serial number unique to the manufacturer, preceded by an assigned 2 letter manufacturer's code. Provide at least a 0.2 in. letter height. Stamp the entire identification code and number on a metal plate riveted to the cabinet, stamp directly on the interior cabinet wall, or engrave on a metalized mylar plate that is epoxied to the cabinet on the upper right hand cabinet side wall.

- 2.2.6. **Modular Design.** Provide cabinets that have a modular design and allow ITS equipment to be installed in a variety of mounting configurations as detailed on the plans or as directed.

Provide Type 4 cabinets with 1 Electronic Industries Alliance (EIA) 19 in. rack cage, sized appropriately based on cabinet type inside height dimension. Provide a rack with at least 1 1RU (RU = rack unit) horizontal power strip. Provide 2 unistrut or DIN rail channels on each side wall of the cabinet for mounting power panel and auxiliary ITS equipment.

Provide Type 5 and Type 6 cabinets with 2 side by side EIA 19 in. racks, sized appropriately based on cabinet type inside height dimension. Provide a rack with at least of 1 1RU horizontal power strip. Provide 2 unistrut or DIN rail channels on each side wall of the cabinet for mounting power panel and auxiliary ITS equipment.

- 2.2.7. **Shelves.** Provide adjustable shelves in each cabinet as required to support the equipment as specified on the plans. Ensure shelf adjustment is at 1 RU intervals in the vertical position. Provide shelves that can be mounted to an EIA 19 in. rack cage or unistrut channel as detailed in the standards.

Provide shelves that are removable and capable of supporting the electronic equipment. Provide a minimum of 2 in. between the back and front edge of the shelf to back inside wall and door of the cabinet respectively to allow room for the equipment cables and connectors.

Provide each cabinet type with at least 1 slide out drawer with telescoping drawer guides to allow full extension from the rack frame. Provide at least 1.75 in. (high) x 16 in. (wide) x 14 in. (deep) drawer with a hinged lid to allow access to storage space.

- 2.3. **Surge Protective Devices (SPD).** Provide SPDs to protect electronics from lightning, transient voltage surges, and induced current. Install SPDs on all power, data, video, and any other conductive circuit.

- 2.3.1. **120 V or 120/240 V SPD at Service and ITS Cabinet Power Distribution Panel.** Install an SPD at the closest termination or disconnection point where the supply circuit enters the cabinet. Locate the SPD on the load side of the cabinet power distribution panel breakers and ahead of any and all electronic devices. Keep leads as short as possible with all conductor bends formed to the maximum possible radius. Connect the SPD ground lead directly to the ground bus. Use of wire nuts is prohibited. Install in accordance with manufacturers recommendations.

Provide UL Listed Type 1 or Type 2 SPD and labeled to UL1449 Third Edition, posted at UL.com, under Certifications UL Category Code VZCA, and have a 20kA I-nominal rating. Provide SPD rated as NEMA 4. SPD with integral EMI/RFI line filtering may be required if shown on the plans.

Do not exceed 700 V on the Voltage Protection Rating (VPR) on any mode (L-N, L-G, and N-G).

Do not exceed 150 V on the Maximum Continuous Operating Voltage (MCOV).

Equal or exceed 40kA the SPD surge current rating per mode (L-N), (L-G), (N-G).

Equal or exceed 50 kA or the available short circuit current, whichever is higher for the SPD Short Circuit Current Rating (SCCR).

Provide SPD with directly connected Metal Oxide Varistors (MOV) exceeding 32 mm in diameter with thermal safety disconnectors. Gas tube and spark gap SPD are not be permitted. Ensure each MOV's operational status can be monitored via visual indicator, including N-G mode.

Provide SPD with one set of Normally Open (NO), Normally Closed (NC) Form C contacts for remote monitoring.

Ensure the SPD utilized for AC power does not dissipate any energy and does not provide any series impedance during standby operation. Return the unit to its non-shunting mode after the passage of any surge and do not allow the shunting of AC power.

- 2.3.2. **Parallel SPD for 120 V Equipment.** Install an SPD inside of the cabinet on the power distribution to the equipment. Keep leads as short as possible with all conductor bends formed to the maximum possible radius. Connect the SPD ground lead directly to the ground bus. Use of wire nuts is prohibited. Install in accordance with manufacturers recommendations.

Provide UL Listed Type 1 or Type 2 SPD labeled to UL1449 Third Edition, posted at UL.com, under Certifications UL Category Code VZCA, and have a 20kA I-nominal rating. Provide SPD rated as NEMA 4.

Do not exceed 700 V on the Voltage Protection Rating (VPR) on any mode (L-N and N-G).

Do not exceed 150 V on the Maximum Continuous Operating Voltage (MCOV).

Equal or exceed 40 kA the SPD surge current rating per mode (L-N) and (N-G).

Equal or exceed 50 kA or the available short circuit current, whichever is higher for the SPD Short Circuit Current Rating (SCCR).

Provide SPD with directly connected Metal Oxide Varistors (MOV) exceeding 32 mm in diameter with thermal safety disconnectors. Gas tube and spark gap SPD are not be permitted. Ensure each MOV's operational status can be monitored via visual indicator, including N-G mode.

Provide SPD with one set of Normally Open (NO), Normally Closed (NC) Form C contacts for remote monitoring.

### 2.3.3.

**Low-Voltage Power, Control, Data and Signal Systems SPD.** Install a specialized SPD on all conductive circuits including, but not limited to, data communication cables, coaxial video cables, and low-voltage power cables. Ensure that these devices comply with the functional requirements shown in Table 2 for all available modes (i.e., power L-N, N-G; data and signal center pin-to-shield, L-L, L-G, and shield-G where appropriate).

These specialized SPD must have an operating voltage matching the characteristics of the circuit. Ensure that these specialized SPD are UL 497B or UL 497C Listed, as applicable.

Provide the SPD with 3 stages of surge suppression in a Pi ( $\pi$ ) configuration. The first stage (primary side) consists of parallel-connected Gas Discharge Tubes (GDTs). The second stage consists of a series connected resistor or inductor. The third stage (secondary side) consists of parallel-connected transorbs or silicone avalanche diodes (SADs).

Ground the SPD to the DIN rail and a wire terminal connection point. (Grounding solely through the DIN rail connection is not adequate and does not meet the performance or intent of this specification.)

Install coaxial SPDs in a manner that prevents ground loops and resulting signal deterioration. This is usually caused where the cable has different references to ground at either end and connecting SPDs at both ends that have only Pin to Shield protection completes a ground loop circuit through the Shield. SPDs having Pin to Shield protection, and separate Shield to Ground protection are acceptable to eliminate ground loops.

**Table 2**  
**SPD Minimum Requirements**

Circuit Description	Maximum Continuous Operating Voltage (MCOV)	Frequency/ Bandwidth/ Data Rate	Surge Capacity	Maximum Let-Through Voltage
12 VDC	15-20 V	N/A	5 kA per mode (8x20 $\mu$ s)	<150 Vpk
24 VAC	30-55 V	N/A	5 kA per mode (8x20 $\mu$ s)	<175 Vpk
48 VDC	60-85 V	N/A	5 kA per mode (8x20 $\mu$ s)	<200 Vpk
Coaxial Composite Video	4-8 V	Up to 1.5 GHz	10 kA per mode (8x20 $\mu$ s)	<100 Vpk
RS422/RS485	8-15 V	Up to 10 Mbps	10 kA per mode (8x20 $\mu$ s)	<30 Vpk
T1	13-30V	Up to 10 Mbps	10 kA per mode (8x20 $\mu$ s)	<30 Vpk
Ethernet Data	7-12V	Up to 100 Mbps	3 kA per mode (10x1000 $\mu$ s)	<30 Vpk

- 2.4. **Environmental Design Requirements.** Provide cabinets that meet the functional requirements of this Item during and after subsection to any combination of the following requirements:
- ambient temperature range of -30 to 165°F,
  - temperature shock at most 30°F per hour, during which the relative humidity does not exceed 95%,
  - relative humidity range at most 95% over the temperature range of 40 to 110°F, and
  - operates with moisture condensation on all surfaces caused by temperature changes.
- 2.5. **Vibration.** Material used must show no degradation of mechanical structure, soldered components, plug in components or satisfactory operation in accordance with the manufacturer's equipment specifications after being subjected to the vibration test as described in the NEMA standard TS2, Section 2.2.8, "Vibration Test", or the most current version.

---

### 3. FABRICATION

- 3.1. **Ground Mounted Cabinet.** Continuously weld all exterior seams for cabinet and doors. Fill edges to a radius of 0.03125 in. minimum. Smooth exterior welds.

Welding on aluminum cabinets are done by the gas metal arc (MIG) or gas tungsten arc (TIG) process using bare aluminum welding electrodes. Ensure electrodes conform to the requirements of the American Welding Society (AWS) A5.10 for ER5356 aluminum alloy bare welding electrodes.

Procedures, welding machines and welding machine operators for welding on aluminum must be qualified and conform with the requirements of AWS B3.0, "Welding Procedures and Performance Qualification", and to the practices recommended in AWS C5.6.

Construct all cabinets of welded sheet aluminum with a thickness of at least 0.125 in. meeting NEMA 3R standards. Do not allow wood, wood fiber product, or flammable products in the cabinet. Seal cabinet structure to prevent the entry of rain, dust, and dirt.

Provide a sunshield on the exterior top of the cabinet to reflect solar rays and mitigate temperature build-up inside the cabinet. Construct sunshield out of 0.125 in. thick aluminum and provide a minimum of 1.25 in. clearance above the top of cabinet secured in four locations.

Attach aluminum lifting eyes or ears to the top of the cabinet to permit lifting the cabinet with a sling. Lifting eyes may be permanently fabricated to the cabinet frame as long as they do not interfere with the construction and operation of the sunshield. Manufacturer may provide removable lifting eyes that can be removed after installation. Seal any penetrations to the cabinet exterior or sunshield after removal of lifting eyes.

Ensure cabinets conform to the requirements of ASTM designation: B209 for 5052-H32 aluminum sheet.

- 3.1.1. **Door.** Provide sturdy and torsionally rigid cabinet doors that overlap and substantially cover the full area of the front of the cabinet. Attach cabinet doors by a minimum of 3 heavy duty hinges or full length hinge. Provide stainless steel hinge pins.

Fabricate the doors and hinges to withstand a 100 lb. per vertical foot force applied to the outer edge of the door when open without permanent deformation or impairment of the door or cabinet body when the load is removed.

Fit the cabinet doors with Number 2 Corbin lock and aluminum or chrome plated handle with at least a 3/8 in. drive pin and a 3 point latch. Design the lock and latch so that the handle cannot be released until the lock is released. Provide a padlock of the type directed by the Engineer. Provide a locking ring for a padlock. Provide 2 keys for the door and 2 keys for the padlock with each cabinet. Locate the lock clear of the arc of the handle. Keys must be removable in the locked position only. Mount locks with 2 stainless steel machine screws. Provide cabinet doors with a catch mechanism to hold the door open at 3 positions: 90°, 120°, and 160°.

Fabricate the door and door stop mechanism to withstand a simulated wind load of 5 lb. per sq. ft. applied to both inside and outside surfaces without failure, permanent deformation, or compromising of door position.

Provide cabinets without auxiliary police doors.

Provide a gasket to act as a permanent and weather resistant seal at the cabinet door facing. The gasket material must be of a non-absorbent material and maintain its resiliency after long term exposure to the outdoor environment.

Provide a gasket with a minimum thickness of 0.25 in. Locate the gasket in a channel provided for this purpose either on the cabinet or on the door. An "L" bracket is acceptable instead of this channel if the gasket is fitted snugly against the bracket to insure a uniformly dust and weather resistant seal around the entire door facing.

- 3.1.2. **Mechanical Components.** Ensure all external screws, nuts, and locking washers are stainless steel. Do not use self-tapping screws unless specifically approved by the Engineer.

Ensure all parts are made of corrosion resistant material, such as plastic, stainless steel, aluminum or brass.

Ensure all materials used in construction are resistant to fungus growth and moisture deterioration.

Separate dissimilar metals by an inert dielectric material.

---

## 4. CONSTRUCTION

- 4.1. **General.** For ITS cabinets installed on a slope, ensure the cabinet primary door faces and opens to the high side of the slope and provide safety railing in accordance with the ITS ground mounted cabinet standards. Safety railing is subsidiary to this Item. Stake cabinet foundation forms and underground conduit entering the foundation before installation and secure Department approval before pouring foundation. It is understood that cabinet location may vary from the plans to accommodate field conditions.

Construct the cabinet foundation in accordance with Item 656, "Foundations for Traffic Control Devices", unless otherwise specified by the Engineer.

Concrete maintenance pads have been integrated into the foundation design found on the ITS ground mounted cabinet standards to accommodate door configuration options.

- 4.2. **Mounting Hardware.** Furnish anchor bolts to mount the cabinet to the foundation. Manufacturer to determine the appropriate size anchor bolts by cabinet type and foundation size. Provide appropriate mounting plates and any other necessary hardware to mount the cabinet on a foundation.

- 4.3. **Installation.** Ground the cabinet as depicted in the ITS grounding standards. For retrofit scenarios, measure resistance to ground before installing cabinet in accordance with IEEE 81. Provide additional grounding rods and install additional grounding conductors as detailed in the ITS Grounding Standards to achieve less than 5 ohms resistance. Additional ground rods and grounding conductors are subsidiary to this Item.

Immediately before mounting the cabinet on the foundation, apply a bead of silicone caulk to seal the cabinet base to the foundation.

Seal any space between conduit entering the cabinet and the foundation with silicone caulk or approved sealant compound.

Install conduits as shown on the plans or as directed and in accordance with Item 618, "Conduit." Place wiring in a neat and orderly manner grouped together with nylon tie-downs.

After wiring is installed, seal the conduits terminated in the cabinet foundation with a duct seal or other similar approved sealant inside of the ends of the conduit in the cabinet to prevent moisture, insects and critters from entering the conduits.

- 4.3.1. **Connection of Lead-In Cable.** Connect the detector lead-in cables, when shown on the plans or as directed, to the detector terminal blocks in the following manner:

Dress each cable into position in conformance with the approved lead-in cable position on the panel (bundle cables together and broken out by their position on the terminal boards),

Place cable as close to the terminal points as possible and left floating, and

Ground the cable shield after testing and in accordance with the detector manufacturers' specifications.

- 4.3.2. **Connection of Miscellaneous Cables.** Terminate connection of signal wires, sign control wires and any other wires required to complete connections for an operational system on terminal blocks.

Design the equipment for ease of maintenance. All component parts must be readily accessible for inspection and maintenance. The only tools and test instruments required for maintenance by maintenance personnel must be simple hand held tools, basic meters and oscilloscopes.

Mount cabinet plumb in all directions.

- 4.4. **Removal and Replacement of Curbs and Walks.** The Contractor to secure approval of the Engineer before cutting into or removing sidewalks or curbs not shown on the plans to be removed or replaced.
- Restore any curbs or sidewalks after work is completed, which have been removed, to equivalent original condition and to the satisfaction of the Engineer.
- All completed surfaces that are adjacent to the cabinet foundation must be level and free of trip hazards. Any difference in level of adjacent structures are to be addressed in the field and approved by the department.
- 4.5. **Relocation.** Before removal of the existing cabinet, disconnect and isolate the power cables from the electric power supply and disconnect all cables (power and communication) from the equipment.
- Inspect the existing cabinet, with a representative from the Department, and document any evidence of structural damage before removal. Remove and deliver to the Department existing cabinets that fail structural inspection to an address to be supplied by the Department.
- Remove the existing cabinet in a manner acceptable to the Engineer. Use a method that does not cause undue overstress or damage to the structure or appurtenances attached.
- Remove the existing concrete foundation to a depth of at least 2 ft. below finish grade with all steel cut off. Backfill the excavation with material equal in composition and density to the surrounding area. Replace any surfacing, such as asphalt pavement, concrete riprap or brick pavers, with like material to equivalent condition as approved by the Engineer.
- Supply all new anchor bolts required for the installation of the cabinet. Match bolt dimensions and lengths previously used or as shown on the plans or as directed.
- 4.6. **Removal.** Present the work in a neat, professional finished appearance. Maintain safe construction and operation practices. Use established industry and utility safety practices when removing cabinets near overhead or underground facilities. Consult with the appropriate utility company before beginning work.
- Inspect the cabinet, with a representative from the Department, and remove any ITS equipment, associated mounting hardware, and cabling inside the cabinet before commencing work.
- Before removal of the existing cabinet, disconnect and isolate the power cables from the electric power supply and disconnect all cables (power and communication) from the equipment. Remove and coil existing cabling to the nearest ITS ground box or as identified on the plans.
- Carefully remove the cabinet and avoid damage or injury to surrounding objects or individuals. Deliver the cabinet to an address to be supplied by the Department.
- Remove the existing foundation to a depth of 2 ft. below grade with all steel cut off. Backfill the excavation with material equal in composition and density to the surrounding area. Replace any surfacing, such as asphalt pavement, concrete riprap, or brick pavers, with like material to equivalent condition as approved by the Engineer.
- 4.7. **Testing.**
- 4.7.1. **Installation.** Unless otherwise shown on the plans, perform the following tests on cabinets supplied through this Item.
- 4.7.1.1. **Test Procedures Documentation.** Provide 5 copies of the test procedures to include tests identified in Article 4.9.2 through Article 4.9.4 inclusive and blank data forms to the Engineer for review and comment at least 45 days before testing for each test required on this project. Include the sequence of the tests in the procedures. The Engineer will comment, approve, or reject test procedures within 30 days after Contractor submittal of equipment for tests. Contractor to resubmit if necessary rejected test procedures for final

approval within 10 days before testing. Review time is calendar days. Conduct all tests in accordance with the approved test procedures. The Department may witness all tests.

Record test data and quantitative results on data forms. No bid item measurement or payment will be made until the Engineer has verified the test results meet the requirements of the specification. The data forms for all tests, except design approval tests, must be signed by an authorized representative of the Contractor.

Provide written notice to the Engineer within 48 hr. of discovery of any testing discrepancy performed in testing by the contractor. Furnish data forms containing the acceptable range of expected results and measured values.

- 4.7.1.2. **Design Approval Test.** Conduct a design approval test on 10 percent of the total number of cabinets supplied as part of the project, with at least 1 of each type of cabinet used on the project.

Certification from an independent testing laboratory of a successfully completed design approval test is acceptable. Ensure that the testing by this laboratory is performed in accordance with the requirements of this specification. Failure of independent tests to comply with the requirements of this specification will be grounds for rejection of any certification.

Provide a copy of the certification to the Engineer. The data forms for the design approval tests must be signed by an authorized representative (company official) of the equipment manufacturer or by an authorized representative of an independent testing facility.

Notify the Engineer 10 working days before conducting this testing. The Department may witness all the tests. Perform the following tests:

- 4.7.1.2.1. **Power Service Transients.** Provide equipment that meets the performance requirements, specified in this Item, when subjected to the power service transients as specified in NEMA TS 2, Section 2.2.7.2, "Transient Tests (Power Service)", or most current version.
- 4.7.1.2.2. **Temperature and Condensation.** Provide equipment that meets the performance requirements, specified in this Item, when subjected to the following conditions in the order specified below:
- Stabilize the equipment at -30°F and test as specified in NEMA TS2, Sections 2.2.7.3, "Low-Temperature Low-Voltage Tests" and 2.2.7.4, "Low-Temperature High-Voltage Tests", or most current version.
  - Allow the equipment to warm up to room temperature in an atmosphere with relative humidity of at least 40%. Operate the equipment for 2 hr., while wet, without degradation or failure.
  - Stabilize the equipment at 165°F and test as specified in NEMA TS2, Sections 2.2.7.5, "High-Temperature High Voltage Tests" and 2.2.7.6, "High-Temperature Low-Voltage Tests", or most current version.
- 4.7.1.2.3. **Relative Humidity.** Provide equipment that meets the performance requirements, specified in this Item, within 30 min. of being subjected to a temperature of 165°F and a relative humidity of 18% for 48 hr.
- 4.7.1.2.4. **Vibration.** Provide equipment that shows no degradation of mechanical structure, soldered components, or plug-in components and will operate in accordance with the manufacturer's equipment specifications after being subjected to the vibration tests as described in NEMA TS2, Section 2.2.8, "Vibration Test", or most current version.
- 4.7.1.2.5. **Power Interruption.** Provide equipment that meets the performance requirements, specified in this Item, when subjected to nominal input voltage variations as specified in NEMA TS2, Section 2.2.10, "Power Interruption Test", or most current version.
- 4.7.1.3. **Stand-Alone Tests.** Conduct a stand-alone test for each cabinet after installation. Exercise all stand-alone (non-network) functional operations consisting of the following, at a minimum:



- 19-in. EIA rack,
- adjustable shelves,
- locking mechanism,
- fan and thermostat,
- cabinet light,
- back panel,
- circuit breakers,
- surge protection,
- grounding system,
- terminal strips,
- interconnect harnesses with connectors,
- weatherproofing, and
- "Door Open" connection to back panel.

Notify the Engineer 5 working days before conducting this test. The Engineer may witness all the tests.

- 4.7.1.4. **Consequences of Test Failure.** If a unit fails a test, submit a report describing the nature of the failure and the actions taken to remedy the situation before modification or replacement of the unit. If a unit requires modification, correct the fault and then repeat the test until successfully completed. Correct minor discrepancies within 30 days of written notice to the Engineer. If a unit requires replacement, provide a new unit and then repeat the test until successfully completed. Major discrepancies that will substantially delay receipt and acceptance of the unit will be cause for rejection of the unit.

Failure to satisfy the requirements of any test is considered a defect and the equipment is subject to rejection by the Engineer. The rejected equipment may be offered again for retest provided all noncompliance has been corrected.

If a failure pattern develops in similar units within the system, implement corrective measures, including modification or replacement of units, to all similar units within the system as directed. Perform the corrective measures within 30 calendar days without additional cost or extension of the contract period.

- 4.7.1.4.1. **Consequences of Design Approval Test Failure.** If the equipment fails the design approval test, correct the fault within 30 days and then repeat the design approval test until successfully completed.
- 4.7.1.4.2. **Consequences of Demonstration Test Failure.** If the equipment fails the demonstration test, correct the fault within 30 days and then repeat the demonstration test until successfully completed.
- 4.7.1.4.3. **Consequences of Stand-Alone Test Failure.** If the equipment fails the stand-alone test, correct the fault and then repeat the stand-alone test until successfully completed.

#### 4.7.2. **Relocation.**

- 4.7.2.1. **Pre-Test.** Conduct performance testing before removal of ITS ground mounted cabinets. Test all functional operations of the equipment, at a minimum, and document functional operations in the presence of representatives of the Contractor and the Department.

- locking mechanism,
- fan and thermostat,
- cabinet light,
- back panel,
- circuit breakers,
- surge protection system,
- grounding system, and

- “Door Open” connection to back panel.

Ensure that both representatives sign the test report indicating that the equipment has passed or failed each function. Once removed, the equipment becomes the responsibility of the Contractor until accepted by the Department. Compare test data before removal and test data after installation.

#### 4.7.2.2.

**Post Test.** Testing of the ITS ground mounted cabinet is for the purpose of relieving the Contractor of maintenance of the system. The Contractor will be relieved of the responsibility for maintenance of the system in accordance with Item 7, “Legal Relations and Responsibilities”, after a successful test period. The Contractor will not be required to pay for electrical energy consumed by the system.

After all existing ITS equipment has been installed, perform the same functional operation test described under Article 4.9.2.1. Furnish test data forms containing the sequence of tests including all of the data taken and quantitative results for all tests. Submit the test data forms to the Engineer at least 30 days before the day the tests are to begin. Obtain Engineer’s approval of test procedures before submission of equipment for tests. Send at least 2 copies of the data forms to the Engineer.

The performance test results after relocation must be equal to or better than the test results before removal. Contractor is responsible to repair or replace those components within the system which failed after relocation but which passed before removal.

The Department will conduct approved ITS equipment system tests on the field equipment hardware with the central equipment. The tests will exercise all remote control functions and display the return status codes from the controller.

If any unit fails to pass a test, prepare a report and deliver it to the Engineer. Describe in the report the nature of the failure and the corrective action needed. If the failure is the result of improper installation or damage during reinstallation, reinstall or replace the unit and repeat the test until the unit passes successfully, at no additional cost to the Department or extension of the Contract period.

#### 4.8.

**Documentation.** Submit documentation for this Item consisting of the following:

##### 4.8.1.

**Ground Mounted Cabinet.** Shop drawings should clearly detail the following for ITS ground mounted cabinets when required as shown on the plans:

- |                    |                                 |
|--------------------|---------------------------------|
| ■ dimensions,      | ■ power distribution panel,     |
| ■ shelves,         | ■ surge suppression,            |
| ■ door,            | ■ back panel,                   |
| ■ gasket,          | ■ outlets,                      |
| ■ door look,       | ■ circuit breakers,             |
| ■ materials list,  | ■ power cable terminals,        |
| ■ exterior finish, | ■ wiring diagrams,              |
| ■ ventilation,     | ■ cabinet grounding,            |
| ■ terminal strips, | ■ environmental parameters, and |
| ■ harnesses,       | ■ connectors.                   |
| ■ filter,          |                                 |

Submit shop drawings, signed, sealed, and dated by a registered professional Engineer in Texas showing the fabrication, interior configuration, electrical distribution, and cabinet mounting details for each cabinet in accordance with Item 5, “Control of the Work.”

Provide at least 2 complete sets of operation and maintenance manuals in hard copy format in addition to a CD/DVD or removable flash drive that includes the following:

- complete and accurate schematic diagrams,
- complete installation procedures,
- complete performance specifications (functional, electrical, mechanical and environmental) on the unit,
- complete parts list including names of vendors for parts not identified by universal part number such as JEDEC, RETMA, or EIA,
- pictorial of component layout on circuit board,
- complete maintenance and trouble-shooting procedures,
- complete stage-by-stage explanation of circuit theory and operation,
- recovery procedures for malfunction, and
- instructions for gathering maintenance assistance from manufacturer.

Identify material which is copyrighted or proprietary in nature as part of the documentation submittal. The Department will take proper provisions to secure such material and not distribute without written approval.

Provide the Department with certification documentation verifying conformance with environmental and testing requirements contained in the special specification. Certifications may be provided by the manufacturer or through independent labs.

- 4.9. **Warranty.** The start date of the manufacturer's standard warranty will begin when the stand-alone test plan has been approved. Any equipment with less than 95% of its warranty remaining at the beginning of the stand-alone test will not be accepted by the Department. Guarantee that equipment furnished and installed for this project performs according to the manufacturer's published specifications. Warrant the equipment against defects or failure in design, materials, and workmanship for a minimum of 5 years or in accordance with the manufacturer's standard warranty if warranty period is greater. Assign, to the Department, all manufacturer's normal warranties or guarantees on all electronic, electrical, and mechanical equipment, materials, technical data, and products furnished for and installed on the project. Repair or replace, at the manufacturer's option, defective equipment during the warranty period at no cost to the Department.

Repair or replace equipment at the Contractor's expense before beginning testing in the event of a malfunction or failure. Furnish replacement parts for all equipment within 30 days of notification of failure by the Department.

---

## 5. MEASUREMENT

This Item is measured as each unit furnished, installed, relocated, or removed as shown on the plans or as directed, excluding new conduit.

---

## 6. PAYMENT

- 6.1. **Furnish and Install.** The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided for under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "ITS Ground Mount Cabinet" of the type and configuration specified. This price is full compensation for furnishing, fabricating, and installing ITS ground mounted cabinets as shown on the plans; for forming and setting the cabinet foundation; for furnishing and placing anchor bolts, nuts, and washers; for furnishing and placing electrical conduit in the foundation; for appropriately grounding the cabinet; and equipment, materials, labor, tools, and incidentals necessary to provide an ITS ground mounted cabinet, complete in place, and ready for the installation of ITS equipment.

New conduit will be paid for under Item 618, "Conduit" or Special Specification ITS Conduit.

- 6.2. **Install Only.** The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided for under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "ITS Ground Mount Cabinet (Install Only) of the type and configuration specified. This price is full compensation for installing ITS ground mounted cabinets furnished by the Department as shown on the plans; for forming and setting the cabinet

foundation; for furnishing and placing anchor bolts, nuts, and washers; for furnishing and placing electrical conduit in the foundation; for appropriately grounding the cabinet; and equipment, materials, labor, tools, and incidentals necessary to install an ITS ground mounted cabinet, complete in place, and ready for the installation of ITS equipment.

New conduit will be paid for under Item 618, "Conduit" or Special Specification ITS Conduit.

- 6.3. **Relocate.** The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided for under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "ITS Ground Mount Cabinet (Relocate)" of the type and configuration specified. This price is full compensation for removing existing ground mounted cabinets as shown on the plans; removing existing foundations; backfilling and surface placement; hauling and installing ITS ground mounted cabinets; for furnishing and placing anchor bolts, nuts, and washers; for appropriately grounding the cabinet; and equipment, materials, labor, tools, and incidentals necessary to relocate an existing ITS ground mounted cabinet, complete in place, and ready for the installation of ITS equipment.

New conduit will be paid for under Item 618, "Conduit" or Special Specification ITS Conduit.

- 6.4. **Remove.** The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided for under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "ITS Ground Mount Cabinet (Remove)" of the type and configuration specified. This price is full compensation for removing existing ITS ground mounted cabinets as shown on the plans; removing existing foundations; backfilling and surface placement; loading and hauling; and equipment, materials, labor, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the removal of existing ITS ground mounted cabinets.

# Special Specification 6010

## Closed Circuit Television (CCTV) Field Equipment



### 1. DESCRIPTION

Furnish, install, relocate, or remove closed circuit television (CCTV) field equipment at locations shown on the plans, or as directed.

### 2. MATERIALS

2.1. **General Requirements.** Fabricate, provide, assemble, and install materials that are new, corrosion resistant and in strict accordance with the details shown on the plans and in the specifications.

Provide CCTV field equipment that is compatible with software currently in operation in order to interface with the existing equipment and software located in the Department's Traffic Management Control (TMC) Centers across the state.

CCTV field equipment to include the following:

- color video camera units,
- camera lenses, filters, control circuits and accessories,
- camera housing,
- medium duty pan and tilt units with click and drag position control,
- camera control receivers,
- local field control unit (if required for operation),
- video and camera control and power cable connectors and assemblies,
- video, data, and power surge suppression, and
- built-in ID generator.

2.2. **Functional Requirements for Analog CCTV.** Provide color video cameras that are solid state design and that meet the following functional requirements:

2.2.1. **General.**

2.2.1.1. **Digital Signal Processing (DSP):**

- digital zoom with manual override functionality,
- auto and manual iris control,
- auto and manual exposure control with built in frame buffer,
- auto and manual focus control, and
- built-in ID generator, with white letters on black outline minimum or approved equivalent.

2.2.1.2. **Image Pickup Device.** Single chip interline transfer solid state color matrix charge-coupled device (CCD) or complementary metal-oxide semiconductor (CMOS) sensor. Provide a sensor having a minimum of 752 (H) X 480 (V) effective pixels.

2.2.1.3. **Resolution.** Greater than 350 lines vertical and greater than 460 lines horizontal, interlaced 2:1, measured per EIA-170A Standard. No discernible interlace jitter or line pairing on the viewing monitor. System limiting resolution that conforms to FCC regulations for broadcast signals.

2.2.1.4. **Frame Rate.** Adjustable frame rate frequency up to 30 frames per second.

- 2.2.1.5. **Encoded NTSC Video Signal Format.** Conformance to the National Television Standards Committee (NTSC) specification and produce NTSC compatible video in accordance with EIA-170A Standard, governed by the Electronic Components Association (ECA), for video output 1 V p-p composite also known as 140 IRE units per Institute of Radio Engineers (IRE). Provide up to 16 dB automatic gain control (AGC).
- 2.2.1.6. **Output Impedance.** 75 ohms  $\pm$  5%.
- 2.2.1.7. **Aspect Ratio.** Width to height aspect ratio of 4:3.
- 2.2.1.8. **Image Quality.** Ability to produce clear, free from distortion, usable video images of the areas, vehicles, objects, and other subjects visible from a roadside CCTV site. Ensure that video produced by the camera is true, accurate, distortion free, and free from transfer smear, oversaturation, and any other image defect that negatively impacts image quality under all lighting and weather conditions in both color and monochromatic modes.
- 2.2.1.9. **Over Exposure Protection.** Minimize glare and incur no permanent damage to the camera when pointed directly at strong light sources, including the sun, for brief periods of time.
- 2.2.1.10. **Geometric Distortion.** Zero.
- 2.2.1.11. **Signal to Noise Ratio (AGC Off).** 50 dB Minimum (weighted at 4.5 MHz).
- 2.2.1.12. **Electronic Shutter Speed.** Automatic shutter that is user selectable down to at least 1/10,000 sec.
- 2.2.1.13. **Electronic Image Stabilization.** User selectable on or off electronic image stabilization at 5 Hz and 10 Hz minimum.
- 2.2.1.14. **Day (Color) and Night (Mono).** Auto and manual switchover and iris control with user selectable modes for auto and manual control capabilities.
- 2.2.1.15. **Auto White Balance.** Color quality that is maintained by a continuous through the lens automatic white balance for color temperatures from 2850 K to greater than 5100 K with less than 10 IRE units unbalance.
- 2.2.1.16. **Inverted Operation.** Automatic or manual activation image inversion or "flip" operation when rotating through 0° or 180° vertical tilt positions.
- 2.2.1.17. **Mean Time Before Failure.** A minimum of 43,800 hr. or 5 yr. without mechanical malfunction or failure. Act of God failures are exempt.
- 2.2.2. **Lens.** Provide an integral lens assembly for each camera with the following features:
- an f/1.6 or better glass multi-coated zoom lens with variable focal lengths with a minimum 30X zoom range,
  - 10X auto and manual digital zoom minimum, and
  - automatic and manual focus and iris control.
- Provide lenses with capabilities for remote control of the zoom, focus, and iris operations. Mechanical or electrical means provided to protect the motors from overrunning in extreme positions. Lens and controller system capable of both auto iris and remote manual iris operation. Capabilities of lens for auto and manual zoom and focus control. Motorized iris as opposed to auto iris type, for system control capability.
- 2.2.3. **Network Interface Requirements.** Provide equipment that is compatible with the Department's Lonestar™ software and can be integrated into the Department's TMC CCTV control sub-systems through NTCIP 1205 Version 1.08 or latest Department approved version, Open Network Video Interface Forum (ONVIF), or approved equal. Support CoHu, Pelco D, Pelco P protocols, or approved equal for control.

Provide equipment that is compatible with other devices using Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Alliance (TIA/EIA)-232 or EIA-422/485 at a rate of 9600 bps.

Provide camera equipment that supports local and remote configuration and management. Configuration and management functions must include access to all user-programmed features, including but not limited to, network configuration, video settings, device monitoring, control setting, and security functions. Configuration and management is achieved through serial login, telnet login, web-based interface, or manufacturer software. Provide manufacturer software with camera for local configuration, system maintenance and management control.

- 2.3. **Functional Requirements for Digital CCTV.** Provide color video cameras that produce digital video in standard definition or high definition that meet the following functional requirements:
- 2.3.1. **General.**
- 2.3.1.1. **Digital Signal Processing (DSP):**
- digital zoom,
  - auto and manual iris control,
  - auto and manual exposure control with built in frame buffer,
  - auto and manual focus control, and
  - built-in ID generator, with white letters on black outline minimum or approved equivalent.
- 2.3.1.2. **Image Pickup Device.** 1.2 megapixel (1,200,000 pixels), or better, progressive scan digital CCD or CMOS sensor.
- 2.3.1.3. **Resolution.** Support the following resolutions:
- 720p (1280 x 720 pixel array),
  - D1 (720 x 480 pixel array),
  - CIF (352 x 240 pixel array), and
  - VGA (640 x 480 pixel array) at a minimum dependent on video stream configuration.
- 2.3.1.4. **Frame Rate.** Allow user selectable frame rates at 30, 15, 7, 4, 2, and 1 frames per second.
- 2.3.1.5. **Data Rate.** Scalable from 64 kbps to 8 Mbps
- 2.3.1.6. **Video Stream Format.** Allow simultaneous encoding and transmission, of a minimum, two configurable digital video streams in conformance with the Moving Picture Experts Group's MPEG-4 part 10 (H.264) and Motion JPEG (MJPEG) video compression technology in accordance with the ISO and IEC requirements detailed in the ISO/IEC 14496-10 standard or most current version. Support configuration of the following at a minimum:
- H.264,
  - MJPEG,
  - H.264 + H.264, and
  - H.264 + MJPEG.
- 2.3.1.7. **Video Stream.** Support both uni-cast (one-to-one) and multi-cast (one-to-many).
- 2.3.1.8. **Aspect Ratio.** Support width to height aspect ratio of 4:3 or 16:9 dependent on TMC monitor video format functionality.
- 2.3.1.9. **Image Quality.** Ensure that video produced by the camera is true, accurate, distortion free, and free from transfer smear, oversaturation, and any other image defect that negatively impacts image quality under all lighting and weather conditions in both color and monochromatic modes.

- 2.3.1.10. **Wide Dynamic Range (WDR).** Operation with manual override option.
- 2.3.1.11. **Over Exposure Protection.** Minimize glare and incur no permanent damage to the camera when pointed directly at strong light sources, including the sun, for brief periods of time.
- 2.3.1.12. **Geometric Distortion.** Zero.
- 2.3.1.13. **Signal to Noise Ratio (AGC Off).** 50 dB minimum (weighted at 4.5 MHz).
- 2.3.1.14. **Electronic Shutter Speed.** Automatic shutter that is user selectable down to at least 1/10,000 sec.
- 2.3.1.15. **Electronic Image Stabilization.** User selectable on or off electronic image stabilization at 5 Hz and 10 Hz minimum.
- 2.3.1.16. **Day (Color) and Night (Mono).** Auto and manual switchover and iris control with user selectable modes for auto and manual control capabilities.
- 2.3.1.17. **Auto White Balance.** Color quality that is maintained by a continuous through the lens automatic white balance for color temperatures from 2850 K to greater than 5100 K with less than 10 IRE units unbalance.
- 2.3.1.18. **Inverted Operation.** Automatic image inversion or "flip" when rotating through 0° or 180° vertical tilt positions when not an integrated unit.
- 2.3.1.19. **Mean Time Before Failure.** A minimum of 43,800 hr. or 5 yr. without mechanical malfunction or failure. Act of God failures are exempt.

2.3.2. **Lens.** Provide an integral lens assembly for each camera with the following features:

- an f/1.6 or better glass multi-coated zoom lens with variable focal lengths with a minimum 18X zoom range,
- 10X auto and manual digital zoom minimum, and
- automatic and manual focus and iris control.

Provide lenses with capabilities for remote control of the zoom, focus, and iris operations. Mechanical or electrical means provided to protect the motors from overrunning in extreme positions. Lens and controller system capable of both auto iris and remote manual iris operation. Capabilities of lens for auto and manual zoom and focus control. Motorized iris as opposed to auto iris type, for system control capability.

2.3.3. **Network Interface Requirements.**

Provide CCTV field equipment that can integrate with the Department's Lonestar™ software and can be integrated into the Department's TMC CCTV control sub-systems through NTCIP 1205 Version 1.08 or higher, Open Network Video Interface Forum (ONVIF), or approved equal. Support Coahuila, Pelco D or Pelco P protocols, or approved equal for control.

Provide camera equipment with a Local Area Network (LAN) connection that supports the requirements detailed in the IEEE 802.3 Standard for 10/100 Ethernet connections for half-duplex or full-duplex and provide auto negotiation. Provide equipment with a minimum of 1 Ethernet port, which has a 10/100 Base-TX connection. Provide connectors that conform to EIA and TIA requirements.

Support, at a minimum, RTP, RTSP, UDP/IP, TCP/IP, IPv4, HTTP, IGMPv2, DHCP, NTP, IEEE 802.1x, Ethernet 802.3u, and Telnet.

Provide camera equipment that supports local and remote configuration and management. Configuration and management functions must include access to all user-programmed features, including but not limited to, network configuration, video settings, device monitoring, control setting, and security functions. Configuration



and management is achieved through serial login, telnet login, web-based interface, or manufacturer software. Provide manufacturer software with camera for local configuration, system maintenance and management control.

- 2.4. **Cable Assembly.** Provide camera power and communication cable assembly equipped with cables used for video feed, camera control including PTZ function, communications signaling, and power supply. Camera power and communication cable can be configured as a composite cable or series of isolated cables. The following cable functions may be required depending on the data and video communication interface requirements, as shown on the plans.
- 2.4.1. **Serial.** Provide shielded twisted pair serial based communication cable rated for outdoor use in conformance to EIA RS-232/422/485 Standards, governed by the Electronic Components Association (ECA). Provide serial based conversion hardware, if necessary, to achieve this function.
- 2.4.2. **Video.** Provide coaxial cable, rated for outdoor use, between the camera and the communications equipment interface that is a mid-range RG-59/U type with a solid center conductor with 100% shield coverage, with a cellular polyethylene dielectric, or a cable as recommended by the manufacturer of the CCTV field equipment.
- 2.4.3. **Ethernet.** Provide a shielded twisted pair (STP) Category 5E (or equivalent) at a minimum rated for outdoor use in conformance to TIA/EIA 568B Standard. Cable must not exceed an attenuation of 30 dB per 300 ft. of cable at 100 MHz.
- 2.4.4. **Power.** Provide 3-wire, insulated for 300 V minimum, 115 VAC or 24 VAC power cabling between the camera and the power supply. If 24 VAC power is required, provide needed power supply conversion equipment.

Power may be achieved through Power over Ethernet (PoE) through a power supply or mid-span PoE injector, to be subsidiary to the camera unit, and must conform to the IEEE 802.3af or IEEE 802.3at standard or latest revision.

Provide power and communication cable assembly the entire length of the camera support structure from the camera to the cabinet with an additional 25 ft. of slack in the cabinet. Determine the appropriate length required for each site. The cable assembly is subsidiary to the camera unit.

Provide any necessary data, video, or power conversion hardware necessary to successfully integrate the camera unit into the field equipment cabinet hardware components and onto the communications backbone.

- 2.5. **Video Encoding Interoperability.** Digital video encoders and decoders are necessary to convert the analog signal to digital, transport digital packets via UDP/IP over fiber optic, copper Ethernet, wireless, or leased line networks and convert the digital packets back to an analog signal for viewing on a display monitor. Video encoding and decoding equipment may be achieved through software or hardware means. Ensure camera's encoded video is interoperable with hardware and software decoders from other manufacturers. Ensure the camera's encoded video can be decoded by a minimum of two other manufacturer's software or hardware decoders that are currently in use by the Department. Contact the Department for decoders supported prior to procurement of camera unit.

- 2.6. **Camera Housing.** Provide camera housing assembly and hardware material that reflects sunlight.

Provide camera housing with a sunshield to reduce the solar heating of the camera. The total weight of the camera (including housing, sunshield, and all internal components) must not exceed 35 lb.

Construct viewing window in such a way that unrestricted camera views can be obtained at all camera and lens positions.

Provide gaskets at cable entry point to the camera housing to prevent moisture or dust entry.

When shown on the plans or identified in the general notes, provide heating or cooling functionality with temperature sensors to maintain internal temperatures within the manufacturer required operating temperature range.

- 2.7. **Pan-Tilt Unit.** Furnish and install a medium duty anodized aluminum weatherproof pan-tilt-unit at each camera site, conforming to National Electrical Manufacturer's Association (NEMA) 4X and IP-66 rating or better, when not integral to the camera unit and housing. Provide mounting adapter and required attachment hardware to install the pan-tilt-unit to the pole or mounting bracket. Identify the type of mounting bracket and bolt pattern on shop drawings.

Provide a unit capable of a minimum of 180° vertical range of movement and horizontal movement of 360°, full, continuous rotation movement.

Provide a unit that has a pan and tilt speed of 20° per second minimum and is user adjustable through the full speed range. Unit must be capable of simultaneous pan-tilt movements with variable pan-tilt positioning control allowing variable speeds that are proportional through the zoom range.

Provide pan-tilt unit with a drive accuracy and drive repeatability of less than 1° and has an automatic pre-position speed of 120° per second minimum to a user defined preset position that is user adjustable.

Provide a pan-tilt unit, when not integral to the camera housing, capable of maintaining static position and does not move by more than 1.0° in any direction in speeds greater than 35 mph.

Ensure that the pan-tilt unit has seals and gaskets to protect the motors, gears, and cables and that the seals and gaskets are resistant to ozone, ultraviolet radiation, and other pollutants inherent to all local environmental conditions.

When shown on the plans or identified in the general notes, provide pan-tilt unit with heater that conforms to NEMA 4X standard when not integral to the camera unit and housing.

- 2.8. **Preset Functions.** Provide a camera unit capable of storing a minimum 62 presets for pan, tilt, zoom, and focus settings.

Provide a camera unit capable of user programmable tours with a minimum of 4 tours of up to 32 presets per tour. Any tours may be programmed for panning tours.

Provide a camera unit capable of user programmable sector zones with a minimum of 8 zones allowing right and left pan limitations.

Provide a camera unit capable of user programmable privacy zones with a minimum of 8 zones. Capable of click and drag position control through software.

- 2.9. **Control Receivers.** Provide a camera unit with an integrated camera control receiver, unless otherwise directed, that will execute all camera and lens functions as well as forward communication of commands for the pan-tilt functions to the pan-tilt control receiver. Mount the pan-tilt control receiver inside the pan-tilt unit.

The control receiver receives the data from the camera controller, it decodes the digital command data signals transmitted through the communication transmission interface, checks for errors, and acts on valid data to drive the pan-tilt unit and the camera controls.

Local field control is achieved through compatible control software on a laptop or through local control unit hardware located inside the field cabinet that can be EIA 19 in. rack or shelf mountable. Document that the camera control receiver and pan-tilt control receiver will execute all camera, lens, and pan-tilt functions through a laptop interface or through use of the local control unit hardware. Provide local control unit hardware only when shown on the plans or identified in the general notes.

- 2.10. **Connectors.** Provide and install connectors that are compatible with the communications equipment interfaces identified in Article 2.3.3 and Article 2.4. Supply all mating connectors. Provide all connector pins and mating connectors that are plated to achieve good electrical connection and resistance to corrosion.
- 2.11. **Source ID Generator.** Use a built-in ID Generator to insert camera ID over each of the camera-generated videos.
- Provide a minimum of 2 lines of alpha numeric, case specific, text supporting a minimum of 20 ASCII characters per line, with a minimum character height of 20 pixels, that is user programmable for displaying any combination of ID information consisting of camera, preset, privacy mask, low pressure warning, compass, and time and date at a minimum.
- Allow user selectable location of text to be displayed on the video image at the extreme top or bottom. Text display on the side of the image display prohibited .
- Automatically display the programmed ID with its associated video signal that can be turned on or off by user command.
- In the event of loss of signal or video signal failure, ID Generator automatically passes through failure message to display over video.
- Submit list of available text displays to the Department as part of documentation requirements.
- 2.12. **Cabinet Installation.** Install video communication equipment in a pole mounted equipment cabinet or in a ground mounted equipment cabinet as shown on the plans. Meet the following criteria:
- Contains all the lightning protection devices for data and video.
- Grounded to earth ground.
- Provide connectors for all inputs and outputs for data and video and additional ports for testing video and communications. Use the external connectors for testing and for connections to communication devices.
- 2.13. **Surge Protection.** Provide surge protection for the camera meeting the following requirements:
- mounting adapter – Electrically bonded to mounting structure,
  - pan-tilt mechanism – Electrically bonded to mounting adapter,
  - camera housing – Electrically bonded to pan-tilt mechanism, and
  - power and control cable surge protector – Integrated into cabinet surge protection system.
- 2.14. **Power Requirements.** Provide CCTV field equipment meeting all of its specified requirements when the input power is 115 VAC  $\pm$  20%, 60 Hz  $\pm$  3 Hz, and that maximum power required does not exceed 200 W including optional equipment.
- Provide appropriate voltage conversion, power injectors, or other power supply hardware if the camera equipment or any camera-related ancillary devices requires operating voltages other than 115 VAC  $\pm$  20%, such as 24 VAC, 12 VDC from solar power systems, or rely on PoE. Appropriate voltage converters or injectors must accept an input voltage of 115 VAC or 12 VDC from solar power systems as shown on the plans.
- 2.15. **Primary Input Power Interruption.** Provide CCTV field equipment that meets all the requirements in Section 2.1.4., "Power Interruption" of the NEMA Standard TS2 for Traffic Control System, or most current version.
- 2.16. **Power Service Transients.** Provide CCTV Field Equipment that meets the requirements for Section 2.1.6., "Transients, Power Service" of the NEMA Standard TS2, or most current version.

- 2.17. **Power Service Protection.** Provide equipment that contains readily accessible, manually resettable or replaceable circuit protection devices (such as circuit breakers or fuses) for equipment and power source protection. Provide circuit breakers or fuses sized appropriately such that no wire, component, connector, PC board or assembly is subjected to current loads in excess of their respective design limits upon failure of any single circuit element or wiring.
- 2.18. **Modular Design.** Provide CCTV field equipment hardware installed inside the cabinet that is modular in design that can be either shelf mountable or EIA 19 in. rack mountable. Clearly identify modules and assemblies with name, model number, serial number and any other pertinent information required to facilitate equipment maintenance.
- 2.19. **Connectors and Harnesses.** Make all external connections by means of connectors that are uniquely keyed to preclude improper hookups. Color-code and appropriately label with UV resistant material all wires to and from the connectors. Provide connecting harnesses of appropriate length and terminated with matching connectors for interconnection with the communications system equipment. Provide plated pins and mating connectors to improve conductivity and are corrosion resistant. All connectors utilizing solder type connections must have each soldered connection covered by a piece of heat shrink tubing securely shrunk to protect the connection for short circuiting.
- Provide a wiring diagram detailing wire function and connector pin-out.
- 2.20. **Environmental Design Requirements.** Provide equipment that conforms to NEMA TS2-2003 (R2008), International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) 60529, and NEMA 250-2008, or most current version, for the following categories:
- 2.20.1. **Temperature.** Provide equipment that conforms to NEMA TS2 Section 2.1.5.1, or latest revision, and meets all the specified requirements during and after being subjected to any combination of the following conditions:
- ambient temperature range of -30 to 165°F,
  - temperature shock not exceeding 30°F per hour,
  - relative humidity of 0 to 100%,
  - moisture condensation on all exterior surfaces caused by temperature changes, and
  - provisions for a heater and blower function will be required to maintain internal temperatures within the manufacturer's operating temperatures for temperature ranges internal to the camera unit not conforming to NEMA TS2 Standard 2.1.5.1.
- 2.20.2. **Vibration.** Provide equipment that conforms to NEMA TS2 Section 2.1.9 and Section 2.2.3, or most current version, and meets all the specified requirements during and after being subjected to a vibration of 5 to 30 Hz up to 0.5 g applied in each of three mutually perpendicular planes for 30 min.
- 2.20.3. **Shock.** Provide equipment that conforms to NEMA TS2 Section 2.1.10 and Section 2.2.4, or most current version, and does not yield permanent mechanical deformation or any damage that renders the unit inoperable when subjected to a shock of 10 g applied in each of three mutually perpendicular planes for 30 min.
- 2.20.4. **Environmental Contaminants.** Provide equipment that conforms to IEC 60529 Section 14.2.6, or most current version, for IP 66 or greater rating when providing a pressurized unit.
- Provide equipment that conforms to IEC 60529 Section 14.2.7, or most current version, for IP 67 or greater rating when providing a non-pressurized unit.
- 2.20.5. **External Icing.** Provide equipment that is tested to conform to NEMA 250-2003 Section 5.6, or latest revision.

- 2.20.6. **Corrosion.** Provide equipment that is tested to conform to NEMA 250-2003 Section 5.10, or latest revision, when located in coastal Districts. Coastal Districts are Beaumont (BMT), Corpus Christi (CRP), Houston (HOU), Pharr (PHR), and Yoakum (YKM).
- 2.20.7. **Wind Rating.** Operational in adverse weather conditions and able to withstand wind loads in accordance with Department's basic wind velocity zone map standard as shown on the plans without permanent damage to mechanical and electrical equipment.

---

### 3. CONSTRUCTION

- 3.1. **General.** Maximize standardization and consistency by utilizing industry standard techniques in equipment design and construction, with the minimum number of parts, subassemblies, circuits, cards, and modules. Design equipment for ease of maintenance.

Provide mounting bracket assemblies or apparatus to mount equipment on the following structures as detailed in the plans or on the ITS standards:

- ITS Pole,
- overhead sign bridge or cantilever overhead sign structure ,
- retaining wall, and
- concrete column or parapet.

Provide mounting bracket design with documentation submittal for approval prior to fabrication. Include all mounting plates, screws, bolts, nuts, washers, and ancillary hardware needed to fabricate the entire mounting bracket.

- 3.2. **Mechanical Components.** Provide stainless steel external screws, nuts and locking washers. Self-tapping screws are not acceptable.

Provide parts that are made of corrosion resistant material; examples include: plastic, stainless steel, anodized aluminum, or brass.

Protect all materials used in construction from fungus growth and deterioration due to sustained moisture.

Separate dissimilar metals by an inert dielectric material.

- 3.3. **Wiring.** Provide wiring that meets the requirements of the National Electrical Code (NEC) most current version. Provide wires that are cut to proper length before assembly. It is not acceptable to "double-back" wires to take up slack inside the cabinet. Lace wires neatly with nylon lacing or plastic straps. Organize cables neatly inside the cabinet and secure cables with clamps. Provide service loops at connection points when connecting to hardware inside the cabinet. No splicing of cables or exposed wiring is allowed. Clearly label all wiring.

- 3.4. **Relocation of CCTV Field Equipment.** Perform the relocation in strict conformance with the requirements herein and as shown on the plans. Completion of the work will present a neat, workmanlike, and finished appearance. Maintain safe construction practices during relocation.

Inspect the existing CCTV field equipment, with a representative from the Department, and document any evidence of damage prior to removal. Conduct a pre-removal test in accordance with the testing requirements contained in this Item to document operational functionality. Remove and deliver to the Department, existing CCTV field equipment that fail inspection.

Prior to removal of existing CCTV field equipment, disconnect and isolate the power cables from the electric power supply and disconnect all communication cabling from the equipment located inside the cabinet. Coil and store power and communication cabling inside the cabinet until such time that it can be relocated.

Remove existing CCTV field equipment as shown on the plans only at such time as authorized by the Engineer.

Use care to prevent damage to any support structures. Any portion of CCTV field equipment or camera pole structure damaged or lost will be replaced by the Contractor at his expense. Contractor to document and report to the Department any existing damage to equipment prior to removal.

Make all arrangements for connection to the power supply and communication source including any permits required for the work to be done under the Contract. Provide wire for the power connection at least the minimum size indicated on the plans and insulated for 600 V. Meet the requirements of the NEC most current version.

- 3.5. **Removal of CCTV Field Equipment.** Disconnect and isolate any existing electrical power supply prior to removal of existing CCTV field equipment,

Perform removal in strict conformance with the requirements of this Specification, and the lines, grades, details and dimensions shown on the plans. Completion of the work will present a neat, workmanlike, and finished appearance.

Any portion of the CCTV field equipment or cabinet internal components damaged or lost will be replaced by the Contractor (with items requiring the approval of the Engineer) at no cost to the Department.

All materials not designated for reuse or retention by the Department will become the property of the Contractor and be removed from the project site at the Contractor's expense. Deliver items to be retained by the Department to a location shown on the plans or general notes. The Contractor is fully responsible for any removed equipment until released by the Engineer.

- 3.6. **Contractor Experience Requirements.** Contractor or designated subcontractor must meet the following experience requirements:

- 3.6.1. **Minimum Experience.** Three years of continuous existence offering services in the installation of CCTV camera systems.

- 3.6.2. **Completed Projects.** Three completed projects consisting of a minimum of 5 cameras in each project where the personnel installed, tested and integrated CCTV cameras on outdoor, permanently mounted structure(s) and related camera control and transmission equipment. The completed CCTV camera system installations must have been in continuous satisfactory operation for a minimum of 1 yr.

- 3.6.3. **Equipment Experience.** Three projects (may be the three in the preceding paragraph) in which the personnel worked in cooperation with technical representatives of equipment suppliers to perform specific stages of work. The Contractor will not be required to furnish equipment on this project from the supplier who furnished documentation demonstrating this experience.

Submit the names, addresses and telephone numbers of the references that can be contacted to verify the experience requirements given above.

- 3.7. **Documentation Requirements.** Provide a minimum of 2 complete sets of operation and maintenance manuals in bound hard copy format, as well as an electronic copy in Adobe PDF format on a CD/DVD or removable flash drive that include the following:

- complete and accurate wiring schematic diagrams,
- complete installation procedures,
- compliance matrix documenting conformance to this specification,
- complete performance specifications (Functional, electrical, mechanical and environmental) on the unit,
- complete parts list including names of vendors for parts not identified by universal part number such as JEDEC, RETMA, or EIA,

- pictorial of component layout on circuit board,
- ID Generator list of text display options,
- complete maintenance and trouble-shooting procedures,
- complete stage-by-stage explanation of circuit theory and operation,
- testing procedures and blank test forms,
- recovery procedures for malfunction,
- instructions for gathering maintenance assistance from manufacturer, and
- provide the Department with certification documentation verifying conformance with environmental and testing requirements contained in the special specification. Certifications may be provided by the manufacturer or through independent labs.

Identify material which is copyrighted or proprietary in nature as part of the documentation submittal. The Department will comply with sensitive material and secure submittal documentation and not distribute without written approval.

### 3.8. **Testing.**

3.8.1. **New Installations.** Unless otherwise shown on the plans, perform the following tests on the applicable equipment or systems.

3.8.1.1. **Test Procedures Documentation.** Provide 5 copies of the test procedures to include tests identified in Article 5.1.2 through Article 5.1.7 inclusive and blank data forms to the Engineer for review and comment as part of material documentation requirements for each test required on this project. Include the sequence of the tests in the procedures. The Engineer will comment, approve, or reject test procedures within 30 days after Contractor submittal of test procedures. Contractor to resubmit if necessary rejected test procedures for final approval within 10 days. Review time is calendar days. Conduct all tests in accordance with the approved test procedures.

Record test data on the data forms, as well as quantitative results. No bid item measurement or payment will be made until the Engineer has verified the test results meet the minimum requirements of the specification. The data forms for all tests, except design approval tests, must be signed by an authorized representative of the Contractor.

Provide written notice to the Engineer within 48 hr. of discovery of any testing discrepancy identified during testing by the Contractor. Furnish data forms containing the acceptable range of expected results as well as the measured values.

3.8.1.2. **Design Approval Test.** Conduct a design approval test on one randomly selected unit from the prototype design manufacturing run. If only 1 design prototype is manufactured, perform this test on that unit. If supplying multiple types of the equipment, provide and test a sample of each type.

Certification from an independent testing laboratory of a successfully completed design approval test is acceptable. Ensure that the testing by this laboratory is performed in accordance with the requirements of this specification. Failure of independent tests to comply with the requirements of this specification will be grounds for rejection of any certification.

Provide a copy of the certification to the District in which this contract is executed. The data forms for the design approval tests must be signed by an authorized representative (company official) of the equipment manufacturer or by an authorized representative of an independent testing facility.

Notify the Engineer 10 working days before conducting this testing. The Department may witness all the tests. Perform the following tests:

- 3.8.1.2.1. **Power Service Transients.** Provide equipment that meets the performance requirements, specified in this Item, when subjected to the power service transients as specified in Section 2.2.7.2, "Transient Tests (Power Service)" of the NEMA TS2 standard, most current version.
- 3.8.1.2.2. **Temperature and Condensation.** Provide equipment that meets the performance requirements, specified in this Item, when subjected to the following conditions in the order specified below:
- stabilize the equipment at -30°F and test as specified in Sections 2.2.7.3, "Low-Temperature Low-Voltage Tests" and 2.2.7.4, "Low-Temperature High-Voltage Tests" of the NEMA TS2 standard, most current version
  - allow the equipment to warm up to room temperature in an atmosphere having relative humidity of at least 40%. Operate the equipment for 2 hr., while wet, without degradation or failure, and
  - stabilize the equipment at 165°F and test as specified in Sections 2.2.7.5, "High-Temperature High Voltage Tests" and 2.2.7.6, "High-Temperature Low-Voltage Tests" of the NEMA TS2 standard, most current version.
- 3.8.1.2.3. **Relative Humidity.** Provide equipment that meets the performance requirements, specified in this Item, within 30 min. of being subjected to a temperature of 165°F and a relative humidity of 18% for 48 hr.
- 3.8.1.2.4. **Vibration.** Provide equipment that shows no degradation of mechanical structure, soldered components, or plug-in components and operates in accordance with the manufacturer's equipment specifications after being subjected to the vibration tests as described in Section 2.2.8, "Vibration Test" of the NEMA TS2 standard, most current version.
- 3.8.1.2.5. **Power Interruption.** Provide equipment that meets the performance requirements, specified in this Item, when subjected to nominal input voltage variations as specified in Section 2.2.10 "Power Interruption Test" of the NEMA TS2 standard, most current version.
- 3.8.1.3. **Demonstration Test.** Conduct a demonstration test on applicable equipment at an approved Contractor facility. The Contractor may submit procedures and results from previous contracts in the same District as this Contract provided the materials and equipment are identical, provided results are less than 5 yr. old. Notify the Engineer 10 working days before conducting this testing. The Department may witness all the tests. Perform the following tests:
- 3.8.1.3.1. **Examination of Product.** Examine each unit carefully and document that the materials, design, construction, markings and workmanship comply with the requirements of this Item.
- 3.8.1.3.2. **Continuity Tests.** Check the wiring to determine conformance with the requirements of the appropriate paragraphs in this Item.
- 3.8.1.3.3. **Operational Test.** Operate each unit for at least 15 min. to permit equipment temperature stabilization and an adequate number of performance characteristics to ensure compliance with the requirements of this Item.
- 3.8.1.4. **Field Acceptance (Stand-Alone) Test.** Conduct a field acceptance test for each unit after installation as required by the Engineer in order to demonstrate compliance with the functional requirements with this Item. Exercise all stand-alone (non-network) functional operations. Notify the Engineer 5 working days before conducting this test. The field acceptance test may consist of the following:
- 3.8.1.4.1. **Physical Construction.** Document physical construction is completed in accordance with the plans and specification.
- 3.8.1.4.2. **Electrical and Communication.** Document that all connectors for grounding, surge suppression, and electrical distribution are tightened correctly. Document all power supplies and circuits are operating under the proper voltages. Document all power and communications cables are terminated correctly, secured inside the cabinet, and fitted with appropriate connectors.



- 3.8.1.4.3. **Video Signal.** For analog signal format, conduct an impedance test, through a short 75 ohm coaxial cable, to an oscilloscope waveform monitor to ensure 75 ohm output impedance to conform with NTSC standards.
- Through use of a digital, hand-held, battery operated meter, conduct a test and measure the following video signal characteristics, if applicable:
- 3.8.1.4.3.1. **Sync.** Document the amplitude of the video synchronizing pulse and check for correct video level, coaxial cable continuity, and correct termination level is 40 IRE.
- 3.8.1.4.3.2. **Luminance.** Document the white level and correct brightness setting is 100 IRE.
- 3.8.1.4.3.3. **Composite.** Document the overall amplitude of the video signal is at 140 IRE or 1 V peak to peak.
- 3.8.1.4.3.4. **Color Burst.** Document color burst amplitude at 40 IRE.
- 3.8.1.4.3.5. **Ground-loop.** Document that no ground loop exists in the video picture. Ground loop voltages in the video signal causes bars to be present on the video picture.
- Document video image is present and free from over-saturation and any other image defect in both color and monochrome modes.
- Document video support of unicast and multicast video transmission modes.
- Document the video signal from the camera is present and of consistent quality at all connection points between the camera, the cabinet, and any video conversion hardware.
- 3.8.1.4.4. **Communication.** For digital camera models, document network connection to the camera through ping or telnet session from a remote PC. For analog camera models, document serial data transmission to execute control through serial ports.
- 3.8.1.4.5. **Pan-Tilt Mechanism.** Exercise pan, tilt, zoom, and focus in all directions and execute a minimum of 3 other unique programming commands, specified by the Department, to ensure that the communication link between the cabinet and the camera is functioning properly.
- 3.8.1.5. **System Integration Test.** Conduct a system integration test on the complete functional system. Demonstrate all control and monitor functions for each system component for 72 hr. Notify the Engineer 10 working days before conducting this testing. The Department may witness all the tests.
- Provide systems integration test procedures for proper adjustment and calibration of subsystem components. Proper adjustment and calibration involves documenting settings used to meet functional requirements while providing a margin for adjustment when future conditions change. Utilize the Department control software (when available) to perform subsystem testing. At a minimum, utilize this software to verify commands and confirms, as well as, detector actuations and occupancy dwell time. The Contractor is responsible for being familiar with any existing Department equipment and software.
- The failure of any one component material or equipment item in a system integration test is justification for rejecting the entire subsystem. Each subsystem component must function as a complete integrated subsystem for a minimal continuous 72 hr. period during the system integration test.
- 3.8.1.6. **Final Acceptance Test.** Following completion of the demonstration test, standalone test, and system integration test for all subsystems, provide completed data forms containing all of the data taken, including quantitative results for all tests, a set of "as built" working drawings, and a written request to begin a data communication and final acceptance test. Provide "as built" working drawings indicating the actual material, equipment, and construction of the various subsystem components, including established and calculated XY coordinates based on project control points provided by the Engineer, when shown on the plans. Perform field surveying and calculations under the supervision of and sealed by a licensed land surveyor.

Within 10 calendar days of the request, execute a data communications test using a Department supplied software program or Contractor supplied software approved by the Department. The data communications test may be executed by the Engineer or the Contractor with the prior approval of the Engineer. The purpose of this test is to verify that the communications plant will operate with application software provided by the State.

Perform the data communications test for a period of 72 hr. If a message error or component failure occurs anywhere in the network, resume the test once repairs are completed. All components of the communications network must operate as an integral system for the duration of the test.

A message error is defined as the occurrence of a parity error, framing error, or data error in any component of the message. The error free message rate is defined as the ratio of the number of messages in which no message error occurs to the number of messages transmitted. The error free message rate must exceed 99.99% for acceptable transmission quality, both for the system as a whole, and for each component of the network.

Provide all additional test results to the Engineer for review once a successful data communications test has been completed. If all the requirements of this specification have been satisfied, contract time will stop and all subsystems will be placed into operation and operate as a complete system for a period of 90 days.

Notify the Engineer of any defects suspected in integration or function of material or equipment. Investigate any suspected defects and correct if necessary. Provide a report of finding within 2 calendar days of notice of any suspected defects. Describe the nature of the any defects reported and any corrective action taken in the report. The integrated subsystems must operate defect free as a single complete system for a minimum of 72 continuous hours during a 30 calendar day review period. If the number of defects or frequency of failures prevents any subsystems from operating as described above, the Engineer may reject the entire subsystem(s) integration test results and resume contract time. Provide any necessary corrections and resubmit subsystem(s) integration test results and a request to begin a final acceptance test which may include "as built" plans and a data communications test.

The CCTV field equipment under this Item will not be accepted until the system, inclusive of all subsystems, has operated satisfactorily for a period of 90 days and in full compliance with the plans and specifications after approval of all submitted test results and reports.

- 3.8.1.7. **Consequences of Test Failure.** If a unit fails a test, submit a report describing the nature of the failure and the actions taken to remedy the situation prior to modification or replacement of the unit. If a unit requires modification, correct the fault and then repeat the test until successfully completed. Correct minor discrepancies within 30 days of written notice to the Engineer. If a unit requires replacement, provide a new unit and then repeat the test until successfully completed. Major discrepancies that will substantially delay receipt and acceptance of the unit will be sufficient cause for rejection of the unit.

Failure to satisfy the requirements of any test is considered a defect and the equipment is subject to rejection by the Engineer. The rejected equipment may be offered again for retest provided all noncompliance has been corrected.

If a failure pattern develops in similar units within the system, implement corrective measures, including modification or replacement of units, to all similar units within the system as directed. Perform the corrective measures without additional cost or extension of the contract period.

- 3.8.1.7.1. **Consequences of Design Approval Test Failure.** If the equipment fails the design approval test, correct the fault within 30 days and then repeat the design approval test until successfully completed.
- 3.8.1.7.2. **Consequences of Demonstration Test Failure.** If the equipment fails the demonstration test, correct the fault within 30 days and then repeat the demonstration test until successfully completed.
- 3.8.1.7.3. **Consequences of Field Acceptance (Stand-Alone) Test Failure.** If the equipment fails the stand-alone test, correct the fault within 30 days and then repeat the stand-alone test until successfully completed.

3.8.1.7.4. **Consequence of System Integration Test Failure.** If the equipment fails the system integration test, correct the fault within 30 days and then repeat the systems integration test until successfully completed.

3.8.1.7.5. **Consequences of Final Acceptance Test Failure.** If a defect within the system is detected during the final acceptance test, document and correct the source of failure. Once corrective measures are taken, monitor the point of failure until a 30 consecutive day period free of defects is achieved.

If after completion of the initial test period, the system downtime exceeds 72 hr. or individual points of failure have not operated for 30 consecutive days free of defects, extend the test period by an amount of time equal to the greater of the downtime in excess of 72 hr. or the number of days required to complete the performance requirement of the individual point of failure.

3.8.2. **Relocation and Removal.**

3.8.2.1. **Pre-Test.** Provide 5 copies of the test procedures to include tests of the basic functionality of the unit and blank data forms to the Engineer for review and comment as part of material documentation requirements. Functionality tests may include, but are not limited to, physical inspection of the unit and cable assemblies, lens iris and zoom control, video signal, and pan-tilt mechanism. Include the sequence of the tests in the procedures along with acceptance thresholds. The Engineer will comment, approve, or reject test procedures within 30 days after Contractor submittal of test procedures. Contractor to resubmit if necessary rejected test procedures for final approval within 10 days. Review time is calendar days. Conduct all tests in accordance with the approved test procedures.

Conduct basic functionality testing prior to removal of CCTV field equipment. Test all functional operations of the equipment in the presence of representatives of the Contractor and the Department. Ensure that both representatives sign the test report indicating that the equipment has passed or failed each function. Once removed, the equipment becomes the responsibility of the Contractor until accepted by the Department. Compare test data prior to removal and test data after installation. The performance test results after relocation must be equal to or better than the test results prior to removal. Repair or replace those components within the system which failed after relocation but which passed prior to removal.

3.8.2.2. **Post Test.** Testing of the CCTV field equipment is for the purpose of relieving the Contractor of maintenance of the system. The Contractor will be relieved of the responsibility for maintenance of the system in accordance with Item 7, "Legal Relations and Responsibilities", after a successful test period. The Contractor will not be required to pay for electrical energy consumed by the system.

After all existing CCTV field equipment has been installed, conduct approved continuity, stand alone, and equipment system tests. Furnish test data forms containing the sequence of tests including all of the data taken as well as quantitative results for all tests. Submit the test data forms to the Engineer at least 30 days prior to the day the tests are to begin. Obtain Engineer's approval of test procedures prior to submission of equipment for tests. Send at least 1 copy of the data forms to the Engineer.

Conduct an approved stand-alone test of the equipment installation at the field site(s). At a minimum, exercise all stand-alone (non-network) functional operations of the field equipment with all of the equipment installed per the plans as directed by the Engineer. Complete the approved data forms with test results and turn over to the Engineer for review and either acceptance or rejection of equipment. Give at least 30 working days notice prior to all tests to permit the Engineer or his representative to observe each test.

The Department will conduct approved CCTV field equipment system tests on the field equipment with the central equipment. The tests will, as a minimum, exercise all remote control functions and display the return status codes from the controller.

If any unit fails to pass a test, prepare a report and deliver it to the Engineer. Describe in the report the nature of the failure and the corrective action needed. If the failure is the result of improper installation or damage during reinstallation, reinstall or replace the unit and repeat the test until the unit passes successfully, at no additional cost to the Department or extension of the Contract period.

- 3.9. **Warranty.** Warrant the equipment against defects or failure in design, materials, and workmanship for a minimum of 3 yr. or in accordance with the manufacturer's standard warranty if that warranty period is greater. The start date of the manufacturer's standard warranty will begin after the equipment has successfully passed all tests contained in the final acceptance test plan. Any CCTV field equipment with less than 90% of its warranty remaining after the final acceptance test is completed will not be accepted by the Department. Guarantee that equipment furnished and installed for this project performs according to the manufacturer's published specifications. Assign, to the Department, all manufacturer's normal warranties or guarantees on all electronic, electrical, and mechanical equipment, materials, technical data, and products furnished for and installed on the project.

CCTV field equipment will be repaired or replaced at the Contractor's expense prior to completion of the final acceptance test plan in the event of a malfunction or failure. Furnish replacement parts for all equipment within 10 days of notification of failure by the Department.

- 3.10. **Training.** Conduct a training class for a minimum of 24 hr., unless otherwise directed, for up to 10 representatives designated by the Department on procedures of installation, operations, programming hardware settings, IP programming, port settings, testing, maintenance, troubleshooting, and repair of all equipment specified within this specification. Submit to the Engineer for approval, 10 copies of the training material at least 30 days before the training begins. Conduct training within the local area unless otherwise authorized by the Engineer. Consider operations through Department's Lonestar software when developing training modules.

---

#### 4. MEASUREMENT

This Item will be measured by each CCTV field equipment unit and mounting apparatus furnished, installed, relocated, or removed, of the types specified as shown on the plans, or as directed.

---

#### 5. PAYMENT

- 5.1. **Furnish and Install.** The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit bid price for "CCTV Field Equipment (Analog)", "CCTV Field Equipment (Digital)", and "CCTV Field Controller". This price is full compensation for making fully operational CCTV field equipment including any voltage converters or injectors, cables and connectors as shown on the plans; and all documentation, testing, training, software, equipment, labor, materials, tools, and incidentals.

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" for CCTV field equipment mounting assemblies will be paid for at the unit bid price for "CCTV Mount (Pole)", "CCTV Mount (Post)", "CCTV Mount (Wall)", "CCTV Mount (Parapet)", "CCTV Mount (Pendant)", and "CCTV Mount (Mast)". This price is full compensation for furnishing and installing mounting bracket assemblies, mounting bracket hardware; and all equipment, labor, materials, tools, equipment, and incidentals necessary to mount CCTV field equipment to mounting structures as shown on the plans.

- 5.2. **Install Only.** The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit bid price for "CCTV Field Equipment (Analog) (Install Only)" and "CCTV Field Equipment (Digital) (Install Only)." This price is full compensation for making fully operational CCTV field equipment including any voltage converters or injectors, furnishing and installing additional cables and connectors as shown on the plans; and all documentation, testing, training, software, equipment, labor, materials, tools, and incidentals.
- 5.3. **Relocate.** The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" for relocation of CCTV field equipment will be paid for at the unit bid price for "Relocate CCTV Field Equipment." This price is full compensation for relocating and making fully operational existing CCTV field equipment as shown on the plans; furnishing and installing additional cables or connectors as shown on the plans; for testing, delivery and storage of components designated for salvage or reuse; and all testing, training, software, equipment, labor, materials, tools, and incidentals.

- 5.4. **Remove.** The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" for removal of CCTV field equipment will be paid for at the unit bid price for "Remove CCTV Field Equipment." This price is full compensation for removing existing CCTV field equipment as shown on the plans; removal of cables and connectors; for testing, delivery and storage of components designated for salvage; and all testing training, software, equipment, labor, materials, tools, and incidentals.

# Special Specification 6016

## Intelligent Transportation System (ITS) Multi-Duct Conduit



### 1. DESCRIPTION

Furnish and install Intelligent Transportation System (ITS) multi-duct conduit identified for fiber optic communication use of the type and size specified. Provide conduit suitable for installation in an outdoor underground environment including constant immersion in water, mounted to retaining walls, and mounted above ground on the underside of a bridge without any degradation to the conduit.

### 2. MATERIALS

Provide new materials that comply with the details shown on the plans, the requirements of this Item, and the requirements of the following Items:

- Item 400, "Excavation and Backfill for Structures,"
- Item 401, "Flowable Fill,"
- Item 402, "Trench Excavation Protection,"
- Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete,"
- Item 445, "Galvanizing,"
- Item 476, "Jacking, Boring, or Tunneling Pipe or Box,"
- Item 618, "Conduit," and
- Item 620, "Electrical Conductors".

In addition, provide ITS multi-duct conduit meeting the requirements of the following Items:

- Underwriters Laboratories (UL) 651,2420, and 2515,
- National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) Standard TC-2,
- NEMA TC-7,
- NEMA TC-14B,
- National Electrical Code (NEC), and
- Departmental Materials Specification DMS 11030, "Conduit".

Provide underground ITS multi-duct conduit materials that have been tested and listed as defined in the NEC for the specific use to meet the following industry standards:

- Bellcore/Telcordia Technologies document GR-356,
- American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)-D1784, Standard Specification for Rigid (PolyVinyl Chloride) (PVC) Compounds and (Chlorinated Poly Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Compounds,
- ASTM-D1785, Standard Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40, 80, and 120,
- ASTM-D2122, Standard Test Method for Determining Dimensions of Thermoplastic Pipe and Fittings,
- ASTM-F2160, Standard Specification for Solid Wall High Density Polyethylene (HDPE) Conduit Based in Controlled Outside Diameter,
- ASTM-D2412, Standard Test Method for Determination of External Loading, and
- ASTM-D3350, Standard Specification for Polyethylene Plastic Pipe and Fittings Materials.

Provide above ground ITS multi-duct conduit materials that have been tested and listed as defined in the NEC for the specific use to meet the following industry standards:

- ASTM-A90, Standard Test Method for Weight of Coating on Iron and Steel Articles with Zinc-Alloy Coatings,
- ASTM-D2105, Standard Test Method for Longitudinal Tensile Properties of "Fiberglass" (Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Thermoplastic-Resin) Pipe and Tube, and
- ASTM-D2444, Standard Test Method for Determination of the Impact Resistance of Thermoplastic Pipe and Fittings by Means of a Tup (Falling Weight).

### 3. EQUIPMENT

#### 3.1. General Requirements.

- 3.1.1. **Pre-Assembled Multi-Duct.** Provide a pre-assembled multi-duct conduit system of the material type specified with a nominal 4 in. inner diameter round outer duct containing 4 factory installed 1.25 in. nominal diameter round inner ducts. Inner ducts must be held together in a square configuration by a system of spacers. The design of the spacers, which hold the individual conduits in formation, must be capable of locking them tightly together to prevent free twisting of the inner ducts.

For pre-assembled multi-duct, provide a single protective end cap for each bundled 10 ft. or 20 ft. conduit sections, factory bends, and fittings.

- 3.1.2. **Fittings.** Provide all required sweeps, bends, repair couplings, ground box termination kits, alternative outer ducts, adapters, preassembled split repair kits, lubrication access fittings, tug-plugs, slit-inner duct plugs, hangers, brackets, expansion joints, and accessories to complete the conduit system as incidentals.

- 3.1.3. **Flexural Modulus.** Do not exceed the ovality of the conduit system by 5%.

#### 3.1.4. Environmental Requirements.

For underground construction, provide conduit that will perform in an ambient temperature range of -30°F to 122°F without degradation of material properties In accordance with the NEC.

For above ground conduit construction, provide conduit that performs in an ambient temperature range of -60°F to 200°F without degradation of material properties.

- 3.1.5. **Corrosion Resistance.** Provide a conduit system that is resistant to most harsh chemicals and protected against degradation due to oxidation or general corrosion.
- 3.1.6. **Direct Bury.** Provide a conduit system capable of being installed by trenching or boring as shown on the plans.
- 3.1.7. **Free of Defects.** Provide a conduit system free of visible cracks, holes, or other physical defects that would degrade its performance.
- 3.1.8. **Uniformity.** Provide conduit that is uniform as practical in respect to overall dimensions, color, density, and thickness.
- 3.1.9. **Stabilization.** Provide conduit with a UV light stabilizer which will protect it, for a minimum of 12 mo., from degradation due to prolonged exposure to direct sunlight.
- 3.1.10. **Conduit Identification.** Provide conduit with a durable identification labeling showing the name and trademark of the manufacturer, conduit size, date of manufacture and "TxDOT - Fiber Optic Cable System" identification.

- 3.1.11. **Grounding.** Provide a bare copper No. 8 AWG system grounding conductor, in accordance with Item 620, "Electrical Conductors", in 1 inner duct of the conduit duct system if no other cable is to be installed in the conduit system for use as a grounding conductor between ground boxes.
- 3.2. **Outer Duct.**
- 3.2.1. **PVC Multi-Duct.** Provide heavy walled Schedule 40 polyvinyl chloride (PVC) or heavy walled Schedule 80 PVC outer duct with a nominal inside diameter (ID) of 4 in. as shown on the plans or as directed for underground construction. Provide minimum 20 ft. sections of conduit.
- Incorporate a longer integral bell in place of the standard 3-1/2 in. bell to accommodate the length of the coupling body.
- Provide 4 in. Schedule 40 conduit with an average outside diameter (OD) of 4.5 in. and a minimum wall thickness of 0.237 in..
- Provide 4 in. Schedule 80 conduit, or equivalent with an average OD of 4.75 in. and a minimum wall thickness of 0.337 in. When providing an equivalent to Schedule 80, provide independent laboratory testing certifications showing the equivalent product meets or exceeds performance and testing requirements to that of Schedule 80.
- 3.2.2. **Rigid Metal Multi-Duct.** Provide galvanized rigid metal conduit (RMC) outer duct with a nominal ID of 4 in. as shown on the plans or as directed. Provide a minimum 10 ft. section of conduit.
- Provide 4 in. RMC with an average OD of 4.5 in. and a minimum wall thickness of 0.225 in.
- 3.2.3. **Fiberglass Multi-Duct.** Provide, bullet resistant, pure, high grade, reinforced thermosetting resin conduit outer duct with a nominal ID of 4 in. as shown on the plans or as directed. Provide a minimum 10 ft. section of conduit.
- Provide 4 in. fiberglass conduit with a minimum OD of 4.25 in. and a minimum wall thickness of 0.250 in.
- 3.3. **Inner ducts.** Provide inner duct Schedule 40 PVC or High Density Polyethylene (HDPE) conduit with a 1.25 in. nominal diameter. Extrude inner ducts in a controlled OD fashion.
- 3.3.1. **Spacers.** Hold together the inner ducts with spacers located throughout each section of conduit. Factory install the system of spacers to hold inner ducts in place during transport and maintain alignment within the outer duct. Mold spacers from high impact plastic, and be factory certified to withstand all handling pressures and stresses.
- 3.3.2. **Longitudinal Ribbing.** For HDPE inner ducts, incorporate longitudinal ribbing and permanent dry lubricant that is extruded to provide friction reduction in cable installation.
- 3.3.3. **Identification by Color.** Provide inner ducts that are uniquely defined by the extrusion of a different color for each of the inner ducts; colors must be orange, yellow, red, and black.
- Provide black inner duct that is placed directly in line with the manufacturer's identification on the outer duct for ease of identification and installation.
- Duct designated for backbone fiber will be black in color; duct designated for distribution fiber will be orange and red in color; and duct designated for drop (field cabinet) fibers cable will be yellow in color.
- 3.3.4. **Pull Cord.** Provide a flat pull cord in all empty inner ducts. Provide a pull cord with a tensile strength of 1,250 lb. minimum and have foot markings to determine length installed.



- 3.4. **Fittings.** Provide fittings with the same material to the connecting conduit unless otherwise shown on the plans.
- 3.5. **Coupling Body.** Provide a factory installed primary coupling body that is manufactured as a hard plastic coupling body incorporating conical shaped target areas to accommodate self-alignment of each inner duct upon field assembly.
- Provide a coupling body that incorporates sealing devices to facilitate field assembly and prevent water and foreign material leakage from outside the multi-duct system and to prevent air leakage from inside the inner ducts. Assemble solely by hand without use of special tools such that no lubricant will be required for field assembly of this conduit system.
- Provide the coupling body with its sealing members sealing the outer walls of the inner ducts and the inner wall of the outer duct providing an airtight seal from within the inner duct system and a watertight seal from the outside of the outer duct.
- Provide the gasket or sealing members that is an anti-reversing design in such that the lengths of conduit stay joined together without the need for solvent cement.
- Provide the field connection end of the internal coupling body that incorporates shaped target areas to accommodate self-alignment of the inner ducts with bore openings during field assembly.
- Provide the coupling body that has one of the bore openings on the field assembly side uniquely identified to facilitate proper continuous inner duct alignment during field assembly.
- The coupling body must seal the inner duct so that after the application of 100 psi to an inner duct, the inner duct must be capable of maintaining a minimum of 15 psi for 24 hr. Employ an approved independent commercial testing laboratory to perform the above test. Submit certified reports of test to Department.
- 3.6. **Expansion Joints.** Provide expansion joints having a material similar to the connecting conduit unless otherwise shown on the plans.
- Use conduit expansion fittings at structure expansion joint crossings.
- 3.7. **Termination Kits.** Provide end or pass-through termination kits from the same conduit manufacturer for termination in ground boxes and junction boxes.
- Ensure a watertight seal of conduit to structure wall when terminating conduit.
- 3.8. **Multi-Duct Sweeps.** Conduit deflection should not deviate more than 1 in. horizontally or vertically per foot (1:12) of running length of conduit. Long conduit sweeps should be used wherever possible to change conduit direction in order to reduce the pulling tension required during cable installation.
- For conduit deflection at obstructions, utilities, or transitions to structures where the 1:12 deflection requirement above or long sweeps are not possible, use complete conduit manufactured minimum 36 in. radius sweeps (11-1/4°, 22-1/2°, 30°, 45°, and 90° angles) complete with bell and spigot. Do not field bend conduit.
- 3.9. **Fiber Optic Cable Route Markers.** Furnish tubular delineator markers, minimum 6 ft. in length and a minimum 3 in. OD, and constructed of Type III HDPE material. Provide marker assemblies that are orange in color and ultraviolet stabilized to help prevent components from color fading, warping, absorbing water, and deterioration with prolonged exposure to the elements. Refer to the Standard Details for details of the text on the decal that should be affixed to each marker. Ensure that all markers furnished on this project are new and consistent in appearance.

Install markers using a method that firmly and securely anchors the marker a minimum of 1 ft. into the ground to prohibit twisting and easy removal. When located at an ITS ground box, marker may be placed within the concrete riprap apron avoiding rebar reinforcement. Spacing between markers should not exceed 1,000 ft. or as shown on the plans and placed at significant changes in direction such as a 90° turn. Do not place markers in any roadway paved surface.

---

## 4. CONSTRUCTION

- 4.1. **Underground Construction.** Place conduit in accordance with the lines, grades, details and dimensions shown on the plans or as directed. Maintain constant slope to prevent water from being trapped in the conduit system.

Ream all conduit ends to remove burrs and sharp edges.

Install underground conduit system a minimum of 42 in. from ground surface to the top of the conduit unless otherwise directed or to avoid utility conflicts or field conditions. When conditions require trench depths greater than 5 ft., provide trench protection in accordance with Item 402, "Trench Excavation Protection." Install conduit in accordance with the requirements of the NEC and USDA RUS.

Fasten all external conduit placed on structures with conduit straps or hangers as shown on the plans or as directed. Conduit straps, hanger systems, and junction boxes are incidental to this Item.

Fit the conduit terminations with bushings or bell ends with duct plugs. Seal inner ducts with duct plugs within 24 hr. of conduit placement. This includes but is not limited to intermediate or incomplete sections of conduit system prior to conduit splicing or termination in ground boxes.

Document Global Positioning System (GPS) coordinate points, in NAD83, and provide to the Department for shifts or deviations of the ITS multi-duct alignment from the plans required to avoid obstructions or utilities. GPS coordinate points to be recorded at the point of curvature and point of tangent for horizontal or vertical transitions and include installed depth.

- 4.1.1. **Proofing.** Prior to installation of cables or final acceptance, pull a spherical template having a diameter of not less than 75% of the inside diameter of the inner duct through the inner duct to insure that the inner duct is free from obstruction. At the conclusion of proofing, fit ends of all empty inner ducts with duct plugs or caps within 24 hr.

- 4.2. **Trench Construction.** Provide minimum Schedule 40 PVC conduit when conduit is installed through trenching method unless otherwise shown on the plans or as directed.

Provide a 2 in. minimum layer of sand at the bottom of the trench to serve as a bedding material for construction.

Provide conduit spacers made of a non-metallic material designed for installation underground and encased in concrete. Spacers should be of the type recommended by the conduit manufacturer and designed with an interlocking device and stackable to relieve the conduit of both horizontal and vertical stress. Provide spacers sized appropriately for the conduit with a minimum height of 2 in. spaced at 5 ft. intervals throughout the trench. Set conduit spacers directly on the sand bedding. Spacers must be anchored to prevent floating of conduit system and maintain constant slope.

Conduit system will be encased in the following materials based on depth of trench:

- 4.2.1. **Greater than 24 in.** For trench depths greater than 24 in. from the ground surface to the top of the ITS multi-duct conduit, encase the conduits in flowable fill to an elevation of 6 in. above the top of conduit in accordance with Item 401, "Flowable Backfill," or Class B concrete, maximum aggregate size 5, in accordance with Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete." Class B concrete at the discretion of the Engineer and will be shown on the plans. Backfill above encasement as defined in Section 4.2.3.

- 4.2.2. **Less than 24 in.** When a trench depth less than 24 in. is required, encase the conduits in Class B concrete, maximum aggregate size 5, to an elevation of 6 in. above the top of conduit in accordance with Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete." Backfill above encasement as defined in Section 4.2.3.
- 4.2.3. **Excavation and Backfill.** Trench, excavate, and backfill as shown on the plans and in accordance with Item 400, "Excavation and Backfill for Structures."
- 4.2.4. **Marking Tape.** Place a 4 in. wide detectable underground metalized mylar conduit marking tape over the ITS conduit at a minimum depth of 1 ft. below grade when no other electrical marking tape required or 8 in. below electrical marking tape when provisioned under Item 618, "Conduit".
- Imprint the marking tape "TxDOT Conduit and Fiber Optic Cable System - Call TxDOT Before Proceeding" every 18 in.
- 4.2.5. **Restoration of Trench Areas.** Where existing surfacing is removed for placing conduit, repair by backfilling with material equal in composition and density to the surrounding areas and by replacing any removed surfacing, such as asphalt pavement or concrete riprap, with like material to equivalent condition in accordance with Item 400, "Excavation and Backfill for Structures."
- 4.3. **Boring Construction.** Jacking and boring when required will be in accordance with Item 476, "Jacking, Boring, or Tunneling Pipe or Box"..
- When boring under pavement shallower than 48 in. from finish grade to top of conduit, provide Schedule 40 steel casing under pavement to encase the conduit system as shown on the plans unless otherwise directed. Provide steel casing of a size to accommodate all conduits in addition to 20% space capacity for pulling conduits through the steel casing. Steel casing will be furnished in accordance with this Item.
- During boring operation, locate bore head every 10 ft. along the bore path and before traversing underground utilities or structures. Use digital walkover locating system to track bore head during boring operation. Ensure locating system is capable of determining pitch, roll, heading, depth, and horizontal position of the bore head and document this information at the intervals specified above for as-built information..
- 4.4. **Above Ground Construction.** Place conduit in accordance with the lines, grades, details and dimensions shown on the plans or as directed. Maintain constant slope to prevent water from being trapped in the conduit system.
- Provide rigid metal conduit or fiberglass conduit for outer duct when system is mounted externally along a bridge or above ground structure. Provide fiberglass or other non-corrosive outer duct for coastal Districts where conduit is exposed to corrosive environments due to salt in the air.
- Provide rigid metal conduit outer duct that is hot-dipped galvanized in accordance with Item 445, "Galvanizing."
- Ground rigid metal conduit in accordance with the Department's Electrical Details and in accordance with the NEC.
- Provide fiberglass conduit that is bullet resistant, heavy walled, pure, high grade, reinforced thermosetting resin conduit.
- Provide conduit, elbows, and fittings that are manufactured from the same resin, hardener, or glass systems manufactured by the same filament wound system.
- 4.5. **Testing.** Perform tests in accordance with industry testing requirements identified in Article 2, "Materials."
- 4.5.1. **General.** Furnish certified documentation from an independent testing laboratory documenting compliance with all ASTM, NEMA, NEC, UL, and Telcordia Technologies standards as referenced in this Item.

Provide test procedures and blank test forms and conduct performance tests for all materials and equipment not previously tested and approved. If technical data is not considered adequate for approval, samples may be requested for test. The Contract period will not be extended for time lost or delays caused by testing prior to final approval of any items.

Compare the results of each test with the requirements of this Item. Failure to conform to the requirements of any test must be identified as a defect and the materials will be subject to rejection by the Engineer. Offer rejected materials again for retest provided all non-compliances have been corrected and retested by the Contractor with evidence submitted to the Engineer.

- 4.5.2. **Examination of Product.** Examine each conduit system component prior to installation carefully to verify that the materials, design, construction, markings, and workmanship comply with the requirements of this Item.
- 4.5.3. **References.** The ITS multi-duct conduit system supplier must submit 3 references, preferably State Departments of Transportation, where this supplier's conduit system has functioned successfully for a period of no less than 1 yr. Include current name and address of organization, and the current name and telephone number of an individual from the organization who can be contacted to verify system installation. Provide this information with documentation submittal. Failure to furnish the above references will be sufficient reason for rejection of the supplier's equipment.
- 4.6. **Documentation Requirements.** Submit documentation of the conduit system consisting of the following for Engineer approval 30 days prior to installation:
- manufacturer specifications or cut sheets for all components of the conduit duct system,
  - laboratory certified material test reports documenting conformance with pertinent standards identified under Article 2, "Materials",
  - GPS coordinates,
  - pre-installation test procedures,
  - post-installation test procedures, and
  - as-built of installed conduit system.

---

## 5. MEASUREMENT

ITS multi-duct conduit will be measured by the linear foot of the multi-duct conduit system.

Fiber optic cable road marker will be measured by each maker furnished and installed.

---

## 6. PAYMENT

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided for under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "ITS Multi-Duct Conduit" of the types and construction method specified. This price is full compensation for furnishing and installing conduit; for jacking, boring, steel encasement, excavating, furnishing, and placing backfill; concrete encasement; replacing pavement structure, sod, riprap, curbs, or other surface; testing of the conduit system; for furnishing and installing all fittings, clamps, sweeps, bends, repair couplings, adapters, ground box or manhole termination kits, pre-assembled split repair kits, lubrication access, fittings, hangers, brackets, junction boxes, expansion joints, concrete, and detectable underground metalized mylar conduit marking tape; pull cords, and for all labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Fiber Optic Cable Road Marker." This price is full compensation for furnishing and installing all cable markers; and for materials, equipment, labor, tools, documentation, warranty, training and incidentals.

Copper grounding conductor will be paid under Item 620, "Electrical Conductors."

This Item applies only to ITS multi-duct conduit. Any other conduit for communication or electrical use will be in accordance with and paid for under Item 618, "Conduit."

## Special Specification 6027

# Preparation of Existing Conduits, Ground Boxes, or Manholes



### 1. DESCRIPTION

Prepare conduits, ground boxes, or manholes; replace conduits, ground boxes, or manholes, when necessary; replace conduit fittings with junction boxes; replace damaged ground box or manholes covers; adjust ground box or manholes covers; install pull lines in conduits; install cable racks in ground boxes or manholes.

### 2. MATERIALS

Provide new materials that comply with the details shown on the plans, the requirements of this Item, and to the pertinent requirements of the following Items:

- Item 624, "Ground Boxes"
- Item 465, "Manholes and Inlets"

When conduit replacement is required, provide conduit meeting the requirements of Item 618, "Conduit." Use conduit of same size and type of that being replaced or as directed.

Provide 24 in. × 24 in. × 12 in. (L × W × D) minimum size NEMA 4X junction boxes with screw covers.

Provide polyester tapes or rope pull cords with a tensile strength of at least 1200 lb.

Provide heavy duty, non-metallic, non-corrosive cable racks that can support a minimum dead load of 300 lbs. Ensure cable racks are resistant to the effects of oils, hydrocarbons, common esters, ketones, ethers, or amides. Ensure cable racks are adjustable between 8 in. and 14 in. wide. Do not provide grounding or insulators for cable racks.

### 3. CONSTRUCTION

Check existing conduit and ground boxes.

- 3.1. **Preparation of Conduit, Ground Box or Manhole.** Pull a mandrel through empty conduits. Use a mandrel with a diameter greater than 70% of the inside diameter of the conduit and 2 in. length. Repair or replace conduit runs that will not allow passage of the mandrel. Replace conduit deemed impractical to repair or remains unsuitable in accordance with Item 618, "Conduit." Clean the conduit by pulling a rubber swab slightly larger in diameter than the conduit.

Blow compressed air through conduits that contain wires. Remove debris from the conduit by pushing a fish tape through the conduit. Do not use water to clear debris. Retest the conduit by blowing compressed air.

Install 1 pull cord in each conduit for use in installing the conductors, cables, or innerduct. Leave 1 pull cord in each conduit after the conductors, cables, or innerduct have been installed.

Remove silt and debris from ground boxes or manholes prior to installing cable.

- 3.2. **Installation of Ground Box or Manhole.** Furnish new ground boxes or manholes as directed. Install ground boxes or manholes as shown the plans or as directed.

Backfill disturbed surface with material equal in composition and density to the surrounding area. Replace surfacing material with similar material to an equivalent condition.

- 3.3. **Installation or Adjustment of Ground Box or Manhole Covers.** Remove, dispose, and install ground box or manhole covers as shown on the plans or as directed. Adjust ground box or manhole covers as shown on the plans or as directed. Adjustment may include welding, raising, or lowering.

Backfill disturbed surface with material equal in composition and density to the surrounding area. Replace surfacing material with similar material to an equivalent condition.

- 3.4. **Installation of Junction Box.** Locate conduit fittings in conduits carrying fiber optic cables. Replace the conduit fitting and associated section of conduit with a junction box. Install junction boxes as shown on the plans.

- 3.5. **Installation of Cable Rack Assembly.** Install cable racks to permit coiling of conductors or cables without violating the manufacturer's minimum bending radius. Install 2 cable rack supports and 4 adjustable levels on each support, at a minimum, on each wall of the ground box or manhole as shown on plans or as directed. Anchor the cable rack support permanently to the ground box wall with mechanical or powder actuated fasteners. Use fasteners with an ultimate pull out strength of at least 2500 lb. and ultimate shear strength of at least 3000 lb. Provide sufficient cable supports for the particular number of conductors or cables coiled or passing through the ground box or manhole as shown on the plans or as directed.

---

#### 4. MEASUREMENT

This Item will be measured by the foot of conduit cleared, tested, replaced and repaired, by each cable rack, junction box, ground box, or manhole installed or prepared, and by each ground box or manhole cover replaced or adjusted.

---

#### 5. PAYMENT

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Conduit (Prepare)," "Junction Box (Install)," "Manhole (Install)," "Ground Box (Install)," "Manhole (Prepare)," "Ground Box (Prepare)," "Cover (Replace)" of the sizes specified, "Cover (Adjust)," and "Cable Rack Assembly (Install)." This price is full compensation for cleaning and testing conduit, ground boxes, and manholes; furnishing and installing pull cords, ground boxes, manholes, junction boxes, and cable racks; excavating and backfilling; adjusting ground boxes and manholes covers; disposal of unsalvageable material; and equipment, materials, labor, tools, and incidentals.

Repair of existing conduit will be paid for by the Department in accordance with Article 9.7., "Payment for Extra Work and Force Account Method."

# Special Specification 6028

## Dynamic Message Sign System



### 1. DESCRIPTION

Transport, install, and test Department-furnished Dynamic Message Signs (DMS), controller, and equipment cabinets.

### 2. MATERIALS

Provide all materials not supplied by the Department necessary for the DMS installation. All materials provided by the Contractor must be new. Include a task in the project schedule for delivery of Department furnished materials and provide a minimum of 30 days' notice to the Department for pick-up of Department-furnished materials. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, DMS will be stored by the Department for pick up at location shown on the plans.

Ensure that all materials and construction methods necessary to complete the installation conform to the requirements of this Item, the plans and the pertinent requirements of the following Items:

- Item 432, "Riprap"
- Item 441, "Steel Structures"
- Item 445, "Galvanizing"
- Item 449, "Anchor Bolts"
- Item 618, "Conduit"
- Item 620, "Electrical Conductors"
- Item 656, "Foundations for Traffic Control Devices"

### 3. CONSTRUCTION

- 3.1. **Installation.** Perform a site survey in advance of the proposed DMS location in order to determine the horizontal and vertical angles of the sign for optimum legibility, based on the manufacturer's recommendations.

Install DMS on overhead sign structures in accordance with this Item and the lines, grades, details and dimensions as shown on the plans or as directed. Maintain safe construction practices. Ensure the mechanical execution of work complies with NEC, Article 110.12. Equipment shall be installed in a neat and workmanlike manner.

Adjustments or additions of sign attachment hardware, support brackets, and appurtenances, such as walkways, conduit, etc., may be necessary for compatibility with specified sign positioning recommended by the manufacturer, as shown on the plans, or as directed. All adjustments or additional materials will not be paid for directly but will be subsidiary to this Item.

Prevent damage to all sign components. Replace any portion of the sign assembly that is damaged or lost during transportation or installation. Do not use any materials furnished by the Department on any work which is not required by and which does not constitute a part of the contract. Materials not used which were furnished by the Department must be returned undamaged to the location from which the materials were obtained upon completion of the work. Any unused or removed material deemed salvageable by the Engineer shall remain the property of the Department and shall be delivered to a designated site. Accept ownership of unsalvageable materials and dispose of in accordance with federal, state, and local regulations.



Stockpile all materials designated for reuse or to be retained by the Department within the project limits or at a designated location as directed.

Equipment to be installed at each DMS field site shown on the plans may include, but not be limited to, the following:

- Dynamic Message Sign (DMS), controller and cabinet (provided by the Department)
- Cabling and connectors from power source to DMS connection point as specified by the DMS manufacturer (Provided by the Contractor).
- Cabling and connectors from telecommunications source to DMS connection point as specified by the DMS manufacturer when required (Provided by the Contractor).
- Communications as shown on the plans
- Power and communication cabling and connectors from controller to DMS shall follow NEMA TS4, Section 4, "Controller to Sign Interface," (cables and termination provided by the Contractor)

Make all arrangements for connection to the power supply and telecommunications source including any required permits. Supply and install any required materials not provided by the utility companies (power or communications service provider).

Construct the foundation for DMS Controller cabinets, when required as shown on the plans, in accordance with Item 656, "Foundations for Traffic Control Devices", unless otherwise directed. Include a 6 ft. x 6 ft. x 5 in. (L x W x D) riprap maintenance pad with foundation, unless otherwise directed. Provide a 5/8-in. diameter by 8 foot copper clad steel ground rod in the foundation of each DMS Controller cabinet.

After the signs have been erected, wash the exterior of the entire sign with a biodegradable cleaning solution, approved by the Engineer, to remove all dirt, grease, oil smears, streaks, finger marks, and other foreign particles.

- 3.2. **Technical Assistance.** Ensure that a manufacturer's representative is available to assist the Contractor's technical personnel at each sign installation site. The manufacturer's representative must provide technical assistance in following areas:

- Site survey for horizontal and vertical angles of sign's mounting orientation
- Sign to structure installation (final responsibility of the Contractor, see 3.3., "Working Drawings.")
- Sign controller cabinet installation
- Sign to controller cabling
- Testing requirements given in Section 3.4., "Testing."

Do not execute the initial powering up of the signs without the permission of the manufacturer's representative.

- 3.3. **Working Drawings.** Before fabrication submit for approval 5 prints of the working drawings for attachment of each DMS. Show the details of any additional sign brackets, sign support connections, and methods of attachment of the signs to the sign support. Have a licensed professional engineer sign, seal and date the working drawings.

- 3.4. **Testing.** Testing of the sign system is for the purpose of relieving the Contractor of maintenance of the system. The Contractor will be relieved of the responsibility for maintenance of the sign system in accordance with Item 7, "Legal Relations and Responsibilities," after all testing is successfully completed.

After delivery of the DMS to the storage site, an approved demonstration test will be conducted prior to transporting the sign to the installation site. Have a manufacturer's representative available to assist with making all necessary connections and preparations for this testing.

After all signs have been installed, the Department and the DMS manufacturer will conduct approved continuity, stand alone, and DMS system tests on the installed field equipment with central, remote, and

laptop equipment. A final acceptance test will be conducted to demonstrate all control, monitor, and communication requirements for 90 days. The Engineer will furnish a Letter acknowledging the final acceptance testing commencement date stating the first day of the final acceptance test. The completion of the final acceptance test occurs when system downtime due to mechanical, electrical, or other malfunctions to equipment furnished or installed does not exceed 72 hr. and any individual points of failure identified during the test period have operated free of defects. Assume responsibility only for test failures directly related to the work in accordance with this Item. Upon completion of successful final acceptance testing, permanently mark acceptance date and project identification information inside the controller cabinet. The Department will pay for electrical energy consumed by the system.

---

**4. MEASUREMENT**

This Item will be measured as each DMS system installed and tested.

---

**5. PAYMENT**

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Installation of Dynamic Message Sign System" of cabinet mounting type specified (pole mounted, foundation mounted or wall mounted). This price is full compensation for transportation and installation of DMS; furnishing and installing any new mounting hardware, and DMS controller cabinet foundation when required; storing the DMS when required; cleaning and testing the DMS; replacement/repair of damaged components; disposal of unsalvageable material and for all manipulations, labor, tools, working drawings, equipment and incidentals.

New overhead sign supports or relocation of existing overhead sign supports will be paid for under Item 650, "Overhead Sign Supports." New drilled shaft foundations will be paid for under Item 416, "Drilled Shaft Foundations." Sign walkways will be paid for under Item 654, "Sign Walkways."

# Special Specification 6037

## Raised Pavement Markers for Seal Coat Project



### 1. DESCRIPTION

Furnish and install raised pavement markers.

### 2. MATERIALS

2.1. **Markers.** Furnish raised pavement markers meeting the requirements of the following Department Material Specifications:

- **Reflectorized Pavement Markers.** DMS-4200, "Pavement Markers (Reflectorized)," types I-A, I-C, I-R, II-A-A, and II-C-R.
- **Traffic Buttons.** DMS-4300, "Traffic Buttons," types I-A, I-C, I-R, II-A-A, II-C-R, W, Y and B. Round or oval unless otherwise specified in the plans.
- **Plowable Reflectorized Pavement Markers.** DMS-4210, "Snowplowable Pavement Markers" types I-A, I-C, I-R, II-A-A, and II-C-R.

The following are descriptions for each type of raised pavement marker:

- **Type I-A.** Type I-A must contain an approach face that retroreflects amber light. The body, other than the retro-reflective face must be yellow.
- **Type I-C.** Type I-C must contain an approach face that retroreflects white light. The body, other than the retro-reflective face must be white or silver-white.
- **Type I-R.** Type I-R must contain a trailing face that retro-reflects red light. The body, other than the retro-reflective face must be white or silver-white, except for I-R plowable markers which may be black.
- **Type II-A-A.** Type II-A-A must contain two retro-reflective faces (approach and trailing) each that retro-reflect amber light. The body, other than the retro-reflective faces, must be yellow.
- **Type II-C-R.** Type II-C-R must contain two retro-reflective faces, an approach face that retro-reflects white light and a trailing face that retro-reflects red light. The body, other than the retroreflective faces, must be white or silver-white.
- **Type W.** Type W has a white body and no reflective faces.
- **Type Y.** Type Y has a yellow body and no reflective faces.
- **Type B.** Must have a black body and no reflective faces.

2.2. **Adhesives.** Furnish adhesives that conform to the following requirements:

- DMS-6100, "Epoxy and Adhesives," Type II – Traffic Marker Adhesives.
- DMS-6130, "Bituminous Adhesive for Pavement Markers."
- The Contractor may propose alternate adhesive materials for consideration and approval by the Engineer.

2.3. **Sampling.** The Engineer will sample in accordance with Tex-729-I.

### 3. CONSTRUCTION

Remove existing raised pavement markers in accordance with Item 677, "Eliminating Existing Pavement Markings and Markers," (except for measurement and payment). Furnish raised pavement markers for each class from the same manufacturer.

When shown on the plans, prepare all surfaces in accordance with Item 678, "Pavement Surface Preparation for Markings." Ensure that the bond surfaces are free of dirt, curing compound, grease, oil, moisture, loose or unsound pavement markings, and any other material that would adversely affect the adhesive bond.

Establish pavement marking guides to mark the lateral location of raised pavement markers as shown on the plans and as directed. Do not make permanent marks on the roadway for the guides.

Place raised pavement markers in proper alignment with the guides. Acceptable placement deviations are shown on the plans.

Remove raised pavement markers placed out of alignment or sequence, as shown on the plans or stated in this specification, at Contractor's expense, in accordance with Item 677, "Eliminating Existing Pavement Markings and Markers," (except for measurement and payment).

Use the following adhesive materials for placement of reflectorized pavement markers, and traffic buttons unless otherwise shown on the plans:

- standard or flexible bituminous adhesive for applications on bituminous pavements.
- epoxy adhesive or flexible bituminous adhesive for applications on hydraulic cement concrete pavements.

Use epoxy adhesive for plowable reflectorized pavement markers.

Apply adhesives in sufficient quantity to:

- ensure that 100% of the bonding area of raised pavement markers is in contact with the adhesive, and
- ensure that raised pavement markers, except for plowable markers, are seated on a continuous layer of adhesive and not in contact with the pavement surface.

Apply adhesives in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations unless otherwise required by this Article. Apply bituminous adhesive only when pavement temperature and raised pavement marker temperature are 40°F or higher. Do not heat bituminous adhesive above 400°F. Machine agitate bituminous adhesive continuously prior to application to ensure even heat distribution.

- 3.1. **Machine-Mix Epoxy Adhesive.** Apply epoxy adhesive only when pavement temperature is 50°F or higher. Furnish raised pavement markers free of rust, scale, dirt, oil, grease, moisture, and contaminants that might adversely affect the adhesive bond.

Place raised pavement markers immediately after the adhesive is applied and ensure proper bonding. Do not use adhesives or any other material that impairs the functional retro-reflectivity of the raised pavement markers.

Provide a 30-day performance period that begins the day following written acceptance for each separate location. The date of written acceptance will be the last calendar day of each month for the RPMs installed that month for the completed separate project locations. This written acceptance does not constitute final acceptance.

Replace all missing, broken or non-reflective RPMs. Visual evaluations will be used for these determinations. Upon request, the Engineer will allow a Contractor representative to accompany the Engineer on these evaluations.

The Engineer may exclude RPMs from the replacement provisions of the performance, provided the Engineer determines that the failure is a result of causes other than defective material or inadequate installation procedures. Examples of outside causes are extreme wear at intersections, damage by snow or ice removal, and pavement failure.

Replace all missing or non-reflective RPMs identified during the performance period within 30 days after notification. The end of the performance period does not relieve the Contractor from the performance deficiencies requiring corrective action identified during the performance period.

---

**4. MEASUREMENT**

This Item will be measured by each raised pavement marker.

This is a plans quantity measurement Item. The quantity to be paid is the quantity shown in the proposal, unless modified by Article 9.2., "Plans Quantity Measurement." Additional measurements or calculations will be made if adjustments are required.

---

**5. PAYMENT**

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Reflectorized Pavement Marker," "Traffic Button," or "Plowable Reflectorized Pavement Marker" of the types specified. This price is full compensation for removing existing markers; furnishing and installing raised pavement markers; and equipment, materials, labor, tools, and incidentals.

No additional payment will be made for replacement of RPMs failing to meet the performance requirements.

# Special Specification 6038

## Multipolymer Pavement Markings (MPM)



### 1. DESCRIPTION

Provide MPM on pavement surfaces shown on the plans to meet the performance requirements of this Specification for:

- color,
- durability, and
- retroreflectivity.

### 2. MATERIALS

- 2.1. **Multipolymer Pavement Marking Materials.** Use materials that produce an adherent, retroreflective pavement marking system that meets all of the performance requirements of this Specification. Use materials that do not result in the generation of any hazardous materials/wastes, as defined in Section 1.3.60., "Hazardous Materials or Waste," during application or removal. If requested, provide a laboratory report from a commercial laboratory indicating material used does not result in the generation of any hazardous materials/wastes, as defined in Section 1.3.60., during application or removal.

Use a multipolymer resin material, which is:

- 2-component (a predominantly multipolymer pigmented resin component with a curing agent component);
- 100% solids, producing no toxic fumes when heated to application temperature;
- track-free in less than 40 min. with appropriate ambient temperature as recommended by the manufacturer;
- formulated and tested to perform as a pavement marking material with glass spheres applied to the surface; and
- on the Material Producer List for [Pavement Markings \(Multipolymer\)](#) maintained by CST/M&P for MPM. Inclusion onto the MPL requires documentation of acceptable performance from Department pavement marking field application that have been in place for at least 1 yr. Contact CST/M&P to initiate and document field trials of new materials for MPL consideration.

Before work begins, provide a laboratory report from an independent testing laboratory showing that the initial color of each material selected for use conforms to the color limits set forth in Table 1, measured by 45°/0° geometry CIE, D65 Illuminant, 2° standard observation angle in accordance with ASTM E 1347, E 1348, or E 1349.

- 2.2. **Nonreflectorized Contrast or Shadow Markings.** The marking material used for the contrast or shadow marking must conform to the same formulation, material, prequalification, and sampling requirements with the exception of the following items:

- color pigment used;
- documentation of acceptable performance from Department pavement marking field application that have been in place for at least 1 yr.; and
- glass spheres must be replaced with a black, color-fast, anti-skid material.

Before work begins, provide a laboratory report from an independent testing laboratory showing that the initial color of each material selected for use conforms to the color limits set forth in Table 1, measured by

45°/0° geometry CIE, D65 Illuminant, 2° standard observation angle in accordance with ASTM E 1347, E 1348, or E 1349.

---

### 3. EQUIPMENT

Provide equipment as required or directed according to the following:

- 3.1. **Preparation and Application.** Use equipment designed for the pavement preparation and application of the type of MPM material selected.
- 3.2. **Colorimeter.** Provide a colorimeter using 45°/0° geometry CIE, D65 Illuminant, 2° standard observation angle meeting the requirements of ASTM E 1347, E 1348, or E 1349.
- 3.3. **Retroreflector.** Unless otherwise shown on the plans, provide a portable or mobile retroreflector meeting the following requirements.
- 3.3.1. **Portable Retroreflector.** Provide a portable retroreflector that meets the requirements of ASTM E 1710.
- 3.3.2. **Mobile Retroreflector.** Provide a mobile retroreflector that:
- is approved by the Construction Division (CST) for project evaluation of retroreflectivity, which will include taking a set of readings on stripes designated by CST and comparing them with the readings of a portable retroreflector provided by CST that meets the specifications indicated in this Specification;
  - is calibrated daily, before measuring retroreflectivity on any pavement stripe, with a portable retroreflector meeting the following requirements: ASTM E 1710, entrance angle of 88.76°, observation angle of 1.05°, and an accuracy of ±15%;
  - requires no traffic control when retroreflectivity measurements are taken and is capable of taking continuous readings; and
  - documents mobile retroreflector evaluations, showing average retroreflectivity values for each 0.25-mi. section, or the area of concern if it is less than 0.25 mi., with all deficient sections clearly marked.

---

### 4. CONSTRUCTION

- 4.1. **General.** Prepare the pavement surface using controlled techniques that minimize pavement damage and hazards to the traveling public. Apply the MPM materials according to the manufacturer's recommendations using widths, colors, and shapes, and at locations as shown on the plans.
- Obtain approval for the sequence of work and estimated daily production. Use traffic control as shown on the plans or as approved. Establish guides to mark the lateral location of pavement markings as shown on the plans or as directed, and have guide locations verified. Use material for guides that will not leave a permanent mark on the roadway. Apply markings in alignment with the guides and without deviating for the alignment more than 1 in. per 200 ft. of roadway or more than 2 in. maximum. Remove all applied markings that are not in alignment or sequence as stated in the plans or as stated in the specifications at the Contractor's expense and in accordance with Item 677, "Eliminating Existing Pavement Markings and Markers," except for measurement and payment.
- 4.2. **Initial Performance Requirements.** Meet the following initial performance requirements after installation. Perform an initial performance evaluation from 7 to 15 days after MPM are installed to verify that the MPM meet the performance requirements for retroreflectivity. Conduct initial retroreflectivity evaluations of placed pavement markings with either a portable or a mobile retroreflector, unless otherwise shown on the plans, according to Section 6038.5.2., "Retroreflectivity." The Contractor is responsible for traffic control when conducting performance evaluations.

The Engineer will conduct a visual evaluation for color and durability and require testing only if MPM do not appear to meet the performance requirements.

For MPM not meeting performance requirements, repair or replace until re-evaluation shows the MPM meet the performance requirements.

- 4.2.1. **Color.** Provide MPM consisting of pigments blended to provide color conforming to standard highway colors as shown in Table 1.

**Table1**  
**Color Requirements**

Federal 595 Color		Chromaticity Coordinates								Brightness (Y)
		1		2		3		4		
		x	y	x	y	x	y	x	y	
White	17855	.290	.315	.310	.295	.350	.340	.330	.360	60 Min
Yellow	33538	.470	.455	.510	.489	.490	.432	.537	.462	30 Min
Black	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	5 Max

- 4.2.2. **Retroreflectivity.** Provide MPM meeting the minimum retroreflectivity values listed in Table 2.

**Table2**  
**Minimum Retroreflectivity Requirements**

Color	Retroreflectivity, mcd/m <sup>2</sup> /lx, Min
White	250
Yellow	175

- 4.2.3. **Durability.** Provide MPM that do not lose more than 5% of the striping material in a 1,000-ft. section of continuous stripe or broken stripe (25 broken stripes). Pavement markings must remain in the proper alignment and location.

## 5. PERFORMANCE EVALUATIONS

Provide traffic control and conduct evaluations of color, retroreflectivity, and durability as required or directed.

- 5.1. **Color.** Measure the color using 45°/0° geometry CIE, D65 Illuminant, 2° standard observation angle in accordance with ASTM E 1347, E 1348, or E 1349.
- 5.2. **Retroreflectivity.** Unless otherwise shown on the plans, conduct retroreflectivity evaluations of pavement markings with either a portable or a mobile retroreflectometer. Make all measurements in the direction of traffic flow, except for broken centerline on 2-way roadways, where measurements will be made in both directions.

If using a portable retroreflectometer, take a minimum of 1 measurement every mile on each series of markings (i.e., edgeline, center skip line, each line of a double line, etc.), at approved locations. If more than 1 measurement is taken, average the measurements. For all markings measured in both directions, take a minimum of 1 measurement in each direction. If the measurement taken on a specific series of markings within each mile segment falls below the minimum retroreflectivity values, take a minimum of 5 more measurements within that mile segment for that series of marking. If the average of these 5 measurements falls below the minimum retroreflectivity requirements, that mile segment of the applied markings does not meet the performance requirement.

If using a mobile retroreflectometer, review the results to determine deficient sections and deficient areas of interest. These areas do not meet the performance requirements.

- 5.3. **Durability.** Measure the durability in accordance with ASTM D 913 for marking material loss and visual inspection for alignment and location. Conduct evaluations at approved locations.



---

**6. MEASUREMENT**

This Item will be measured by the foot. Each stripe will be measured separately.

This is a plans quantity measurement Item. The quantity to be paid is the quantity shown in the proposal unless modified by Article 9.2, "Plans Quantity Measurement." Additional measurements or calculations will be made if adjustments of quantities are required.

---

**7. PAYMENT**

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Multipolymer Pavement Markings (MPM)" of the type and color specified and the shape, width, and size specified as applicable, at the time of project acceptance. This price is full compensation for materials, application of MPM, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.

Surface preparation, when shown on the plans, will be paid for under Item 678, "Pavement Surface Preparation for Markings."

# Special Specification 6064

## Intelligent Transportation System (ITS) Pole with Cabinet



### 1. DESCRIPTION

Furnish, install, relocate, or remove Intelligent Transportation System (ITS) pole structures and pole mounted cabinets of the various types and sizes at locations shown on the plans, or as directed.

1.1. **ITS Equipment Application.** At a minimum, the ITS pole structure serves as the structural support for the following ITS equipment applications:

- closed circuit television (CCTV),
- fixed video,
- microwave vehicle detector (MVD) or radar vehicle sensing device (RVSD),
- bluetooth equipment,
- wireless radio equipment,
- environmental sensor station (ESS),
- solar power system, and
- pole mounted cabinets.

Ensure the equipment, design, and construction use the latest available techniques with a minimum number of different parts, subassemblies, circuits, cards, and modules to maximize standardization and commonality.

Design the equipment for ease of maintenance. All component parts must be readily accessible for inspection and maintenance. The only tools and test instruments required for maintenance by maintenance personnel must be simple hand held tools, basic meters and oscilloscopes.

### 2. MATERIALS

Provide materials that comply with the details shown on the plans or as directed, the requirements of this Item, and the pertinent requirements of the following Items:

- Item 416, "Drilled Shaft Foundations,"
- Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete,"
- Item 440, "Reinforcement for Concrete,"
- Item 441, "Steel Structures,"
- Item 442, "Metal for Structures,"
- Item 445, "Galvanizing,"
- Item 449, "Anchor Bolts,"
- Item 496, "Removing Structures,"
- Item 618, "Conduit,"
- Item 620, "Electrical Conductors," and
- Item 740, "Graffiti Removal and Anti-Graffiti Coating".

2.1. **Anchor Bolts.** Provide anchor bolts, nuts, and washers that conform with the details shown on the plans, the requirements of this Item, and in accordance with Item 449, "Anchor Bolts."

Furnish "medium strength, mild steel" anchor bolts for anchor bolts 1 in. or less in diameter, unless otherwise shown on the plans. Furnish "alloy steel" anchor bolts for anchor bolts greater than 1 in. diameter, unless otherwise shown on the plans.

- 2.2. **ITS Poles.** Provide material for pole shafts that conforms to the requirements on the plans and the requirements of ASTM A1011 SS Grade 50, A572 Grade 50, A1011 HSLAS Grade 50, or A595 Grade A. Material thicknesses in excess of those stipulated under A1011 will be acceptable providing it meets all other ASTM A1011 requirements and the requirements of this specification. A595 Grade A material must have a minimum of 50 ksi yield strength adjacent to base welds after fabrication.

Fabrication plants that produce steel ITS poles must be approved in accordance with DMS-7380, "Steel Non-Bridge Member Fabrication Plant Qualification." The Department maintains an MPL of approved ITS pole fabrication plants.

- 2.3. **ITS Pole Mounted Cabinet.** Provide ITS pole mounted cabinets to house ITS field equipment as shown on the plans or as directed. ITS equipment applications inside the cabinet may include, but is not limited to:

- CCTV field equipment,
- fixed video,
- radar vehicle sensing device (RVSD),
- dynamic message sign (DMS) or lane control signal (LCS) controller,
- bluetooth equipment,
- highway advisory radio (HAR),
- media conversion equipment,
- hardened ethernet switch,
- wireless radio equipment,
- environmental sensor station (ESS),
- roadway weather information system (RWIS), and
- solar power system.

Provide the cabinet with fully wired back panels, with all the necessary terminal boards, wiring, harnesses, connectors and attachment hardware for each cabinet location. Place all terminals and panel facilities on the lower portion of the cabinet walls below all shelves.

Typically, an ITS pole mounted cabinet may contain, but is not limited to, the following:

- 19-in. EIA rack,
- adjustable shelves,
- fan and thermostat,
- cabinet light,
- back panel,
- surge protection,
- terminal strips,
- interconnect harnesses with connectors,
- "Door Open" connection to back panel,
- ITS equipment hardware (as listed in Article 2.3), and
- all necessary installation and mounting hardware.

Ensure all cabinets are identical in size, shape and quality for each type as provisioned on the plans or as directed. Equip and configure the cabinet set-up as defined in this Specification and as detailed in the ITS pole with cabinet standards.

Submit details of the cabinet design and equipment layout for each cabinet to the Engineer for review and approval before fabrication.

## 2.4. Electrical Requirements.

- 2.4.1. **Primary Input Power Interruption.** Use material that meets all the requirements in Section 2.1.4., "Power Interruption" of the National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) Standard TS2 for traffic control system, or most current version.
- 2.4.2. **Power Service Transients.** Use material that meets all the requirements in Section 2.1.6., "Transients" of the NEMA Standard TS2 for traffic control system, or most current version.
- 2.4.3. **Power Service Protection.** Ensure that equipment contains readily accessible, manually resettable or replaceable circuit protection devices (such as circuit breakers or fuses) for equipment and power source protection. Provide circuit breakers or fuses sized such that no wire, component, connector, PC board or assembly is subjected to sustained current in excess of their respective design limits upon failure of any single circuit element or wiring.
- 2.4.4. **Power Distribution Panel.** Provide cabinets with a 120 VAC +/- 5 VAC power distribution panel. Provide the following components on the panel:
- 2.4.4.1. **Duplex Receptacles.** Provide two 120 VAC NEMA Type 5-15R duplex receptacles, or as shown on the plans, protected by a circuit breaker. Permanently label duplex receptacles "For Internal ITS Equipment Only." Install duplex receptacles in an isolated location and provide a clear 1/8 in. thick removable cover made from transparent thermoplastic material to cover the duplex receptacles. Ensure this cover is installed as not to interfere with the functional operation within the cabinet and allows enough space to plug in AC adapters and any necessary equipment. Submit alternative cover material for approval as part of the documentation submittal requirement.
- 2.4.4.2. **Ground Fault Circuit Interrupter (GFCI) Duplex Receptacles.** Provide at least one 120 VAC NEMA Type 5-15R GFCI duplex receptacle, or as shown on the plans, protected by a circuit breaker. This GFCI duplex receptacle is intended for maintenance personnel and is not to be used to serve equipment inside the cabinet. Permanently label GFCI duplex receptacles "For Personnel Use." Install GFCI duplex receptacles in a readily accessible location.
- Provide a 120 VAC, rack mountable outlet strip with 6 NEMA Type 5-15R receptacles with surge suppression. Plug outlet strip into GFCI duplex receptacle and label for personnel use.
- Circuit Breakers.** Determine the ampere rating, quantity, and configuration for main, accessory, spare, and equipment circuit breakers to support ITS equipment loads as shown on the plans. Provide Underwriters Laboratories (UL) 489 listed circuit breakers capable of operating in accordance with Section 2, "Environmental Standards and Test Procedures" of NEMA TS2-2003, or most current version. Provide circuit breakers with an interrupt capacity of 5,000 A. and insulation resistance of 100 megohms at 500 VDC. Provide minimum ampere rating for the following circuit types:
- 2.4.4.2.1. **Main Breaker.** Size the main circuit breaker such that the load of all branch circuits is less than the main circuit breaker ampere rating in accordance with the most current version of the National Electrical Code (NEC).
- 2.4.4.2.2. **Accessory Breaker.** Minimum 15 A. Size accessory circuit breaker to protect lighting, door switches, fans, and GFCI duplex receptacle in accordance with the most current version of the NEC.
- 2.4.4.2.3. **Equipment Breakers.** Minimum 15 A. Size equipment circuit breaker to protect ITS equipment and duplex receptacles in accordance with the most current version of the NEC.
- 2.4.4.2.4. **Spare Equipment Breaker.** Minimum 20 A. Provide one spare equipment breaker for future use.

Furnish breakers, which are in addition to any auxiliary fuses, with the electronic equipment to protect component parts. Provide 3-terminal lightning arrestor to protect the load side of all circuit breakers. Connect

the arrester into the circuit with size 8 AWG or larger stranded copper conductors. Connect arrester to the line filter as recommended by the manufacturer.

- 2.4.4.3. **Power Line Surge Protection.** Provide and install power line surge protection devices that meet the requirements of Article 2.6.
- 2.4.4.4. **Power Cable Input Junction Terminals.** Provide power distribution blocks suitable for use as a power feed and junction points for 2 and 3 wire circuits. Accommodate up to No. 4 AWG conductors on the line side of each circuit. Provide appropriate sized lugs at the junction terminals for conductors larger than a No. 4 AWG when shown on the plans.

Electrically isolate the AC neutral and equipment ground wiring from the line wiring by an insulation resistance of at least 10 megohms when measured at the AC neutral. Color code the AC neutral and equipment grounding wiring white and green respectively in accordance with the most current version of the NEC.

Utilize the back panel to distribute and properly interconnect all cabinet wiring related to the specific complement of equipment called out on the plans. Each item of equipment including any furnished by the Department must have the cable harness properly terminated at terminal boards on the back panel. Ensure all functions available at the equipment connector are carried in the connector cable harness to the terminal blocks from the power distribution panel mounted on the left side panel of the cabinet.

- 2.4.5. **Alternative Power Option.** When shown on the plans, accommodate renewable electrical power source for the design load specified in accordance with "ITS Solar Power System" Specification. Renewable electrical power source may, or may not, be integrated with public utility electrical services, as shown on the plans or as directed. Accommodate solar system components including batteries and solar charge controller when shown on the plans.
- 2.4.6. **Wiring.** Ensure all cabinet wiring identified by the use of insulated pre-printed sleeving slipped over the wire before attachment of the lug or making the connection. Supply enough text on wire markers in plain words or abbreviations with sufficient level of detail so that a translating sheet will not be required to identify the type and size of wire.

Cut all wires to the proper length before assembly. Ensure no wires are doubled back to take up slack. Ensure harnesses to connectors are covered with braided cable sleeves. Secure cables with nylon cable clamps.

Provide service loops to facilitate removal and replacement of assemblies, panels and modules. Use insulated parts and wire rated for at least 600 V. Color-code harnesses and wiring.

Route and bundle all wiring containing line voltage AC separately and shield from all low voltage, i.e., control circuits. Cover all conductors and live terminals or parts, which could be hazardous to maintenance personnel, with suitable insulating material.

Provide AC internal cabinet wiring identified in accordance with the most current version of the NEC. Provide white insulated conductors for AC neutral. Provide green insulated conductors for equipment ground. Provide any color different from the foregoing on other conductors in accordance with the most current version of the NEC. For equipment that requires grounding, provide grounding conductors and do not use conduit for grounding. Provide No. 22 AWG or larger stranded conductors for internal cabinet wiring. Provide conductors that are UL-listed THHN in accordance with the most current version of the NEC. Ensure the insulation has at least a thickness of 10 mm. Ensure all wiring containing line voltage is at least size No. 14 AWG. No strands of any conductor may be trimmed to "fit" the wiring into the breaker or terminal block.

- 2.4.7. **Terminal Strips.** Provide terminal strips located on the back panel that are accessible to the extent that it is not necessary to remove the electronic equipment from the cabinet to make an inspection or connection.

Ensure terminal blocks are 2 position, multiple pole barrier type.

Provide shorting bars in each of the positions provided along with an integral marking strip.

Arrange terminal blocks such that they will not upset the entrance, training and connection of incoming field conductors.

Identify all terminals with legends permanently affixed and attached to the terminal blocks.

Ensure not more than 3 conductors are brought to any 1 terminal screw.

Ensure no electrically energized components or connectors extend beyond the protection afforded by the barriers.

Locate all terminal blocks below the shelves.

Ensure terminals used for field connections are secure conductors by means of a No. 10-32 nickel or cadmium plated brass binder head screw.

Ensure terminals used for interwiring connections, but not for field connections, are secure conductors by means of a No. 5-32 nickel plated brass binder head screw.

Terminate all connections to and from the electronic equipment to an interwiring type block. These blocks will act as intermediate connection points for all electronic equipment input and output.

Provide termination panels that are used to distribute and properly interconnect all cabinet wiring related to the specific complement of equipment as shown on the plans. Provide properly terminated cable harnesses for each item including any furnished by the Department. Provide all functions available at the equipment terminals that are carried in the connector cable harness.

- 2.4.8. **Cabinet Internal Grounding.** The cabinet internal ground consists of at least 1 ground bus-bar permanently affixed to the cabinet and connected to the grounding electrode.

Use bare stranded No. 4 AWG copper wire between bus-bars and between the bus-bar and grounding electrode when providing multiple bus-bars.

Ensure each copper ground bus-bar has a minimum of 12 connection points, each capable of securing bare conductor ranging in size from No 4 AWG to No 14 AWG.

Return AC neutral and equipment ground wiring to these bus-bars.

- 2.4.9. **Door Switch.** Provide door switch meeting the following requirements:

- momentary, pin-type door switch,
- installed in the cabinet or on the door, and
- connected to a terminal so that the equipment installed in the cabinet can confirm input is connected to logic ground when the cabinet door is open.

Provide 2 momentary, pin type door switches for each door provided with the cabinet. Wire 1 switch to turn on the cabinet lights when the door is open and off when the door is closed. Wire the other in parallel to a terminal block to detect a cabinet intrusion condition.

- 2.5. **Mechanical Requirements.**

- 2.5.1. **Size and Construction.** Provide ITS pole mounted cabinets meeting the configuration types detailed in the Statewide ITS pole with cabinet standards.

**Table 1**  
**Minimum Cabinet Internal Dimensions**

	Depth (in.)	Width (in.)	Height (in.)
Type 1	12 <sup>1</sup>	24	24
Type 2	18	24	36
Type 3	20	24	41

1. Minimum dimension for cabinet provided without EIA 19 in. rack assembly.  
Provide 18 in. minimum depth when providing EIA 19 in. rack assembly.

Determine the suitability of the listed cabinet configuration types for the equipment at each field location identified on the plans or as desired.

2.5.2. **Ventilation.** Provide the cabinet with vent openings to allow cooling of electronic components.

Locate louvered air intake vent openings on the lower portion of the cabinet doors and covered fully on the inside with a commercially available disposable 3 layer graded pleated type filter of minimum size 6 in. (high) x 12 in. (wide) for Type 1 cabinet and 12 in. (high) x 16 in. (wide) for Type 2 and 3 cabinets. Size the louvered intake area and filter to allow maximum filtered air flow and cooling, securely mounted so that any air entering the cabinet must pass through the filter. Ensure the cabinet opening for intake of air is large enough to accommodate filter size. Screen the exhaust to prevent entry of insects. Provide the screen openings no larger than 0.0125-sq. in.

Provide a, minimum of 2, thermostatically controlled fans that are adjustable with an adjustment range of 70 to 110°F. Provide a press-to-test switch to test the operation of the fan. Provide a fan with a capacity of at least 110 cfm each.

There is no opening on the roof of the cabinet.

2.5.3. **Lighting.** Provide minimum 15 W fluorescent fixtures above each door inside the cabinet, each with clear shatter proof lens. NEMA TS2 rated light-emitting diode (LED) fixtures are acceptable instead of fluorescent light fixtures. Determine the appropriate number of fixtures to achieve at least 1000 lumens to illuminate the equipment. Position the fixtures to provide illumination to the face of the equipment in the cabinet and not into a technician's eyes.

2.5.4. **Exterior Finish.** Provide cabinets with a smooth aluminum finish and the exterior in its unpainted natural color.

When shown on the plans or as directed, provide cabinets with an anti-graffiti coating in accordance with Item 740 "Graffiti Removal and Anti-Graffiti Coating."

2.5.5. **Serial Number.** Provide the cabinets with a serial number unique to the manufacturer, preceded by an assigned 2 letter manufacturer's code. Provide at least a 0.2 in. letter height. Stamp the entire identification code and number on a metal plate which is riveted to the cabinet, stamp directly on the cabinet wall, or engrave on a metalized mylar plate that is epoxied on the upper right hand cabinet side wall.

2.5.6. **Modular Design.** Provide cabinets that have a modular design and allows ITS equipment to be installed in a variety of mounting configurations as detailed on the plans or as directed.

Provide Type 1 and Type 2 cabinets with 2 unistrut or DIN rail channels on each side wall of the cabinet for mounting power panel and auxiliary ITS equipment. Provide a 19 in. EIA rack assembly only when noted on the plans or in the general notes.

Provide Type 3 cabinets with an EIA 19 in. rack assembly, sized appropriately based on cabinet type inside height dimension and is accessible from either door. Provide a rack with a minimum of one 1RU (RU = rack

unit) horizontal power strip. Provide 2 unistrut or DIN rail channels on each side wall of the cabinet for mounting power panel and auxiliary ITS equipment.

- 2.5.7. **Shelves.** Provide adjustable shelves in each cabinet as required to support the equipment as specified on the plans. Ensure shelf adjustment at 1 RU intervals in the vertical position. Provide shelves that can be mounted to an EIA 19 in. rack cage or unistrut channel as detailed in the standards.

Provide shelves that are removable and capable of supporting the electronic equipment. Provide a minimum of 2 in. between the back and front edge of the shelf to back inside wall and door of the cabinet respectively to allow room for the equipment cables and connectors.

Provide each cabinet type with at least 1 slide out drawer with telescoping drawer guides to allow full extension from the rack frame. Provide at least 1.75 in. (high) x 16 in. (wide), drawer sized appropriately for the cabinet with a hinged lid to allow access to storage space.

- 2.5.8. **Mounting Hardware.** Provide cabinets with the appropriate "U" channel mounting brackets, stiffening plates, anchor bolts, and any other necessary hardware to mount the cabinet on the ITS pole structure. Provide mounting brackets made of 0.250 in. thick steel.

Weld cabinet mounting plates to the pole. This may be done in the field for transport reasons. Do not band the cabinet or mounting plates to the pole. Design the cabinet for pole mounting and reinforce at the points of attachment to the pole

- 2.6. **Surge Protective Devices (SPD).** Provide SPDs to protect electronics from lightning, transient voltage surges, and induced current. Install SPDs on all power, data, video, and any other conductive circuit.

- 2.6.1. **120 V or 120/240 V SPD at Service and ITS Cabinet Power Distribution Panel.** Install an SPD at the closest termination or disconnection point where the supply circuit enters the cabinet. Locate the SPD on the load side of the cabinet power distribution panel breakers and ahead of any and all electronic devices. Keep leads as short as possible with all conductor bends formed to the maximum possible radius. Connect the SPD ground lead directly to the ground bus. Use of wire nuts is prohibited. Install in accordance with manufacturers recommendations.

Provide UL Listed Type 1 or Type 2 SPD and labeled to UL 1449 Third Edition, posted at UL.com, under Certifications UL Category Code VZCA, and have a 20 kA I-nominal rating. Provide SPD rated as NEMA 4. SPD with integral EMI/RFI line filtering may be required if shown on the plans.

Do not exceed 700 V on the Voltage Protection Rating (VPR) on any mode (L-N, L-G, and N-G).

Do not exceed 150 V on the Maximum Continuous Operating Voltage (MCOV).

Equal or exceed 40 kA the SPD surge current rating per mode (L-N), (L-G), (N-G).

Equal or exceed 50 kA or the available short circuit current, whichever is higher for the SPD Short Circuit Current Rating (SCCR).

Provide SPD with directly connected Metal Oxide Varistors (MOV) exceeding 32 mm in diameter with thermal safety disconnectors. Gas tube and spark gap SPD are not be permitted. Ensure each MOV's operational status can be monitored via visual indicator, including N-G mode.

Provide SPD with one set of Normally Open (NO), Normally Closed (NC) Form C contacts for remote monitoring.

Ensure the SPD utilized for AC power does not dissipate any energy and does not provide any series impedance during standby operation. Return the unit to its non-shunting mode after the passage of any surge and do not allow the shunting of AC power



- 2.6.2. **Parallel SPD for 120 V Equipment.** Install an SPD inside of the cabinet on the power distribution to the equipment. Keep leads as short as possible with all conductor bends formed to the maximum possible radius. Connect the SPD ground lead directly to the ground bus. Use of wire nuts is prohibited. Install in accordance with manufacturers recommendations.

Provide UL Listed Type 1 or Type 2 SPD labeled to UL1449 Third Edition, posted at UL.com, under Certifications UL Category Code VZCA, and have a 20 kA I-nominal rating. Provide SPD rated as NEMA 4.

Do not exceed 700 V on the Voltage Protection Rating (VPR) on any mode (L-N and N-G).

Do not exceed 150 V on the Maximum Continuous Operating Voltage (MCOV).

Equal or exceed 40 kA the SPD surge current rating per mode (L-N) and (N-G).

Equal or exceed 50 kA or the available short circuit current, whichever is higher for the SPD Short Circuit Current Rating (SCCR).

Provide SPD with directly connected Metal Oxide Varistors (MOV) exceeding 32 mm in diameter with thermal safety disconnectors. Gas tube and spark gap SPD are not be permitted. Ensure each MOV's operational status can be monitored via visual indicator, including N-G mode.

Provide SPD with one set of Normally Open (NO), Normally Closed (NC) Form C contacts for remote monitoring.

- 2.6.3. **Low-Voltage Power, Control, Data and Signal Systems SPD.** Install a specialized SPD on all conductive circuits including, but not limited to, data communication cables, coaxial video cables, and low-voltage power cables. Ensure that these devices comply with the functional requirements shown in Table 2 for all available modes (i.e., power L-N, N-G; data and signal center pin-to-shield, L-L, L-G, and shield-G where appropriate).

These specialized SPD must have an operating voltage matching the characteristics of the circuit. Ensure that these specialized SPD are UL 497B or UL 497C Listed, as applicable.

Provide the SPD with 3 stages of surge suppression in a Pi ( $\pi$ ) configuration. The first stage (primary side) consists of parallel-connected Gas Discharge Tubes (GDTs). The second stage consists of a series connected resistor or inductor. The third stage (secondary side) consists of parallel-connected transorbs or silicone avalanche diodes (SADs).

Ground the SPD to the DIN rail and a wire terminal connection point. (Grounding solely through the DIN rail connection is not adequate and does not meet the performance or intent of this specification.)

Install coaxial SPDs in a manner that prevents ground loops and resulting signal deterioration. This is usually caused where the cable has different references to ground at either end and connecting SPDs at both ends that have only Pin to Shield protection completes a ground loop circuit through the Shield. SPDs having Pin to Shield protection, and separate Shield to Ground protection are acceptable to eliminate ground loops.

**Table 2**  
**SPD Minimum Requirements**

Circuit Description	Maximum Continuous Operating Voltage (MCOV)	Frequency/ Bandwidth/ Data Rate	Surge Capacity	Maximum Let-Through Voltage
12 VDC	15-20 V	N/A	5 kA per mode (8x20 $\mu$ s)	<150 Vpk
24 VAC	30-55 V	N/A	5kA per mode (8x20 $\mu$ s)	<175 Vpk
48 VDC	60-85 V	N/A	5 kA per mode (8x20 $\mu$ s)	<200 Vpk
Coaxial Composite Video	4-8 V	Up to 1.5 GHz	10 kA per mode (8x20 $\mu$ s)	<100 Vpk
RS422/RS485	8-15 V	Up to 10 Mbps	10 kA per mode (8x20 $\mu$ s)	<30 Vpk
T1	13-30 V	Up to 10 Mbps	10 kA per mode (8x20 $\mu$ s)	<30 Vpk
Ethernet Data	7-12 V	Up to 100 Mbps	3kA per mode (10x1000 $\mu$ s)	<30 Vpk

- 2.7. **Environmental Design Requirements.** Provide cabinets that meet the functional requirements of this Item during and after subsection to any combination of the following requirements:
- ambient temperature range of -30 to 165°F,
  - temperature shock not to exceed 30°F per hour, during which the relative humidity does not exceed 95%,
  - relative humidity range not to exceed 95% over the temperature range of 40 to 110°F, and
  - moisture condensation on all surfaces caused by temperature changes.
- 2.8. **Vibration.** Material used must show no degradation of mechanical structure, soldered components, plug in components or satisfactory operation in accordance with the manufacturer's equipment specifications after being subjected to the vibration test as described in the NEMA standard TS2, Section 2.2.8, "Vibration Test", or the latest revision.

---

### 3. FABRICATION

- 3.1. **Anchor Bolts.** Fabricate anchor bolts, nuts, and washers in accordance with the details shown on the plans and Item 449, "Anchor Bolts." Galvanize these items in accordance with Item 445, "Galvanization."
- Provide 2 circular steel templates as shown on the plans conforming to ASTM A36 for each assembly. Tack weld the lower anchorage nuts to the lower template in the shop. Perform this welding with an appropriate jig to ensure that the anchor bolt is perpendicular to the template. Shipping of the anchor bolt cage in its assembled condition is not required.

- 3.2. **ITS Poles.** Fabricate ITS poles in accordance with the details shown on the plans, this Item, and Item 441, "Steel Structures." Alternate designs are not acceptable unless approved by the Department.

Provide properly fitting components. Provide round, octagonal (8-sided), or dodecagonal (12-sided) pole shafts tapered to the heights shown on the plans.

Permanently mark, at a visible location when erected, ITS pole base plates with the design wind speed. Locate the handholes, as shown on the plans, opposite of the direction of traffic flow.

Permanently mark, at a visible location when erected, ITS pole base plates with the fabrication plant's insignia or trademark. Place the mark on the pole base plate adjacent to the handhole access compartment.

Provide circumferential welds only at the ends of the shaft. Provide no more than 2 longitudinal seam welds in shaft sections. Grind or smooth the exterior of longitudinal seam welds to the same appearance as other shaft surfaces. Ensure 100% penetration within 6 in. of circumferential base welds and 60% minimum penetration at other locations along the longitudinal seam welds. Use a welding technique that minimizes acid entrapment during later galvanizing. Hot-dip galvanize all fabricated parts in accordance with Item 445, "Galvanizing."

Fabricate air terminal and bracket assembly to serve as a lightning arrestor in accordance with ITS pole air terminal details and IEEE standards for lightning protection. Bond air terminal with air terminal bracket via clad weld or other approved bolted connection.

- 3.3. **Cabinet.** Continuously weld all exterior seams for cabinet and doors. Fill edges to a radius of 0.03125 in. minimum. Smooth exterior welds.

Welding on aluminum cabinets are done by the gas metal arc (MIG) or gas tungsten arc (TIG) process using bare aluminum welding electrodes. Ensure electrodes conform to the requirements of the American Welding Society (AWS) A5.10 for ER5356 aluminum alloy bare welding electrodes.

Procedures, welding machines and welding machine operators for welding on aluminum must be qualified and conform with the requirements of AWS B3.0, "Welding Procedures and Performance Qualification", and to the practices recommended in AWS C5.6.

Construct all cabinets of welded sheet aluminum with a thickness of at least 0.125 in. meeting NEMA 3R standards. Do not allow wood, wood fiber product, or flammable products in the cabinet. Seal cabinet structure to prevent the entry of rain, dust, and dirt.

Provide a sunshield on the exterior top of the cabinet to reflect solar rays and mitigate temperature build-up inside the cabinet. Construct sunshield out of 0.125 in. thick aluminum and provide a minimum of 1.25 in. clearance above the top of cabinet secured in four locations.

Attach aluminum lifting eyes or ears to the top of the cabinet to permit lifting the cabinet with a sling. Lifting eyes may be permanently fabricated to the cabinet frame as long as they do not interfere with the construction and operation of the sunshield. Manufacturer may provide removable lifting eyes that can be removed after installation. Seal any penetrations to the cabinet exterior or sunshield after removal of lifting eyes.

Ensure cabinets conform to the requirements of ASTM designation: B209 for 5052-H32 aluminum sheet.

- 3.3.1. **Door.** Provide sturdy and torsionally rigid cabinet doors that substantially cover the full area of the cabinet access opening. Attach cabinet doors by a minimum of 2 heavy duty hinges or full length hinge. Provide stainless steel hinge pins.

Fabricate the doors and hinges to withstand a 100 lb. per vertical ft. force applied to the outer edge of the door when open without permanent deformation or impairment of the door or cabinet body when the load is removed.

Fit the cabinet doors with Number 2 Corbin locks and aluminum or chrome plated handles with a minimum 3/8 in. drive pin and a 3 point latch. Design the lock and latch so that the handles cannot be released until the lock is released. Provide a locking ring for a padlock along with a padlock. Provide 2 keys for the door and 2 keys for the padlock with each cabinet. Locate the lock clear of the arc of the handle. Keys must be removable in the locked position only. Mount locks with 2 stainless steel machine screws. Provide cabinet doors with a catch mechanism to hold the door open at 2 positions: 90° and 120°.

Fabricate the door and door stop mechanism to withstand a simulated wind load of 5 lb. per sq. ft. applied to both inside and outside surfaces without failure, permanent deformation, or compromising of door position.

Provide cabinets without auxiliary police doors.

Provide a gasket to act as a permanent and weather resistant seal at the cabinet door facing. The gasket material must be of a non-absorbent material and maintain its resiliency after long term exposure to the outdoor environment.

Provide a gasket with a minimum thickness of 0.25 in. Locate the gasket in a channel provided for this purpose either on the cabinet or on the door. An "L" bracket is acceptable instead of this channel if the gasket is fitted snugly against the bracket to insure a uniformly dust and weather resistant seal around the entire door facing.

3.3.2. **Mechanical Components.** Ensure all external screws, nuts, and locking washers are stainless steel. Do not use self-tapping screws unless specifically approved by the Engineer.

Ensure all parts are made of corrosion resistant material, such as plastic, stainless steel, aluminum or brass.

Ensure all materials used in construction are resistant to fungus growth and moisture deterioration.

Separate dissimilar metals by an inert dielectric material.

## 4. CONSTRUCTION

4.1. **Installation.** Locate ITS poles as shown on the plans unless otherwise directed to secure a more desirable location or to avoid conflict with utilities. Stake the ITS pole locations for verification by the Engineer.

Use established industry and utility safety practices when working near underground or overhead utilities. Consult with the appropriate utility company before beginning such work.

Construct foundations for new ITS poles in accordance with Item 416, "Drilled Shaft Foundations," and the details shown on the plans." Orient anchor bolts as shown on the plans. Install conduit per Item 618, Conduit."

Identify all items of a shipment with a weatherproof tag. This tag minimally must identify manufacturer, contract number, and date and destination of shipment.

Erect poles after foundation concrete has attained its design strength as required on the plans and Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete." Coat anchor bolt threads and tighten anchor bolts in accordance with Item 449, "Anchor Bolts." Do not grout between the base plate and the foundation.

Mount the pole mounted cabinet to the backside of the ITS pole, with door either parallel or perpendicular to the roadway, away from the direction of traffic flow, as shown on the plans. Mount cabinet plumb in all directions.

For ITS pole sites located on slopes greater than 4H:1V, mount the pole mounted cabinet to the backside of the ITS pole, from the perspective parallel to the roadway with the door facing the direction of traffic flow as shown on the plans.

Install grounding conductor from cabinet and ITS pole air terminal inside a minimum 1 in. PVC conduit within the foundation. Bond grounding conductors to the primary ground rod as part of the grounding ring in accordance with the ITS grounding details.

Construct reinforced maintenance pad, when required, with Class A concrete in accordance with Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete." Provide reinforcing steel in accordance with Item 440, "Reinforcing Steel."

- 4.2. **Relocation.** Before removal of the existing pole structure or cabinet, disconnect and isolate the power cables from the electric power supply and disconnect all cables (power and communication) from the equipment and remove any ITS equipment, associated mounting brackets, pole mounted cabinet, and cabling from the pole structure. Remove existing pole structure as shown on the plans only at such time as authorized by the Engineer.

Inspect the existing pole structure, with a representative from the Department, and document any evidence of structural stress cracks or fatigue before removal. Remove and deliver to the Department, existing pole structures that fail structural inspection to an address to be supplied by the Department.

Remove the existing pole structure in a manner acceptable to the Engineer using a method that does not cause undue overstress or damage to the structure or appurtenances attached.

Use a crane of sufficient capacity to remove the pole. Disconnect and relocate the existing pole structure from and to the foundation as shown on the plans in a manner acceptable to the Engineer.

When the poles are laid down, place the poles on timber cribbing so that the poles lie reasonably straight to prevent any damage or deterioration.

Maintain safe construction and operation practices at all times. Handle the poles in such a manner during removal so as to prevent damage to the pole's exterior finish. The Contractor will be responsible for any damage to poles.

Unless otherwise shown on the plans, remove abandoned concrete foundations, including steel, to a depth of at least 2 ft. below final grade in accordance with Item 496, "Removing Structures." Backfill the excavation with materials equal in composition and density to the surrounding area. Replace any surfacing material with similar material to an equivalent condition.

Supply all new anchor bolts required for the installation of the ITS pole structure. Match bolt dimensions and lengths previously used or as shown on the plans and as directed. Provide anchor bolts in accordance with Item 449, "Anchor Bolts."

Move existing poles to the locations shown on the plans or as directed. Construct new foundations for relocated ITS poles in accordance with Item 416, "Drilled Shaft Foundations," and the details shown on the plans. Install conduit per Item 618, "Conduit." Install existing poles on new foundations in accordance with Section 4.1, "Installation." Do not grout between the base plate and foundation.

- 4.3. **Removal.** Use established industry and utility safety practices when removing poles and assemblies located near overhead or underground facilities. Consult with the appropriate utility company before beginning work.

Inspect the pole and cabinet, where included, with a representative from the Department, and remove any ITS equipment, associated mounting hardware, and cabling still attached to the pole or inside the cabinet before commencing work. Inspect the existing pole and cabinet in place, with a representative from the Department, and document any evidence of damage to the representative before removal.

Before removal of the existing pole structure or cabinet, disconnect and isolate the power cables from the electric power supply and disconnect all cables (power and communication) from the equipment. Remove and coil existing cabling to the nearest ITS ground box or as identified on the plans.

Carefully remove the cabinet from the pole structure. Avoid damage or injury to surrounding objects or individuals. Deliver the cabinet to an address to be supplied by the Department.

Carefully remove the pole from the foundation in accordance with Item 496, "Removing Structures." Avoid damage or injury to surrounding objects or individuals. Separate the pole at the slip-fitted connections, if applicable. If the pole cannot be separated, transport the complete pole or partially separate the pole to make it transportable. Deliver the pole structure to an address to be supplied by the Department.

Unless otherwise shown on the plans, remove abandoned concrete foundations, including steel, to a depth of 2 ft. below final grade in accordance with Item 496, "Removing Structures." Backfill the excavation with materials equal in composition and density to the surrounding area. Replace surfacing material with similar material to an equivalent condition.

#### 4.4. **Testing.**

4.4.1. **Installation.** Unless otherwise shown on the plans, perform the following tests on cabinets supplied through this Item.

4.4.1.1. **Test Procedures Documentation.** Provide 5 copies of the test procedures to include tests identified in Article 4.4.2 through Article 4.4.4 inclusive and blank data forms to the Engineer for review and comment at least 45 days before testing for each test required on this project. Include the sequence of the tests in the procedures. The Engineer will comment, approve, or reject test procedures within 30 days after Contractor submittal of equipment for tests. Contractor to resubmit if necessary rejected test procedures for final approval within 10 days before testing. Review time is calendar days. Conduct all tests in accordance with the approved test procedures. The Department may witness all tests.

Record test data on the data forms and quantitative results. No bid item measurement or payment will be made until the Engineer has verified the test results meet the requirements of the specification. The data forms for all tests, except design approval tests, must be signed by an authorized representative of the Contractor.

Provide written notice to the Engineer within 48 hr. of discovery of any testing discrepancy performed in testing by the contractor. Furnish data forms containing the acceptable range of expected results and measured values.

4.4.1.2. **Design Approval Test.** Conduct a design approval test on 10% of the total number of cabinets supplied as part of the project, with at least one of each type of cabinet used on the project.

Certification from an independent testing laboratory of a successfully completed design approval test is acceptable. Ensure that the testing by this laboratory is performed in accordance with the requirements of this specification. Failure of independent tests to comply with the requirements of this specification will be grounds for rejection of any certification.

Provide a copy of the certification to the Engineer. The data forms for the design approval tests must be signed by an authorized representative (company official) of the equipment manufacturer or by an authorized representative of an independent testing facility.

Notify the Engineer 10 working days before conducting this testing. The Department may witness all the tests. Perform the following tests:

- 4.4.1.2.1. **Power Service Transients.** Provide equipment that meets the performance requirements, specified in this Item, when subjected to the power service transients as specified in NEMA TS2, Section 2.2.7.2, "Transient Tests (Power Service)", or most current version.
- 4.4.1.2.2. **Temperature and Condensation.** Provide equipment that meets the performance requirements, specified in this Item, when subjected to the following conditions in the order specified below:
- stabilize the equipment at -30°F and test as specified in NEMA TS2, Sections 2.2.7.3, "Low-Temperature Low-Voltage Tests" and 2.2.7.4, "Low-Temperature High-Voltage Tests", or most current version.
  - Allow the equipment to warm up to room temperature in an atmosphere with relative humidity of at least 40%. Operate the equipment for 2 hr., while wet, without degradation or failure.
  - Stabilize the equipment at 165°F and test as specified in NEMA TS2, Sections 2.2.7.5, "High-Temperature High Voltage Tests" and 2.2.7.6, "High-Temperature Low-Voltage Tests", or most current version.
- 4.4.1.2.3. **Relative Humidity.** Provide equipment that meets the performance requirements, specified in this Item, within 30 min. of being subjected to a temperature of 165°F and a relative humidity of 18% for 48 hr.
- 4.4.1.2.4. **Vibration.** Provide equipment that shows no degradation of mechanical structure, soldered components, or plug-in components and will operate in accordance with the manufacturer's equipment specifications after being subjected to the vibration tests as described in NEMA TS2, Section 2.2.8, "Vibration Test", or most current version.
- 4.4.1.2.5. **Power Interruption.** Provide equipment that meets the performance requirements, specified in this Item, when subjected to nominal input voltage variations as specified in NEMA TS2, Section 2.2.10, "Power Interruption Test", or most current version.
- 4.4.1.3. **Stand-Alone Tests.** Conduct a Stand-Alone Test for each cabinet after installation. Exercise all stand-alone (non-network) functional operations consisting of the following, at a minimum:
- 19-inch EIA rack,
  - adjustable shelves,
  - locking mechanism,
  - fan and thermostat,
  - cabinet light,
  - back panel,
  - circuit breakers,
  - surge protection,
  - grounding system,
  - terminal strips,
  - interconnect harnesses with connectors,
  - cabinet attachment to pole,
  - weatherproofing, and
  - "Door Open" connection to back panel.

Notify the Engineer 5 working days before conducting this test. The Engineer may witness all the tests.

- 4.4.1.4. **Consequences of Test Failure.** If a unit fails a test, submit a report describing the nature of the failure and the actions taken to remedy the situation before modification or replacement of the unit. If a unit requires modification, correct the fault and then repeat the test until successfully completed. Correct minor discrepancies within 30 days of written notice to the Engineer. If a unit requires replacement, provide a new unit and then repeat the test until successfully completed. Major discrepancies that will substantially delay receipt and acceptance of the unit will be sufficient cause for rejection of the unit.

Failure to satisfy the requirements of any test is considered a defect and the equipment is subject to rejection by the Engineer. The rejected equipment may be offered again for retest provided all noncompliance has been corrected.

If a failure pattern develops in similar units within the system, implement corrective measures, including modification or replacement of units, to all similar units within the system as directed. Perform the corrective measures within 30 calendar days without additional cost or extension of the contract period.

4.4.1.4.1. **Consequences of Design Approval Test Failure.** If the equipment fails the design approval test, correct the fault within 30 days and then repeat the design approval test until successfully completed.

4.4.1.4.2. **Consequences of Stand-Alone Test Failure.** If the equipment fails the stand-alone test, correct the fault within 30 days and then repeat the stand-alone test until successfully completed.

4.4.2. **Relocation.**

4.4.2.1. **Pre-Test.** Conduct performance testing before removal of ITS pole mounted cabinet. Test the following components or equipment, at a minimum, and document functional operations in the presence of representatives of the Contractor and the Department.

- locking mechanism,
- fan and thermostat,
- cabinet light,
- back panel,
- circuit breakers,
- surge protection system,
- grounding system, and
- "Door Open" connection to back panel.

Ensure that both representatives sign the test report indicating that the equipment has passed or failed each function. Once removed, the equipment becomes the responsibility of the Contractor until accepted by the State. Compare test data before removal and test data after installation.

4.4.2.2. **Post Test.** Testing of the ITS pole mounted cabinet is for the purpose of relieving the Contractor of maintenance of the system. The Contractor will be relieved of the responsibility for maintenance of the system in accordance with Item 7, "Legal Relations and Responsibilities", after a successful test period. The Contractor will not be required to pay for electrical energy consumed by the system.

After all existing ITS equipment has been installed, perform the same functional operation test described under Article 4.4.2.1. Furnish test data forms containing the sequence of tests including all of the data taken and quantitative results for all tests. Submit the test data forms to the Engineer at least 30 days before the day the tests are to begin. Obtain Engineer's approval of test procedures before submission of equipment for tests. Send at least 1 copy of the data forms to the Engineer.

The performance test results after relocation must be equal to or better than the test results before removal. Repair or replace those components within the system which failed after relocation but which passed before removal.

The Department will conduct approved ITS equipment system tests on the field equipment hardware with the central equipment. The tests will, as a minimum, exercise all remote control functions and display the return status codes from the controller.

If any unit fails to pass a test, prepare a report and deliver it to the Engineer. Describe in the report the nature of the failure and the corrective action needed. If the failure is the result of improper installation or damage during reinstallation, reinstall or replace the unit and repeat the test until the unit passes successfully, at no additional cost to the Department or extension of the contract period.



4.5. **Documentation.** Submit documentation for this Item consisting of the following:

4.5.1. **ITS Pole.** Shop drawings should clearly detail the following for the ITS poles submitted for the project:

- physical pole drawings,
- anchor bolts,
- material list,
- lightning suppression,
- weatherheads,
- cabinet Mounting attachments (when cabinet required), and
- grounding system.

4.5.2. **Pole Mounted Cabinet.** Shop drawings should clearly detail the following for ITS pole mounted cabinets when required as shown on the plans:

- dimensions,
- shelves,
- door,
- gasket,
- door look,
- materials list,
- exterior finish,
- ventilation,
- terminal strips,
- harnesses,
- filter,
- power distribution panel,
- surge suppression,
- back panel,
- outlets,
- circuit breakers,
- power cable terminals,
- wiring diagrams,
- cabinet grounding,
- environmental parameters, and
- connectors.

Submit shop drawings, signed, sealed, and dated by a registered professional Engineer in Texas showing the fabrication and erection details for each ITS pole including the ITS cabinet and mounting details in accordance with Item 5, "Control of the Work".

Provide at least 2 complete sets of operation and maintenance manuals in hard copy format in addition to a CD/DVD or removable flash drive that include the following:

- complete and accurate schematic diagrams,
- complete installation procedures,
- complete performance specifications (functional, electrical, mechanical and environmental) on the unit,
- complete parts list including names of vendors for parts not identified by universal part number such as JEDEC, RETMA, or EIA,
- pictorial of component layout on circuit board,
- complete maintenance and trouble-shooting procedures,
- complete stage-by-stage explanation of circuit theory and operation,
- recovery procedures for malfunction, and
- instructions for gathering maintenance assistance from manufacturer.

Identify material which is copyrighted or proprietary in nature as part of the documentation submittal. The Department will take proper provisions to secure such material and not distribute without written approval.

Provide Department with certification documentation verifying conformance with environmental and testing requirements contained in the special specification. Certifications may be provided by the manufacturer or through independent labs.

4.6. **Warranty.** The start date of the manufacturer's standard warranty will begin when the stand-alone test plan has been approved. Any equipment with less than 95% of its warranty remaining at the beginning of the stand-alone test will not be accepted by the Department. Guarantee that equipment furnished and installed

for this project performs according to the manufacturer's published specifications. Warrant the equipment against defects or failure in design, materials, and workmanship for a minimum of 5 years or in accordance with the manufacturer's standard warranty if warranty period is greater. Assign, to the Department, all manufacturer's normal warranties or guarantees on all electronic, electrical, and mechanical equipment, materials, technical data, and products furnished for and installed on the project. Repair or replace, at the manufacturer's option, defective equipment during the warranty period at no cost to the Department.

Repair or replace equipment at the Contractor's expense before beginning testing in the event of a malfunction or failure. Furnish replacement parts for all equipment within 30 days of notification of failure by the Department.

## 5. MEASUREMENT

This Item will be measured as each unit furnished, installed, relocated, or removed as shown on the plans, excluding new foundations and conduit.

## 6. PAYMENT

- 6.1. **Furnish and Install.** The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided for under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "ITS Pole" of the type and height specified, including COSS/OSB extension, and "ITS Pole Mount Cabinet" of the type and configuration specified. This price is full compensation for furnishing, fabricating, and erecting ITS pole structures as shown on the plans; for furnishing, fabricating, and installing ITS pole mounted cabinets as shown on the plans; for furnishing and placing anchor bolts, nuts, washers, and templates; conducting cabinet testing; and equipment, materials, labor, tools, and incidentals necessary to provide an ITS pole structure or pole mounted cabinet complete in place and ready for the attachment of ITS equipment.

New drill shaft foundations will be paid for under Item 416, "Drilled Shaft Foundations." New conduit will be paid for under Item 618, "Conduit."

- 6.2. **Install Only.** The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided for under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "ITS Pole (Install Only)" of the type and height specified, including COSS/OSB extension, and "ITS Pole Mount Cabinet (Install Only)" of the type and configuration specified. This price is full compensation for erecting ITS pole structures and installing ITS pole mounted cabinets furnished by the Department as shown on the plans; for installing and placing anchor bolts, nuts, washers, and templates; conducting cabinet testing; and equipment, materials, labor, tools, and incidentals necessary to provide an ITS pole structure or pole mounted cabinet, complete in place, and ready for the attachment of ITS equipment.

New drill shaft foundations will be paid for under Item 416, "Drilled Shaft Foundations." New conduit will be paid for under Item 618, "Conduit."

- 6.3. **Relocate.** The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided for under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "ITS Pole (Relocate)" of the type and height specified, including COSS/OSB extension, and "ITS Pole Mount Cabinet (Relocate)" of the type and configuration specified. This price is full compensation for removing existing ITS pole structures or pole mounted cabinets as shown on the plans; removing existing foundations; backfilling and surface placement; hauling and erecting ITS pole structures; hauling and installing ITS pole mounted cabinets; furnishing and placing anchor bolts, nuts, washers, and templates; conducting cabinet testing; and equipment, materials, labor, tools, and incidentals necessary to relocate existing ITS pole structures or pole mounted cabinets, complete in place, and ready for the attachment of ITS equipment.

New drill shaft foundations will be paid for under Item 416, "Drilled Shaft Foundations." New conduit will be paid for under Item 618, "Conduit."

- 6.4. **Remove.** The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided for under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "ITS Pole (Remove)" of the type and height specified, including COSS/OSB extension, and "ITS Pole Mount Cabinet (Remove)" of the type and configuration specified. This price is full compensation for removing existing ITS pole structures and pole mounted cabinets as shown on the plans; removing existing foundations; backfilling and surface placement; loading and hauling; and equipment; materials, labor, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the removal of existing ITS pole structures and pole mounted cabinets.

# Special Specification 6185

## Truck Mounted Attenuator (TMA) and Trailer Attenuator (TA)




---

### 1. DESCRIPTION

Furnish, operate, maintain and remove upon completion of work, Truck Mounted Attenuator (TMA) or Trailer Attenuator (TA).

---

### 2. MATERIALS

Furnish, operate and maintain new or used TMAs or TAs. Assure used attenuators are in good working condition and are approved for use. A list of approved TMA/TA units can be found in the Department's Compliant Work Zone Traffic Control Devices List. The host vehicle for the TMA and TA must weigh a minimum of 19,000 lbs. Host vehicles may be ballasted to achieve the required weight. Any weight added to the host vehicle must be properly attached or contained within it so that it does not present a hazard and that proper energy dissipation occurs if the attenuator is impacted from behind by a large truck. The weight of a TA will not be considered in the weight of the host vehicle but the weight of a TMA may be included in the weight of the host vehicle. Upon request, provide either a manufacturer's curb weight or a certified scales weight ticket to the Engineer.

---

### 3. CONSTRUCTION

Place or relocate TMA/TAs as shown on the plans or as directed. The plans will show the number of TMA/TAs needed, for how many days or hours, and for which construction phases.

Maintain the TMA/TAs in good working condition. Replace damaged TMA/TAs as soon as possible.

---

### 4. MEASUREMENT

4.1. **Truck Mounted Attenuator/Trailer Attenuator (Stationary).** This Item will be measured by the each or by the day. TMA/TAs must be set up in a work area and operational before a calendar day can be considered measurable. When measurement by the day is specified, a day will be measured for each TMA/TA set up and operational on the worksite.

4.2. **Truck Mounted Attenuator/Trailer Attenuator (Mobile Operation).** This Item will be measured by the hour. The time begins once the TMA/TA is ready for operation at the predetermined site and stops when notified by the Engineer. A minimum of 4 hr. will be paid each day for each operating TMA/TA used in a mobile operation.

---

### 5. PAYMENT

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Truck Mounted Attenuators/Trailer Attenuators (Stationary)," or "Truck Mounted Attenuators/Trailer Attenuators (Mobile Operation)." This price is full compensation for furnishing TMA/TA: set up; relocating; removing; operating; fuel; and equipment, materials, tools, labor, and incidentals.

# Special Specification 6186

## Intelligent Transportation System (ITS) Ground Box



### 1. DESCRIPTION

Construct, furnish, install or remove Intelligent Transportation System (ITS) ground boxes for fiber optic communication infrastructure complete with lids.

### 2. MATERIALS

Provide new materials that comply with the details shown on the plans, the requirements of this Item, and the requirements of the following items:

- Item 420, "Concrete Substructures,"
- Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete,"
- Item 432, "Riprap,"
- Item 440, "Reinforcement for Concrete,"
- Item 471, "Frames, Grates, Rings, and Covers,"
- Item 618, "Conduit", and
- Item 620, "Electrical Conductors."

Provide new ITS ground boxes constructed of precast concrete or polymer concrete in accordance with the National Electrical Code (NEC) and National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) standards, most current version. Faulty fabrication or poor workmanship in materials, equipment, or installation will be justification for rejection. Provide manufacturer's warranties or guarantees when offered as a customary trade practice.

2.1. **Precast Concrete.** Provide precast concrete ground boxes and aprons that comply with the details shown on the plans, the requirements of this Item, and in accordance with the following:

- construct ground boxes with Class A concrete in accordance with Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete," unless otherwise directed,
- provide American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) A 615 Grade 60 reinforcement steel in accordance with Item 440, "Reinforcing Steel," and
- provide steel for the frames and covers in accordance with Item 471, "Frames, Grates, Rings, and Covers," unless otherwise approved by the Engineer.

2.1.1. **Loading Requirements.** Designed to withstand American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) H-20 loading. Manufacturer must furnish certification of conformance with H-20 loading.

2.2. **Polymer Concrete.** Manufacture ground box and ground box cover from polymer concrete reinforced with 2 continuous layers of fiberglass fabric. Provide fabricated precast polymer concrete ground boxes and aprons that comply with the details shown on the plans, the requirements of this Item, and in accordance with American Standards Institute (ANSI)/Society of Cable Telecommunications Engineers (SCTE) - ANSI/SCTE 77, most current version.

- **Polymer Concrete.** Construct polymer concrete from catalyzed polyester resin, sand, and aggregate. Polymer concrete containing chopped fiberglass or fiberglass-reinforced plastic is prohibited. Ensure a minimum compressive strength of 11,000 psi.

- **Fiberglass Fabric.** The base glass on the fiberglass fabric must be alumina-limeborosilicate type “E” glass. The reinforcing fabric must line the entire inner and outer surfaces. Obtain approval for the fabric prior to production.

- 2.2.1. **Loading Requirements.** All polymer concrete boxes and covers must meet all test provisions of the ANSI/SCTE 77 Tier 22 requirements. All polymer concrete boxes and covers will be UL Listed or manufacture must provide a certification from an NRTL or factory-testing documentation witnessed and certified by professional engineer licensed in Texas.

Ensure ground box withstands 800 lb. per sq. ft. of force applied over the entire sidewall with less than 1/4 in. deflection per foot length of box. Ensure ground box and ground box cover withstand a test load of 33,750 lb. over a 10 in. x 20 in. area centered on the cover with less than 1/2 in. deflection at the design load of 22,500 lb.

---

### 3. EQUIPMENT

- 3.1. **Size.** Provide ITS ground boxes meeting the configuration types detailed in Table 1.

**Table 1**  
**Ground Box Inside Dimensions**

Type	Width (Inches)	Length (Inches)	Depth (Inches)
Type 1 (Precast)	24	36	36, 48, or 60
Type 2 (Precast)	36	60	36, 48, or 60
Type 1 (Polymer)	24	36	24, 36, or 48
Type 2 (Polymer)	36	60	24, 36, or 48

- 3.2. **Shape.** Provide ITS ground boxes rectangular in shape.
- 3.3. **Aprons.** Provide concrete aprons for ground boxes installed in native ground as shown on the plans. Aprons will be omitted when the ground boxes are located in riprap, sidewalk, or landscape pavers.
- 3.4. **Bolts.** Provide stainless steel penta bolts or special keyed bolts, as required by Department, with associated hardware as shown on plans. Provide self-draining bolt holes. Washers must be provided with all bolts.
- 3.5. **Accessories.** Include all necessary provisions for knockouts, cable racking, adapters and terminators for proper conduit and cable installation.
- 3.5.1. **Knockouts.** Provide knockouts at the factory to accommodate the appropriate number and size of conduits entering the ground box as shown in the plans. Within the factory, score or provide indentation on each outside wall identifying additional conduit entry points for future expansion that does not impact the rebar structure. Place a bell fitting on the end of each conduit to ensure a flush fit inside the ground box. Place concrete grout in the knockout (inside and out), around the conduit and bell fitting to ensure a neat and watertight fit. Ensure that the grout does not enter the inside of the conduit.
- 3.5.2. **Cable Racking.** Provide steel (ASTM A-153), non-metallic glass reinforced nylon, or equivalent cable rack assemblies with the dimensions shown on the plans.
- 3.5.3. **Terminators.** Terminators must be appropriately sized for the conduits indicated on plans and must be an airtight and watertight connection.

Terminators for the PVC conduits should be placed symmetrically about the centerline of the box at the depth shown on plans.

Terminators that do not have conduits attached must be capped and sealed as shown on the plans.

Install the quantity, size, and location of terminators as shown on plans.

### 3.6. **Cover Requirements.**

#### 3.6.1. **Type of Cover.** Provide the following types of covers based on the type of ground box:

- Precast concrete ground box: Provide a 1-piece or 2-piece galvanized steel or cast iron cover depending on the ground box type. Provide a torsion assisted cover for Type 2 ground box with lids that can open freely a minimum 90° each and lock in place with locking latches or a pin-lock inserted in the hinge. Covers must be grounded in accordance with the requirements of the most current version of the NEC. Provide the cover with drop handles.
- Polymer concrete ground box: Provide a 1-piece or 2-piece cover depending on the ground box type, bolted to the ground box. Cover must have a minimum of 2 lifting eyes.

3.7. **Label.** Permanently mark all ground boxes and covers with the manufacturer's name or logo and model number. Legibly imprint each cover with a permanently marked logo in letters at least 1 in. high as follows: "DANGER—HIGH VOLTAGE TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT", unless otherwise directed. Glue in logos are prohibited.

3.8. **Security.** Equip all ground box covers with a stainless steel penta head or keyed bolting system that will securely hold the cover in place. Provide an appropriate means to secure or lock the cover in place as required by the plans.

3.9. **Skid Resistance.** All ground box covers must be skid resistant and should have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50 on the top surface of the cover. Provide certification minimum coefficient of friction value is met as part of material documentation.

3.10. **Strength Requirements.** The following ground box strengths are required based on the following 2 applications.

3.10.1. **Deliberate Roadway Traffic.** Precast concrete ground boxes with steel covers must be used in locations that may experience deliberate, continuous vehicular traffic, such as near the shoulder or an auxiliary lane, or immediately adjacent to the unprotected edge of pavement. Do not place ground boxes in the paved travel lanes or shoulder of highways, frontage roads, streets, bridges, or driveways.

Ground boxes and covers located in these areas must be rated for heavy-duty traffic loading and meet an AASHTO H-20 design loading.

Precast concrete ground boxes and covers located in non-deliberate heavy vehicular traffic must still meet AASHTO H-20 design loading.

3.10.2. **Non-Deliberate Heavy Vehicular Traffic.** Polymer concrete ground boxes and covers may be used in off roadway applications subject to occasional non-deliberate heavy vehicular traffic, such as driveways, along sidewalks, parking lots and behind non-mountable curb. Polymer ground boxes and covers located in these areas must meet ANSI/SCTE Tier 22 loading requirements.

---

## 4. **CONSTRUCTION**

Perform work in accordance with the details shown on the plans and the requirements of this Item.

Use established industry and utility safety practices when installing or removing ground boxes located near underground utilities. Consult with the appropriate utility company before beginning work.

- 4.1. **Installation.** Install ground boxes as shown on the plans. Maintain spacing as shown on the plans.

Ground box locations may be revised to fit existing field conditions or to better facilitate the installation of the conduit system with approval by the Engineer.

Field-locate ground boxes to avoid steep slopes and low-lying locations with poor drainage.

Construct ground box cover to fit properly on ground box.

When installing ground boxes in surfaced areas, make the tops of the ground boxes flush with the finished surface.

- 4.1.1. **Gravel at Base of Ground Box.** Install all ground boxes on a bed of crushed rock at the base of the excavation as shown on the plans. Place 12 in. of washed, crushed stone (1.5 in. nominal) which extends 6 in. in all directions from the perimeter of the box. Lightly tamp the gravel immediately prior to the placement of the ground box to reduce settlement. Crushed gravel will not be paid directly, but be considered subsidiary to this Item.

- 4.1.2. **Cable Racking Installation.** Provide and locate cable rack assemblies designed to support up to 25 ft. of slack for each fiber optic cable inside each Type 1 ground box, 100 ft. of slack for each fiber optic cable inside each Type 2 ground box, slack associated with other communication cabling, and any splice enclosure as shown on the plans or as directed. Cable racks may be installed at the factory or in the field. Place the racks in a manner so as not to impede access in and out of the ground box.

Ground metallic cable rack assemblies to grounding system inside ground box in accordance with the most current version of the NEC.

Use fasteners with an ultimate pull out strength of at least 2500 lb. and ultimate shear strength of at least 3000 lb. When securing cable racks to side walls of ground box in the field, seal all penetrations to the side wall to prevent moisture and contaminant penetration. Sufficient cable supports must be provided for the particular of conductors or cables coiled or passing through the ground as shown on the plans or directed by the Engineer.

- 4.1.3. **Buried Installation.** When shown in the plans or identified in the General Notes, bury ground boxes for security measures. When burying ground boxes, provide polymer concrete ground boxes meeting ANSI/SCTE Tier 22 loading requirements.

Provide 12 in. cover between ground surface and top of ground box lid. Prior to backfilling, provide a 30 lb. felt paper over the entire ground box extending a minimum of 2 in. from either side to prevent backfill materials from entering ground box.

- 4.2. **Excavation and Backfill.** Ensure excavation and backfill for ground boxes meets the requirements as set forth by Item 400, "Excavation and Backfill for Structures." For buried ground boxes, compact backfill material in order to prevent depressions in ground surface from occurring over the ground box.

- 4.3. **Testing.** Ground box and cover must be tested by a laboratory independent of the manufacturer to meet loading requirements. Certificate of such tests must be submitted to the Engineer for approval.

- 4.4. **Documentation Requirements.** Submit documentation for this Item consisting of the following for Engineer approval prior to installation:

- record Global Positioning System (GPS) coordinates using NAD83 datum for all ground boxes prior to backfill. Identify location to obtain coordinates on drawing detail,
- shop drawings,



- concrete mix design,
- material specifications for ground box, lid, cable racks, bolts, and skid resistance for cover
- testing certification for loading requirements,
- hot, cold, and wet weather plan, and
- backfill material composition.

Shop drawings should clearly detail the following for ground boxes, at a minimum:

- |               |               |               |
|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| ■ dimensions  | ■ terminators | ■ cover       |
| ■ knockouts   | ■ adapters    | ■ load rating |
| ■ cable racks | ■ bolts       | ■ cover lock  |

- 4.5. **Removal.** Remove existing ground boxes and concrete aprons to at least 6 in. below the conduit level. Uncover conduit to a sufficient distance so that 90° bends can be removed and conduit reconnected. Clean the conduit in accordance with Item 618, "Conduit." Replace conduit within 5 ft. of the ground box. Remove old conductors and install new conductors as shown on the plans. Backfill area with material equal in composition and density to the surrounding area. Replace surfacing material with similar material to an equivalent condition.

## 5. MEASUREMENT

This Item will be measured by each ground box installed or removed.

## 6. PAYMENT

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "ITS Ground Box (Precast Concrete)" of the various types and sizes specified or "ITS Ground Box (Polymer Concrete)" of the various types and sizes specified and for "Remove ITS Ground Box".

- 6.1. **Furnish and Install.** This price is full compensation for excavating and backfilling; constructing, furnishing and installing the ITS ground boxes and concrete aprons when required; and all labor, tools, equipment, materials, transportation, accessories, documentation, testing and incidentals.

Conduit will be paid for under Item 618, "Conduit" and Special Specification 6016, "ITS Multi-Duct Conduit."

Electrical conductors will be paid for under Item 620, "Electrical Conductors."

- 6.2. **Remove.** This price is full compensation for removing and disassembling ground boxes and concrete aprons; excavation, backfilling, and surface placement; removing old conductors; disposal of unsalvageable materials; and materials, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals. Cleaning of conduit is subsidiary to this Item. Conduit replaced within 5 ft. of the ground box will be subsidiary to this Item.

# Special Specification 6292

## Radar Vehicle Detection System for Signalized Intersection Control



### 1. DESCRIPTION

Furnish, install, relocate, or remove radar vehicle detection systems (RVDS) of the specified devices at signalized intersections to provide the required zones of detection as shown on the plans, or as directed.

### 2. MATERIALS

- 2.1. **General.** Except as allowed for relocation of RVDS equipment, ensure all equipment and component parts are new in accordance with Section 1.0 through Section 6.0 of Division Specification [TO-8000](#), "Radar Vehicle Detection System." and in an operable condition at time of delivery and installation.

The Traffic Management Section of the Traffic Operations Division (TRF-TM) maintains the Prequalified Products Master List (QPL) of all RVDS conforming to the requirements of this Specification. New materials appearing on the [QPL for TO-8000](#) require no further sampling and testing before use unless deemed necessary by the Project Engineer or TRF-TM. Provide prequalified RVDSs from the Division's QPL.

Ensure all RVDS serving the same detection purpose within the project are from the same manufacturer. RVDS devices are classified by their functional requirements. The functional requirements are for radar presence detection devices (RPDD) and radar advance detection devices (RADD). The RVDS system classifications are RVDS (RPDD Only), RVDS (RADD Only) and "RVDS (RPDD and RADD).

Provide each RVDS sensor with a mounting bracket designed to mount directly to a pole, mast-arm, or other structure. Ensure bracket is designed such that the sensor can be tilted both vertically and horizontally for alignment and then locked into place after proper alignment is achieved. All hardware must be designed to support the load of the RVDS sensor and mounting bracket.

- 2.2. **Configuration.** Ensure the RVDS will provide vehicle detection as required on the plans, or as directed.

Ensure the RVDS does not require tuning or recalibration to maintain performance once initial calibration and configuration is complete. RVDS must not require cleaning or adjustment to maintain performance.

RVDS must self-recover from power failure once power is restored.

- 2.3. **Cabling.** Provide appropriate length of all cables necessary to complete the work (of making the RVDS fully operational) at each installation site.

- 2.4. **Software.** Ensure the RVDS manufacturer includes all software required to configure and monitor operation of RVDS field equipment locally and remotely. RVDS software must be a stable production release.

Software must allow the user to configure, operate, exercise, diagnose, and read current status of all RVDS features and functions using a laptop computer.

Software must include the ability to save a local copy of RVDS field device configurations, and load saved configurations to RVDS field devices.

Ensure all licenses required for operation and use of software are included at no additional cost.

Software updates must be provided at no additional cost during the warranty period.

- 2.5. **Electrical.** All conductors supplying the equipment must meet National Electrical Code® (NEC) requirements.

Ensure equipment is designed to protect personnel from exposure to high voltage during installation, operation, and maintenance.

- 2.6. **Mechanical.** Ensure that all parts are fabricated from corrosion resistant materials, such as plastic, stainless steel, aluminum, or brass.

Ensure that all screws, nuts, and locking washers are corrosion resistant. Do not use self-tapping screws.

Ensure equipment is clearly and permanently marked with manufacturer name or trademark, part number, date of manufacture, and serial number.

Ensure RVDS is modular in design for ease of field replacement and maintenance. Provide a sensor that will minimize weight and wind loading when mounted on a traffic signal pole or mast arm.

All printed circuit boards (PCB) must have conformal coating.

- 2.7. **Environmental.** RVDS sensor must be able to withstand the maximum wind load based on the Department's basic wind velocity zone map standard without any damage or loosening from structure.

The RVDS enclosure must conform to criteria set forth in the NEMA 250 Standard for Type 4X enclosures.

The RVDS must meet all NEMA TS2 environmental requirements for temperature, humidity, transients, vibration, and shock.

- 2.8. **Connectors and Harnesses.** Ensure all conductors are properly color coded and identified.

Ensure cable connector design prohibits improper connections. Cable connector pins are plated to improve conductivity and resist corrosion.

Connections for both data and power must be made to the RVDS sensor using waterproof, quick disconnect connectors. Pigtails from the sensor to a waterproof junction box (NEMA 4) or an approved waterproof connector must be allowed for splicing. The pigtails must not be shorter than 3 ft. unless otherwise shown on the plans.

---

### 3. CONSTRUCTION

- 3.1. **System Installation.** Install RVDS system devices according to the manufacturer's recommendations to provide properly functioning detection as required. This will include the installation of sensors on signal poles or mast-arms, controller interface modules, power and surge protection panels, cabling and all associated equipment, software, serial and Ethernet communication ports, connectors and hardware required to setup and operate. Ensure that the supplier of the RVDS provides competent on-site support representative during installation to supervise installation and testing of the RVDS. Ensure the radar sensor locations are optimal for system operation and operate as required. Maintain safe construction practices during equipment installation.

Ensure installation and configuration of software on Department computers is included with the RVDS.

Use care to prevent damage to any support structures. Any equipment or structure damaged or lost must be replaced by the Contractor (with items approved by the Engineer) at no cost to the Department.

3.2. **Mechanical Components.** Ensure that all fasteners, including bolts, nuts, and washers with a diameter less than 5/8 in. are Type 316 or 304 stainless steel and meet the requirements of ASTM F593 and ASTM F594 for corrosion resistance. Ensure that all bolts and nuts 5/8 in. and over in diameter are galvanized and meet the requirements of ASTM A307. Separate dissimilar metals with an inert dielectric material.

3.3. **Wiring.** Install all wiring and electrical work supplying power to the equipment in a neat workmanlike manner. Supply and install all wiring necessary to interconnect RVDS sensors to the traffic signal cabinet and incidentals necessary to complete the work. Furnish and install any additional required wiring at no additional cost to the Department.

Wiring must be cut to proper length prior to installation. Provide cable slack for ease of removal and replacement. All cable slack must be neatly laced with lacing or straps in the bottom of the cabinet. Ensure cables are secured with clamps.

3.4. **Grounding.** Ensure all RVDS components, cabinets, and supports are grounded in accordance with the NEC and manufacturer recommendations.

3.5. **Relocation of RVDS Field Equipment.** Perform the relocation in strict conformance with the requirements herein and as shown on the plans. Completion of the work will present a neat, workmanlike, and finished appearance. Maintain safe construction practices during relocation.

Inspect the existing RVDS field equipment with a representative from the Department and document any evidence of damage prior to removal. Conduct a pre-removal test in accordance with the testing requirements contained in this Item to document operational functionality. Remove and deliver equipment that fails inspection to the Department.

Prior to removal of existing RVDS field equipment, disconnect and isolate the power cables from the electric power supply and disconnect all communication cabling from the equipment located inside the cabinet. Coil and store power and communication cabling inside the cabinet until relocation. Remove existing RVDS field equipment as shown on the plans only when authorized by the Engineer.

Use care to prevent damage to any support structures. Any equipment or structure damaged or lost must be replaced by the Contractor (with items approved by the Engineer) at no cost to the Department.

Make all arrangements for connection to the power supply and communication source including any permits required for the work to be done under the Contract. Provide wire for the power connection at least the minimum size indicated on the plans and insulated for 600 V. Meet the requirements of the NEC, latest edition.

3.6. **Removal of RVDS Field Equipment.** Perform the removal in strict conformance with the requirements herein and as shown on the plans. Completion of the work will present a neat, workmanlike, and finished appearance. Maintain safe construction practices during removal.

Disconnect and isolate any existing electrical supply prior to removal of existing field equipment.

Use care to prevent damage to any support structures. Any equipment or structure damaged or lost must be replaced by the Contractor (with items approved by the Engineer) at no cost to the Department.

All materials not designated for reuse or retention by the Department will become the property of the Contractor and be removed from the project site at the Contractor's expense. Deliver items to be retained by the Department to a location shown on the plans or general notes. The Contractor is fully responsible for any removed equipment until released by the Engineer.

3.7. **Documentation.** Provide electronic copy operation and maintenance manuals, along with a copy of all product documentation on electronic media. Include the following documentation:

- Complete and accurate schematic diagrams,

- Complete installation procedures,
- Manufacturer's specifications (functional, electrical, mechanical, and environmental),
- Complete maintenance and trouble-shooting procedures, and
- Explanation of product operation.
- Warranty as specified in Section 3.8.

The RVDS must pass testing to ensure functionality and reliability prior to delivery. These include functional tests for internal subassemblies, a 24 hr. minimum unit level burn-in test, and a unit functionality test. Provide test results and supporting documentation, including serial number tested, must be submitted for each RVDS. If requested, manufacturing data per serial number must be provided for each RVDS.

Unless deemed unnecessary by the Project Engineer or TRF-TM, Provide certification from an independent laboratory demonstrating compliance with NEMA TS2 environmental requirements for temperature, humidity, transients, vibration, and shock.

Unless deemed unnecessary by the Project Engineer or TRF-TM, Provide third party enclosure test results demonstrating the sensor enclosure meets Type 4X criteria.

Unless deemed unnecessary by the Project Engineer or TRF-TM, Provide evidence of RVDS manufacturer's quality assurance program, including proof that the manufacturer of the RVDS is either ISO 9001 certified or other quality management system programs for manufacturing RVDS.

3.8. **Warranty.** Ensure that the detection system has a manufacturer's warranty covering defects for a minimum of 5 years from the date of final acceptance. In addition to the terms required by Article 8 of TO-8000, Ensure the warranty includes providing replacements, within 10 calendar days of notification, for defective parts and equipment during the warranty period at no cost to the Department.

3.9. **Training and Support.** Provide manufacturer approved end user training to the Department and their representatives. Training must include instruction on system configuration, operation, and maintenance. Provide training for a minimum of 10 Department-designated representatives up to 8 hs., including both class and field training.

Ensure that the detection system manufacturer will provide product support for a minimum of 5 years from the date of final acceptance.

---

#### 4. TESTING

Perform the following tests on equipment and systems unless otherwise shown on the plans. The Department may witness all the tests.

4.1. **Stand-Alone Test.** Conduct a Stand-Alone Test for each unit after installation. The test must exercise all stand-alone (non-network) functional operations and verify that RVDS is placing detector contact closure to assigned detector channels in the traffic signal controller assembly. Notify the Engineer 5 working days before conducting this test.

4.2. **Consequences of Test Failure.** If a unit fails a test, provide a new unit and then repeat the test until successfully completed.

4.3. **Final Acceptance Test.** Conduct a Final Acceptance Test on the complete functional system. Demonstrate all control, monitoring, and communication requirements and operate the system for 30 days. The Engineer will furnish a Letter of Approval stating the first day of the Final Acceptance Test.

4.4. **Consequences of Final Acceptance Test Failure.** If a defect within the system is detected during the Final Acceptance Test, document and correct the source of failure. Once corrective measures are taken, monitor the point of failure until a consecutive 30 day period free of defects is achieved.

#### 4.5. Relocation

- 4.5.1. **Pre-Test.** Provide 5 copies of the test procedures to include tests of the basic functionality of the unit and blank data forms to the Engineer for review and comment as part of material documentation requirements. Functionality tests may include, but are not limited to, physical inspection of the unit and cable assemblies. Include the sequence of the tests in the procedures along with acceptance thresholds. The Engineer will comment, approve, or reject test procedures within 30 days after Contractor submittal of test procedures. Rejected test procedures must be resubmitted within 10 days. Review time is calendar days. Conduct all tests in accordance with the approved test procedures.

Conduct basic functionality testing prior to removal of RVDS field equipment. Test all functional operations of the equipment in the presence of representatives of the Contractor and the Department. Ensure that both representatives sign the test report indicating that the equipment has passed or failed each function. Once removed, the equipment becomes the responsibility of the Contractor until accepted by the Department. Compare test data prior to removal and after installation. The performance test results after relocation must be equal to or better than the test results prior to removal. Repair or replace those components within the system that failed after relocation but passed prior to removal.

- 4.5.2. **Post-Test.** Testing of the RVDS field equipment is to relieve the Contractor of system maintenance. The Contractor will be relieved of the responsibility for system maintenance in accordance with Item 7, "Legal Relations and Responsibilities" after a successful test period. The Contractor will not be required to pay for electrical energy consumed by the system.

After all existing RVDS field equipment has been installed, conduct approved continuity, stand alone, and performance tests. Furnish test data forms containing the sequence of tests including all the data taken as well as quantitative results for all tests. Submit the test data forms to the Engineer at least 30 days prior to the day the tests are to begin. Obtain Engineer's approval of test procedures prior to submission of equipment for tests. Send at least 1 copy of the data forms to the Engineer.

Conduct an approved stand-alone test of the equipment installation at the field sites. At a minimum, exercise all stand-alone (non-network) functional operations of the field equipment with all the equipment installed per the plans as directed by the Engineer. Complete the approved data forms with test results and turn over to the Engineer for review and either acceptance or rejection of equipment. Give at least 30 working days' notice prior to all tests to permit the Engineer or his representative to observe each test.

The Department will conduct approved RVDS field equipment system tests on the field equipment with the central equipment. The tests will, as a minimum, exercise all remote control functions and display the return status codes from the controller.

If any unit fails to pass a test, prepare and deliver a report to the Engineer. Describe the nature of the failure and the corrective action needed. If the failure is the result of improper installation or damage during reinstallation, reinstall or replace the unit and repeat the test until the unit passes successfully, at no additional cost to the Department or extension of the Contract period.

---

## 5. MEASUREMENT

New RVDS furnished and installed by the Contractor will be measured by each approach to the signalized intersection.

RVDS furnished by the Department for the Contractor to install only will be measured by each approach to the signalized intersection.

Existing RVDS to be relocated or removed will be measured by each sensor relocated or removed.

---

**6. PAYMENT**

- 6.1. **Furnish and Install.** The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit bid price for "RVDS (Presence Detection Only)", "RVDS (Advance Detection Only)" and "RVDS (Presence and Advance Detection)."

This price is full compensation for furnishing, installing, configuring, integrating, and testing the completed installation including RVDS equipment, voltage converters or injectors, cables, connectors, associated equipment, and mounting hardware; and for all labor, tools, equipment, any required equipment modifications for electrical service, documentation, testing, training, software, warranty and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

- 6.2. **Install Only.** The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item will be paid for at the unit bid price for "RVDS (Presence Detection Only) (Install Only)", "RVDS (Advance Detection Only) (Install Only)" and "RVDS (Presence and Advance Detection) (Install Only)."

This price is full compensation for making fully operational a radar vehicle detection system furnished by the Department; installing, configuring, integrating, and testing the completed installation including RVDS equipment, voltage converters or injectors, cables, connectors, associated equipment, and mounting hardware; and for all labor, tools, equipment, any required equipment modifications for electrical service, documentation, testing, training, software, and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

- 6.3. **Relocate.** The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item will be paid for at the unit bid price for "Relocate RVDS." This price is full compensation for relocating and making fully operational existing RVDS field equipment; furnishing and installing additional cables or connectors; for testing, delivery and storage of components designated for salvage or reuse; and all testing, training, software, equipment, any required equipment modifications for electrical service, labor, materials, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

- 6.4. **Remove.** The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item will be paid for at the unit bid price for "Remove RVDS." This price is full compensation for removing existing RVDS equipment; removal of cables and connectors; for testing, delivery and storage of components designated for salvage; and all testing training, software, equipment, labor, materials, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

- 6.5. **Communication Cable.** All communication cables necessary to make the RVDS fully operational will be subsidiary to this Item.

# Special Specification 6304

## Intelligent Transportation System (ITS) Radar Vehicle Sensing Device



### 1. DESCRIPTION

Furnish, install, relocate, or remove Intelligent Transportation System (ITS) radar vehicle sensing device (RVSD) system at locations shown on the plans, or as directed.

### 2. MATERIALS

- 2.1. **General.** Except as allowed for relocation of RVSD equipment, ensure all equipment and component parts are new and in an operable condition at time of delivery and installation. Ensure all RVSD within the project are from the same manufacturer. RVSD are further classified by the type of functions they can perform. The primary classifications are RVSD (Data Collection Only) and RVSD (Data Collection and Wrong-way alarm).

Provide RVSD field equipment that is compatible with existing infrastructure and software located in the Department's Traffic Management Centers (TMCs) across the state or as directed.

RVSD system equipment must include the following:

- Radar vehicle sensing devices
- Mounting assembly and hardware
- All cabling and connector assemblies
- Associated devices required to integrate into communication system

RVSD must be a roadside sensor, or group of sensors, that accurately provides volume, speed, occupancy, and classification data for the roadway segment where they are installed.

Ensure sensor is designed and constructed with subassemblies, circuits, cards, and modules to maximize standardization and commonality. Ensure all external parts and surfaces are designed to protect against corrosion, fungus and moisture deterioration.

Design the equipment for ease of maintenance. Provide component parts that are readily accessible for inspection and maintenance. Provide test points for checking essential voltages and waveforms.

RVSD must self-recover from power failure once power is restored.

Sensor must be provided with a mounting bracket designed to mount directly to a pole, mast-arm, or other structure. Ensure bracket is designed such that the sensor can be tilted both vertically and horizontally for alignment and then locked into place after proper alignment is achieved. All hardware must be designed to support the load of the RVSD sensor and mounting bracket.

- 2.2. **Configuration.** Each RVSD system consists of roadside sensors as shown on the plans. Ensure the RVSD system detects a minimum of eight lanes. Ensure lane width, medians, and geometry are configurable. Traffic barriers must not interfere with detection.

Ensure RVSD does not require tuning or recalibration to maintain performance once initial calibration and configuration is complete. RVSD must not require cleaning or adjustment to maintain performance.



Ensure RVSD can detect vehicles within a range of 10 to 200 feet from the sensor and can simultaneously detect vehicles in all lanes within the detection range of the radar.

- 2.3. **Automatic Detection.** Once installed and aligned, ensure the sensor automatically detects vehicle volume, speed, and occupancy. Ensure only minor operator input is required for setup, such as verification of lane configuration and distance from sensor. Ensure the sensor tunes out stationary objects to omit false readings.

- 2.4. **Data Collection.** The RVSD must automatically calibrate vehicle speed, detection level, and sensitivity. Ensure RVSD provides accurate, real-time volume, average speed, and occupancy for each lane detected.

RVSD must provide user configurable settings for collection and polling intervals. Interval configurations must include options ranging from twenty seconds to 15 minutes or more.

RVSD must be able to correctly categorize detected vehicles into a minimum of three user definable length-based classification bins.

Ensure RVSD sensor performance is not affected by environmental conditions such as shadows, glare, wind, rain, heat, or snow. Ensure speed detection is accurate without requiring vehicle length for calculations.

Ensure RVSD system includes remote connection capabilities allowing an operator to update configuration and firmware as well as download interval data. In the event of communication loss, ensure RVSD stores and transfers data upon communication restoration and subsequent request for data.

Ensure RVSD sensor provides non-volatile memory for configuration settings and for local storage. The sensor must store a minimum of 3 hours of data for all data collected over eight travel lanes at twenty-second intervals. Ensure local storage data is overwritten in a first-in first-out manner.

Ensure RVSD supports the Department's Transportation Sensor System Protocol Document (TSS-Protocol) as detailed in the *TSS Tools* link on the Department's website (<http://www.txdot.gov/business/resources/engineering-software.html>).

- 2.5. **Accuracy.** Ensure RVSD accuracy meets or exceeds the following requirements during nominal conditions:

- Sensor volume data accuracy is within 5 percent of actual per direction of travel.
- Sensor average speed data is accurate within 5 mph per direction of travel.
- Individual lane speed accuracy is within 10 mph of actual.
- Individual vehicle speed accuracy is within 5 mph for 90% of measurements.
- Vehicle classification data is accurate for 90% of detected vehicles.

- 2.6. **Functional Requirements for RVSD with Wrong-way Alarms.** RVSD with wrong-way alarms must be capable of detecting and reporting direction of travel for each vehicle detected as well as include all features and functions required for Data Collection RVSD.

The RVSD sensor must automatically determine if a vehicle is traveling in the opposite direction for which the lane is configured.

Ensure the RVSD can detect real-time vehicle direction of travel.

- 2.7. **Cabling.** Supply the RVSD with all cabling of the appropriate length for each installation site.

- 2.8. **Communication.** RVSD must be remote accessible and provide communication options including RS-232, RS-485 and TCP/IP.

RVSD communication through RS-232 or RS-485 must include an internal RS-232, RS-485 communication port. Each serial communication port must support the following baud rates: 9600, 19200, 38400, 57600 and

115200. Additionally, the RS-232 port must be full-duplex and must support true Request to Send / Clear to Send (RTS/CTS) hardware handshaking for interfacing to various communication devices.

RVSD system must produce interval data packets containing all available criteria as detailed in TSS-Protocol.

- 2.9. **Software.** Ensure the RVSD manufacturer includes all software required to configure and monitor operation of RVSD field equipment locally and remotely. RVSD software must be a stable production release.

Software must allow the user to configure, operate, exercise, diagnose, and read current status of all RVSD features and functions using a laptop computer.

RVSD system computer software must be able to communicate with RVSD field devices using TCP/IP and serial connections, including cellular modem connections. The software must provide for local and remote configuration and monitoring, including a graphical user interface (GUI) that displays all configured lanes and provides visual representation of all detected vehicles.

System software must provide the user complete control over the configuration and setup process for RVSD devices and allow the user to load new firmware into non-volatile memory of RVSD field devices locally and over any supported communication channel including TCP/IP networks.

Software must include the ability to save a local copy of RVSD field device configurations, and load saved configurations to RVSD field devices.

Ensure the software allows the operator to change the baud rate via a drop-down list, add response delays for the communication ports to allow for communication stabilization, switch between data pushing and data polling, and change the RVSD's settings for Flow Control between none and RTS/CTS. Ensure the software automatically selects the correct baud rate and serial communication port from up to 15 serial communication ports.

The software must include the ability to retrieve and store data collected by RVSD field devices.

Ensure all licenses required for operation and use of software are included at no additional cost.

Software updates must be provided at no additional cost during the warranty period.

- 2.10. **Mechanical.** Ensure that all parts are fabricated from corrosion resistant materials, such as plastic, stainless steel, aluminum, or brass.

Ensure that all screws, nuts, and locking washers are stainless steel. Do not use self-tapping screws.

Ensure equipment is clearly and permanently marked with manufacturer name or trademark and part number as well as date of manufacture or serial number.

Ensure RVSD system is modular in design for ease of field replacement and maintenance. Ensure cable connector design prohibits improper connections. Cable connector pins are plated to improve conductivity and resist corrosion. RVSD sensor dimensions must not exceed 14 in. by 11 in. by 7 in.

Ensure the RVSD housing is a weather resistant, ultraviolet (UV) resistant material. RVSD sensor must meet NEMA 250 4X requirements. Ensure all gasket and sealant materials are UV resistant and intended to be used in outdoor environment with exposure to the sun.

All printed circuit boards (PCB) must have conformal coating.

- 2.11. **Electrical.** Ensure the RVSD system operates on nominal 120 V<sub>AC</sub>. Provide a transformer with any system device that requires a nominal operating voltage other than 120 V<sub>AC</sub>. Ensure RVSD sensor operates between

12 V<sub>DC</sub> and 28 V<sub>DC</sub> utilizing ten watts or less. Ensure equipment is designed to protect personnel from exposure to high voltage during installation, operation, and maintenance.

- 2.12. **Environmental.** All RVSD system components must operate properly during and after being subjected to the environmental testing procedures described in NEMA TS2, Section 2. RVSD sensor must be able to withstand the maximum wind load defined in the Department's basic wind velocity zone map standard without any damage or loosening from structure.

- 2.13. **Connectors and Harnesses.** External connections exposed to the outdoor environment must be made with weatherproof connectors. Connectors must be keyed to ensure correct alignment and mating.

Ensure all conductors are properly color coded and identified. Ensure that every conductive contact surface or pin is gold-plated or made of a noncorrosive, nonrusting, conductive metal.

Ensure power and data cable connectors exposed to the elements are IP 67 compliant. Ensure all conductors that interface with the connector are encased in one jacket.

RS-485 and RS-232 communication cables must:

- be shielded, twisted pair cable with a drain wire,
- have a nominal capacitance conductor to conductor @ 1Khz  $\geq$  26pF/ ft.,
- have nominal conductor DC resistance @ 68°F  $\leq$  15 ohms/1000 ft.,
- be one continuous run with no splices, and
- be terminated only on the two farthest ends of the cable.

- 2.14. **Documentation.** Provide hardcopy operation and maintenance manuals, along with a copy of all product documentation on electronic media. Include the following documentation for all system devices and software:

- operator manuals,
- installation manuals with installation procedures,
- maintenance and troubleshooting procedures, and
- manufacturer's specifications (functional, electrical, mechanical, and environmental).

Provide certification from an independent laboratory demonstrating compliance with NEMA TS2 environmental requirements for temperature, humidity, transients, vibration, and shock.

RVSD system must transmit in the 10.50 – 10.55 GHz or 24.00 – 24.25 GHz frequency band and meets the power transmission and frequency requirements of CFR 47. Ensure FCC certification is displayed on each device according to FCC rules. Provide third party test results for CFR 47, Part 15 (Section 15.245 or 15.249).

The RVSD enclosure must conform to criteria set forth in the NEMA 250 Standard for Type 4X enclosures. Provide third party enclosure test results demonstrating the sensor enclosure meets Type 4X criteria.

Ensure the RVSD system manufacturer has a quality assurance program for manufacturing RVSD as described in this specification. Manufacturer of the RVSD must be ISO 9001 certified, or provide a copy of the company quality manual for review.

The RVSD must pass testing to ensure functionality and reliability prior to delivery. These include functional tests for internal subassemblies, a 24 hr. minimum unit level burn-in test, and a unit functionality test. Test results and supporting documentation, including serial number tested, must be submitted for each RVSD. If requested, manufacturing data per serial number must be provided for each RVSD.

- 2.15. **Warranty.** Warrant the equipment against defects or failure in design, materials, and workmanship for a minimum of 5 yr. or in accordance with the manufacturer's standard warranty if that warranty period is greater. The start date of the manufacturer's standard warranty will begin after the equipment has successfully passed all tests contained in the final acceptance test plan. Any equipment with less than 90%

of its warranty remaining after the final acceptance test is completed will not be accepted by the Department. Guarantee that equipment furnished and installed for this project performs according to the manufacturer's published specifications. Assign, to the Department, all manufacturer's normal warranties or guarantees on all electronic, electrical, and mechanical equipment, materials, technical data, and products furnished for and installed on the project.

Malfunctioning equipment must be repaired or replaced at the Contractor's expense prior to completion of the final acceptance test plan. Furnish replacement parts for all equipment within 10 days of notification of failure by the Department.

During the warranty period, technical support must be available via telephone within 4 hr. of the time a call is made by a user, and this support must be available from factory certified personnel.

- 2.16. **Training.** Conduct a training class for a minimum of 8 hr., unless otherwise directed, for up to 10 representatives designated by the Department on installation, configuration, operation, testing, maintenance, troubleshooting, and repair. Submit a training session agenda, a complete set of training material, the names and qualifications of proposed instructors, and proposed training location for approval at least 30 days before the training. Conduct training within the local area unless otherwise directed. Provide 1 copy of course material for each attendee. Ensure that training includes:
- "Hands-on" operation of system software and equipment;
  - explanation of all system commands, their function and usage; and
  - system "troubleshooting," operation, and maintenance.

---

### 3. CONSTRUCTION

- 3.1. **System Installation.** Install RVSD system devices according to the manufacturer's recommendations to achieve the specified accuracy and reliability. Completion of the work must present a neat, workmanlike, and finished appearance.

If the RVSD is to be mounted near large planar surfaces (sound barrier, building, parked vehicles, etc.), verify the final placement meets manufacturer recommendations for installation and clearance.

Ensure installation and configuration of software on Department computers is included with the RVSD system.

- 3.2. **Mechanical Components.** Ensure that all fasteners, including bolts, nuts, and washers with a diameter less than 5/8 in. are Type 316 or 304 stainless steel and meet the requirements of ASTM F593 and ASTM F594 for corrosion resistance. Ensure that all bolts and nuts 5/8 in. and over in diameter are galvanized and meet the requirements of ASTM A307. Separate dissimilar metals with an inert dielectric material.

- 3.3. **Wiring.** All wiring and electrical work supplying the equipment must meet the requirements of the most current version of the National Electrical Code (NEC). Supply and install all wiring necessary to interconnect RVSD sensors to the field cabinet and incidentals necessary to complete the work. If additional cables are required, the Contractor must furnish and install them at no additional cost to the Department. Provide conductors at least the minimum size indicated on the plans and insulated for 600 V.

Cables must be cut to proper length prior to assembly. Provide cable slack for ease of removal and replacement. All cable slack must be neatly laced with lacing or straps in the bottom of the cabinet. Ensure cables are secured with clamps and include service loops.

- 3.4. **Electrical Service.** The Contractor is responsible for checking the local electrical service to determine if a modification is needed for the equipment.

3.5. **Grounding.** Ensure all RVSD system devices, cabinets, and supports are grounded in accordance with the NEC and manufacturer recommendations.

3.6. **Relocation of RVSD Field Equipment.** Perform the relocation in strict conformance with the requirements herein and as shown on the plans. Completion of the work must present a neat, workmanlike, and finished appearance. Maintain safe construction practices during relocation.

Inspect the existing RVSD field equipment with a representative from the Department and document any evidence of damage prior to removal. Conduct testing in accordance with 4.9. Remove and deliver equipment that fails inspection to the Department.

Prior to removal of existing RVSD field equipment, disconnect and isolate the power cables from the electric power supply and disconnect all communication cabling from the equipment located inside the cabinet. Coil and store power and communication cabling inside the cabinet until such time that it can be relocated. Remove existing RVSD field equipment as shown on the plans only at such time as authorized by the Engineer.

Use care to prevent damage to any support structures. Any equipment or structure damaged or lost must be replaced by the Contractor (with items approved by the Engineer) at no cost to the Department.

Make all arrangements for connection to power and communications including any permits required for the work to be done under the Contract. Provide wire for the power connection at least the minimum size indicated on the plans and insulated for 600 V.

3.7. **Removal of RVSD Field Equipment.** Perform the removal in strict conformance with the requirements herein and as shown on the plans. Completion of the work must present a neat, workmanlike, and finished appearance. Maintain safe construction practices during removal.

Inspect the existing RVSD field equipment with a representative from the Department and document any evidence of damage prior to removal. Conduct testing in accordance with 4.9.

Disconnect and isolate any existing electrical power supply prior to removal of existing field equipment.

Use care to prevent damage to any support structures. Any equipment or structure damaged or lost must be replaced by the Contractor (with items approved by the Engineer) at no cost to the Department.

All materials not designated for reuse or retention by the Department will become the property of the Contractor and be removed from the project site at the Contractor's expense. Deliver items to be retained by the Department to a location shown on the plans or general notes. The Contractor is fully responsible for any removed equipment until released by the Engineer.

3.8. **Contractor Experience Requirements.** Contractor or designated subcontractor must meet the following experience requirements:

3.8.1. **Minimum Experience.** Three years of continuous existence offering services in the installation of RVSD systems. Experience must include freeway and arterial management, forward fire and side fire applications, single zone and dual beam detection, and equipment setup, testing, and troubleshooting.

3.8.2. **Completed Projects.** Three completed projects where personnel installed, tested and integrated RVSD field equipment. The completed installations must have been in continuous satisfactory operation for a minimum of 1 yr.

3.8.3. **Equipment Experience.** One project (may be 1 of the 3 projects in the preceding paragraph) in which the personnel worked in cooperation with technical representatives of the equipment supplier to perform installation, integration, or acceptance testing of the work. The Contractor will not be required to furnish equipment on this project from the same supplier who was referenced in the qualification documentation.

Submit the names, addresses and telephone numbers of the references that can be contacted to verify the experience requirements given above.

---

#### 4. TESTING

Ensure that the following tests are performed on equipment and systems unless otherwise shown on the plans. The Department may witness all the tests.

- 4.1. **Test Procedures Documentation.** Provide an electronic copy of the test procedures and blank data forms 60 days prior to testing for each test required on this project. Include the sequence of the tests in the procedures. The Engineer will approve test procedures prior to submission of equipment for tests. Conduct all tests in accordance with the approved test procedures.

Record test data on the data forms, as well as quantitative results. Ensure the data forms are signed by an authorized representative (company official) of the equipment manufacturer.

- 4.2. **Design Approval Test.** Ensure that the RVSD has successfully completed a Design Approval Test that confirms compliance with the environmental requirements of this specification.

Provide a certification and test report from an independent testing laboratory as evidence of a successfully completed Design Approval Test. Ensure that the testing by this laboratory is performed in accordance with the requirements of this specification.

- 4.3. **Demonstration Test.** Conduct a Demonstration Test on applicable equipment at an approved Contractor facility. Notify the Engineer 10 working days before conducting this testing. Perform the following tests:

- 4.3.1. **Examination of Product.** Examine each unit carefully to verify that the materials, design, construction, markings and workmanship comply with the requirements of this specification.

- 4.3.2. **Continuity Tests.** Check the wiring to determine conformance with the requirements of this specification.

- 4.3.3. **Operational Test.** Operate each unit for at least 15 min. to permit equipment temperature stabilization and observation of a sufficient number of performance characteristics to ensure compliance with this specification.

- 4.4. **Stand-Alone Test.** Conduct a Stand-Alone Test for each unit after installation. The test must exercise all stand-alone (non-network) functional operations. Notify the Engineer 5 working days before conducting this test.

- 4.4.1. **Performance Test.** Ensure the RVSD meets functional performance requirements of Section 2.5 by using the following test methods:

Verify volume and classification accuracy by performing a manual count on each lane of detection. Volume and classification data reported by the sensor must meet the volume and classification data accuracy requirements in Section 2.5 when compared with data collected manually.

Verify speed accuracy by comparing sensor speed data to speeds data collected with a laser speed gun, radar speed gun, or by video speed trap using frame rate as a time reference. Vehicle speeds must be collected and averaged over a minimum of 10 vehicles. Speed data must meet the speed data accuracy requirements in Section 2.5 when compared to average speeds collected using laser, radar, or video.

Verify wrong-way detection accuracy by reversing the configured direction of travel for at least one travel lane. Verify vehicles detected in a reversed lane are classified as wrong-way vehicles and properly counted. Volume reported for vehicles classified as wrong-way must meet the volume data accuracy requirement in Section 2.5.

- 4.5. **System Integration Test.** Conduct a System Integration Test on the complete functional system. Demonstrate all control and monitor functions for each system component for 72 hr. Supply 2 copies of the System Operations manual before the System Integration Test. Notify the Engineer 10 working days before conducting this testing.
- 4.6. **Consequences of Test Failure.** If a unit fails a test, submit a report describing the nature of the failure and the actions taken to remedy the situation prior to modification or replacement of the unit. If a unit requires modification, correct the fault and then repeat the test until successfully completed. Correct minor discrepancies within 30 days of written notice to the Engineer. If a unit requires replacement, provide a new unit and then repeat the test until successfully completed. Major discrepancies that will substantially delay receipt and acceptance of the unit will be sufficient cause for rejection of the unit.
- If a failure pattern develops in similar units within the system, implement corrective measures, including modification or replacement of units, to all similar units within the system as directed. Perform the corrective measures without additional cost or extension of the Contract period.
- 4.7. **Final Acceptance Test.** Conduct a Final Acceptance Test on the complete functional system. Demonstrate all control, monitoring, and communication requirements and operate the system for 90 days. The Engineer will furnish a Letter of Approval stating the first day of the Final Acceptance Test. The completion of the Final Acceptance Test occurs when system downtime due to mechanical, electrical, or other malfunctions to equipment furnished or installed does not exceed 72 hr. and any individual points of failure identified during the test period have operated free of defects.
- 4.8. **Consequences of Final Acceptance Test Failure.** If a defect within the system is detected during the Final Acceptance Test, document and correct the source of failure. Once corrective measures are taken, monitor the point of failure until a consecutive 30 day period free of defects is achieved.
- If after completion of the initial test period, the system downtime exceeds 72 hr. or individual points of failure have not operated for 30 consecutive days free of defects, extend the test period by an amount of time equal to the greater of the downtime in excess of 72 hr. or the number of days required to complete the performance requirement of the individual point of failure.
- 4.9. **Relocation and Removal**
- 4.9.1. **Pre-Test.** Tests may include, but are not limited to, physical inspection of the unit and cable assemblies. Include the sequence of the tests in the procedures along with acceptance thresholds. Contractor to resubmit, if necessary, rejected test procedures for final approval within 10 days. Review time is calendar days. Conduct all tests in accordance with the approved test procedures.
- Conduct basic functionality testing prior to removal of RVSD field equipment. Test all functional operations of the equipment in the presence of representatives of the Contractor and the Department. Ensure that both representatives sign the test report indicating that the equipment has passed or failed each function. Once removed, the equipment becomes the responsibility of the Contractor until accepted by the Department. Compare test data prior to removal and after installation. The performance test results after relocation must be equal to or better than the test results prior to removal. Repair or replace those components within the system that failed after relocation but passed prior to removal.
- 4.9.2. **Post-Test.** Testing of the RVSD field equipment is to relieve the Contractor of system maintenance. The Contractor will be relieved of the responsibility for system maintenance in accordance with Item 7, "Legal Relations and Responsibilities" after a successful test period. The Contractor will not be required to pay for electrical energy consumed by the system.
- After all existing RVSD field equipment has been installed, conduct approved continuity, stand alone, and performance tests. Furnish test data forms containing the sequence of tests including all the data taken as well as quantitative results for all tests. Submit the test data forms to the Engineer at least 30 days prior to the day the tests are to begin. Obtain Engineer's approval of test procedures prior to submission of equipment for tests. Send at least 1 copy of the data forms to the Engineer.

Conduct an approved stand-alone test of the equipment installation at the field sites. At a minimum, exercise all stand-alone (non-network) functional operations of the field equipment installed per the plans as directed by the Engineer. Complete the approved data forms with test results and turn over to the Engineer for review and either acceptance or rejection of equipment. Give at least 30 working days notice prior to all tests to permit the Engineer or his representative to observe each test.

The Department will conduct approved RVSD field equipment system tests on the field equipment with the central equipment. The tests will, as a minimum, exercise remote control functions and confirm communication with field equipment.

If any unit fails to pass a test, prepare and deliver a report to the Engineer. Describe the nature of the failure and the corrective action needed. If the failure is the result of improper installation or damage during reinstallation, reinstall or replace the unit and repeat the test until the unit passes successfully, at no additional cost to the Department or extension of the Contract period.

---

## 5. MEASUREMENT

RVSD for data collection only will be measured by each unit furnished and installed, installed, relocated or removed. RVSD for data collection and wrong-way alarm will be measured by each system furnished and installed, installed, relocated or removed.

---

## 6. PAYMENT

- 6.1. **Furnish and Install.** The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit bid price for "ITS RVSD (Data Collection Only) System" and "ITS RVSD (Data Collection and Wrong-way alarm) System." This price is full compensation for furnishing, installing, configuring, integrating, and testing the completed installation including RVSD equipment, voltage converters or injectors, cables, connectors, associated equipment, and mounting hardware; and for all labor, tools, equipment, any required equipment modifications for electrical service, documentation, testing, training, software, warranty and incidentals necessary to complete the work.
- 6.2. **Install Only.** The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item will be paid for at the unit bid price for "ITS RVSD (Data Collection Only) (Install Only)" and "ITS RVSD (Data Collection and Wrong-way alarm) (Install Only)." This price is full compensation for installing, configuring, integrating, and testing the completed installation including RVSD equipment, voltage converters or injectors, cables, connectors, associated equipment, and mounting hardware; and for all labor, tools, equipment, any required equipment modifications for electrical service, documentation, testing, training, software, and incidentals necessary to complete the work.
- 6.3. **Relocate.** The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item will be paid for at the unit bid price for "ITS RVSD (Data Collection Only) (Relocate)" and "ITS RVSD (Data Collection and Wrong-way alarm) (Relocate)." This price is full compensation for relocating and making fully operational existing RVSD field equipment; furnishing and installing additional cables or connectors; for testing, delivery and storage of components designated for salvage or reuse; and all testing, training, software, equipment, any required equipment modifications for electrical service, labor, materials, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the work.
- 6.4. **Remove.** The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item will be paid for at the unit bid price for "ITS RVSD (Data Collection Only) (Remove)" and "ITS RVSD (Data Collection and Wrong-way alarm) (Remove)." This price is full compensation for removing existing RVSD equipment; removal of cables and connectors; for testing, delivery and storage of components designated for salvage; and all testing, training, software, equipment, labor, materials, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the work.



# Special Specification 6366

## Installation of Wrong Way Driver System Equipment



### 1. DESCRIPTION

Transport, install, and test Department furnished thermal imaging sensors, LED wrong way signs, wrong way driver radar detectors, confirmation cameras, enclosures, cabinets with control and interface equipment, pedestal pole assemblies, and solar panel power supply system (when solar power is required).

### 2. MATERIALS

Provide all materials not supplied by the Department necessary for the installation of the Wrong Way Driver System Equipment. All materials provided by the Contractor must be new. Include a task in the project schedule for delivery of Department furnished materials and provide a minimum of 7 days' notice to the Department for pick-up of Department furnished materials. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, Wrong Way Driver System Equipment will be stored by the Department for pick up at the location shown on the plans.

Ensure that all materials and construction methods necessary to complete the installation conform to the requirements of this Item, the plans and the pertinent requirements of the following Items:

- Item 618, "Conduit,"
- Item 620, "Electrical Conductors,"
- Item 644, "Small Roadside Sign Supports and Assemblies,"
- Item 656, "Foundations for Traffic Control Devices," and
- Item 687 "Pedestal Pole Assemblies."

### 3. CONSTRUCTION

- 3.1. **Installation.** Before installation of any equipment, perform a site survey of the proposed locations to determine the optimal location of the poles and the optimal position of the thermal imaging sensor, radar unit, confirmation cameras, cabinets and equipment, and solar panels when required, to achieve proper operation based on the manufacturer's recommendations. When the equipment is provided with radios, test all wireless links to assure they provide optimal communication between transmitters and receivers. Adjust locations as approved by the Engineer if necessary.

Install equipment in accordance with this Item and the lines, grades, details and dimensions as shown on the plans or as directed. Maintain safe construction practices. Ensure the mechanical execution of work complies with NEC, Article 110.12., and Department standards. Equipment must be installed in a neat and workmanlike manner.

Ensure that the wrong way driver detection system is made operational with the Department's Traffic Management Center (TMC) system in accordance with this specification and as shown on the plans.

Provide all mounting hardware and cabling necessary to install and make operational all equipment. Provide only new and corrosion resistant materials. Consider all mounting hardware and cables as subsidiary to this item with no direct payment.

Adjustments and/or addition of sign attachment hardware, mounting components and hardware for the Wrong Way driver equipment, support brackets, and appurtenances, may be necessary for compatibility with specified positioning recommended by the manufacturer, as shown on the plans, or as directed. All adjustments and/or additional materials will not be paid for directly but will be subsidiary to this Item.

Prevent damage to all equipment provided by the Department. Replace any portion of the equipment that is damaged or lost during transportation or installation. Do not use any materials furnished by the Department on any other work which is not part of this contract. Materials not used which were furnished by the Department must be returned undamaged to the location from which the materials were obtained upon completion of the work. Any unused or removed material deemed salvageable by the Engineer will remain the property of the Department and must be delivered to a designated site. Unsalvageable materials are the responsibility of the Contractor. Dispose unsalvageable materials in accordance with federal, state, and local regulations.

The Contractor must have the manufacturer's representative on site to assist with the installation of all equipment before any work begins.

Once installation is complete, contractor will coordinate with the equipment manufacturer to ensure the Wrong Way driver thermal imaging sensor and equipment are properly positioned and the Wrong Way driver detection zones are accurate. Ensure that all equipment is functioning properly and communicating with the manufacturer's equipment software. Testing will begin once proper system functionality is proven.

Stockpile all materials designated for reuse or to be retained by the Department within the project limits or at a designated location as directed.

- 3.2. **Contractor Experience Requirements.** The Contractor or subcontractor must meet the following experience requirements:
- 3.2.1. **Minimum Experience.** Two years of continuous existence offering services in the installation of Wrong Way Driver equipment. Experience must include equipment setup, testing, and troubleshooting.
- 3.2.2. **Completed Projects.** Two completed projects where personnel installed, tested, and integrated Wrong Way Driver field equipment. The detectors and radios must have been installed outdoors and permanently mounted. The completed installations must have been in continuous satisfactory operation for a minimum of 1 year.
- 3.2.3. **Equipment Experience.** One completed project in which the personnel worked in cooperation with technical representatives of the equipment supplier to perform installation, integration, or acceptance testing of the work.

Provide necessary documentation of contractor or subcontractor qualifications pursuant to contract award.

- 3.3. **Testing.** Testing of the installed equipment locations is for the purpose of relieving the Contractor of maintenance of the equipment. The Contractor will be relieved of the responsibility for maintenance of the equipment in accordance with Item 7, "Legal Relations and Responsibilities," after all testing is successfully completed.

After all equipment locations have been installed, the Department and the contractor will conduct approved continuity, stand alone, and system tests on the installed field equipment with central, remote, and laptop equipment.

Ensure that the following tests are performed on equipment and systems unless otherwise shown on the plans, or as directed. The Department may witness all tests.

- 3.3.1. **Performance Test.** Conduct a Performance Test during nighttime for each unit after installation.

Once the equipment has been installed and activated, the exit ramp will be closed to traffic. A test vehicle will then be driven the wrong way down the ramp a minimum of ten times. Once ten successful detections and notifications are received at the Department's TMC, the equipment will be accepted as fully tested and ready for operation. To be accepted, the last five successful tests must be consecutive.

- 3.3.2 **Final Acceptance Test.** A final acceptance test will be conducted to demonstrate all control, monitor, and communication requirements for 90 days. The Engineer will furnish a letter acknowledging the final acceptance testing commencement date stating the first day of the final acceptance test.
- 3.3.3. **Consequences of Test Failure.** If a defect within the system is detected during the Final Acceptance Test, document and correct the source of failure. Once corrective measures are taken, monitor the point of failure until a consecutive 30 day period free of defects is achieved.
- If a defect within the system is detected after 60 days of the Final Acceptance Test, document and correct the source of failure. Once corrective measures are taken, extend the Final Acceptance Test until a consecutive 30 day period free of defects is achieved.
- Assume responsibility only for test failures directly related to the work in accordance with this Item. Upon completion of successful final acceptance testing, document the acceptance date and project identification information and provide 2 copies to the Engineer.
- 3.4. **Technical Assistance.** Ensure that a manufacturer's technical representative is available on site to assist the Contractor's technical personnel at each installation site with the equipment installation and communication system configuration and during testing of the equipment.

---

#### 4. MEASUREMENT

This item will be measured as each Wrong Way Driver System Equipment installed with poles and pole bases at the detector site and at the warning pole site and made operational in accordance with this specification and as shown on the plans.

---

#### 5. PAYMENT

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Install Wrong Way Driver System Equipment". This price is full compensation for transportation and installation of material furnished by the State; for installing control cables between the detector site and the warning pole site; for installing solar panel power supply system when required; for installing radios when required; for furnishing and installing any required mounting hardware, connectors, conduit, cables, enclosures, and radar shields; for configuring the equipment; storing the equipment when required; testing the equipment; replacement/repair of damaged components; disposal of unsalvageable material, and for all manipulations, labor, tools, working drawings, equipment and incidentals.

New drill shaft foundations will be paid under Item 416, "Drilled Shaft Foundations."

This page intentionally left blank.